





Class G80

Book B92

Copyright N<sup>o</sup> \_\_\_\_\_

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.























AVIL CO. LITH. PHILA

*Yours Truly, M. Buel.*

From a photograph taken in Irkoutsk while Mr. Buel was investigating the treatment of convicts in Siberia.



# HEROES

OF

# Unknown Seas

AND

# Savage Lands

By J. W. BUEL,

*Author of "The Beautiful Story," "The Story of Man," "The Living World," "Russia and Siberia," etc.*

## A RECORD OF THE FINDING OF ALL LANDS

And Descriptions of the First Visits Made by Europeans to  
the Wild Races of the World;

*FOLLOWING THE FOOTSTEPS OF ADVANCING CIVILIZATION FROM THE CAVES OF BARBARISM AND THE CRUDE  
CORACLE TO THE CHRISTIANIZING OF THE GLOBE.*

DESCRIBING SUPERSTITIONS APPERTAINING TO THE SEA AND THE OBSTACLES WHICH  
STRANGE BELIEFS OPPOSED TO EXTENDED VOYAGES.

COMPRISING ALSO

## AN AUTHENTIC HISTORY OF THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA

By the Viking Sea-Rovers, and Its Settlement by the Scandinavians in the Ninth Century.

SUPPLEMENTED WITH

THRILLING NARRATIVES OF VOYAGES, DISCOVERIES, ADVENTURES, BATTLES, DARINGS AND SUFFERINGS  
OF THE HEROIC CHARACTERS, BOLD EXPLORERS AND DAUNTLESS SPIRITS WHO HAVE  
MADE OCEAN HISTORY AND ESTABLISHED CHRISTIAN SUPREMACY  
OVER THE MOST SAVAGE LANDS OF THE EARTH.

RECITING ASTONISHING INCIDENTS AND PERILOUS UNDERTAKINGS AMONG WILD BEASTS AND SAVAGE  
PEOPLE IN HEROIC EFFORTS FOR A RECLAMATION OF ALL LANDS TO CIVILIZATION, AND  
RECORDING A DESCRIPTION OF THE RIOT OF MURDER, PILLAGE AND INHUMANITY  
WHICH CHARACTERIZED THE PIRATES, MAROONERS AND BUCCANEERS WHO  
RAVAGED THE SPANISH MAIN AND FOR CENTURIES BID DEFIANCE  
TO THE ARMED FLEETS OF ALL NATIONS.

**EMBELLISHED WITH MORE THAN THREE HUNDRED ORIGINAL ENGRAVINGS AND  
LARGE DOUBLE-PAGE COLORED PLATES,**

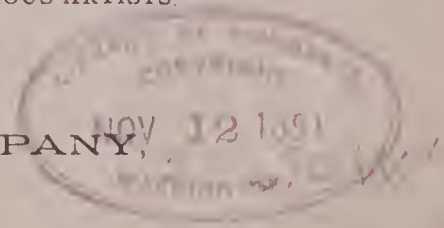
DRAWN ESPECIALLY FOR THIS WORK BY AMERICA'S MOST FAMOUS ARTISTS.

PUBLISHED AND MANUFACTURED BY

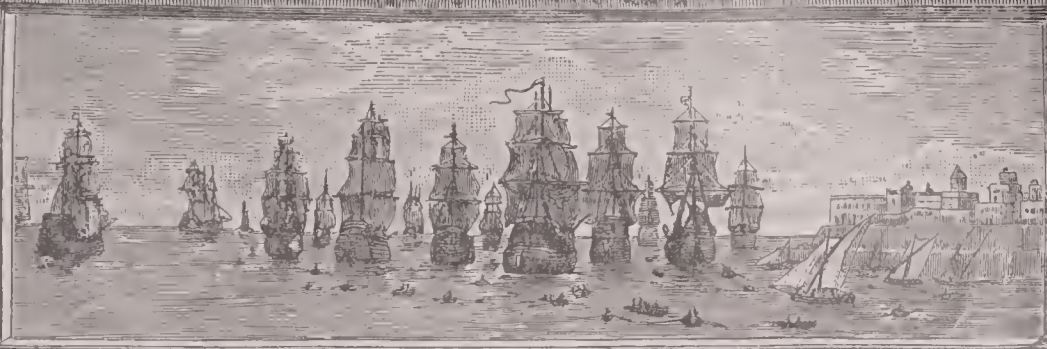
HISTORICAL PUBLISHING COMPANY,

PHILADELPHIA, PA.

ST. LOUIS, MO.







COPYRIGHTED,  
 1891,  
 BY H. S. SMITH.

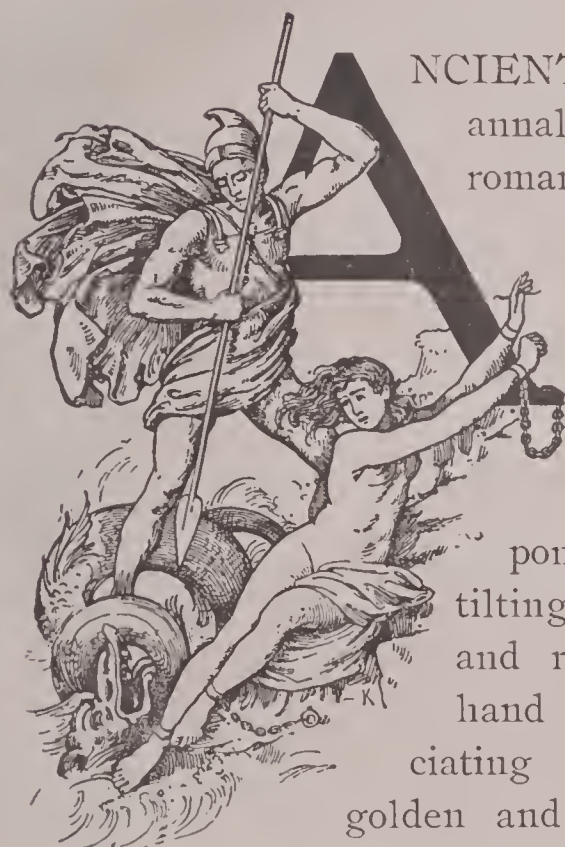
*All Rights Reserved.*

The illustrations in this work being from original drawings and protected by copyright, their reproduction in any form is unlawful, and notice is hereby given that persons guilty of infringing the copyright will be prosecuted.





# INTRODUCTION.



ANCIENT HISTORY possesses a charm which modern annals cannot rival; there is a sun-tinted mist of romance enveloping the remote past which flatters, like a wondrous mirage, and conjures, like a genie of youthful imagination, our conceptions of glorious things long since departed. Like a beautiful dream, antiquity looms up before our vision with its walled cities, castellated battlements, glittering minarets, frowning donjons, ponderous draw-bridges and armored knights, while tilting tournaments and furious engagements, with lance and rushing horse, are re-enacted for some fair lady's hand before our enraptured retrospective view. Appreciating this loving memory of the olden days, of the golden and heroic past, of the chivalry which may be dormant, but is ever present in the hearts of every one, ready to respond on the instant to patriotic call, I have herein attempted to gratify this affection and to rejuvenate an impulse which brings the world into more perfect rapport, by telling some of the stories that have never failed to quicken ambition, to excite emulation, to exalt daring energy, since their first narration.

Novel reading has not yet done its worst, for, like a cancerous growth, it plants its deadly roots into the very soul, and the knife can therefore only check for a time its frightful ravages. The only remedy lies in a substitution of wholesome but no less attractive literature, or in a sanitation which will give immunity to those not yet affected by the taint, and reclaim such as may still be susceptible to more elevating influences. History is the only effective remedy that can be offered for this immeasurable evil, and I appeal to mothers and fathers, as well as to humanity in general, to give their example and efforts towards inducing an acceptance of this corrective, which, while serving

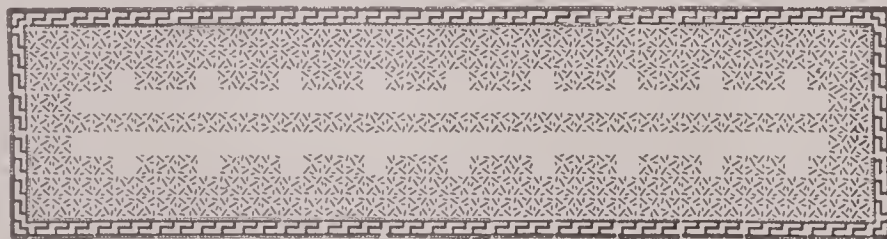
to overcome pernicious habit, fills the mind with ineffaceable delights and inestimable benefits.

This book has been prepared with the hope that it may prove a blessing in many ways; that it may inspire in every reader an unappeasable love for history; that it may diffuse both pleasure and knowledge in the family circle; that it may be helpful in teaching the value of good books; and above all, that it may be an aid to the perpetuation of honors won by heroes of discovery who have planted the cross of civilization among all the wild tribes of the world. To this end, and to create a fresh interest in a subject of such extreme importance, I have introduced herein histories of the most fearless navigators, the most intrepid explorers, and the most valorous adventurers in virgin fields, of which the annals of two thousand years afford any account. And in so doing I have been careful to observe the advantage to humanity that each career has bequeathed, and left the lesson and moral easily to be learned therefrom.

Thus I have aspired to an attempt to invest my subject with an interest that attaches to stories of extraordinary heroism, such as pictures the glories of a fadeless past to make the world emulous of proud examples. About books of this character there is an atmosphere at once inspirational and mind-invigorating, that kills the miasmatic influence which novels exhale, and which gives nourishment to laudable ambition towards the attainment of substantial, practical, and beneficent knowledge.

If my efforts in this direction prove successful I shall have obtained a reward, for the time and energies devoted to the preparation of this book, far beyond that which financial profit can bestow, and my chief aim will be accordingly accomplished.

*J. M. Buell*





# CONTENTS.

## CHAPTER I.

**The Rolling Stone of History.**—Surprising revelations—Ancient Cities that are now no more—Effects of Cataclysms upon the human race—The rise and fall of nations—Cave-dwellers who became masters of the world—The first boats—Building a strong nation—The earliest navigators—Evolution of the ship—Discoveries of the ancients—Islands of the long ago—Changes in the earth's surface—Commerce of Troy with India—Expeditions sent out by Menelaus and Neco—The circumnavigation of Africa by the ancients—Solomon's navy—Discovery of the West Indies by Carthaginians—Hamilcar's voyage to the North seas—Wonderful lands and fountains—Astounding adventures of Hanno—Weird sights on the shores of ancient Africa—Witches and Snake charmers—Among the mermaids—Voyage of Pytheas, the philosopher—Tears of sorrowing sea-birds—Discovery of a new world—A wondrously profitable commerce—A north-west passage—The Romans pass to China by a north route—Destruction of the Roman empire . . . . . 33-44

## CHAPTER II.

**Visions of the past.**—Eastward and westward of human life—The greatness of ancient Carthage—Venice the mistress of the sea—Beliefs respecting the earth's shape—Teachings of the great philosophers—Fabulous islands of the Atlantic—The Viking navigators—Overrunning Europe, yet in the van of the Crusaders—Discovery of Iceland—A fish as large as an island—Settlement of Iceland—Discoveries of Erik the Red—On Greenland's frigid shores—The Sagas of old Icelandic history—Discovery of America in the year 889—Verdant shores and prolific woodlands—Adventures in the New World—The first white man that ever set foot on the American continent—Killing of Thorwald by natives—His last instructions while dying—Finding of a skeleton in armor—Expedition returns to Greenland in the year 1005—The voyage of Thorstein—Death of Thorstein—Proofs of Norse settlement in America—The courtship of Thorfinn—The first white baby in the New World—The Dighton writing rock—Church records respecting the discovery of America—Killing of the first priest—Collection of Peter's pence in the New World—Crusader volunteers from America—Interruption of communication—Disappearance of the New World colonists—Imperilled by the savage Esquimaux—Terrors of the Black Plague—Terrible cataclysm that destroyed a part of China—How the Greenlanders were destroyed . . . . . 45-58

## CHAPTER III.

**Discovery of America by Zichmni and Zeno.**—Caught by a terrible storm and driven upon a strange shore—Attacked by the natives—A bold rover of the north—A cruise among Atlantic islands—A surprising discovery in Greenland—Castaways on the shores of a new world—Interview with a King in America—Description of the new country—Intercourse between Greenland and America—Captured and eaten by Cannibals—A sole survivor—How he served his captors—The Aztecs of Mexico—Final rescue—Attacked by savage Irelanders—Zichmni makes a settlement in the New World—Speculations as to the strange land that he visited—Spirit of discovery excited by Columbus' first voyage . . . . . 59-66

## CHAPTER IV.

**Early Navigators and Examples of their monster Vessel.**—A view from the plateau of the nineteenth century—Passage of the Atlantic before the time of Columbus—Noah's Ark compared with modern vessels—Egypt a country of marvels—A great naval battle 1250 B. C.—The monstrous ship built by Ptolemy IV, which was propelled by 4000 rowers—The magnificent and colossal Thalamegus—The giant fleet which Hiero sent against Carthage—An ancient ship that exceeded in size and splendor any modern vessel . . . . . 67-69

CHAPTER V.

**Superstitions which long disputed the progress of discovery.**—The chains that shackle mankind—The growth of superstition at the door of knowledge—Tales of goblins damned—The hand of Satan on the sea—Beliefs of the middle ages—The awe of boundless perspective - Demons contending in the sky—Dangers of an angry ocean—Imagination of the sailor—Unnatural forms of the deep—Portents of safety and disaster—The old time sailor—Odds and ends of strange fancies—Curious beliefs and practices—Good luck and the evil eye—Singular vagaries and conceits—The shock of a sneeze that was always fatal—Lucky and unlucky days, names, and events—Forebodings, and fortune amulets—Witches and storm-breeders—Mermaids, sirens and seals—The mermaid wife who forsook her human husband—Horses and oxen of the sea—Monstrous serpents and other frightful forms . . . . . 70-79

CHAPTER VI.

**Story of the doomed Bishop.**—Condemned to pass thousands of years in the form of a fish—The contrary Bishop of Malta whom Paul sentenced to do penance in the sea—Apparitions and Phantoms—A ghost appears to Captain Rogers—Saved by a warning—A sister's spirit gives forewarning of a brother's death—The spectre of a murdered fiddler—Ghost of a deserted sweetheart—The ghost of Capt. Kidd—The screaming woman of Marblehead—Stories about spectral crews—A ghostly company that come up out of the sea once every century—Wandering islands—The Phantom Ship—The Flying Dutchman—The crimes for which he suffers—In pursuit of the spectral ship—Ghostly ships of extraordinary proportions—A Monk who visited islands of the damned and the blessed—The story that suggested Dante's Inferno—Origin of the ghostly ship—Real spectres of the sea—Why the spectre ship was commanded by a Dutchman—Dying superstition . . . . . 81-89

CHAPTER VII.

**Marco Polo's visit to the Great Khan of Tartary.**—The most interesting land journey ever made—Marco's travels prompted Columbus' first voyage—John Cabot in Mecca—A brief biography of the Polos—Circumstances under which the elder Polos went to Cathay—They are sent back to Venice for Christian instructors—The little boy Marco returns to Cathay with his father and uncle—The wealth of Ormus—Crossing the great Gobi desert—The Polos attached to the Royal Court—Marco is educated for the Khan's service—Appointed governor of Yunnan when only twenty—Denial of request for permission to return to Venice—Description of Marco's travels—Tale of a devout shoemaker—How faith removed a mountain—The sight of a pretty girl's leg causes the loss of an eye—A Paradise filled with Peris—Intoxicated with sensual delights—The keeper of Paradise brought to judgment—Illusions of the desert—Whispering fiends—Strange funeral customs—A surprisingly degrading practice—Travellers permitted to take the place of husbands—Efforts of the Khan to suppress the evil—The people wedded to their folly—Indestructible cloth of Salamander skin—Story of a wonderful handkerchief—In the country of Prester John—Defection from Umcan—Founding a new nation with Genghis Khan as ruler . . . . . 90-101

CHAPTER VIII.

**The Great Khan wins a wife by battle.**—Ghenghis demands the daughter of Umcan for a wife—Refusal leads to war—Ceremony performed by the astrologers to forecast the result—Defeat and death of Umcan—Imposing funeral ceremonies at the burial of a King—A terrible slaughter—Musk animals of Tartary—How the musk is obtained—The magnificent marble palace at Ciandu—A herd of 10,000 white horses and as many mares—Mare's milk used only by royalty—Marvellous power of the astrologers—Notwithstanding their supernatural abilities they are cannibals—Kubla Khan suppresses an insurrection—Defeats a body of 500,000 cavalry—Orders the execution of the leader by tossing him in a carpet—The harem of the Great Khan—How his wives are obtained—Bewildering palace at Cambaluc—Description of its size and splendors—The walls of the city—Its battlements and streets—How the social evil of Cambaluc was utilized—The Great Khan at dinner—The Khan in his birthday robes—Supplications to the gods—The Great Khan as a hunter—His retinue of 10,000 persons—His extraordinary riches and how his store of gold was collected—The wisdom and generosity of the Emperor—The King's care of the poor—The first use of coal as fuel . . . . . 102-117

CHAPTER IX.

**In the land of Gold and ugly beasts.**—Polo confounds crocodiles with serpents—Descriptions which he gives of the creatures—How the natives capture them—The Tartar robbers—Means they employ to prevent



torture when captured—A country in which infants are attended by their fathers—A gold and silver monument set over the body of a King—Its dazzling beauty—The lion hunters of Cintiqui—Clothing wrought from the bark of trees . . . . . 118-122

## CHAPTER X.

**A Remarkably just Emperor.**—The famous district of Mangi—The rich and mighty Fanfur—How he surrendered himself to all manner of sensual pleasures—Care and education of orphan children—The Great Khan invades the territory of Mangi—Flight of Fanfur—His wife captured by the Khan—Attack on the rich city of Sainfu—Assaulted by engines devised by the Polos—A bombardment with stones which compelled the city's capitulation—A wondrously rich and populous country—The city of Quinsai with its marvellously beautiful Palace—The royal preserves and magnificent gardens—The man-eaters of Fugiu—Great vessels in the India trade—How they were built and propelled—The fight for Zipangu—Invasion of Japan—Houses covered with gold—A story of wealth that exceeded the caves of Genii—The capture of one city—Beheading of the captives—The eight enchanters—A wonderful stratagem—Execution of two Barons—Marco Polo's return voyage—Visit to the East Indies—The Unicorn of Borneo—Killing and eating the sick—A city offered for a ruby—A King without clothes—How debts are collected—Some extraordinary stories—How a storm resulted in the discovery and settlement of South America . . . . . 123-134

## CHAPTER XI.

**The false Hopes of Columbus.**—How the story of Marco Polo excited ambition to reach Zipangu and Cathay—The search voyage westward—Discoveries lead to conflicts—The Pope apportions the world—Discovery of the West Indies—John Cabot discovers North America—Voyages of the younger Cabots—Shipwreck and loss of the Cortereal Brothers—Pinzon's adventures—Discovery of the sailors—A new constellation of the Southern Cross—Landing on strange shores—A desperate fight with the natives—Discovery of the Amazon, and of New Spain—A search for the fountain of youth—Balboa discovers the Pacific—A journey through Central America—The long quest for gold—A fatal jealousy—Execution of Balboa—First fruits of European dominion in the Pacific—Establishing a route across the Isthmus—Proposition to cut a canal—Disasters overtake Loyasa's expedition—Renewal of disputes which the Pope could not reconcile—Discoveries in the Pacific—The voyage of Saavedra—Attacked by native slingers—Visit from a sorceress—Beautiful island women—Why a canal was not cut through the Isthmus—Further discoveries in the Pacific—Settlement on the Philippines—Intrigues with the natives—Friar Urdaneta's passage—Description of the habitations of the Philippine Islanders—An alliance established by exchanging and drinking blood—Zebu selected as a place for settlement—Opposed by the natives—Destruction of the capital and massacre of the islanders—An Island whence Solomon obtained his riches—Among the Cannibals—Worship of toads and other reptiles—Kidnapping a boy—The natives murder ten Spaniards—A bloody vengeance—Claimed to have visited the southern continent . . . . . 135-152

## CHAPTER XII.

**Voyages of Vasco da Gama.**—An ambition to circumnavigate Africa—King John's belief respecting the continent—Secret preparations for a voyage—His sudden death—The ceremonials of courts—Grief displayed—The people hail his successor—The skeletons of three large ships excite curiosity—For what purpose had the King intended them?—A hidden chest discovered—A search among its contents reveals King John's ambition—Legends of other voyages—Prester John and his magnificent court—A message from Cavillham who is a prisoner in Abyssinia—An astrologer casts the King's horoscope—Preparations for a dangerous voyage—Eighteen murderers sentenced to death accompany the expedition—Appointment of Vasco da Gama to the command—Departure of the squadron—First passage of the Cape—Buffeted by terrific storms—A mutiny quelled by strategy—Maladies and fears—First appearance of the scurvy—Capture of hammer-head sharks saves the expedition—Trouble with the sultan of Zanzibar—Reception of da Gama by an African King—Making good use of a soothsayer—The King is invited on board da Gama's ship—Swapping big stories—Some presents that gained the King's favors—The ghost-nut—Departure from Melinda . . . . . 153-162

## CHAPTER XIII.

**A Remarkable Prophecy.**—Legend of the conquerors—The vision of Calecut—At anchor before the city waiting for a messenger—Curiosity of the King of Calecut is excited—A great story-teller—Traffic with the people—Commerce of the Moors in India—Offerings of presents to his majesty—Exchanging

marks of friendship—Reception by the King—His appearance and the jewels that adorned his person—Dangerous jealousy of the Moorish merchants—In the palace of the King—Da Gama is made a prisoner—His arrest results to his advantage—Surprising sights in the far east—An exciting race after native swimmers—Torture of prisoners—Powder pots used by da Gama—A massacre of the natives—A bloody episode—Return of the expedition—Another expedition, of thirteen sail, proceeds to India—It results in the discovery of Brazil—Destruction of enterprises founded in the east . . . . . 163-173

CHAPTER XIV.

**Da Gama commands another expedition.**—A fleet despatched to avenge the massacre of the Portuguese—A motley crowd of sailors—The bloodthirstiness of da Gama—Punishment alike of friend and foe—Devotion of Mohammedans—The pilgrimage to Mecca—The ship Khadija laden with pilgrims returning to India—Da Gama gives pursuit—Mirth and gladness suddenly turned to sadness—Piracy and murder—Da Gama robs the pilgrims—The Mohammedans fight for their lives—A desperate battle—Horrible butcheries—Da Gama encloses his helpless prisoners of men, women and children in the ship and sets fire to it—A scene unparalleled in history—Miserable end of the barbarous voyagers—The red trail of the Portuguese butchers—Da Gama sent again, as viceroy of India—He dies of poison—Demon and Portuguese synonymous terms in India—Da Gama's ghost, pursued by the spectres of his victims . . . . . 174-184

CHAPTER XV.

**The Discovery and Conquest of Mexico.**—Effects of da Gama's voyages—The Island of St. Domingo—Ambitions of its Governor—The subjugation of Cuba by Velasquez—The escapades of Cortez—He joins the expedition against Cuba—Religion and effeminacy of the Cubans—The burning of an heroic chief—Settlements and cities founded in Cuba—Cortez the hero of a love adventure—Expeditions to Yucatan—Cortez appointed to the command of an expedition against Mexico—How he recruited his force—In the idol temples of Yucatan—A battle with the natives—Conversions to Catholicism—A terrible slaughter of Indians—Indian maidens distributed among the Spaniards . . . . . 185-193

CHAPTER XVI.

**Emissaries of Montezuma visit Cortez.**—The landing at Ulua harbor—Founding of Vera Cruz—An interview between the Indian governor and Cortez—Stories of incredible wealth—Presentation of exquisite and valuable gifts—Cortez refused permission to visit the Mexican capital—Cortez inflamed with passion—A meeting in camp—A self-constituted council set up—An alliance with the Totonacs—Scenes in the chief city of the Totonacs—The horrible custom of offering human sacrifices—How the victims were obtained—The great pyramid upon which sacrifices were made—Ceremonies connected with the bloody rites—An act of inconceivable perfidy—Twenty girls and as many boys demanded for sacrifice—Indian maidens become wives to the Spaniards—Destruction of the idols of the Totonacs—An altar to Christianity erected on the pyramid of sacrifice—Horrible punishment of the mutineers—On the march to Mexico . . . . . 194-202

CHAPTER XVII.

**A Picturesqueness of Landscape Truly Marvellous.**—The great beauty and fertility of the country—A passage of the Cordilleras—More altars for human sacrifices—Architectural wonders of the City of Nanlinco—A meeting with the Tlascalans—Their Independence maintained by constant war with Montezuma—Wonderful walls about their capital city—A bloody battle with the Tlascalans—Six thousand dead upon the field—Another terrible battle—Four hundred men against more than one hundred thousand—Gorgeous decorations of the native soldiers—Astounding bravery displayed—A dearly bought victory—A third desperate battle—Cortez appeals to the religious fervor of his soldiers—An overture for peace—Cortez orders the hands of the ambassadors cut off—His triumphal entrance into the Tlascalan capital—An alliance with the Tlascalans . . . . . 203-208

CHAPTER XVIII.

**Preparations for the Invasion of Mexico.**—The full fighting strength of the Tlascalans at Cortez's disposal—Cortez sends a threatening communication to Montezuma—His crusade against idol worship—Obsequious messages from Montezuma—The march to Cholula—A magnificent reception—Treachery of the Cholulans discovered—It is seized by Cortez as a pretext for massacring six thousand of the inhabitants and burning the city—A horrible scene of riot and carnage—Destruction of the temples and institution of Christian worship—Description of the great temple of Cholula—The depressing fears of Montezuma—A journey through flowery vales and luxuriant landscape—First sight of the



Mexican capital—A wonderfully inviting view—Wealth and splendor of the Mexicans—Montezuma anticipates his fate—His offer to become a vassal to Charles V—Cities of the great Mexican Valley—A scene of bewildering splendor—How Cortez was received by Montezuma—The Emperor's generous hospitality—The entrance into Mexico—Interview between Cortez and Montezuma . . . . . 209-216

## CHAPTER XIX.

**Cortez's Fears are Excited by the Importunities of the Tlascalans.**—Description of the great pyramid and sacrificial altars of Mexico—The peril of Cortez' situation—Montezuma seized as a hostage—Burning of two chiefs in the market place of Mexico—A raid on the magazine of the capital—Building of Brigantines on the lake—A demonstration towards destroying the sacrificial altars—A force sent against Cortez by the Spanish sovereign—A forced march of brave fellows—Cortez falls upon the Spanish force in the midst of a storm—He compels Narvaez to acknowledge submission—Capture of several vessels and military supplies—Reorganizes, recruits his army and returns to Mexico—A slaughter of Mexicans while at their devotions—A furious attack upon the Spaniards—The Mexicans inspired to extraordinary acts of valor—The havoc and peril that induced Cortez to appeal to Montezuma—Fatal wounding of Montezuma by his own men—His resolve to end his bitterness in death—Hand to hand fight on the tower—Heroism of Cortez—Overtures for cessation of hostilities refused—Retreating through a hail storm of weapons—Towers built to provide protection for the retreating Spaniards—A crash at the breach—Horrors of the situation multiply—A night of terrible agony—A ghastly sight at which even Cortez wept—The retreat back to Tlascala—A desperate fight in the mountain passes—Capture of the sacred banner—Cortez recovers from terrible wounds . . . . . 217-227

## CHAPTER XX.

**Cortez Plucks the Flower Glory out of the bud of defeat.**—Recruiting another expedition against Mexico—Capturing vessels and enlisting their crews—A vast army and supply of military stores secured—A plague of small-pox—Death of the emperor—Guatemozin becomes monarch of Mexico—His energy in putting his capital in a state of defence—Cortez builds a fleet of Brigantines—A battle upon the lake—A wail of anguish—Desperate fight on the causeways—The Spaniards fall into a fatal trap—A terrible slaughter at the breach—Awful sacrifice of Spanish prisoners—A spectacle that freezes the blood with horror—Starvation compels a resort to cannibalism—A prophecy of calamity—Terrible battle in the streets of the capital—The city is set on fire—Capture of the emperor—Horrors which followed the siege—75,000 dead bodies in the streets—The torture of Guatemozin and the prince of Tacuba—Mexican treasure sunk in the lake—The Mexicans are reduced to slavery—Work of rebuilding the capital—Magnificence of Cortez's palace—A rebellion in Paluco—Conversion of the people—Suspicious death of Cortez's wife—The white wings of peace—Cortez sets about new conquests—Fatal rebellion of Olid—Cortez leads a land march of 1500 miles—Incredible sufferings—Execution of Guatemozin—Fresh troubles weigh upon Cortez—He goes to Spain to answer charges—His marriage to a noble lady—Return to Mexico with additional honors—He wastes his fortunes in fruitless expeditions—Divested of all authority—Proceeds to Spain with a petition to his sovereign—Disappointments destroy all his hopes—Neglected and denied justice he attempts to return to Mexico—The last hours of Cortez—Reaction of public sentiment after his death—Frequent disturbance of his remains . . . . . 228-241

## CHAPTER XXI.

**Magellan's voyage to the South Sea.**—A glorious day in Seville—A procession of notables—Appearance of the commanders—A sight of bewildering splendor—The departure from Seville—A voyage to the great unknown—Terrifying sights in the sky—The excitable historian—A marvellous water-bearing tree—Man-eaters of the deep—Mother Carey's chickens—Giants of Brazil—Some wonderful stories—Seeking a passage to the Pacific—A useless trip up the La Plata—Origin of Cannibalism among the Patagonians—Facial disfigurements—Imitateness of the people—Wonders increase—Strange animals of impossible creation—A fight with Patagonians and burning of their village—How the natives cure the stomach-ache . . . . . 242-251

## CHAPTER XXII.

**A mutiny among the crews.**—A plot to abandon Magellan—Mendoza's impertinent threat—Assassination of Mendoza—A perilous task—Execution of the conspirators—Cartagena and a priest put on shore—Wreck of the Santiago—Discovery of Magellan Strait—Hurrah! Afloat on the Great South Sea—Loss of the San Antonio—Away, across the Pacific—A long voyage and provisions scarce—Starvation at last stalks the decks—A barren island discovered—Land ahead!—The starving men at last reach shore and the expedition is saved—Among the South Sea Islanders—Hospitality is paid by treachery—

A fight with the Islanders—Departure from the Ladrones—Arrival at the Philippines—Kindly received by the King and Queen—Planting the standard of Spain—The King is converted and baptized—A great day for Christianity—Levying tribute upon the Island of Matan—The natives resist and a battle follows—Horrible but heroic death of Magellan—Treachery of the Islanders—Massacre of Spaniards—Serrano cruelly abandoned to a terrible fate—Stories of inconceivable wealth—Fear and famine do dreadful execution—Abandonment of the Trinidad—Pursuit of a famine-stricken ship—The survivors are welcomed back to Spain . . . . . 252-266

## CHAPTER XXIII.

## HISTORY OF THE BUCCANEERS.

**A black chapter in history.**—Plunder and torture of Indians—Applying live coals to the feet of a Mexican King—Origin of slavery on the Caribbean islands—Kidnapping natives—Cattle raising in Hispaniola—Boucan, or jerked beef—Origin of the term "Buccancer"—Whence was derived the word "filibuster"—Sailors turned soldiers—Free rovers on desperate undertakings—England and France give license to prey on Spanish commerce—A defeat of the English—Capture of colonists—They are freed and re-establish themselves—Formation of a communistic settlement—Occupation by the English and French of many islands—A fort built at Tortuga—Capture of the place by Spaniards and massacre of the people—A few survivors turn freebooters—English and French sailors and Colonists become pirates against Spanish ships—Rapid increase in their numbers—All the world's cut-throats find employment on the sea—Desperate and valorous, the Buccaneers are always ready for a fight . . . . . 267-274

## CHAPTER XXIV.

**Fortification of the Robbers' nest.**—Tortuga the great stronghold—How the island lent itself to the plan of defence—Desperate prowlers of the deep—Capture of the Spanish treasure ships—Incredible amount of spoils taken—Mercilessness of the Buccaneers—Execution of their captives—Cutting off heads for pastime—A chronicle of demoniac acts—Reckless bravery of the Buccaneers—Cromwell's defeat of Charles I.—The effect on the naval war with Spain—English are driven from their designs on Hayti—Poisoned thorns in the line of march—An immense fleet—A conquest without spoils—Conquest of Jamaica—Peter the great—A merciless character—Capture of a Spanish galleon—Scuttling his own ship—Peter robs his own men and squanders his fortune in France . . . . . 275-282

## CHAPTER XXV.

**Bartholomew the Exterminator.**—His desperate fight with an armed galleon—His braggadocio leads to his arrest—Condemned to death—A hair-breadth escape—Striking down his guard he leaps into the sea—Four days hunted with bloodhounds—Escaped from his pursuers, other dangers are encountered—Making a club by aid of a fire—A fight with a jaguar—Bartholomew finds safety at last—Rejoins his followers and captures the vessel from which he had escaped—A massacre of the crew—Other cruel and desperate pirates—Cutting a Spaniard in two with one stroke of a cutlass—Severing ears from the heads, and toes from the feet of victims—Cross-eyed John—The price of blood . . . . . 283-289

## CHAPTER XXVI.

**The Buccaneers seek to acquire landed possessions.**—The typical Buccaneer—Mansvelt chosen commander of the cut-throat band—Ambitions of Mansvelt the bold—Costa Rica adopted as a base for operations—Objection to Buccaneer government—Henry Morgan the sea bandit—His first service, when a boy, as servant to the Buccaneer commander—A man of destiny—His bravery unequalled—Active preparations for war—Morgan becomes a captain and turns his attention towards Cuba—Designs upon Puerto del Principe—Landing of the pirates—The Spanish cavalry attack the bandits—A terrible battle and the cavalry is repulsed—The gates of Principe blown down by gunpowder, but the fight continues in the streets—Capture of the city, and pillage of the people—Torturing prisoners to force exposure of their hidden treasures—A riot of outrage—Abandonment of the sacked city and retreat back to Tortuga—Dividing the spoils . . . . . 290-296

## CHAPTER XXVII.

**Attack on Puerto Bello.**—Extraordinary wealth of the place—A startling strategy—A thrilling episode—Nuns and monks employed as advance skirmishers—A slaughter of the priests—An exchange of courtesies—Destructive explosion of a man-of-war—An act of extraordinary bravery—Defeat of the Buccaneers by the Spaniards—A masterly piece of strategy—A burning vessel sent down through the



files of the Spanish fleet—Escape of the Freebooters—A furious bombardment—An expedition against Panama—Forcing a way through the tropical growth of Central America—Storming a fortress—An act of marvellous heroism—Capture of the Spanish fortress . . . . . 297-306

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

**Rewards fixed for services and for injuries.**—An expedition up Chagres River—1200 men exposed to the dangers of tropical floods and starvation—Perils encountered from alligators—A journey of extraordinary hardships—The famine—Devouring the dried skins of beeves—A burning corncrib—Disappointment following the capture of an Indian village—A terrible storm—In sight of Panama—A foot race for the field—A bloody spectacle—The battle of Panama—A thousand savage bulls—A desperate situation—A terrible clash between the bulls and the cavalry—A gallant charge supported by sharpshooters—The capture of Panama—A riot of murder and rapine—Inhuman cruelties to prisoners—Escape of a large treasure ship—Priests, nuns, women and children held for ransom—Morgan falls in love with a fair captive—The Spanish lady rejects all his offers—His brutal efforts to enforce compliance—The burning of Panama—Ransom of the Spanish lady by her husband—Execution of the priests who attempt an appropriation of the ransom money—Treachery of the commander—Morgan gathers up all the treasures and abandons his compatriots . . . . . 307-317

## CHAPTER XXIX.

**Decline of Buccaneersing.**—Effects of the wars of the Grand Alliance—The ex-bandit becomes Judge Morgan—He punishes his former compatriots with merciless severity—How he rebuked his partner in crime—Savage destruction of the Buccaneers—Bandits of the ocean wave—Last appearance of the Buccaneers—The Cartagena expedition—Agreement for dividing the plunder—A serious row precipitated by a drunken man—The attack on Cartagena—Entrance to the city—Defeat of the Spaniards and terms of peace purchased at the cost of half their possessions . . . . . 318-324

## CHAPTER XXX.

**The plunder of Cartagena.**—In violation of their agreement the Buccaneers proceed to plunder the city—The manner in which they despoiled the Spaniards—A system adopted for the collection of the booty—A quarrel over the spoils—A fine row between two official rogues—The citizens hire filibusters to guard their homes—The English outwitted by the French—The French return and plunder the city for a second time—The people submitted to all manner of torture to extract money—The filibusters cheated out of their ill-gotten gains—Escape of de Pontis and capture of the robbers—A singular appeal to the law—The vast booty acquired at Cartagena is lost in litigation—Ambitions of a dying monarch—Dangers that threatened the Buccaneers—Last of the Buccaneers . . . . . 325-334

## CHAPTER XXXI.

**Voyage of Tasman.**—History of discovery among the East Indies—Preparation for a voyage of discovery in search of a southern continent—Tasman placed in charge of the expedition—Discovery of Van Dieman's land—The first view of New Zealand—Tasman's ship surrounded by hostile New Zealanders—Murdered by Indians—A desperate fight in the sea—Discovery of other islands north of New Zealand—A profitable intercourse with the natives—Hospitable but thievish—Meeting the old chief of Amsterdam—Description of the people—An Utopian Republic—A singular punishment for thieving—Characteristics of the natives of Utopia—Among the New Guineans—Their appearance and customs—A fight with the natives—The timidity of Tasman prevents him from making important investigations—Results of his expedition . . . . . 335-344

## CHAPTER XXXII.

**Expedition of Sir Francis Drake.**—The death of Magellan puts a stop to discoveries in the South Sea—Disputes arising from the apportionment of lands made by the Pope—The intrepidity of Drake—Drake is recognized by the queen but is refused a commission—Preparations to send out an expedition against the Spanish—Secrecy maintained by Drake—Dangers in the South Seas—His departure on a pirating cruise—In trouble with Barbary Moors—Capture of a Spanish vessel—A strange sight witnessed on the shores of Brazil—The natives recite incantations and make an offering of sacrifices—A terrible thunder storm believed to be the result of diabolical arts of the natives—Footprints of giant stature traced on the ground—In contact with the Indians—Description of the natives—A battle with the Patagonians—Death of two members of the expedition—A charge of mutiny preferred—Trial and execution of Capt. Doughty—The extraordinary coolness with which he submits to the executioner's axe—

Incidents in the passage of Magellan Strait—A slaughter of penguins provides provisions for the crew—Meeting with a pigmy race of Indians—Visit to a Fuegian village—Driven out to sea and loss of the *Marigold*—A discouraged crew attempt to mutiny and return home—A party sent on shore attacked by Indians—A massacre and horrible sufferings of two survivors—One dies from thirst, the other picked up and returned to England . . . . . 345-357

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

**An attack in which Drake is wounded.**—Proceeding up the coast of Chili—Capture of an Indian fisherman—Through his efforts provisions are obtained from the natives—Capture of a Spanish galleon with an enormous quantity of gold, jewels and other valuables—Surprised by a body of 300 Spaniards—The capture of a wonderfully rich treasure—Peru thought to be literally filled with gold—An exciting chase—Capture of another rich galleon—Valuables to the amount of \$720 000 obtained—Drake conceives a new ambition—He decides to attempt a north-west passage—Capture of other Spanish vessels on his way—Among the natives of California—The discovery of tobacco—A camp on shore—Fear of the natives induces Drake to erect a fort—Orgies of idol and demon worship—Women tear their flesh and dash themselves to the ground—A bloody and terrible spectacle—Drake receives the Indian King—A remarkable procession of natives—Singular ceremonies and kingly investiture—Drake is crowned King of California—Descriptions of the Indians and their villages . . . . . 358-366

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

**A voyage to the East Indies.**—Abandoning his purpose to find a north-west passage, Drake sails westward to the Moluccas—Drake's ship is attacked by Islanders—Description of the savage Islanders—Reception to the King of Ternate—Description of the royal barge—Punctilious etiquette of the King's court—The King's friends seek to induce Drake to visit him—Prevented by fears of his personal safety—Description of the King—Animal life on Crab island—An accident to the ship—A pleasant visit to the island Booton—Among the people of Java—Description of the natives and their customs—The return trip from Java to England . . . . . 367-373

## CHAPTER XXXV.

**Honored as a hero yet condemned as a corsair.**—The great reception tendered to Drake on his return—Serious questions raised by Spanish claimants—Banquet to Drake attended by the queen—Drake is knighted by Elizabeth—A love affair between Drake and his queen—Drake placed in command of an expedition against St. Domingo—A vigorous bombardment of the city is followed by its capitulation and destruction—Cartagena becomes the next object of attack—Burning of St. Helena and St. Augustine—Prize money acquired by Drake divided among his men—Destruction of the Spanish Armada—Death of Sir John Hawkins—A cannon ball strikes a chair from under Drake—Death of Drake and an estimate of his services rendered to England . . . . . 374-378

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

**Cavendish's voyages around the world.**—Glory of the Elizabethan Age—The spirit of discovery animates England—Heroism of Cavendish—Equipment of an expedition to the South Sea—Cavendish is appointed to the command—Capture and plunder of an African village—Drake on the coast of Patagonia—Discovery of the skeletons of giants—Incredible sufferings of a Spanish colony—Capture of four Spanish vessels—Torture of a Spanish messenger—A Spanish queen on the island of Puna—Another battle with the Spaniards—Cavendish destroys the shipping along the coast of South America—A hot fight between Cavendish and the Spaniards—Capture of the galleon and its rich treasure—Singular disappearance of the ship *Content*—Cavendish, reduced to a single vessel, starts for the Ladrone Islands—Supplied with provisions by the natives—An execution growing out of an effort to supplant the Spanish—Efforts to keep secret from the Spaniards his landing at the Ladrone Islands—An interview with the devil—King of a hundred wives—Self-sacrifice of wives at the King's death—Description of some curious customs—Return of Cavendish—Enormous wealth amassed by the expedition . . . . . 379-392

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

**Cavendish's second voyage.**—Excitement created in England by the treasures that he accumulated—The misfortunes of Cavendish begin directly after his departure—Cavendish's sad story—Mutiny and treachery among his crew—Astounding stories told by a voyager—Five years among the cannibals—Concerning the base treachery of Davis—Hardships of Davis after separating from Cavendish—Saved from starvation by the killing of a large number of birds—The dog-faced men of Patagonia—A plague of worms—Cavendish's exhortation of Davis—24 of his men are killed—Cavendish is defeated by the



Portuguese—A mutiny among the crew—He attempts the execution of one of his men with his own hands—Landing upon an island, he commences building a new vessel—Attacked by savages and many of his men killed—Cavendish falls into a condition of complete discouragement—Letter written by the dying admiral—The character of Cavendish . . . . . 393-404

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

**Voyage of Mons. de Bougainville.**—A short history of the life of this great voyager—His efforts to colonize the Falkland Islands—Afterwards is commanded to transfer them to the Spanish—A thrilling adventure at the crossing of the St. Lucia River—Trouble with a Spanish viceroy—His vessels are damaged by a storm, but he finds safety on the Patagonian coast—His reception by the Patagonians—Fuegian conjurers minister to a fatally injured boy—Discoveries in the South Seas—A pleasant intercourse with islanders—Enthusiastic reception by the Otaheitans—View of a fruit-bearing coast—Female beauty unadorned—Some ravishing views presented—A wild disorder, incident upon the visit of so many beautiful women—Bougainville is entertained by an aged chief—At the chief's invitation the French pitch their tents upon the shore—After a long and delightful stay a tragedy ends the visit . . . . . 405-414

CHAPTER XXXIX.

**An excursion among the islands of the South Sea.**—An affectionate parting from the Otaheitans—One of the natives accompanies Bougainville on his voyage—Among the Fijians—Appearance of the people who visited him—Discovery of the Navigator Group—A visit to the other islands of the Archipelago—The crew is attacked with scurvy—Bougainville's description of the islanders—A woman disguised as a man found among the crew—An extraordinary story told by the female hero—A starving crew—Attacked by cannibals—Driven from island to island and everywhere refused provisions—A misunderstanding with the natives—Hostile natives frightened by the firing of a rocket—Snakes and crocodiles—The return to France—Bougainville in the war for American independence . . . . . 415-422

CHAPTER XL.

**A Brief Biography of Captain Cook.**—His early disadvantages—Apprenticed to a haberdasher—Engagement as a cabin boy—Rapid promotion, and part taken in the war with Canada—Cook's account of an eclipse of the sun—Placed in command of a scientific expedition to Otaheite—In search of an Antarctic continent—In quest of a north-west passage—His tragic death at the hands of Sandwich Islanders . 423-427

CHAPTER XLI.

**Cook's Start for the South Sea.**—Splendid equipment of the expedition—Among the Brazilians—Lost on the mountains of Terre del Fuego—Habits of the Fuegians—An extraordinary cuttle-fish—Reception at Otaheite—Killing of a native—Customs of the natives in disposing of dead bodies—Theft of scientific instruments—An entertainment provided by the natives—Successful observation of the transit of Venus—A band of native minstrels—A gruesome memorial—The sailors fall in love with Otaheitan girls—Description of the islanders—Concerning their domestic customs . . . . . 428-435

CHAPTER XLII.

**The Female Dancers of Bolabola.**—A unique and pleasurable entertainment—Costumes of the dancers—First conflict with New Zealanders—Killing of a chief—Strange beliefs of the natives—Another tragic incident—A bloody spectacle—Self-mutilation as an act of mourning—An attack by the natives—Cannibalism—Departure from New Zealand—Among the Australians—Australian Boomerang throwers—Game found in Australia—Timidity of the natives—An accident to the ship—Curious customs—Australian lance throwers—A surprising thing seen on the New Guinea coast—An inhospitable reception—Arrival at Java—Sickness and death at Batavia—Running Amuck—Extraordinary superstitions—Return to England . . . . . 436-446

CHAPTER XLIII.

**The Object of Cook's Second Voyage.**—Belief in the existence of a southern continent—Sailing of the fleet—In a region of intense cold—Angling for albatrosses—A separation of the ships—Examination of Van Dieman's Land—How the natives live—Evidences of cannibalism—Six gigantic waterspouts—The billy-goat attacks a native boy—A ruined shirt—Another reception at Otaheite—A drama enacted by natives—A grand feast—Sacrifice of human beings—Feast of the Restoration—How the sacrifices are obtained . . . . . 447-454

## CHAPTER XLIV.

**Separation of the Ships and a Chief Pickpocket.**—Again anchored off New Zealand—Cannibalism of the New Zealanders—A shocking sight—Remarks on cannibalism—Abandonment of the search for a southern continent—Discovery of new lands—Arrival at Easter island—Wonderous stone statues carved by an extinct people—Descriptions of the statues on Easter island—Wonderful relics on Tinian island—The people of Easter island—Products of the island—Among the Marquesans—Return to Otaheite—The Otaheitan fleet—War among the natives—Other islands of the Pacific—A fight with savage islanders at Traitor's Head . . . . . 455-464

## CHAPTER XLV.

**Among the New Caledonians.**—A fleet of canoes visits Cook—Character of the natives—Houses and boats of the Caledonians—Anchorage at Christmas Sound—Visited by the Fuegians—Killing of seal and sea-birds—Report of Captain Furneaux on the massacre of his men—Nine men slaughtered and devoured by cannibals—A horrifying spectacle—Departure for England . . . . . 465-468

## CHAPTER XLVI.

**Captain Cook's Third Voyage.**—Determination that a southern continent does not exist—Expedition equipped to search for a north-west passage—An Otaheitan at the English Court—How he was received on his return to the islands—Shooting at a man to see how far a musket would do execution—Among the natives of Van Dieman's Land—Further particulars of the massacre of Furneaux's men—The story told by an eye-witness and participant—Savage fury of New Zealanders—Their conduct in battle—Cruelties to prisoners—A dance by beautifully formed women—Arrival at the Hapae group—A wonderful entertainment at Hapae—Female wrestlers and boxers—An extraordinary dance—A band of bamboo players—The female dancers punished for a false step . . . . . 469-480

## CHAPTER XLVII.

**Reception by King Poulaho.**—Preparation of Kava beer—A feast in which Cook refused to participate—An entertainment witnessed by 12,000 natives—Initiatory ceremonies of royalty—Burial alive of criminals—Intercourse with Fijians—War trumpets of the natives—Meeting between Omai and his friends—Otaheitan dead-house—Ceremony of offering a human sacrifice—Cook obtains permission to witness the rites—Description of the priestly service—Ghostly ceremonies—Consecration of the corpse—Procuring the sacrifice—The dead-house—Festivals at which numbers of humans are sacrificed—Differences in dispositions north and south of the equator . . . . . 481-492

## CHAPTER XLVIII.

**A Dance by the King's Four Sisters.**—A battle between the natives—Departure from Otaheite—Discovery of the Sandwich islands—Characteristics of the Sandwich Islanders—A visit to the people of Nootka Sound—A trade that was profitable to both—Surrounded by canoes—A visit to a Nootka village—Appearance of the interior of their dwellings—Inconceivable filth and degradation—Among the Esquimaux, and death of Mr. Anderson—Killing sea-horses—Stopped by the ice—Return to the Sandwich islands—Cook is made a god—Story of Oro—Visit to the Morai—Demeanor of the natives changed—Chief Terreeoboo visits Cook in state—Generous offerings . . . . . 493-504

## CHAPTER XLIX.

**First Conflict with the Sandwich Islanders.**—Thievery of the natives—In pursuit of the thieves—Circumstances preceding and leading to the killing of Capt. Cook—A fight in the water—Death of Cook—Repulse of the mariners—Forcing a surrender of portions of Cook's body—Slaughter of Natives—Desolation on the shore—Burial at sea of some of Cook's bones—Extraordinary veneration paid to Cook's remains—The monument to his memory—Departure of the expedition—Death of Captain Clerke—Among the Kamptschatdalers—Return of the expedition to England . . . . . 505-512

## CHAPTER L.

**Arctic Voyages.**—Discoveries in the north by ancient navigators—First Arctic voyages—Fate of the Greenland settlers—Columbus in the Polar regions—Spanish exploration in the north—Killingworth's extraordinary beard—Frobisher's strange discoveries—A fight between explorers—The loss of Sir Humphrey Gilbert—Disappointment of John Davis—Astounding sufferings of a wrecked crew in the Arctic—Natural phenomena in the north—A roll of honor—Voyages to the North Pole . . . . . 513-520



CHAPTER LI.

**Story of a Starving Crew.**—North-west Fox—Founding of the Hudson Bay Company—Everything frozen—Looking for a copper mine—Cook and Clerke—Effects of the Revolution—Other explorers in the north—Discoveries of Parry and Franklin—Last voyage of Franklin—Results of the Franklin loss—Captains who have reached the North Pole—Latitudes reached by famous Arctic explorers—The overland journey of Schwatka . . . . . 521-528

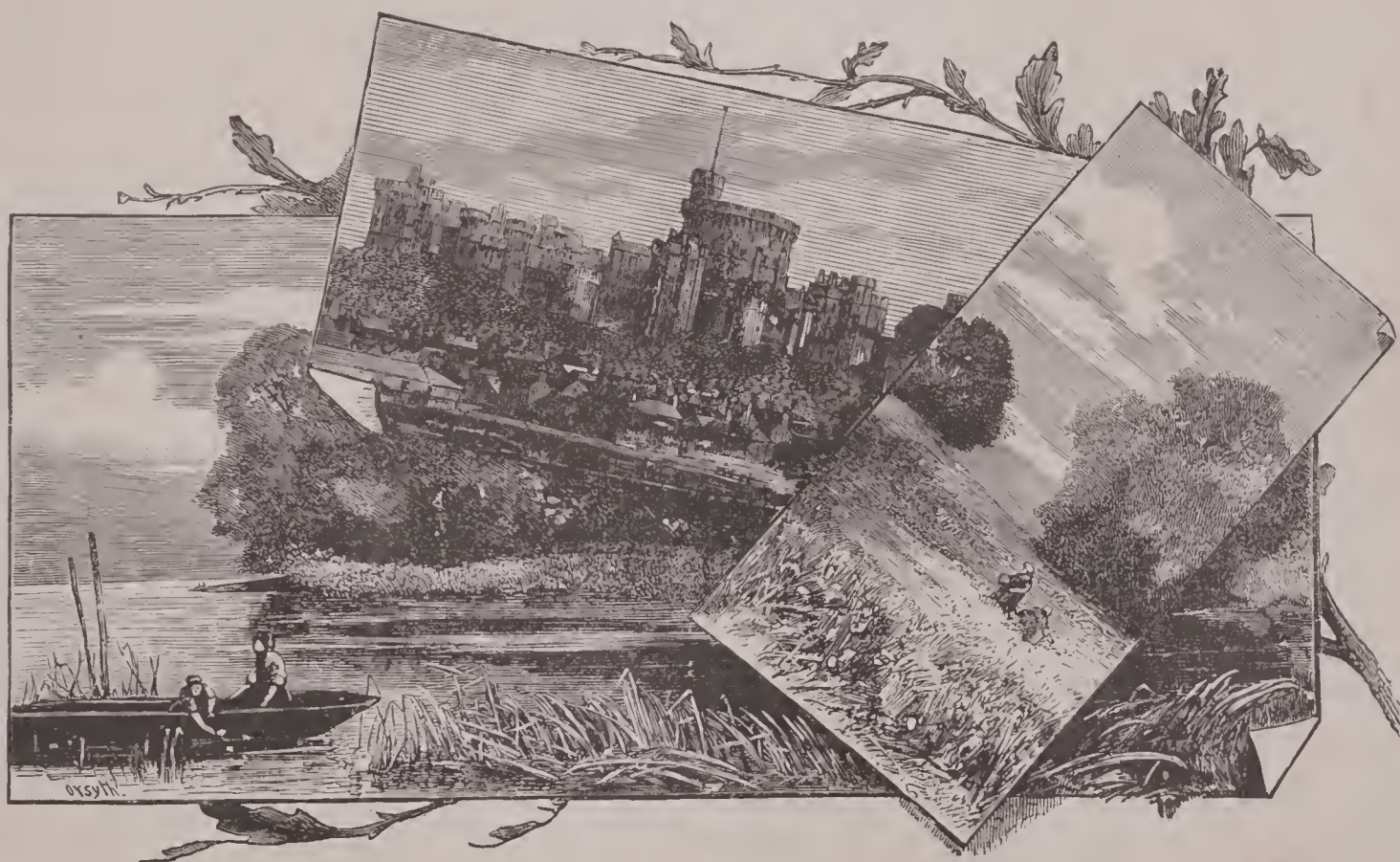
*Chapter LI. Byrd 1935*

CHAPTER LII.

**Voyages of Nordenskiöld.**—An attempt to make a north-east passage—A fleet of four vessels compose the expedition—Among the Samoyeds—An abundance of animal life—Bodies of men and animals in shallow graves—A dance with Samoyed girls—Into an unknown sea—Tropical birds in the Arctic region—Some strange facts—Remarkable customs of Siberians—Among the exiles—The new Siberian islands—Vast quantities of ivory—Discovery of the bodies of mammoths—Meeting the Chuckchies—A Chuckchie feast—Bargaining for specimens of native handicraft—The approach of winter—The Vega frozen in—Removal of ship stores . . . . . 529-537

CHAPTER LIII.

**Winter Amusements.**—Efforts to preserve the health of the men—Unpleasant familiarities of the natives—Fishing in cold weather—A Chuckchie potentate—Sending letters home—The centre of a strong odor—Scientific work of the expedition—The long dark winter—The January thaw—How the Chuckchies eat—A surprising scene—Daybreak after a winter's night of six months—The snow bugs—Breaking up of the ice—The return home—First successful effort to find a north-east passage . . . . . 538-544



# ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Ideal scene of Troglodytes, on the Red Sea Coast . . . . .	35	Wild Sheep of Tartary . . . . .	104
A Phœnician Ship . . . . .	36	Plan of Ciandu . . . . .	105
Hamilcar along the coast of Britain . . . . .	40	Astrologers on the palace roof . . . . .	106
Fabled Mermaids of the African coast . . . . .	42	Execution of Naïam . . . . .	107
Meeting of Carthaginians and Norsemen . . . . .	46	Feast of the Cannibal Priests . . . . .	108
Norse Navigators . . . . .	48	Avenue of Statues in Cambaluc . . . . .	109
Godhaven as it now appears . . . . .	49	Cambaluc as it appeared to Polo . . . . .	110
Map of Greenland . . . . .	50	Burning the bodies of Idolaters . . . . .	111
Landing of Erik . . . . .	52	Processional celebration of the Khan's birthday . . . . .	113
Tyrker found Garlanded with Grapes . . . . .	53	The Grand Khan starting on the hunt . . . . .	115
Killing of Thorwald . . . . .	54	City of Mein and Tomb of the Emperor . . . . .	120
Thorfinn's voyage to the American shores . . . . .	55	The Lion hunters of Cintiqui . . . . .	121
Killing of the first Priest sent to America . . . . .	56	Bombardment of Sainfu . . . . .	124
The Geysers of Iceland . . . . .	58	The Empress Fanfur and her Barge . . . . .	126
Zeno off the coast of Friesland . . . . .	60	Battle ships of the Cathayans . . . . .	127
Nicolo's fleet in quest of new lands . . . . .	61	Idolatry of the Japanese . . . . .	129
Saved on the shore of an unknown world . . . . .	61	Fleet of the Grand Khan . . . . .	130
Murder of the Fishermen . . . . .	62	Bornean Unicorn killing a hunter . . . . .	131
The Cannibal feast . . . . .	63	John Cabot's Flag-ship . . . . .	136
First meeting with the Irishmen . . . . .	64	Fleet of Gaspar Cortereal . . . . .	137
Zichmni landing on the shore of Labrador . . . . .	66	Pinzon attacked by Indians . . . . .	138
Trireme of India . . . . .	67	Valiant fight of a Spaniard . . . . .	139
Vessels of the ancient Egyptians . . . . .	68	Balboa laying claim to the Pacific . . . . .	142
Ancient Egyptian State Barge . . . . .	68	Beheading of Balboa . . . . .	143
Caravels of the fifteenth century . . . . .	69	Loyasa's vessel pursuing a trackless course . . . . .	144
Satan's hand upon the sea . . . . .	71	Saavedra's ship attacked by slingers . . . . .	146
Demons of the storm . . . . .	72	Villalobos landing on the Philippines . . . . .	147
A water-spout at sea . . . . .	74	Sack and burning of the capital of Zebu . . . . .	149
Neptune and the Siren . . . . .	76	Encounter with Cannibals . . . . .	150
The Mermaid quitting the home of her husband . . . . .	78	Spaniards surprised and murdered by Islanders . . . . .	152
The Sea-serpent . . . . .	79	The old palace in Lisbon . . . . .	154
The ghostly fiddler . . . . .	82	Da Gama explains his purpose to Emanuel . . . . .	156
The Phantom Ship . . . . .	84	First passage of the Cape . . . . .	159
St. Brandan on the island of Fiends and Phantoms . . . . .	87	Capturing Hammer-head Sharks . . . . .	161
The market place of Mecca . . . . .	91	A messenger from the King of Calcut calls on Da Gama . . . . .	164
Chinese War-ship of the time of Polo . . . . .	93	Da Gama before the King of Calcut . . . . .	168
Nicolo Polo before the Khan of Tartary . . . . .	94	Massacre of the captives . . . . .	172
The sensual Paradise of Aloadine . . . . .	97	Mohammedans attacking Da Gama . . . . .	177
The city of Canul . . . . .	99	Da Gama setting fire to the Pilgrim ship . . . . .	178
Ruins of Caracorum . . . . .	100	Destruction of the Khadija and all on board . . . . .	180
A Tartar bride . . . . .	103	Bombardment of Calcut . . . . .	182
		Spirits of Da Gama's victims pursuing his ghost . . . . .	183



	PAGE
Burning of the Cuban Cacique . . . . .	187
Celebrating Mass in the Idol Temple of Cozumel . . . . .	190
Map showing the route of Cortez . . . . .	191
Slaughter of the Tabascans . . . . .	193
Cortez receiving the embassy from Montezuma . . . . .	195
Offering of human sacrifices . . . . .	199
Destroying the idols of the Totonacs . . . . .	201
Slaughter of the Cholulans . . . . .	211
Cortez' first view of the Mexican Capital . . . . .	213
Plan and surroundings of the City of Mexico . . . . .	215
Meeting of Cortez and Montezuma . . . . .	216
The fall of Montezuma . . . . .	223
The fight at the breach . . . . .	225
Mexicans sacrificing Spanish prisoners to their gods . . . . .	232
Capture of Guatemozin . . . . .	234
Torture of Guatemozin and the Chief of Tacuba . . . . .	236
Ferdinand Magellan . . . . .	243
Paraslene seen at sea . . . . .	245
Perils of the deep . . . . .	247
Types of Patagonians . . . . .	249
The Patagonian shore . . . . .	250
Assassination of Mendoza . . . . .	253
Port St. Julian . . . . .	254
Magellan exploring the Strait that bears his name . . . . .	256
Starvation confronts the crew . . . . .	258
The island Queen presented with a Looking- glass . . . . .	260
Heroic death of Magellan . . . . .	263
Murder of Serrano . . . . .	265
Driving wild cattle in Hayti . . . . .	268
The capture of Tortuga . . . . .	271
Defence of the colonists . . . . .	272
Ruins of Tortuga . . . . .	276
Cutting the heads off his captives . . . . .	277
English prisoners in the hands of the Haytians . . . . .	279
Buccaneers capturing a Galleon . . . . .	287
A fight for life . . . . .	284
A battle with a Jaguar . . . . .	286
Raid of the Buccaneers . . . . .	288
Repulse of the Cavalry charge . . . . .	294
Torturing prisoners . . . . .	296
Heroic defence by the Governor . . . . .	298
Morgan ordering his prisoners to scale the walls of Puerto Bello . . . . .	299
Blowing up the ship . . . . .	301
Disastrous explosion of the masked vessel . . . . .	303
An act of extraordinary heroism . . . . .	305
Wild Bulls in line of battle . . . . .	312
Morgan threatening the unhappy woman . . . . .	314
A messenger offers ransom for the lady . . . . .	316
Morgan rebuking his partner in crime . . . . .	319
Home of the reformed Buccaneer . . . . .	333
New Zealanders first seen by Tasman . . . . .	336
Tasman pursued by the New Zealanders . . . . .	338
An Amsterdam Girl . . . . .	339

	PAGE
Abel Jansen Tasman . . . . .	340
A Rotterdam Islander . . . . .	341
The shores of New Guinea . . . . .	343
Queen Elizabeth . . . . .	346
Sir Francis Drake . . . . .	348
Scene on the La Plata River . . . . .	349
Patagonians challenging Drake . . . . .	351
Savage attack of the natives . . . . .	352
Terre Del Fuegians fishing . . . . .	354
Loss of the Marigold . . . . .	355
Drake's men killing Penguins . . . . .	356
Capture of a rich galleon . . . . .	361
Crowning of Drake by the King of California . . . . .	365
Canoes of the Pelew Islanders . . . . .	368
Royal barge of the King of Ternate . . . . .	369
The King of Ternate . . . . .	370
A woman of Booton . . . . .	372
Javanese Canoes . . . . .	373
Queen Elizabeth being conveyed to the Golden Hind . . . . .	375
Queen Elizabeth knighting Drake . . . . .	377
Discovery of remains of Giants at Port Desire . . . . .	381
Cavendish surprised by Spaniards . . . . .	382
Patagonians fishing . . . . .	384
Capturing the despatch vessel . . . . .	385
A hot fight between Cavendish and the Spaniard . . . . .	386
A lively trade with the natives . . . . .	388
Self execution of the Rajah's wives . . . . .	390
Knyvet among the Cannibals . . . . .	396
Saved from starvation by a million of birds . . . . .	397
Removing the sick and wounded . . . . .	401
A thrilling adventure on the St. Lucia . . . . .	406
Bougainville passing the Strait of Magellan . . . . .	407
Incantations to relieve an injured boy . . . . .	409
Enthusiastic reception of Bougainville by Ota- heitans . . . . .	411
Otaheite harbor, where Bougainville anchored . . . . .	412
Bougainville sighting the shores of Navigator Group . . . . .	416
Capture of a Catamaran . . . . .	420
Captain James Cook . . . . .	424
Sandwich Islanders supplying Cook with provi- sions . . . . .	426
Cook's visit to the Terre Del Fuegians . . . . .	429
An Octopus attacked by Sea Gulls . . . . .	430
Reception of Cook by the Otaheitans . . . . .	431
Boxing and Fencing matches between Otaheitan Athletes . . . . .	433
A female dancer of Bolabola . . . . .	437
An attack by the natives . . . . .	439
Australian Boomerang dancers . . . . .	441
Astounded by the sight of Kangaroos . . . . .	443
Ministering to the sick scientist . . . . .	444
Running amuck . . . . .	445
Angling for Albatrosses . . . . .	448
Scene on Van Dieman's land . . . . .	449
A native lad assaulted by a goat . . . . .	450

	PAGE		PAGE
Procession of flute-players . . . . .	451	Masked rowers of Sandwich Islands . . . . .	496
Feast of the Restoration . . . . .	453	Bark cloth weaving in New Zealand . . . . .	497
New Zealanders fishing . . . . .	456	Interior of a Nootka hut . . . . .	498
Cook's visit to Easter Island . . . . .	458	Burial of Surgeon Anderson . . . . .	500
Erect and prostrate stone idols . . . . .	459	Killing sea-horses among the icebergs . . . . .	501
The Giant's head . . . . .	460	Cook in the harbor of Karakakooa bay . . . . .	502
Foundations of the stone idols . . . . .	461	King Terreeoboo on his way to visit Cook . . . . .	503
Wondrous ruins on 'Tinian Island . . . . .	462	The killing of Captain Cook . . . . .	507
New Caledonian hut . . . . .	466	View of the place where Cook was killed . . . . .	509
Fight and massacre of Furneaux's men . . . . .	467	Monument to Cook on the Sandwich Islands . . . . .	511
Female dancers of Hapae . . . . .	474	Place of first settlement in Greenland . . . . .	514
The female boxers of Hapae . . . . .	475	John Davis in the straits which bear his name . . . . .	518
Dance of the flower girls . . . . .	477	Ice-fields of the Arctic . . . . .	524
The grand dance in honor of Cook . . . . .	482	Schwatka's overland journey . . . . .	527
Ceremony of princely initiation . . . . .	483	A dance with Siberian girls . . . . .	531
A human sacrifice in Otaheite . . . . .	486	Walrus hunters in the Arctic . . . . .	532
Fijians burying a prisoner alive . . . . .	492	Nordenskiöld visited by Chukchies . . . . .	535
Eimeo being fed by his wives . . . . .	494	The Vega free . . . . .	543
Sandwich Islanders surf-bathing . . . . .	495		



# HEROES

OF

## UNKNOWN SEAS AND SAVAGE LANDS.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### THE ROLLING STONE OF HISTORY.



F all the surprising revelations of history, the story which tells of the rise and fall, the creation and destruction, as it were, of commerce, institutions, cities, peoples, is most remarkable. As conclusive evidences are shown of great cities annihilated by volcanic throes, resistless waves and devastating war, leaving ruins of their splendor buried where only pick and shovel may reach; as nations that once flourished in power and magnificence have been swept out of existence by cataclysm, plague and vengeful invaders, leaving deserts of desolation in their place, so have inventions, ambitions, occupations, disappeared with scarcely a relic of their former existence. Not only are changes, violent, destructive, epochal, discerned in the works and institutions of man, but spasms of nature produce no less astounding results. Where are the great cities that once stood in unexampled splendor along the Nile, the Tigris, the Euphrates; where are the walled cities of ancient Canaan, the Jerusalem of 200,000 souls, the cities on Galilee's shore where our Lord preached and healed, which sent their 4000 ships to and fro upon its crystal waters; where are the ports of Tyre and Sidon of the Phœnicians that ruled the world, of Carthage that disputed with Rome, and the proud navies that bore their sails and shining oars on every sea? All have vanished so effectually that we can



scarcely think of an epitaph to place upon the grave-stones that mark their places of sepulture.

And if so many cities and nations have perished within the brief period that historic annals measure, how many changes must have taken place in the life of the world since the foot of man was planted by God's fiat in the Garden of Paradise? Is it unreasonable to believe that, as mankind is now distributed over all the earth, the present must be one of many like distributions? If moving glaciers from the north once swept over all Europe and North America, and destroyed all forms of life in those regions, is it not within reason to suppose that some great cataclysm, or possibly a moving field of ice from the south, may have driven animal life towards the tropics? And may we not also infer from the united evidences of lofty mountains, deep valleys, high table-lands, islands of the deep, active volcanoes and all the corrugations that now appear on the face of nature, that where land now is the ocean was once spread, and where deep seas now roll in perpetual unrest a verdant plain or forest-covered country once invited the energies of man?

#### RISE AND FALL OF NATIONS.

In short, we must believe that what we call discovery is but reclamation; that every new shore approached is only re-discovery; that every fresh land which the explorer beholds is only one from which an earlier foot has retreated. History, like nations, has its periods of existence; as peoples disappear so do records, and a new cycle in human affairs begins. In the years to come maybe the steamship will disappear from the sea, the engine will cease its throbs, all inventions of man may be lost; then will another era in the world's life begin: from the ocean will arise other continents; out of a savage state man will emerge again, and the evolution towards a high civilization will be renewed, just as has been done in the measureless bygone ages, and just as in the endless ages of the future will be done again.

As ruins of what were once great cities give indisputable evidence of their former existence, though history may not tell us how they were destroyed, we will now undertake to show that the new countries discovered by navigators in the past five centuries were formerly well known, though we cannot understand the cause that destroyed this knowledge and left them to be re-discovered.

#### CAVE-DWELLERS WHO BECAME MASTERS OF THE WORLD.

In the region of Arabia we find the earliest traces of man. On the Euphrates he is believed to have had his birth, and from Ararat Genesis tells us Noah stepped forth upon dry land after the flood had drowned all except his own family. It is, therefore, no strange thing that in this region, along the Red Sea, navigation should have had its beginning. We are told that in a very early period of antiquity, the age of which cannot be set down, there existed on the shores of the Red Sea a race of people who dwelt chiefly in caves among the hills of the sea coast and subsisted by fishing; whatever attempts they made at erecting habitations were confined to the rudest possible struc-



tures, such as the laying of a few branches together that would scarce give protection either from sun or rain. They were known in the earliest times as Horites and Children of Anak, both of which designations have reference to their living in holes and caves. The Grecian name of *Troglodytes*, with which we are so familiar, is but a translation of the same name. But they were also called fish-eaters, locust-eaters, and wood-eaters, which is a manifest indication that they were separated from all other tribes. Being thus isolated, and regarded



IDEAL SCENE OF TROGLODYTES, ON THE RED SEA COAST.

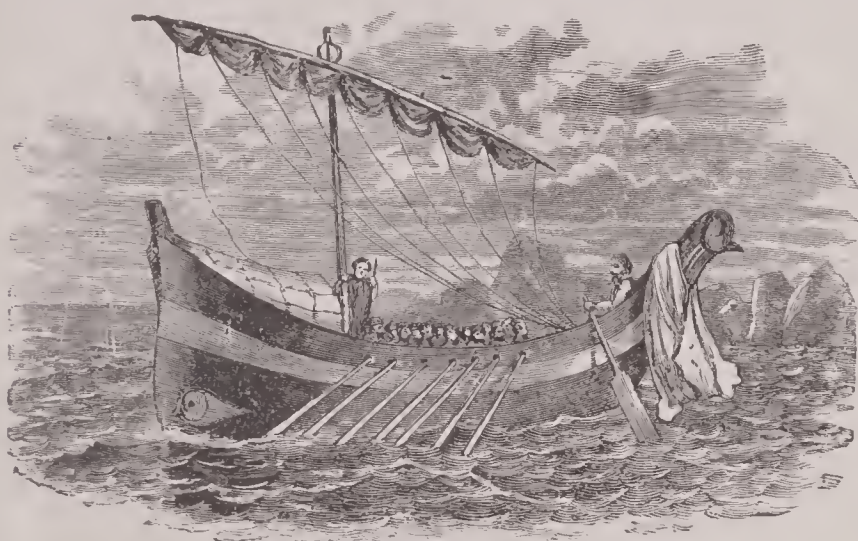
as robbers or savages, and dependent upon the sea for their livelihood, they became inventive in applications for taking fish and undertaking voyages. Their earliest boats were made of reeds or papyrus, or other light material, cemented together with pitch. References are made to these people by Job and other very early writers. For some reason, which is not recorded in history, they finally emigrated from the shores of the Red Sea and settled in the land of Canaan. The father of these ancient peoples is known as Canaan, from which the word Canaanite is derived. Finding the country exceedingly fertile, they began pas-



toral pursuits, that portion of the country extending from the Mediterranean to Lake Gennesaret being given over to that occupation. A much larger portion occupied the Mediterranean shores, and, beginning their pursuits of fishing, made larger boats than they had used on the Red Sea, and out of these evolved the ships with which they made voyages to adjacent lands. They soon became known to the Greeks, whose country they visited, and by these were given the name Phœnicians, a designation derived from the Greek word for palms, great numbers of which grow in the Holy Land.

#### BUILDING A STRONG NATION.

The Phœnicians were a nation distinguished for their spirit of freedom and independence, by which they were alike actuated in Canaan and on the shores of the Red Sea; and being surrounded by hostile peoples, in the country to which they had emigrated and prospered they built great walled cities and immense fortifications, in which they found a perfect protection. Their commerce extending, they soon carried commodities to Egypt and to Greece, and to other



A PHŒNICIAN SHIP.

nations occupying territory in the Levant. In the beginning of their navigation on the Mediterranean they made use of long ships, understanding the means of ballasting them so as to provide security in case of storms, and, becoming familiar with the other nations of the country, they were soon looked upon as the most advanced people in the old world. For about six hundred years after Noah, the navigation

of the Sidonians, which is but another name for the Phœnicians, extended to every port of the Mediterranean. Thus, we find early mention of Tarshish, and of ports in Spain, a country which they seem to have partially settled. Moses mentions them frequently at the time when he accompanied the Egyptian King Sesostris in his great expedition through Asia and Europe, or about 730 years after the deluge, as Forster says, though I have not been able to find any corroborative evidence that Moses was a part of any expedition sent out by Sesostris.

While the best proofs that we are able to recover from history give the Phœnicians the credit of being the earliest navigators, there are other peoples who lay claim to the honor, the Greeks, the Egyptians, the Indians, each asserting that they were the earliest navigators and offering more or less evidence in support of their pretensions. The people of India, or of China, set forth the claim that more than 2000 years before the time of Christ they had sailed along the entire coast of China, discovering the Islands of Japan, the East Indies, and

directly after, making a passage through the Pacific Ocean, landed at Peru; and that they also crossed Brazil and set out in new ships for the Antilles to which they maintain themselves to be the first discoverers. There are some old records in China which seem to support these claims, and in which we read descriptions of the peoples of the New World, as the Chinese had found them; but they are so mixed with legend, and tradition, and myths, that little dependence can be placed upon any of the statements contained in the record.

#### DISCOVERIES OF THE ANCIENTS.

Berosus says that in the year 143 after the flood, Tubal came by sea to Spain; but he neglects to give any particulars of the voyage, undoubtedly because there are no records from which to gain the information; but his statement certainly rests upon some tradition which he had heard. Diodorus Siculus makes the assertion that, shortly after this time, Queen Semiramis made an expedition into India, and in the mouth of the river Indus gave battle to king Spabrobates and destroyed a thousand of his ships. We have another statement from Berosus that in 650 years after the flood, there was a king in Spain named Hesperus, who in his time made a voyage upon the ocean and discovered Cape Verde and the Island of St. Thomas; and Gonsalvo Hernandes, a chronicler of antiquities, affirms that in his time the Islands of the West Indies were discovered, and called after this king's name Hesperides, in proof of which statement we have the report that these islands were discovered in a forty day's sail from Cape Verde, in which time the passage might be easily made by the aid of favorable winds. More or less confusion necessarily arises out of the fact that there have been astonishing changes of the sea and islands in the past thousand years.

The old geographers, as well as early navigators, located a large number of islands and gave to them names with which we are no longer familiar. But that a great many islands were discovered which have since disappeared there can be no doubt. The fact, therefore, that we have mention of such islands as those of Hesperides, De Principe, Antilles, Fortunate Islands, and hundreds of others, leads us into many difficulties; because some of these islands are now known to exist, while evidence of others is wanting. These may have subsided under the effects of great cataclysms, such as is believed to have destroyed the vast strip of land which is supposed to have at one time connected Africa and South America. Pliny observes that it is recorded in history (which however he neglects to name) that near the Straits of Gibraltar there was formerly an island called Aphrodisias, thickly inhabited and planted with many orchards and gardens, and showing other evidences of great prosperity and a high civilization. This island was known as Cadiz. But we have been unable to find any other mention made of it, and though it is said to have at one time joined with Spain, deep sea soundings now fail to show any such island or the probability of there having been one. The Islands of the Azores were also at one time said to join the mainland, and on which was a large town called Syntra. This has also



disappeared. Eratosthenes states that Spain and Barbara were at one time connected, and that the Islands of Sardinia and Corsica were joined by a considerable strip of land, as was also Sicily with Italy, and Negro Ponto with Greece; and accounts have been given of the finding of the hulls of ships and iron anchors upon the mountains of Switzerland, very far from land, though that the sea could have ever swept in and covered mountain peaks so lofty at a comparatively recent date is a matter impossible of belief.

The land of Malabar, which is now a part of India and thickly settled, was at one time under the sea, while Cape Cormoran and the Island of Zealand were connected and composed one large body of land. Malacca and Sumatra were also joined, as is shown by Ptolemy's frequent references thereto. So also did Sumatra and Java unite to form one very long island, while Borneo was connected with the mainland. These changes in the face of the land and sea within the period of history will necessarily confuse the reader when references are repeatedly made to the islands by the names by which they were originally designated.

#### THE COMMERCE OF TROY WITH INDIA.

Troy is believed to have been founded 800 years after the flood, the people of which are said to have brought from India, by way of the Red Sea, spices, drugs, and other merchandise, and to have exchanged with the Indians purples, linens, and other manufactured articles. A city called Arsinoe was at that time located where the modern Suez stands, and this place was a great port of entry for vessels passing out of the Mediterranean and Red Seas on the voyage to India. From this city also started caravans overland from northern Africa to cross Arabia; so that, though small mention is made of the place in history, these facts are sufficient to lend plausibility to the statement that it was a city of considerable commercial importance.

Sesostris, king of Egypt, 900 years after the flood and some time before the destruction of Troy, caused a canal to be cut between the Red Sea and an arm of the Nile entering the river where the city of Heroum then stood. The building of this canal was conclusive evidence that a very large number of ships sailed constantly to and from India and the ports of the Mediterranean.

By Strabo we also learn that King Menelaus, after the destruction of Troy, sailed out of the Straits of Gibraltar, coasted Guinea and Africa, and proceeded thence eastward to India, this being the first account we have of any circumnavigation of Africa. Neco, king of Egypt, sent an expedition to discover a passage through the Red Sea about the time that Menelaus dispatched an expedition by way of the west around Africa. The vessels of Neco passed out of the Mediterranean into the Red Sea, and sailing down the coast of Africa, continued until they had doubled the cape, passing up the westward coast, and again entered the Mediterranean at Gibraltar. Thus was Africa circumnavigated by two fleets, sailing in opposite directions, at nearly the same time.



**SOLOMON'S NAVY.**

Thirteen hundred years after the flood, as the Bible tells us, Solomon built a very large navy on the Red Sea at a haven called Ezion Geber, from which a voyage was made to the islands of Tharsis and Ophir. This fleet was absent three years on its voyage, and returning each vessel brought a rich cargo of gold, silver, and precious wood. Many historians maintain that this fleet sailed to Peru where the riches brought back by them were obtained, while equally creditable writers believe that the voyage was to the kingdom of Sofala on the East Africa coast, and ruled over by the Ethiopic queen Sabea, or Sheba.

Aristotle tells us that in the year 590 before Christ, the Carthaginians sent out a fleet of several vessels, which sailed westward until they discovered the West Indies and New Spain. Whether they sailed along the coast of Brazil or entered upon an exploration of the Antilles, we are not told. Unfortunately, the records in all these cases are exceedingly brief, being no more than a bare mention of facts.

Xerxes, king of Persia, 485 years before Christ, sent his nephew, Sataspis, on a voyage in a search of a route to India. The nephew sailed out of the straits and proceeded southward along the coast as far as Guinea. But his superstitious fears being excited on account of a wind which prevailed several days in a favorable direction, which he feared would carry him over the edge of the world, he turned back, and forfeited his life to the irate king in consequence.

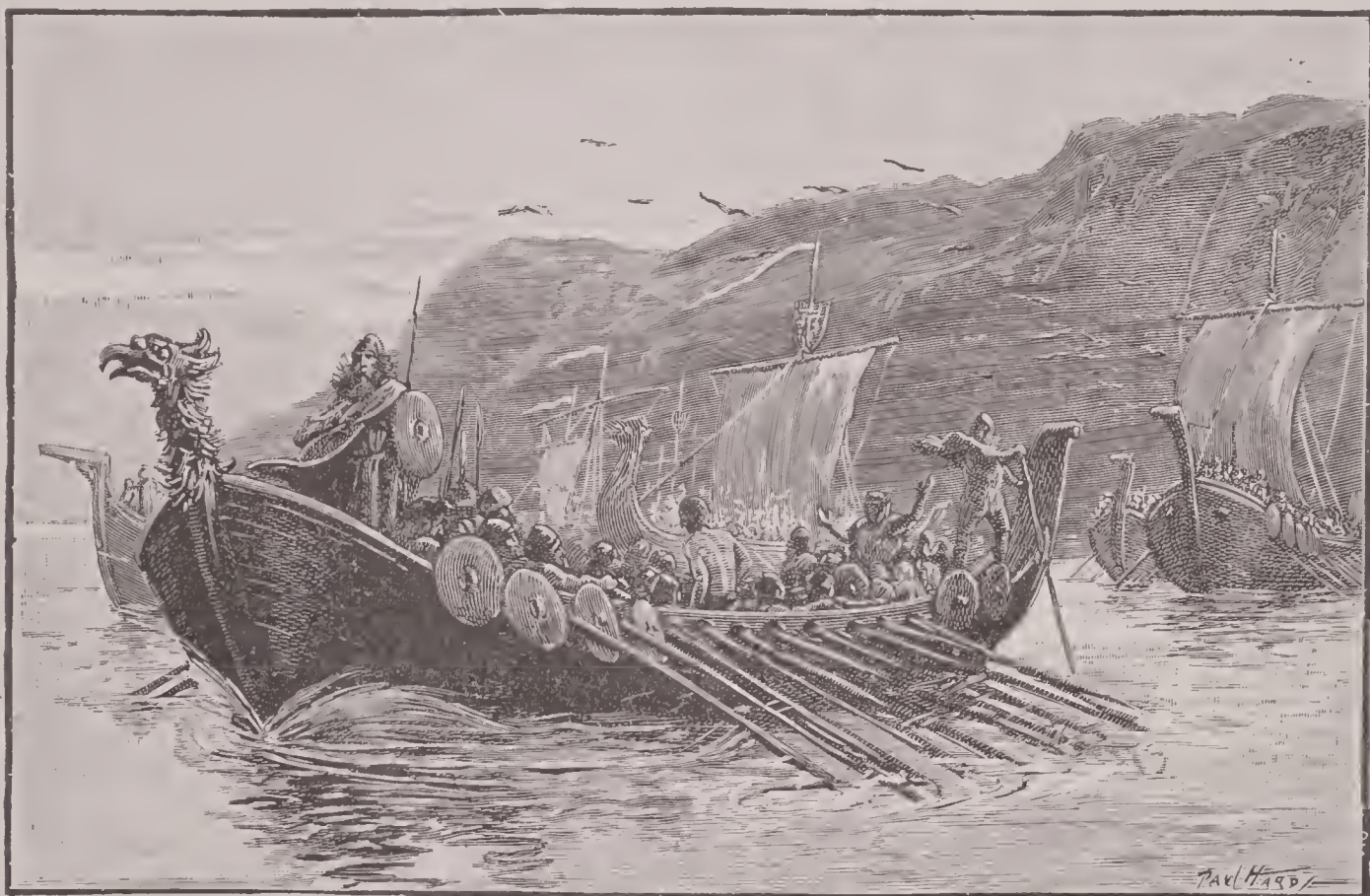
**HAMILCAR'S VOYAGE TO THE NORTH SEAS.**

Himilco, or Hamilcar, and Hanno his brother, 443 years before Christ, both Carthaginian generals, but at the time residing in a portion of Spain now called Andalusia, set out on two voyages. Himilco sailed towards the north, and discovered the northern coast of Spain, France, England, Holland and Germany. It is also believed that he proceeded as far north as Iceland. He was absent two years, and attained a latitude where the cold was so severe that he came near perishing with his crew. He certainly discovered some island in the extreme north to which has since been given the name of Purgatory of St. Patrick, because he found people thereon who received him with signs of hostility, which they manifested by cries and groans. He states that the island had three volcanoes which continually belched forth fire, but that, strange enough, the fire which emanated from one of these would not burn, while that from another would consume even earth itself. He also relates that he discovered there two fountains, one of which was like melted wax and always boiling, and anything thrown therein would be almost immediately turned into stone. He noticed on the island also such animals as bears, foxes, hares, crows, falcons, and other birds and quadrupeds, and also cattle, while the grass grew so rapidly that it yielded several harvests each year and was so succulent that the cattle browsing thereon had to be forcibly taken from their repasts to prevent them from burst-

ing. He describes also having seen most remarkable fish, not only mis-shapen, but of such enormous size that from their bones and ribs a church had been built, and that a sight of one of these monstrous fish frightened his mariners into a condition of panic.

#### ASTOUNDING ADVENTURES OF HANNO.

Hanno, the other brother, sailed along the African coast southward and discovered the Fortunate Islands, which might be the Canaries, and others, such as Dorcades, Hesperides, and the Gordades, which are now called the Cape Verde Islands. He was absent for a period of five years, discovering a great many islands and countries, and giving names to them, but which fail to designate any present known lands. He also reports meeting with strange adventures



HAMILCAR ALONG THE COAST OF BRITAIN.

and witnessing mysterious sights, among which were wild men whom he discovered along the banks of a river up which he sailed a few miles. These men he represents as being covered with hair, but tailless, and of proportions greatly exceeding that of an ordinary man. From the description which he gives, we must believe that he saw a troop of gorillas, many of which have been found in the section of Africa which he then visited. He also reports having seen from his vessel a burning mountain, not a volcano, but a vast mountain which seemed to be on fire, shooting its flames up for hundreds of feet day after day, as he witnessed it, without any signs of consumption. At one place also, having made land in a dark night, he perceived curious lights flitting over the water and through the trees, and heard mysterious and ghostly



voices whispering in a strange tongue. These sights inspired the crew which accompanied him with such fear that they made precipitate haste for the boats, and immediately set sail from a land which they believed to be infested with the spirits of the damned.

At Cape Bona Sperenca (Esperanza), Hanno came in contact with a people who he declares were great witches and enchanters of snakes, which they brought into their service and placed as sentinels to guard their churches and grave-yards, and cattle, and other possessions. He asserts that the people declared to him that any invaders of their property would be immediately attacked by the snakes, which, winding themselves about them, would hold them prisoners until the master came to punish the trespassers. In case the invasion was made by some large quadruped, as elephant, rhinoceros, lion, or other dangerous beast, Hanno states that these sentinel snakes would proceed at once to the hut where the master lived, and give information of the dangerous presence by stroking him. He relates also a curious incident, that while one of his men was lying in a hut in a native village, he heard a great noise as if some one was striking heavy blows, which inducing him to rise, he went out and demanded the cause of the disturbance. Thereupon he was answered by one of the natives, that it was his cobra snake that had been calling him.

#### AMONG THE MERMAIDS.

Upon the sea coast, this courageous explorer also maintains to have found certain fishes which swam upright in the water, and had both the faces and natures of women, and with whom the fishermen of the coast became so well acquainted and familiar that these mermaids were frequently induced to come on shore and occupy the huts of the natives for a time.

Hanno, at the expiration of five years, completed a circumnavigation of Africa, and made report of all the astonishing things which he had seen, for which his king rewarded him in the most generous manner, and caused his name to be perpetuated in the history of his country.

#### VOYAGE OF PYTHEAS, THE PHILOSOPHER.

The Greeks became active in discovery and an extension of their commerce by sea in the fourth century before Christ, and about 340 B. C. they sent out an expedition under the navigator and philosopher, Pytheas, of Marseilles (the ancient Masillia of the Ionians). The real purpose was to follow the fleet of Hamilcar, and to discover, if possible, the source from which the Carthaginians secured their great stores of tin and amber, which Hamilcar was known to bring from some region in the north-west. Much was expected of Pytheas, who was distinguished for his knowledge of astronomy and who was first to ascertain the moon's influence on the earth and the true cause of the tides, nor was such expectation disappointed. He was not able to find the tin mines of Britain, but continuing his voyage northward, he found along the shores of Norway vast deposits of amber, which he reported the people of that country burned instead of wood. He also declared that amber was "a coagulated matter



cast up by the sea," a statement which gave creation to the superstition that this substance was the petrified tears of sorrowing sea-birds, as Tom Moore relates in his *Lalla Rookh*; and again, as the tear drops shed by the sisters of Phaëthon, the giddy youth who having received permission of Sol (the Sun) his father to drive his chariot one day, started out at such a pace that he set the world on fire, and was drowned in the river Po for his recklessness. Amber has since been ascertained to be a vegetable resin, that exuded from forest trees which are now extinct, and which is found in large deposits in many parts of



FABLED MERMAIDS OF THE AFRICAN COAST.

Scandinavia, attached to fossilized trees which form a stratum of bituminous woods beneath beds of sand and clay.

But while the discovery of this precious vegetable gum served to greatly elate the voyagers it did not cause the immediate return of Pytheas, as the ambitious philosopher had a mind to make his fame more enduring by great geographical discoveries. Proceeding therefore northward Pytheas discovered an island which he called Thule (the most northerly land), which many of the geographers claim was one of the Shetland Islands, while not a few others maintain it was Iceland, which became the Ultima Thule of subsequent



voyagers. By the latter, who base their arguments on the old maps which the learned philosopher brought back to Marseilles with him, Pytheas after departing from the northern land turned his ship in a south-westerly course until he came to another strange country, which was no other than our own America. Tradition also relates that Pytheas took some of the natives of the New World back with him to Marseilles, but as the records which he left were lost in the fifth century, small dependence can be placed on the reports concerning his discoveries.

#### A WONDERFULLY PROFITABLE COMMERCE.

Strabo and Pliny both make mention of an enormously profitable trade being inaugurated by Ptolemy Philadelphus, King of Egypt, between his country and India, which resulted in making Alexandria the richest city in the world. In the time of this king (300 B. C.) this traffic is said to have yielded annually in customs alone the enormous sum of seven millions and a half of gold, according to the authority of Strabo. If crowns are meant, the sum in American money was \$43,500,000. This is almost inconceivable, yet the same writer declares that a few years later, when Rome became master of Egypt, the custom revenues from this trade with India was doubled, and that one hundred and twenty ships were engaged in the commerce, which made the trip in a year. Pliny, dwelling on the magnitude of the exchange, confirms the statements of Strabo, for he says: "The merchandise which these ships carried amounted to 1,200,000 crowns (\$6,960,000) and there was made in return of every crown an hundred. In so much, that by reason of this increase of wealth the matrons, or noble women, of that time and place spent infinitely (fabulous sums) in decking themselves with precious stones, purples, pearls, gum, benzoin, frankincense, musk, amber, sandalwood, aloes, and other perfumes, and trinkets and the like."

#### A NORTH-WEST PASSAGE.

If our profound surprise be excited by a recovery from ancient history of the fact that there was a profitable maritime commerce carried on between ports of the Mediterranean and India, and that the Red and Mediterranean seas were connected by a canal to facilitate this trade, while as late as the 15th century the ambition of navigators was directed towards finding a water route to India, how much greater must our astonishment be to learn that a northern passage from Europe to India was accomplished 200 years before the birth of Christ.

Strange as the statement may appear, we have it upon the authority of Antonio Galvano, the Portuguese historian, that the Romans, having made themselves masters of all Europe, Northern Africa, and the countries of Western Asia, sent an expedition of many sail against the Khan of Cathay (China), which country had been represented to them as abounding in wealth, and hence promising great spoil to successful invaders. The ships carried a large army prepared for any dangerous enterprise, and sailing out through Gibraltar took a northerly course, and passing by the English and Shetland shores, the great tin mines

from which the Carthaginians procured their supplies of tin were re-discovered. The expedition continued northward, and rounding the coast of Norway, set their course directly eastward. Thus they continued to Behring Strait, through which they sailed, and finally reached Cathay which the Roman soldiers successfully invaded. The Khan was defeated in every battle, cities were looted and then destroyed, and lading their vessels with the treasure captured the Romans returned to their own country by the southern route.

#### DESTRUCTION OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE.

The Romans continued to rule the world and carried on an overland trade with India and China, until their own country was invaded by the Norsemen and Moors in about 412 A. D. when Rome capitulated. The Romans continued to wage war against the invaders, however, until 474 when the Empire passed into the hands of the fierce Norsemen.

For several hundred years the spirit of discovery had been quiescent, the far outlying lands were neglected because they had not been a source of revenue, and in the long lapse of time they were forgotten. History was but a puling infant, geography was in a nebulous state, the world was only emerging from savagery, hence we cannot be surprised that the splendid discoveries of the ante-christian period should in a large measure be lost again to the nations that made them.





## CHAPTER II.

### VISIONS OF THE PAST.



ALL the glories and ambitions of the past are connected with the present by a link that is as unmeasurable as is that which binds us to the future. If we look towards the future the vista is a short one, and we meet a quick darkness that rolls up before our vision like boiling clouds of inky hue. If we set our eyes to pierce the past we may look down an avenue of no inconsiderable extent, but the view ends in no less certain darkness, and the mind remains equally unsatisfied whether we look toward the west or the east of human life.

The generation that is contemporaneous with the telegraph has clasped hands with that which never heard of steamboat or locomotive,

and thus hastening backward but a few paces, or life periods, we meet with those who were thrilled with the news of another world discovered beyond the Atlantic. But behind the century that enlarged the world by one-half, lie commercial nations whose thousands of vessels ploughed the limited seas. Twenty-five hundred years ago the Phœnicians, the Zidonians, and the Tyrians carried on a trade of fabulous importance by means of ships that covered the Mediterranean. Then Carthage—established by Tyrians nearly 1000 years B. C.—grew grand with her white sails mirrored in almost every wave of the sea, and retained her maritime importance until the second Punic war, or about 200 B. C. when Rome drove her commerce from the sea, and fifty years later the city was destroyed by Scipio the Younger, and its site ploughed and sowed with salt, while the last three hundred survivors were sold into slavery. Carthage in her glory had sent her ships not only to every port on the Mediterranean and up the Nile, but they sailed out through the Gates of Gibraltar, around the west coast of Africa, up the Niger River, then back and along the high coasts of Europe, and to the Azores where the Carthaginians and Norsemen met in valorous rivalry.

In the eleventh century Venice rose like Venus from the sea, and from the lagoons into which Attila had driven the people, not only a magnificent city sprang into being, but a maritime power of unrivalled proportions grew into existence and which continued in undisputed mastership of the sea until near the end of the 14th century when in a war with Genoa she was brought to the verge of ruin. But from the calamities which befell her she soon rallied and



reached the climax of her prosperity in 1423, and which she retained until the discovery of America by Columbus diverted her commerce into new channels and she gradually declined; lastly Napoleon destroyed her independence in 1797 and she became a shuttlecock for the battle-doors of Austria and Italy.

#### BELIEF RESPECTING THE EARTH'S SHAPE.

But though sails had long whitened the great sea, and adventurous spirits had penetrated African wilds and the wondrously rich regions of the far east, the condition of the most advanced nation was deplorable for ignorance and superstition. From the time of Homer to that of Columbus, the world was believed to be a plain covered with a hemispheric dome, on the outer edges of



MEETING OF CARTHAGINIANS AND NORSEMEN

which were the battlements of Satan rising up to dispute with heaven for the souls of the dead. Pythagoras in the sixth century, and Plato, Aristotle, and other great philosophers and geographers taught the sphericity of the earth, yet a belief in their theory never obtained a substantial footing, and up to the Middle Ages it was not only popularly opposed by the people but rejected by many distinguished writers of the Augustan Age.

Formaleoni claims that the Venetians discovered the West Indies prior to Columbus. But not only long anterior but even in the Middle Ages there was a belief very general in the existence of fabulous islands in the Atlantic, and out of the legends connected with them very largely grew the many super-



stitutions connected with the sea. Of the several mythical islands which had a prominent place in early beliefs, a few only of the 25,000 which Ptolemy assigned to the Atlantic may be mentioned. There were the Eternal Islands, island of the Two Sorcerers, island of Bimini, on which was the fountain of youth, Saxonburg, where the fates lured sailors to shipwreck, the islands of Happiness, and Fortunate islands. Then there was the "Island of the Hand of Satan," mentioned by Formaleoni and also by Humboldt, and there was Antillia and Satanaxio with a strait between mentioned by Beccarrio, and the Island of the Seven Cities, which is believed to have been Brazil. There is, indeed, a map in St. Mark's library at Venice, drawn in 1450, whereon Brazil is represented, and Humboldt shows that Brazil-wood was imported into Europe from the East Indies long before the time of Columbus. Brazil was formerly placed a hundred leagues west of Ireland, and was called Vanishing Island, because while people implicitly believed in its existence, the reports of its discovery having been so well verified, yet numerous expeditions in quest of the same failed to reach its shores. This is the incomplete and unsatisfactory record of the expeditions which are supposed to have sailed westward from Mediterranean shores.

#### THE VIKING NAVIGATORS.

The preceding are hardly better than traditions, in which little or no confidence can be placed. But there was a people in the north, occupying Norway, a race that had been driven out of Asia by Tartar hordes and which had wandered westward until they found a lodgment in the Scandinavian Peninsula. These Norsemen were a bold and warlike people, who set about immediately founding a nation which they established so firmly that it has endured to this day. Their restless disposition did not permit them to long confine themselves to the country whereon they had established themselves as a nation, for living chiefly by conquest they attacked the nations of the south, carrying their invasions through England (which then belonged to France), and into northern Spain. Nothing was able to arrest their progress, and they moved westward, making themselves masters of Italy, Greece and Sicily. At first heathens, they afterwards embraced Christianity, and led the van of the crusaders in the war for the recovery of the Holy Land. But while a portion of the nation was engaged at war with Greece, Italy and France, other bold spirits had set out on the high seas, encouraged by their victories over the French in England, and sailed in quest of new lands. They soon also distributed themselves in colonies on the islands that were then known as the Faroes, Hebrides, Orkneys, and Shetland Islands, and directly became the most adventurous as well as accomplished sailors of the age. They discovered Iceland in about the year 860, though it is maintained by some writers that the Greek philosopher, Pytheas, first set foot in Iceland, which he called the Ultima Thule; but resting there for a short while he extended his voyage westward until he had traversed the Atlantic and landed on American shores about 340 before Christ,



as already explained. There is very little history, however, in support of this claim, though the tradition is deeply implanted.

The second discovery of Iceland is due undoubtedly to a Norwegian pirate named Naddodd, who had been carried out of his course by a tempest on a voyage which he was making to the Faroes. We have also a tradition to the effect that early in the sixth century King Arthur visited Iceland and conquered its inhabitants, which were said to have been Irish. This, like other traditions, however, is scarcely to be credited, although there is considerable proof which historians cannot wholly ignore that both the Irish and the Welsh



NORSE NAVIGATORS.

made expeditions to America in about the seventh century. Indeed, St. Brandan, Abbot of Cluainfort, Ireland, who died in 577, is said to have spent 70 years in two unsuccessful voyages in the company of 75 monks, in quest of an island which inspiration told them was a land promised to the saints. This fabled country, which might have been Brazil, was not found, but the great Abbot is said to have discovered two very large islands, one of which turned out to be the back of a huge fish, as the pious annalist relates.

Shortly after the discovery of Iceland, a considerable immigration into that island from Norway was begun, and in 874 it is said to have had 50,000 inhabitants, notwithstanding the fact that its shores are desolate and always ice



bound. There was also much in Iceland to excite the superstitious fears of the people, where geysers were perpetually boiling, and volcanoes were belching up their flames as if in an effort to set the heavens on fire. Here too the northern lights scintillated and flickered with ominous import, and gave creation to numerous legends respecting the gods of ice and winter winds.

#### DISCOVERIES OF ERIK THE RED.

About the year 976, Erik the Red (red-head), whom we must believe was a distinguished man in his country, was banished from Norway on account of a murder which he is said to have committed, and he sought an asylum in



GODHAVEN AS IT NOW APPEARS.

Iceland, to which so many of his people had emigrated a hundred years before. But here he was also shortly afterwards outlawed in a public assembly, and condemned to banishment. He then fitted out a ship, and went in search of a land which tradition reported had been seen to the north. This voyage was begun in the year 984, and was so propitious that he quickly landed in the new country and there remained for a period of two years, at the end of which time he returned to Iceland, with glowing descriptions of the land which he had discovered and to which he gave the name of Greenland. He reported that its shores were verdure-clad, but the belief is that the name was given in order



to attract favorable attention to the country, in which he hoped to found a colony. The result was that, as he had anticipated, large numbers of Icelanders and Norsemen emigrated to Greenland and there founded a flourishing colony at the point where Gotthaab, or Godhaven, is now situated, which not only endured for a long time, but was so prosperous that it was made subject to the crown of Norway. Leif, a son of Erik, returned to Norway in 999, and finding his country converted to Catholicism, he also embraced the faith, after which he took a priest with him and returned to Greenland where he built several churches, the ruins of which may still be seen.



The Norsemen, as we have said, were excellent navigators, though they had no charts or compass to sail by, but were able to direct their course by a knowledge of the stars; they had, too, the most admirable sea-going vessels which, besides the use of sails, were propelled by oars, yet were capable of crossing the sea in the stormiest weather, though of course not comparable with the crafts which are ploughing the Atlantic to-day. In one of the Sagas of old Icelandic history we have an account of these, in which the keel is represented to have been one hundred and forty feet long, the material used in its construction was of

the choicest, and it was provided with thirty-four rowing benches, while the stem and stern were covered with gold. While this description is by no means complete, it affords us an excellent idea of the character of the vessels which they constructed, and incidentally their sea-going qualities.

#### DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

Having established such a successful colony in Greenland, Erik the Red in one of his voyages between the two countries met with a disaster which fortunately ultimated in the discovery of America. One of the several vessels which he had laden with provisions for trade with the colonies was driven by a storm so far south-westerly out of its course that the crew came in sight of the coast of a country nine days' sail from Greenland. During this time the ship was enveloped in such a fog and mist that at no time within the nine days was the sun to be seen, or was daylight or darkness distinguishable. When at last the sun appeared there lay before their astonished gaze an unknown land which they knew was not Greenland, because the shores of that country were characterized by high mountain peaks, and rugged and bleak scenery, while the land before them was level, verdant, and inviting. But instead of landing, so eager were they to join the other vessels, which had in the meantime reached Greenland, that the commander, whose name was Bjarne, continued sail, and on his return passed the coast of Newfoundland and Labrador, and at last made land at the port in Greenland. While it is impossible to exactly determine the land which Bjarne saw, from the length of the voyage, direction of the currents and appearance of the land, as well as the length of days that are noted, it is more than probable that the shores sighted were Nantucket—which is one degree south of Boston—Nova Scotia and Newfoundland. Upon this fact the claim is based that Bjarne was the first European whose eyes beheld the shores of the American Continent. A report of the discovery having been made to Erik, that bold rover organized an expedition, and with thirty-five companions set out in quest of the new country about A. D. 1000. The voyage was propitious, and he found and sailed along the coast for several miles, giving to it at first the name Markland, or Woodland, which corresponds with Nova Scotia of to-day. But finding no suitable harbor he set out again in the open sea with a south-east wind, and two days later re-discovered land, and put into a sound. This he found very shallow at ebb tide, so that the ship stood dry, and he was unable to pass the mouth of a bay which he saw before him. But in their eagerness to get on shore the Norsemen, clothed in sealskins, flung themselves into the water, and with shouts of glee set foot upon the most verdant land they had ever beheld. When the tide was high they sailed as far up the bay as the water would permit, and casting anchor, they built huts upon the shore in which to pass the winter. They found salmon in great plenty in the waters, and through the winter lived chiefly on this food. But one of the early incidents connected with the landing, as related by the Sagas, is to the effect that among the company was



a German named Tyrker, who being the most impetuous of the crew, was not only the first to reach the land, but who made a bold incursion into the unknown country, passing out of sight into the woods where he remained for such a length of time that Erik feared that he had been killed by Indians, which they had seen on shore. But towards evening the German returned, bearing in his arms a great quantity of grapes, a fruit which was quite familiar to him, but was unknown to the Norsemen. He soon explained to his companions, however, the value of his discovery, and they found such great



LANDING OF ERIK.

abundance of this delicious fruit that Erik gave the name Vinland to the country. Thus Leif Erikson was the first white man, of whom we have any positive knowledge, that set foot upon the American Continent, if we except the German who accompanied him.

#### THE KILLING OF THORWALD BY NATIVES.

In the following spring Leif returned to Greenland, making such report of his discovery as greatly excited the Norsemen and infused in them a desire



for further exploration. Thorwald, who was a wealthy brother of Leif's, equipped and placed a vessel at his command, in which an expedition was sent out in the year 1002. It is recorded in the Sagas that the party remained on the coast of Vinland for a period of three years, and would have doubtless continued longer but for an unfortunate event, which resulted in the death of Thorwald. The Indians, or as some maintain, Esquimaux, which were called Skraelings, on account of their dwarfish stature and withered appearance, were very numerous and hostile, and at the end of three years, while the company were preparing ampler huts for residences, they were attacked by these Skraelings, an arrow from the bow of one of which pierced Thorwald's eye, giving him a mortal wound. The Skraelings were repulsed, but the Norseman chief realizing that he had but a few moments to live, gave his last instructions to his companions, admonishing them of the necessity of maintaining a union that no divisions could separate; for it was his hope that the company would continue to occupy the country and form a permanent settlement, which he had an ambition would become of great advantage not only to themselves but of commercial importance to his country: As death was closing his eyes, he begged that he might be buried there, and that his grave might be designated by



TYRKER FOUND GARLANDED WITH GRAPES.

two crosses, one at the foot and the other at the head, which request was carried out. His was the first death and burial of a European in America. In proof of this, the Sagas are confirmed by the finding of a skeleton in armor in the vicinity of Fall River, Mass., in the year 1831. It is a known fact that it was the custom among Norsemen to bury their warriors in their armor and with all their war implements about them; and an analysis of the armor which was thus resurrected proves to have been identical with metal used in the com-



position of the armor of the Norsemen of the tenth century. It also corresponded with them in style, so that there is no ground for disputing its Norse origin.

The death of Thorwald was such a severe blow to the expedition, that instead of carrying out his wishes, the members loaded their ships with the products of the land, and returned to Greenland in the year 1005.

In the same year that the expedition returned, Thorstein, son of Erik the



KILLING OF THORWALD.

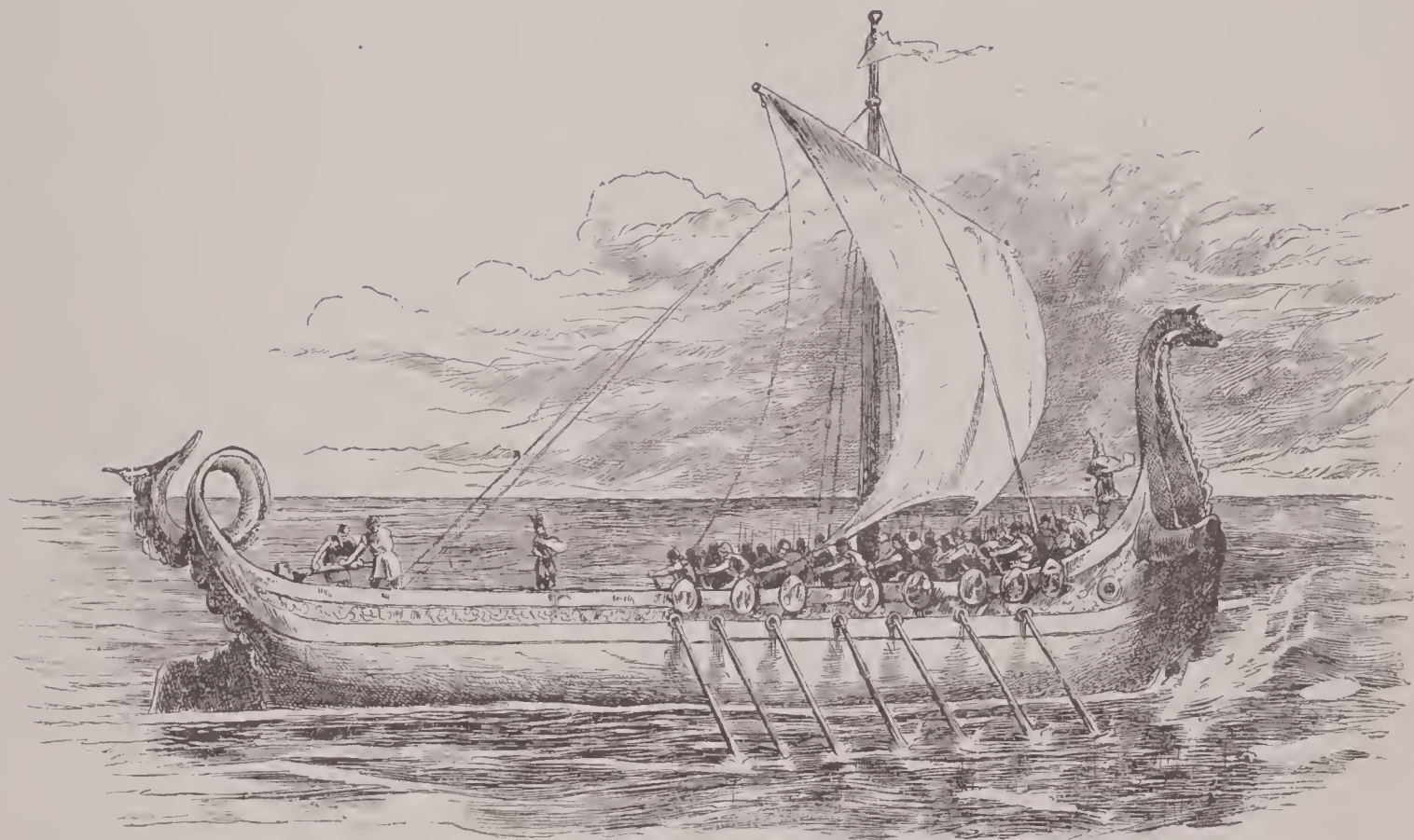
Red, in addition to a desire to recover the body of his brother and give it burial in his own country, was anxious to make another expedition into Vinland, of which the most wonderful reports had been given by the returned crew. He had recently married a lady in Greenland, Gudrid by name, who is distinguished in history as much for her beauty as for her wealth. She seems to have inspired or increased the desire of her husband to visit Vinland and there set up a colony. Thorstein accordingly fitted out a vessel, taking with him twenty-five select men and his wife, and set out to sea on a visit to the new



land. But through the whole sail they were tossed by tempestuous winds and waves, and after a voyage of more than three months were driven again onto the shore of Greenland, where Thorstein and several of his men died, and Gudrid returned to her native town of Eriksfjord with his body.

#### PROOFS OF NORSE SETTLEMENT IN AMERICA.

Two years later, or in about 1006, Thorfinn Karlsefne, who is reputed to have been a very wealthy man and a descendant from the most distinguished families of Norway, visited Eriksfjord in two ships, bringing with him many rich presents to Lief Erikson, and was offered in return the hospitalities of that now distinguished man. Thorfinn soon met the beautiful Gudrid, and falling in love with her, besought Leif to secure for him the right of betroth-



THORFINN'S VOYAGE TO THE AMERICAN SHORES.

ment, which the custom of the country seems to have required. Thorfinn's courtship progressed so favorably that he soon married the fair widow, at whose solicitation he organized another expedition and set sail for Vinland in the spring of 1007, accompanied by his wife and 151 men and seven women, and carrying with them several cows, sheep, goats and horses.

The voyage was attended with no difficulties, and in a reasonably short time he reached Vinland, where he established a comfortable habitation and made his home for a period of three years, during which time Gudrid bore her husband a son which she named Snorre. This was the first white child born in the New World. The colonization was completed, notwithstanding the hostility of the Skraelings, whose attacks were common and serious, yet the party



was a brave one and was soon increased by the arrival of others and additional live stock, but Thorfinn and Gudrid returned to Greenland in 1010.

The most conclusive proof of this expedition is found, not only in the historical descriptions given in the Sagas, but by the discovery of what is called the Dighton Writing Rock, which was found in the 16th century on the very spot where the Norsemen had built their huts and set up a tower. Its base is covered by Runic inscriptions and Roman characters, in which is a printed record of the fact that here landed a company of 151 Norsemen, the account of the company being given in Thorfinn's name. In the lower left hand corner of the inscription on the rock is also a figure of a woman and child,



KILLING OF THE FIRST PRIEST SENT TO AMERICA.

and also the letter S, which Prof. Rafn declares signifies the birth of a son to Gudrid.

#### CHURCH RECORDS AND THE KILLING OF A PRIEST.

In addition to the proofs furnished by the Sagas, there are records in the Vatican at Rome which tell us that this colony was provided with a priest named Jon, as a guide for its religious instruction, and who was murdered by Indians whom he had approached in the missionary spirit. The death of this first pioneer priest was followed by the sending over of two others, and soon afterwards a bishop was appointed to the church which had been founded in the New World. In the same records it is related that directly after Gudrid's return

to Greenland she proceeded to Rome and announced to the Pope the colonization of Vinland, and no doubt also represented to him the necessity of providing the colonists with a priest. It may also be added that Gudrid went to Iceland after her visit to Rome and entered a Benedictine convent which had been built there by her son Snorre, and continued in the seclusion of this nunnery until her death. The historian Riant tells us that the Crusades were preached in America in the year 1276, and as Peter's Pence was collected from the colonists and sent to Rome, it is more than probable that some of the hardy spirits joined the Crusaders' ranks, leaving their Vinland Home to fight for the Holy Sepulchre.

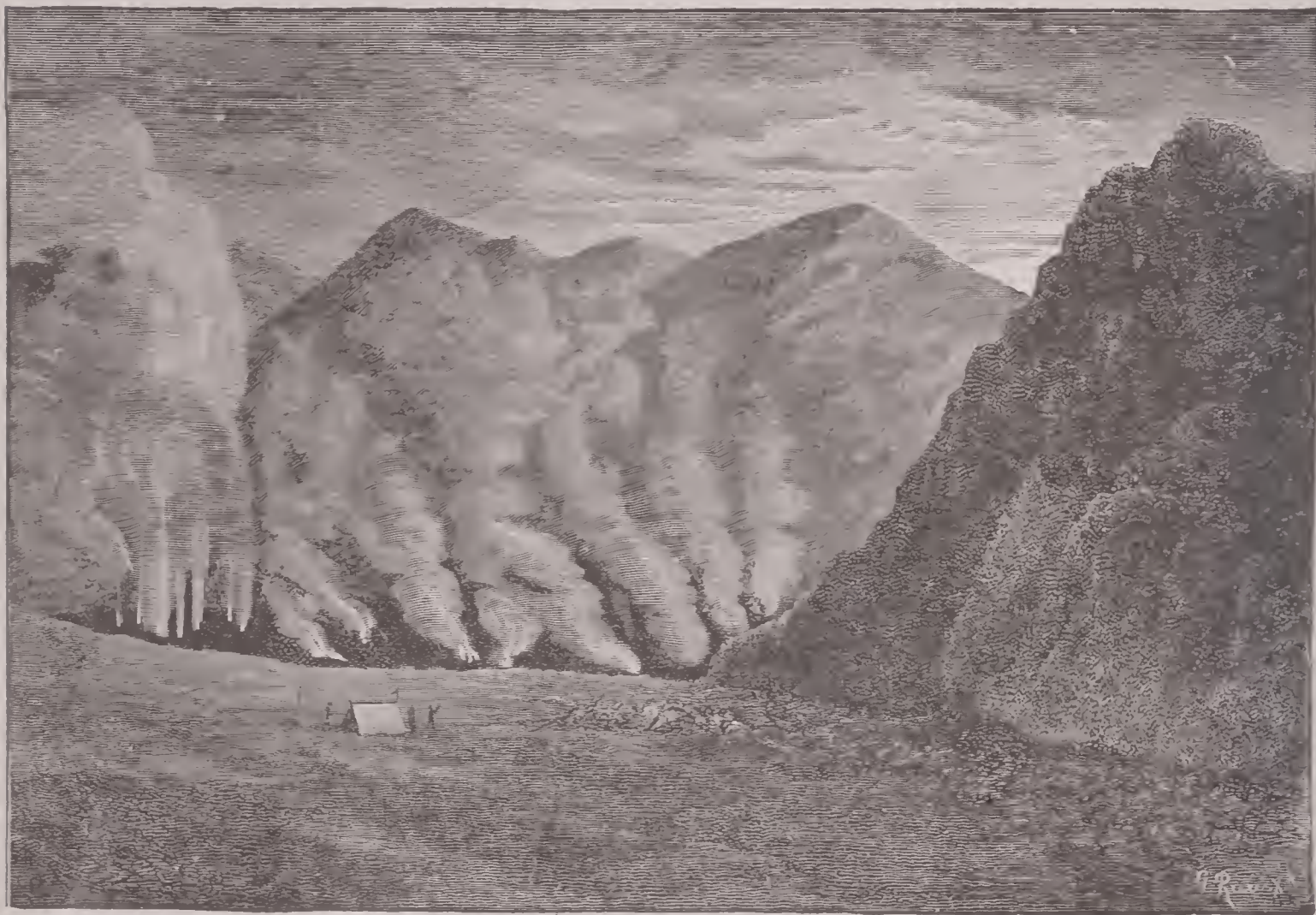
The last mention made of the Vinland colonists in the Sagas is the bare statement that in 1347 a vessel was sent from Iceland to the new country for a cargo of building-timber. Up to this time the colony had certainly flourished, and the cause of its sudden disconnection with civilization is an unanswered question. Very singular to relate, while Greenland had enjoyed an equally prosperous intercourse with both Iceland and Vinland, there is no record of the colonies after the close of communication with those who had settled in Vinland. The cause of this interruption and discontinuance is not easy to positively determine, though by no means difficult to conjecture. We know that in the 13th century this commercial intercourse was seriously disturbed by a royal mandate from Norway, which declared that such trade should thereafter be a monopoly of the crown, and which immediately restricted this commercial relation, and possibly led very soon to its destruction.

#### DISAPPEARANCE OF THE COLONIES.

About the middle of the 14th century the Esquimaux imperilled the colonies in western Greenland, and a growing hostility may have culminated in their abandonment of the inhospitable country. But in addition to this, the Black Plague which overran Europe about this time and destroyed, as is estimated, twenty-five millions of people, also invaded Iceland and Greenland, and as communication had been kept up with the Vinland colonists until this time, it is not unreasonable to suppose that the plague extended also to them. If so, it is probable that the colonists were either totally exterminated by the Plague, or so reduced that the survivors becoming discouraged left their new homes, and returned either to Iceland or to Norway. A phenomenon also occurred in the 14th century immediately preceding the spread of the Black Plague. Great cataclysms in China sunk nearly a tenth part of that country under the waves of the Pacific, and volcanic eruptions destroyed thousands of peoples, buried cities out of sight, and opened vast chasms in the earth from which emanated noxious vapors that poisoned the atmosphere, and prepared the way for the plague which soon followed. There were also violent eruptions in Iceland, which changed the configuration of that land, and extending across to the shores of Greenland threw up a barrier of ice there which might have remained impassable for many years. Thus, confined within a Polar region, unable to raise sufficient sustenance from the soil, and cut off from communication with

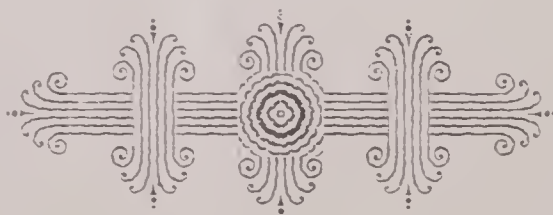


other countries, the Greenland colonists might have perished. These, however, are but suppositions, though so reasonable as to lend plausibility to the belief that the total and final interruption of communication, as above stated, was due to the absolute destruction of the people. Whatever causes led to the extinction of the Greenland colonists must have practically resulted in the destruction of



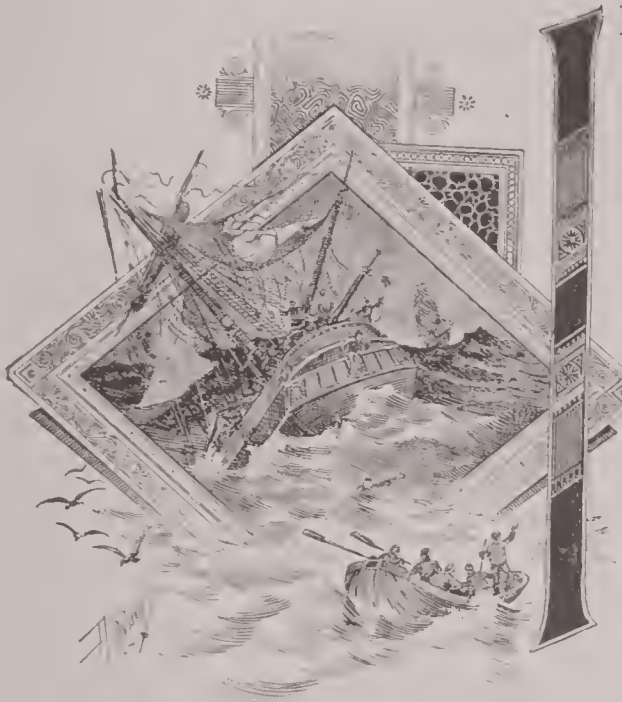
THE GEYSERS OF ICELAND.

those of Vinland, as the two were bound together by both commercial and national ties; and unless the Vinland colonists had been self-supporting, which it is unfair to suppose, since they were not an agricultural people, the cutting-off of relations with the civilized world must have affected them disastrously, and so reduced their numbers as to have made the survivors an easy prey to the savage Skrællings.



## CHAPTER III.

### DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY ZICHMNI AND ZENO.



ABOUT 1390, Nicolo Zeno, a distinguished and rich navigator of Venice, equipped a vessel from his own resources, and set out to make himself acquainted with the least known as well as the unknown countries of the earth. He sailed out from Gibraltar and thence for England and Flanders, but being overtaken by a storm, which continued with the greatest severity for several days, he was driven out of his course, and at length cast upon the shore of an island which he called Friesland, but which is now known to have been one of the Faroe group. He and his crew fortunately gained the shore, but their presence becoming known, a large body of natives armed with

bows and lances rushed down from the hills and attacked them. Their hostile intentions were presently restrained, however, by their chief who, ordering them to retire, approached Zeno, and addressed him in Latin. This chief, whose name was Zichmni, proved to be a bold rover from the north, who had defeated the King of Norway in a great battle on the high seas, and then coming to these islands with a fleet of thirteen vessels had established himself there as a ruling prince; and observing at once that Zeno, who was a skillful navigator, might be serviceable to him, Zichmni treated him with the greatest courtesy, and persuaded him to act as pilot to an expedition which he was upon the point of sending to other islands, with the purpose of taking possession of them also. The fleet set sail in due season, and the ambitions of Zichmni were fully realized, but what islands he thus overcame is not a matter of record.

In the following year, upon receipt of a letter from Nicolo, his brother Antonio fitted out a ship and proceeded at once to Friesland, which he reached in due season; and directly afterwards the two accompanied Zichmni in an expedition against the Shetland Islands which were then held by the Norsemen. Their vessels were very rude crafts, only two of which were propelled by oars, and finding that the chief island of the group was so well fortified and defended, they gave over their ambition to possess it and directed their attention against seven of the smaller islands which soon capitulated, on one of which Zichmni built a fort, and leaving it in charge of Nicolo, returned with Antonio to Friesland.



## A SURPRISING DISCOVERY IN GREENLAND.

In the succeeding year Nicolo, in pursuance of his original intention to see as much of the world as possible, fitted out three small barks in which he sailed to Greenland. Upon landing on its shores he was surprised to find a monastery and a church, dedicated to St. Thomas, located near an active volcano, which he declares sent forth fire like Vesuvius and Ætna. He also makes particular mention of a spring of hot water emanating from the volcano, which the



ZENO OFF THE COAST OF FRIESLAND.

friars conducted to their monastery and used for heating their building, cooking their food, and other like serviceable purposes. By the use of this hot water, which they distributed by means of pipes through the soil, they were enabled to bring into cultivation a considerable parcel of land which would otherwise have been perpetually covered with ice and snow. In this fruitful garden they produced flowers, herbs, and fruits of many kinds, such as are generally to be found only in the high temperature of tropical countries; so that the rude and savage peoples of Greenland, seeing these supposed supernatural effects, regarded the friars as gods, to propitiate whom they made many offerings of chickens, meats, and other things which they were able to procure in that bleak country. After a pleasant stay of some months in Greenland, Nicolo returned to Friesland, where he soon after died from

the effects of a cold. Antonio succeeded to the honors which Zichmni had conferred upon his distinguished brother, but though he often made request for permission to return home, the prince would not give his consent, estimating the great value of his services in new enterprises which Zichmni was continually conceiving or putting into execution.

## CASTAWAYS ON THE SHORES OF A NEW WORLD.

Within a year after the death of Nicolo, Zichmni proposed dispatching an



expedition under Antonio in quest of certain exceedingly rich islands which were represented to lie five hundred leagues to the west. The story of these westerly islands, as related by Antonio in a letter to his brother Carlo (the information being obtained from a fisherman who claims to have visited them), is to this effect: Twenty-six years before, four fishing boats put out to sea from Friesland, but encountering a heavy storm were helplessly driven for many days until at length they were cast upon an island called Estotilan, which they reckoned to lie west of Friesland between one and two thousand miles. One of the boats was wrecked, and six men who survived the disaster reaching shore were taken by the inhabitants and brought to a populous city and there questioned by the King. But being unable to understand their language, the ruler sent for many interpreters from whom one was at length obtained who understood the Latin language, which it happened that one of the fishermen too could speak. By this



NICOLO'S FLEET IN QUEST OF NEW LANDS.



SAVED ON THE SHORE OF AN UNKNOWN WORLD.

means a conversation was carried on between the King and the fishermen which was of great advantage to both. The survivors told the King of the country whence they had come, of its wealth and importance, and in turn were kindly invited



to remain in the country. There they were treated with great consideration which induced them to remain on the island for a period of five years, during which time they acquired a thorough knowledge of the language of the new people. One of the fishermen visited different parts of the island, and reported that it was an exceedingly rich country, abounding in all good things; that while it was smaller than Iceland, it was very much more fertile, and in the middle of it was a very high mountain out of which rose four rivers that watered the



MURDER OF THE FISHERMEN.

entire country. This island, as a map drawn by one of the fishermen clearly shows, was Newfoundland. The survivors also represented the inhabitants as an extremely intelligent people, who possessed arts similar to those in use among the nations of Europe; and that they had had intercourse with peoples in Greenland or Iceland was evident from the fact that in the king's library were to be seen many Latin books, these affording additional evidence of the claim that the Catholics had sent priests to instruct the early Norse settlers of that region, whose religious works were printed in that tongue. At the time of the fishermen's visit, the people had still an intercourse with Greenland whence they imported furs, brimstone, and pitch.

#### CAPTURED AND EATEN BY CANNIBALS.

The King told the fishermen that towards the south there was a great and yet more populous country very rich in gold, that the people there planted corn and made beer, that they lived in pretentious buildings having walls of stone, and that many towns and villages were established on and near the coast. They used small boats with sails, but having no compass, directed their vessels solely by the stars.

The King regarded the fishermen with so much favor, that on one occasion he sent them with twelve boats to the southward to a country which he called



Drogio, which (by consulting this very ancient map) leads to the belief that Drogio was either Massachusetts or North Carolina. The voyage, however, terminated most disastrously, for experiencing contrary weather, the voyagers were at sea for such a length of time that their provisions were quite exhausted, and encountering a storm were at length driven on shore where they were taken by the natives, and all but one cruelly massacred and eaten; for the savages with whom they came in contact were cannibals, and considered human flesh the most savory of meats. The survivor, being an accomplished navigator, was spared in order that the savages might be taught the art of fishing, in which he made himself so valuable to them that he soon became a bone



THE CANNIBAL FEAST.

of contention between the tribe which captured him and hostile neighboring peoples. A war directly followed between the savages of the north and those with whom the survivor was an enforced visitor, and the former prevailing, the captive was taken towards the north where he served his captors until a more powerful tribe captured him again. He dwelt in this region for a period of thirteen years, during which time he was captured no less than twenty-five times by warring chiefs whose sole incentive was to secure the services of the white survivor.

#### THE AZTECS OF MEXICO.

The people of the lower country were represented as very rude and uncultivated, who went naked, having not even the sense to clothe themselves



with the skins of animals which they captured in the chase. They were also extremely fierce, and after a contest with one another, invariably ate the slain. Yet further south of these the survivor represented the climate as temperate and the people as more highly cultivated than any found in the north. "They reside in great cities, and temples dedicated to their idols, in which they sacrifice men and afterward eat them. In these parts they also have knowledge and use both of gold and silver." This description, we may observe in pass-



FIRST MEETING WITH THE IRELANDERS.

#### ATTACKED BY THE IRELANDERS.

It was this story which induced Zichmni to equip an expedition and send it in quest of the new land, in charge of Antonio. At the last moment before the fleet set sail, however, Zichmni decided to accompany the expedition himself, so that Antonio was not given the chief command as he had expected. The vessels sailed directly westward, and coming at length to an island named Ledovo, remained there seven days to refresh the crew and furnish the fleet with necessaries. Departing thence under a favorable wind, they made

ing, so well suits the Aztecs of Mexico, that we must believe the information which the fisherman derived came directly through an intercourse which the northern tribes had with their more southerly neighbors. The fisherman finally made his escape, and after many delays and dangers, and other threatenings, he reached the country of Drogio, where he was welcomed and kindly received by the chief of the place, who gave him protection for a period of three years. At the end of this time, some boats arrived off the coast, and on landing he solicited and obtained passage on the return voyage to Estotilan from which the boats had come. He acted as interpreter for the crew, and after making several voyages to Greenland, became so rich that he fitted out a vessel and returned to Friesland with an account such as is here reported.



great progress until the fleet was attacked by a great storm which lasted for a period of eight days and destroyed several of the smaller boats. This, however, in no wise discouraged Zichmni, who repaired his battered and scattered fleet as well as possible, and sailed on under a prosperous wind, at last discovering land on the west. The storm had so driven him out of his course that instead of sailing westward, as he had supposed, he had made the northerly coast, and struck land at Ireland which he called Icarie, supposing it to have been an unknown island. There they were attacked by the savage islanders, who set upon them with such rage that many of the crew were slain, and the fleet was forced to set out immediately to sea to save it from destruction.

Getting the points of the compass again, he sailed westward and then south-west, and discovered land two weeks afterwards; but at what point the historian has not been able to tell us. He found great quantities of fish and sea fowl, and an abundance of birds' eggs, which were highly appreciated by the half famished men, and which were taken in great stores aboard the vessel, thus preparing the expedition for another cruise. Going on shore and exploring the country a short distance, the soldiers who were a part of the expedition, discovered a spring from which issued a substance resembling pitch, and along it a great multitude of people half wild living in caves. Their stature was very small, and they were so timid that at the sight of the soldiers they fled quickly into their holes. The country appeared so favorable, the soil being good and watered by a large river, that Zichmni conceived the idea of fixing his habitation there and founding a city. But to this his people objected, saying they had been subjected to so many fatigues and dangers that their one desire was to return to their own homes, as winter was about to set in, and if delay were now made, they would not be able to reach home before the following summer. Zichmni was nevertheless so determined in his intentions that he retained only such row boats as might be spared from the vessels, and with the few that were willing to remain with him, he set about constructing a habitation, and sent the other ships back to Friesland under Antonio.

#### AMERICA THE LAND UPON WHICH ZICHMNI SETTLED.

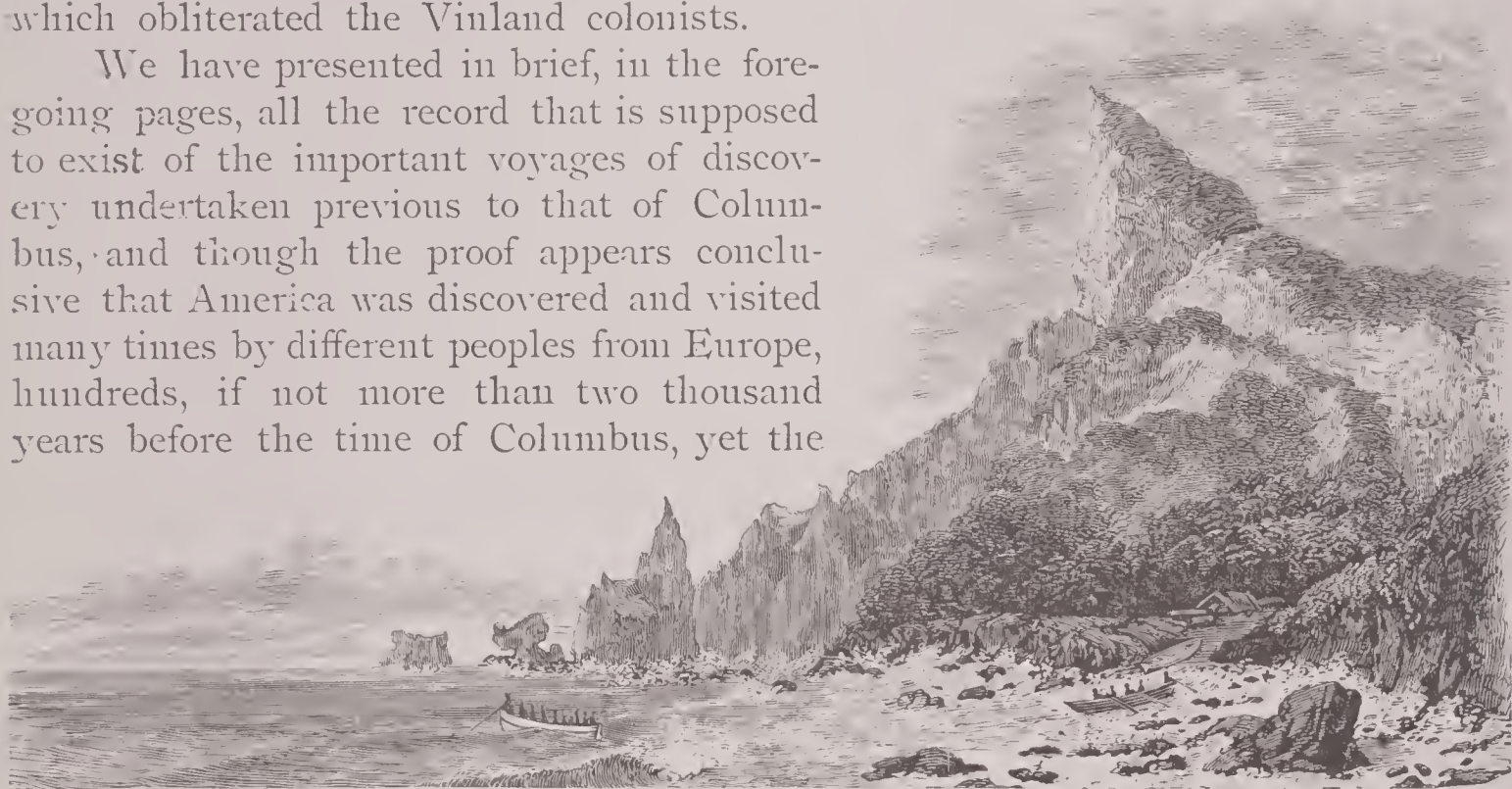
It is related that Zichmni settled near a harbor of his newly discovered island, and explored the whole country, but was unable to find either gold or silver. Nor did he make any considerable progress in the cultivation of the soil. This latter information, however, comes entirely from tradition, as nothing further was ever heard directly from Zichmni, who probably perished, either from cold, or was killed by the hostile savages who were known to occupy the country north of him. Many historians maintain that the island or country upon which Zichmni thus landed was Greenland. But the best evidence obtainable is favorable to the claim that he reached the coast of Labrador; though this would have been hardly possible in a two weeks' sail from Ireland. The reckoning of time by the early explorers was not always exact, and it is probable that the



voyage westward lasted considerably more than two weeks. There is no country which answers so well to the description of that upon which Zichmni is said to have landed as Labrador, and certainly in no wise answers to that of Greenland.

It seems to have been characteristic of the pre-Columbian voyagers to call all new lands islands, and every stream of water, however small, was to them a river. In Labrador there are several rivers, and three of considerable size, while the southern part is somewhat mountainous, so that it answers to the description which Antonio gave. As there is no land, not even an island, lying between Ireland and Newfoundland, the conclusion is irresistible that Zichmni landed either on Newfoundland, Anticosti, or Labrador, and his disappearance with the men who remained with him, was no doubt due to causes identical with those which obliterated the Vinland colonists.

We have presented in brief, in the foregoing pages, all the record that is supposed to exist of the important voyages of discovery undertaken previous to that of Columbus, and though the proof appears conclusive that America was discovered and visited many times by different peoples from Europe, hundreds, if not more than two thousand years before the time of Columbus, yet the



ZICHMNI LANDING ON THE SHORE OF LABRADOR.

country had lapsed into a *terra incognita*, and its re-discovery at the end of the fifteenth century was therefore an event in no wise lessened by the fact that its shores had been visited before. In the one case it was a discovery only to lose, while in the other it was re-discovery to permanently possess, and in the latter the real honor lies.

After the celebrated voyage of Columbus, discovery went on apace, the ocean became the centre of attraction for hundreds of bold spirits, the ambitions of whom were fostered by Spain, Portugal, England, Holland and France, each of which entered upon a race to reach new lands for purposes of acquisition and enrichment at the expense of the poor natives.

A history of the distinguished voyages following after that of Columbus is given in subsequent chapters, from the discovery of San Salvador to the reclamation of all the countries and islands of the Western Hemisphere, together with descriptions of the primitive peoples that occupied them.

## CHAPTER IV.

### EARLY NAVIGATORS AND EXAMPLES OF THEIR MONSTER VESSELS.



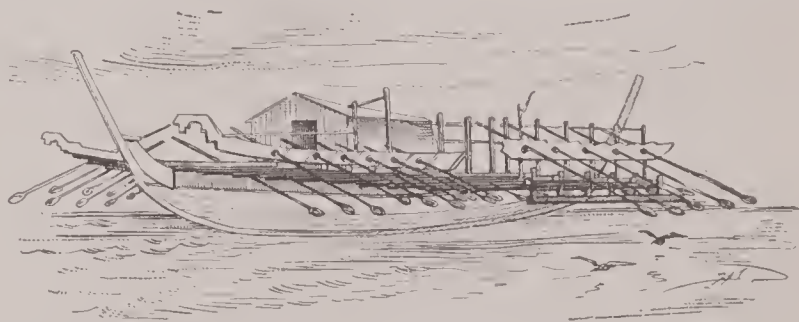
THOSE who have little familiarity with the gigantic accomplishments of very ancient peoples, and who make their estimates of civilization from the lofty plateau of the nineteenth century, stand amazed before evidences of greatness equalling our own which has long since passed away, and which, except to those who are able to read the almost faded record, left no memorials of their existence. Thus the casual reader will declare that a passage of the Atlantic was impossible before the days of Columbus, because even at that period ship-building had produced nothing beyond the caravel, a craft in which only the most venturesome would trust themselves. But if surprise and doubt has been excited by the revelations herein made respect-

ing the exploitations of pre-Columbian navigators, let wonder at their achievements subside when the facts are made to appear that even our largest modern ocean steamers scarcely exceed in size some of the vessels that were built thousands of years ago.

The Ark, whatever may have been its shape, from dimensions given must have had a tonnage of 15,000, not quite so large as the *Great Eastern*, but fully 4500 tons greater than the *City of Paris*, which is the mammoth of existing ships. And a singular fact herein also appears, viz.: that the Ark was, according to Scripture, 450 feet in length, 75 feet in breadth, and 45 feet depth of hold, which are the identical proportions of our best modern vessels.

But if there be some who refuse to accept Biblical authority, their doubts that the ancients built ships of gigantic size must be dissipated before well authenticated facts of profane history which I will here introduce:

Egypt is a country remarkable for its stupendous works; but the greatness



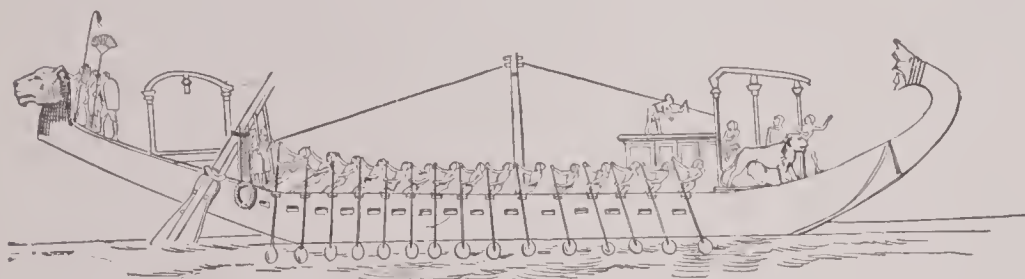
TRIREME OF INDIA.



and resourcefulness of the Egyptians are not only to be seen in pyramid, obelisk, sphinx and colossus, for sculpture and hieroglyphic reveal the nation in marvellous advancement. Thus, in one of the ruined palaces of Thebes, there is a stone which was originally a facing of the exterior, on which, among other heroic sculpturing, we perceive a representation of Rameses III. (about 1250 B. C.) watching a naval battle, in which the Egyptian fleet is engaging the battle-ships of the Shardana and Takkara, and from the number of galleys shown, some of the vessels must have been of very great size.

Ptolemy IV., Philopator (B. C. 222), was an enthusiastic admirer of the

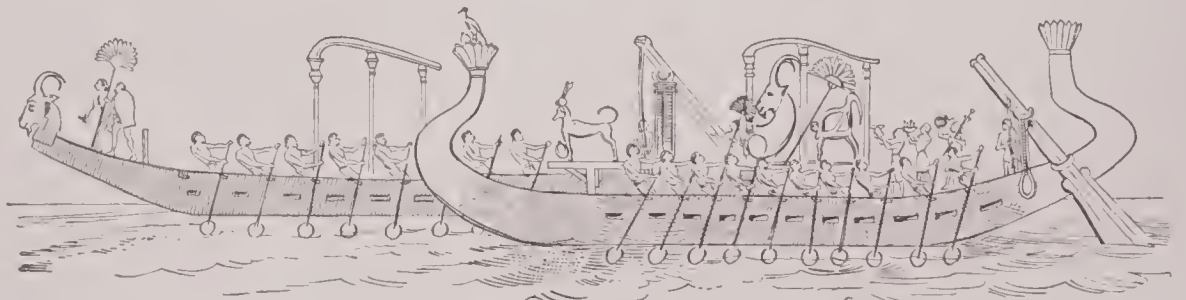
navy, in which he placed the greatest reliance as the chief defence and promoter of the interests of his kingdom. Of the many large ships which he constructed, the di-



VESSEL OF THE ANCIENT EGYPTIANS.

mensions of one have been preserved to history, and were as follows: Length, 420 feet; breadth, 57 feet; and from keel to highest point of poop-deck, 72 feet. This immense vessel was propelled by 4000 rowers, besides which she had a crew of 3000 marines, and a great number of servants. The oars used in propelling her were 67 feet in length, and with handles loaded with lead, so that they balanced so perfectly that a child might easily move them. She was also provided with four steering oars, 45 feet long, which swung upon pivots with equal facility. To afford space for the 2000 rowers on each side, the ship's decks were terraced into five banks, so that 400 rowers sat on each deck, which,

if true, must have necessitated the use of oars of different length for each bank. History, after describing this monster ship, mentions the



ANCIENT EGYPTIAN STATE BARGE.

fact that she was launched and used on more than one occasion for display, but it is doubtful if she was ever put to any useful service.

Another ship, called the *Thalamagus*, was built by the succeeding Ptolemy, which, while somewhat restricted in dimensions to 300 feet in length, 40 feet beam, and 60 feet from keel to top-deck, greatly exceeded the former in bewildering magnificence. Callixenus, the Alexandrian historian, gives us an intimation of her splendor by saying that she was provided with colonnades, marble stairs and hanging gardens.

Hiero, king of Syracuse (307 B. C.), was also a distinguished patron of ship-building. At the opening of the second Punic War, he built and sent to

sea a great fleet, and afterwards had constructed a vessel which for size, convenience and perfection of details, may favorably compare with the finest and largest vessels of our own times. From the imperfect and too brief descriptions left by historians, we learn that Hiero's great ship had three cabins, or decks, the lowest, which was really the hold, being for freight, the second for soldiers and a dining saloon, and the upper used by the officers for quarters, and as a promenade-deck. All the floors of the rooms and cabins were artistically laid in mosaic work of colored marble, and in the grand salon, which was in the after-part of the main cabin, there was a gracefully carved temple beautifully inlaid with ivory and gold, and dedicated to Venus. The extraordinary size of this vessel, in the absence of recorded dimensions, may be reasonably conjectured by the aid of such facts as are given. The mainmast is said to have been made of a single tree, which might readily have been done, as masts were short in all the early ships, and carried only a single sail.

Her freight capacity is declared to have been sixty thousand measures of corn (40,000 bushels), ten thousand jars of Sicilian salt fish, twenty thousand talents' weight of wool, and



CARAVELS OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

twenty thousand talents' weight of bulk cargo, the whole being equal to about 11,000 tons, which is 500 tons greater than the largest craft now in service; but in addition to her capacity as a carrier of merchandise, she carried two launches on her deck, each with a capacity of eighty tons, besides vast stores of provisions, and four wooden and eight iron anchors, all of which are suggestive of a size far greater than her capacity would appear to indicate, and beside which the caravels of Columbus's time would hardly assume the importance of yawls.

Under these revelations, we must admit that the galleys and triremes (three-banked and many-decked ships) of the so-called ancients, so often referred to, were but coasting boats, and that they were not in fact such vessels as composed the great navies of ancient Egypt, Phœnicia, Carthage and Greece, either for war purposes or for extended voyages.





## CHAPTER V.

### SUPERSTITIONS WHICH LONG DISPUTED THE PROGRESS OF DISCOVERY.



UPERSTITION holds mankind in chains that time can never break, even though it be an inheritance of ignorance, a stamp of primitive conditions, and a badge of servitude to harsh advantages. It is the slavery of mind to the unconsciousness of surroundings, and as we have not yet a clear intelligibility of all things in nature, so are all persons attainted with a fear which lack of comprehension embodies with the supernatural. But for this relic of the original ignorance of man, civilization would be a thousand, perhaps ten thousand, years in advance of what it is. At every

knock at the door of knowledge, early man heard the growl of superstition, and though the bold heart of investigation dispelled the monster, yet courage is not always infectious, and thus has every step in advance been disputed and retarded by evil creations of our timid minds.

If exploration of unknown lands has been prevented by tales of goblins damned, of which early writers never grew weary of depicting to affright emerging intelligence, how much greater must have been the effect of stories about nameless monsters which were said to have their haunts in caverns of the sea. And how much more was the fear thus excited intensified by monkish confirmation of such reports, until a belief in their existence became almost a cardinal principle of pious faith. If therefore we feel surprise that an exploration of every habitable portion of the globe was so long deferred, let us reflect upon the true cause, that it was the ghostly and frightful hand of Satan uprising with fell purpose, or guarding a realm that had its boundary where the landsman saw the horizon dip down to the sea. As these limits were extended, a fright of grim-visaged creatures peopling the ocean beyond took the place of Satan's hand, so that every league covered was like a deeper plunge into demoniacal horrors, a challenge to wrathful fiends that might not only kill, but torment the soul also.

The wide, nay universal prevalence of wild beliefs particularly common in the Middle Ages, and their influence upon early voyagers, whether commanders or common sailors, render a chapter on sea superstitions not only appropriate, but a necessary introduction to a history of maritime discovery, to the end that my readers may be acquainted with the important effects of the terrifying beliefs which operated to the great disadvantage of ex-

plorers on the high seas, and to show how fearless and reckless must have been the men who sailed in the face of these supposed supernatural dangers in quest of unknown shores.

#### THE AWE OF BOUNDLESS PERSPECTIVE.

No man is more superstitious than the sailor; no man has better reason to entertain superstition. The sailor is always in the presence of the sublimest spectacle the eye of man can behold; he is surrounded by mystery and awe. The boundless extent, the unfathomable depth of the ocean, fill the mind with amazement; the changing hues of sea and sky in times of calm, present a scene of most exquisite beauty, while the roar of the tempest is the most terrible sound that can fall on the human ear. The shifting clouds of the tornado, writhing and twisting like demons contending in the sky, the mountain waves crashing on the deck in watery avalanches, the movements of the tides, astounding from their immensity, marvellous from their regularity; the wonders of the winds, now as changeable as a maiden's fancy, now steadily blowing from one point for months at a time; the whirlpool, drawing down ships as though they were straws; the water spout, the fury of whose fall the stoutest vessel often in vain resists; the mysterious currents of the ocean, great rivers which drive ships to and fro in spite of helm, sail or steam—all these tend to lift the fancy to the highest point and prepare the mind for ready belief in the supernatural.



SATAN'S HAND UPON THE SEA.

#### DANGERS OF AN ANGRY OCEAN.

The imagination of the sailor, feverish from the contemplation of such astounding wonders, is further excited by the real dangers to which at all times he is exposed. There is but a plank between him and eternity, and a frequent realization of that fact tends to heighten the feeling of sublimity with which the sailor contemplates the sea. The vessel on which he floats is but a speck in the immensity of watery space, and however dull and unintelligent he may be, he cannot but feel the insignificance of man and man's contrivances in the presence of Nature's greatest wonder. However calm the sea may be, he cannot but feel that it is the repose of measureless strength and that the placid waters about him cover the remains of thousands who braved Old Ocean in his might. For the sea is one vast charnel house. The few that dare the



passage of the main are but a handful to the myriads who slumber in its bosom. The earliest sea tales are of shipwreck; the earliest mariners made the ocean their winding sheet. Every storm claims its victims; every wind levies toll on human life and treasure. The power of man cannot curb the tempest; human skill is fortunate if, by its most adept exercise, it contrives to evade the fury of the blast. Old Ocean to-day rises in his might and drives man howling to his gods as in the days when Thor was supplicated in vain by the Norsemen who, in open boat, braved the anger of the billows.

#### IMAGINATION OF THE SAILOR.

The sea is the sailor's cradle; he looks to the time when it shall be his grave, so it is not strange that when he gazes from the bow of his ship into



DEMONS OF THE STORM.

the blue waves beneath, the eye of superstition should people the deep with unnatural forms; it is not wonderful that in the circling clouds he should behold the arms of demons stretched out to seize his vessel; that in the moaning of the tempest he should hear the voices of sirens luring him to destruction. Surrounded by mysteries, he readily imagines more than have an existence, and supplements the wonders of the sea with the creatures of his own heated fancy. Imagination is ever active, and the less certain the knowledge the more room for a flight of fancy. The early sailor had no scientific knowledge of the ocean's population, saw a little and imagined more.



He noted the crawling things drawn up by the net, cast on the shore by the storm, stranded by the tide, so hideous, so diabolically repulsive in their ugliness, and imagined far more than he saw. The sea has no bounds; why should it not contain monsters which, in size and hideousness, are to these what these are to the insects which float in the stagnant pond. Thus he peopled the vasty depths with frightful creatures. He saw himself and his vessel, after the utmost carefulness and skill, playthings of the elements, and concluded that he was the sport of chance, the plaything of destiny.

#### PORTENTS OF SAFETY AND DISASTER.

But, in sailor theology, God is good, and fate, though pitiless, never strikes without giving notice of the impending blow. Thus the old time sailor believed in signs—signs of the coming storm, of the approaching shipwreck. To him everything had a meaning. He availed himself of that curious weather wisdom characteristic of many animals and birds; the gull gave him notice of a change in weather; the stormy petrel followed his bark during the wildest hurricane; the albatross brought him calm. He carried the idea further: rats, so troublesome in dock and on shipboard during a voyage, were endued by him with greater foresight than he himself possessed; they deserted his ship before its last voyage began. Following the example set by the most ancient navigators, he divined by means of moon and stars; carrying with him to sea the superstitions of the land, he deemed Friday unlucky because it was the day on which the Crucifixion took place; Sunday fortunate, for it was the day of the Resurrection.

The sailor of the olden time was a curiosity. All remember him as depicted in the novels and romances of Dana and Marryatt and others; his bronzed visage, his eyes habitually half closed to elude the mingled glare of sun and sea; his chin whiskers grizzled with age and salt spray, his wide breeches, which he hitched up with one hand before starting on some unusually important undertaking; his quid of tobacco rolled into his cheek, his sea slang, his garrulity, his never ending stock of narrative, his love of the marvellous, his contempt for the land-lubber; we all know him, and love him too, in spite of his oddities. He is not quite extinct; occasional samples of him may be seen on the sailing vessels drawn into our ports by the puffing, bustling, hurrying tugs, the hackmen of the ocean which prowl up and down before our harbors waiting for a fare. When found, he is a treasure to the antiquarian and the story teller. In the busy brain beneath that bronzed and wrinkled front he has stowed away ten thousand odds and ends of superstitious fancy; bits of old time beliefs and practices which have come down through the ages; the flotsam and jetsam of a time when astrology was the only learned profession. He believes it unlucky to meet a woman on his way to the ship, for as Eve brought all evil into the world, so one of her descendants will, in some unaccountable fashion, cause mischief during the coming voyage. Nor does he speak of a land animal while fishing, for this would be unlucky;



land animals go about on foot, while fish have no feet, and although this may not be a sufficient reason, his superstition needs no other.

#### SINGULAR VAGARIES AND CONCEITS.

As a rule sailors are afraid to go to sea in a ship in which any one has been killed, for the killing, whether by accident or design, leaves a blood stain on the ship which can never be washed out, and one death is a premonition of many. Nor will he ship on a vessel of which the name has been changed; according to his creed, a change of name is unlucky for everything in nature except a woman; nor row in a boat which has once been overturned, for a re-

currence of the accident is absolutely certain. He dreams of shipwreck and deserts, lest his dream come true; he is afraid of a ship the name of which begins with a letter S or O, for he can recall a long list of vessels whose names began with these unlucky letters, and every one came to some sad fate. He is curiously inconsistent, for while a ship named for a saint is lucky, the festival of the saint is an unlucky day, and if he can help himself he will neither begin a voyage nor do any but absolutely necessary work on a holy day. He goes back into the history of the ships in which he is interested; if a man was hurt or killed at the launching of the vessel, he is certain ill-luck will follow it and all on board. He reviews



A WATER-SPOUT AT SEA.

its building; if the first stroke of the hammer drew fire from the nail, the vessel whose construction was thus unluckily begun is certain to be burned. He considers his own actions and those of others in the highest degree significant. A sneeze is always fortunate; before the time of Noah, no man sneezed but once, for the shock always killed him; but after the days of that patriarch, the children of men, as a special favor, were permitted to sneeze as often as they pleased, provided that in memory of the former evil consequences they should accompany the act with a benediction; hence, the old sailor sneezes with great gusto, and the other old sailor by his side says: "God bless you," after each sneeze. To cough is unlucky; to spit, even more so, save on his hook, and

the worst luck of all is to have a quarrel with his wife before starting. He will not throw overboard a burning coal, though why he cannot for the life of him tell; nor will he mend his clothing when the winds are contrary. He will whistle during a calm to raise a breeze, and when the breeze is blowing will curse the whistlers, lest by their musical efforts a storm should be provoked. He will not tell the number of fish he has caught, nor will he thank you for asking him, nor admit a white stone as ballast into his fishing boat. When he goes for herring he will toss a penny over the bow, and before leaving the shore will see that his boy is handy to throw an old shoe after the departing boat. When on his way to his craft he will turn pale at seeing a footprint in the sand, and when in the offing will turn his boat from left to right so as to go with the sun. He will not turn a loaf of bread upside down, nor begin a voyage without some salt in his pocket. He has a horror of rice, which he terms "strike-me-blind," and will not under any circumstances eat the heart of a fish. He has unlucky days besides Fridays, and the saints' days. The first Monday in April is bad, it was Cain's birthday; the second Monday in August is worse, for on that day Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed; the thirty-first of December is the worst of all, for on that day Judas hanged himself. To work on St. Peter's Day is extremely unfortunate; St. Peter is the patron of fishermen and sailors, and desires that they keep his festival as a holiday. He has a horror of the thirteenth of each month; it is the Devil's Day. On the principle "the better the day, the better the deed," he considers Sunday the most lucky for any enterprise.

#### FOREBODINGS AND LUCKY AMULETS.

To the sailor an eclipse is a dire portent of evil; a meteor is a lucky omen; the Aurora Borealis is a certain forerunner of disaster. A moaning sound from the sea forebodes a storm with loss of life; when it is heard, the spirits of the sea are calling for the souls of men. He derives omens from animals; he watches the porpoise, the cat, the bird; the gambols of shoals of porpoises indicate coming change; if in bad weather, to good; if in fair weather, to foul. The cat washes her face before the storm; the albatross which accompanies his ship brings him bad luck, but nothing is gained by shooting the bird, an act which is certain to be followed by the wreck of the ship, though the albatross may be caught with a bit of pork on a hook, and brought on deck to die without serious result. He regards himself fortunate when land birds alight on his yards, but will not allow them to be caught, for this would be cold welcome to the stranger. The cat is uniformly bad, and more especially so when the color is black, and he cites cases where such an animal has caused the loss of a vessel and all her crew. Nor is it any more fortunate for a crow or a raven to perch on the ship's tackle. When such an accident occurs at the beginning of a voyage he will desert if possible, and if he cannot, will bemoan the fate that lies before him. He considers many places ill-omened; Eddystone Rock, the Straits of Messina, where in ancient days Scylla and Charybdis lurked for the unwary voy-



ager; the Strait of Babelmandeb, at the entrance to the Red Sea, which is haunted by the souls of the Arab slave traders and their victims; the Cape of Good Hope, notwithstanding its name; Cape Hatteras, Cape Race off Newfoundland; the Labrador coast, the South coast of Ireland. He carries charms against spirits of the storm; likes to see a lucky figurehead on his ship, or an inscription on some part of the vessel; he has animal charms; a bit of the sea



NEPTUNE AND THE SIREN.

calf's skin protects him from the lightning, though a fox tail, a gull's wing or an eagle's beak is almost equally good; he likes to have a bag of sea shells handy, or a shark's tooth as a protection against shipwreck; though a branch of coral is good for this, as well as to stop bleeding and to keep off the evil eye. In default of a shark's tooth, a bit of coral or a piece of amber, he will be satisfied with a horse shoe nailed against the mast, or a bunch of garlic hung in the cabin. He objects to certain kinds

of passengers; priests, clergymen of any denomination, he regards as extremely bad company on a voyage; Paul was shipwrecked thrice, and the experience of Jonah was anything but reassuring. His very soul revolts at the idea of having a corpse on board; he will not embark with one, and is ready to mutiny if a dead body is not at once committed to the deep and midnight burials are recommended because the spirit is then least likely to reappear to the living.



**WITCHES AND STORM-BREEDERS.**

Nor does the sailor's superstitious creed end here. He believes in storm-breeders. He knows that in the olden times witches had power to raise storms; he knows there were witches then, for numbers of them were hung and burned; why should they not now have the same power they had two or three hundred years ago. He has a suspicion that the ringing of bells is potent to call up storms, and is equally certain that the death of a great man will have the same effect. He has known a storm to be brought on by card playing on board his vessel; he has known the storm to pass away by the power of prayer. To obtain a fair breeze, he deems it necessary to flog a boy at the mast; to obtain a favorable wind he will burn an old broom, while to secure a return of the sun, a little dust from the chapel of some saint, or other holy place, sprinkled on the waves, will secure the desired result. For a captain not to pay his debts before sailing is the worst possible misfortune; the voyage will certainly be disastrous. Equally bad luck is it for the thoughtless passenger to cut his nails or hair during a calm, for a storm is certain to succeed. All these and a thousand fancies like them he steadfastly believes, but for the faith that is in him, he will not assign any reason; indeed, he cannot; his notions have come down to him through generation after generation of sailors; he believes them because his fathers did, and is astonished that any one should ask for a better reason. The steam engine and electricity have pushed the old sailor into the background; the world has no longer time to listen to his stories; the steam engine does his work, heaves his anchor, furls his sail; his cheerful "Yo Heave, oh!" is becoming every year more rare, but he has made his imprint on the world's thought, and his superstitions are as much a part of literature as the tales of knightly daring.

**MERMAIDS, SIRENS AND SEALS.**

From him the world learned of the existence of the mermaid and the siren. These beautifully poetic creatures of the old sailor's imagination have long since been explained away. Even the old sailor himself is compelled to confess that the curious resemblance borne by the heads of several varieties of the seal family to the human countenance misled him, and that he was honestly mistaken there can be no doubt, and many a man who has seen in the waves near his boat, the strange human-like face and soft pleading eyes of a large seal, is ready to excuse the old sailor's error. Nor was the siren story so much in fault as might be supposed, for the seal has a voice, and on occasion gives utterance to a plaintive moan which, by no great stretch of imagination, can be understood as a song luring men to destruction. Wonderfully beautiful and strikingly poetic are some of the mermaid and siren legends, and the sailors of every land, in unconscious emulation, have gone on elaborating them until many are finished products of imaginative fancy. On one coast the mermaid is a benevolent being, warning poor Jack of approaching peril; on another, she lays aside her fishy scales and dances on the beach, while the wily peasant, unheeding



of his peril, watches her gambols from the seclusion of a neighboring boulder. In one country, she forms an attachment to an earthly lover, leaves her coral caverns in the deep, enters his home and makes him a loving wife for years. Forgetting her weird origin, he reproves her as though she were an earthly maiden, whereupon indignant at the insult she leaves the house; her children follow her, the sheep and oxen come at her call, the tables and chairs fall into line, the pots and pans and trunks put out feet from their sides and make a part of the procession; she commands, and the calf that was slaughtered the day before comes down from the peg on which it hung; the pigs, which were



THE MERMAID QUITTING THE HOME OF HER HUSBAND.

to form the winter's store of food, join their severed limbs and come forth from the barrels and down from the hooks; and the seal-wife and all that she brought her husband, walk in solemn silence to the sea, pass into its waves and disappear forever.

#### HORSES AND OXEN OF THE SEA.

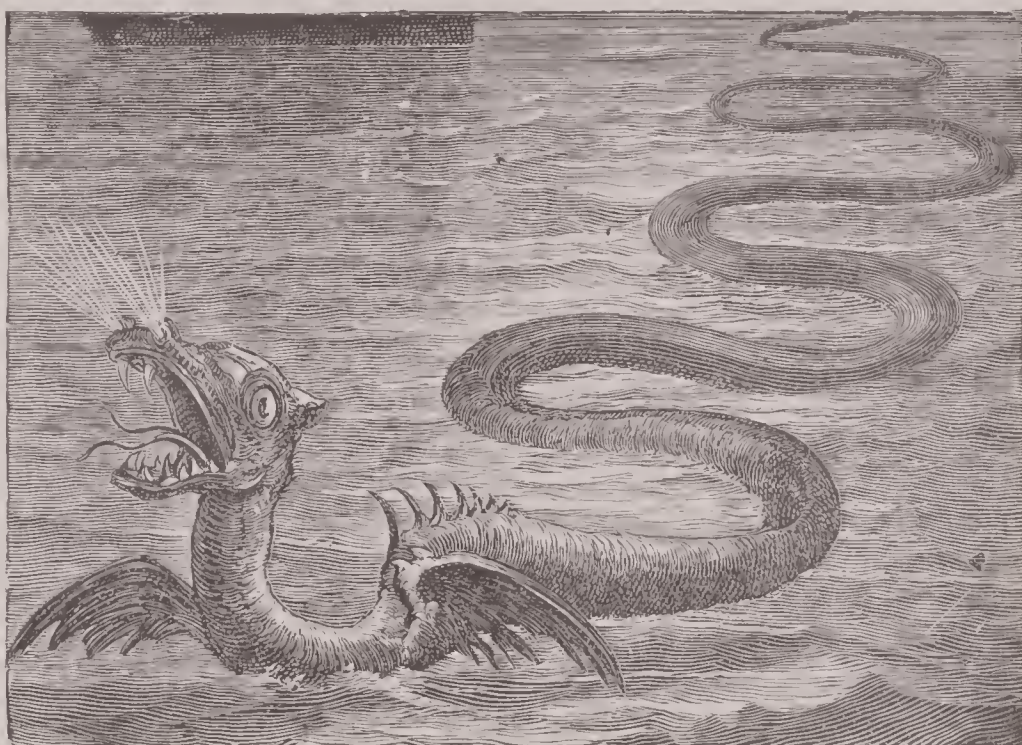
Yet stranger grow the stories of the wonders of the sea: It has its horses, fiery chargers, which leave the limpid waters and feed along the grassy shore. They are taken by men; are tamed, subdued; but will answer only to the touch of a warrior's heel. The peasant harnesses them to his plow; they rebel, and with



mighty power draw him and his unworthy contrivance headlong into the watery gulf. It has its oxen, patient as those of land, and fortunate is the farmer who succeeds in mastering one of these humble, toiling brutes, for day and night will it labor for him, never stopping, never resting, never sleeping, and for food requiring only a mouthful of sea water, a breath of air laden with the smell of salty spray. It brings him wealth, good fortune and honor, and if well treated may learn in time to speak and divulge the secret treasures of the ocean's caves.

#### MONSTROUS SERPENTS AND OTHER FRIGHTFUL FORMS.

And still the marvels come, for there is the sea-serpent, and the old sailor rejoices when he remembers this monster, for so often has the serpent, or something like it, been seen, that its existence seems undisputed. The ocean contains the largest known animal, and who shall say there may not be others in its depths so vast that even the whale may lose its superiority. The sailors of many ships have testified to having seen an animal of great size and shaped like a serpent; more than one scientific observer has had a glimpse of such a creature, and when we know that even the animals of the land are not yet numbered, may it not be possible that the deep, in extent three times that of the land, may contain such a creature as the once mythical sea-serpent. The existence of the Kraken may be doubted, thinks the old sailor; the Kraken was too greatly enlarged by its discoverers. It stands to reason, even to ancient mariner reason, that there could be no creature so large as to cause a tidal wave all along the coast of Europe when it rose to breathe. He doubts the old story of the shipwrecked mariners landing on the Kraken under the belief that it was a deserted island, and only discovering their mistake when, after building a fire on its back the aggrieved animal sank to cool the smart, leaving his insulters to their fate. Vast as the Kraken was, the story was bigger, and, like the giant in the fable, it died of its own size, though not until, as many assert, it had dragged hundreds of ships and their crews to destruction.

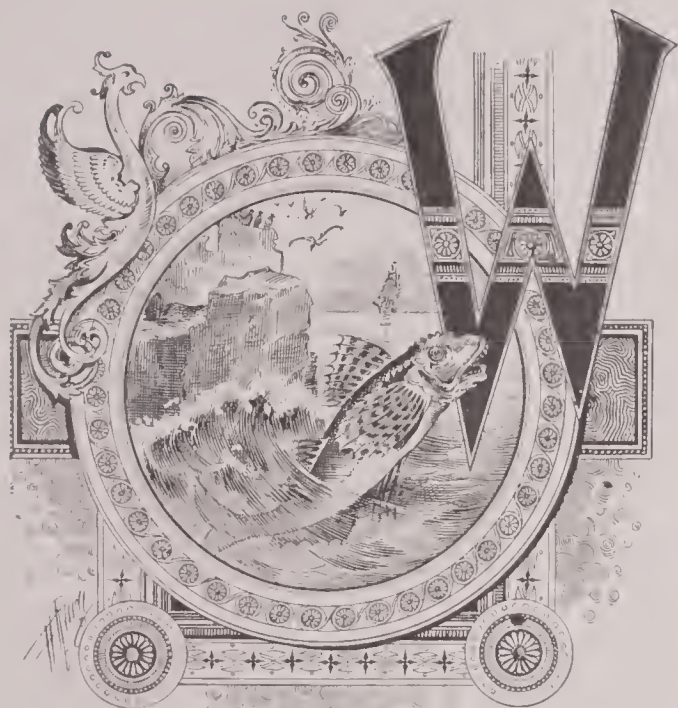


THE SEA-SERPENT.



## CHAPTER VI.

### STORY OF THE DOOMED BISHOP.



WONDERS of animal life in the sea were supplemented through superstition by fanciful human creations which were made a part of the marine kingdom. There was the monk-fish, for example, who inhabited the sea off the west coast of Ireland. He was a monk who, for a great crime, had been condemned to pass thousands upon thousands of years of penance in the form of a fish. Every Christmas Eve he came to the shore at the ruins of a small chapel that stood in one of the bays of the South of Galway, and inquired, "Is it time?" when a voice from the chapel answered "No," and, with a sigh, the monk-fish sank beneath the waves to wait again another year. His existence could not

be questioned, for there were the ruins of the chapel to prove it. To be sure, no one had ever seen him, no one had ever heard him ask the question, nor had the ghostly response ever fallen on mortal ear, but what did that matter when everybody knew the tale was true. And there was the Bishop-fish who lived in the Mediterranean. He had been the first Bishop of Malta, and was consecrated by Paul himself after the escape of the apostle from the tempest's fury. The Bishop was a contrary prelate, and thought he knew more than the apostle, and when he baptized his converts, he went to the seashore and used salt water, in spite of the saints' prohibition. So, when Paul came back to Malta, he said to the Bishop, "You love the sea, go and live in it until the fires of Ætna cease to burn." And the poor Bishop is still waiting. Off the coast of Sicily he raises his head from the waves and watches the summit of the great volcano, and every eruption sends him into despair, for fear the flames will never cease. He does not show himself to men, though the Sicilian fishermen sometimes think they catch a glimpse of him just as he is going down, but everybody knows Paul was in Malta, and Ætna still sends out fire and lava, and what better proof can be asked.

### APPARITIONS AND PHANTOMS OF THE SEA.

Nor are these the only contributions the old sailor has made to literature. He has given it phantoms and apparitions amazing from their number, appall-

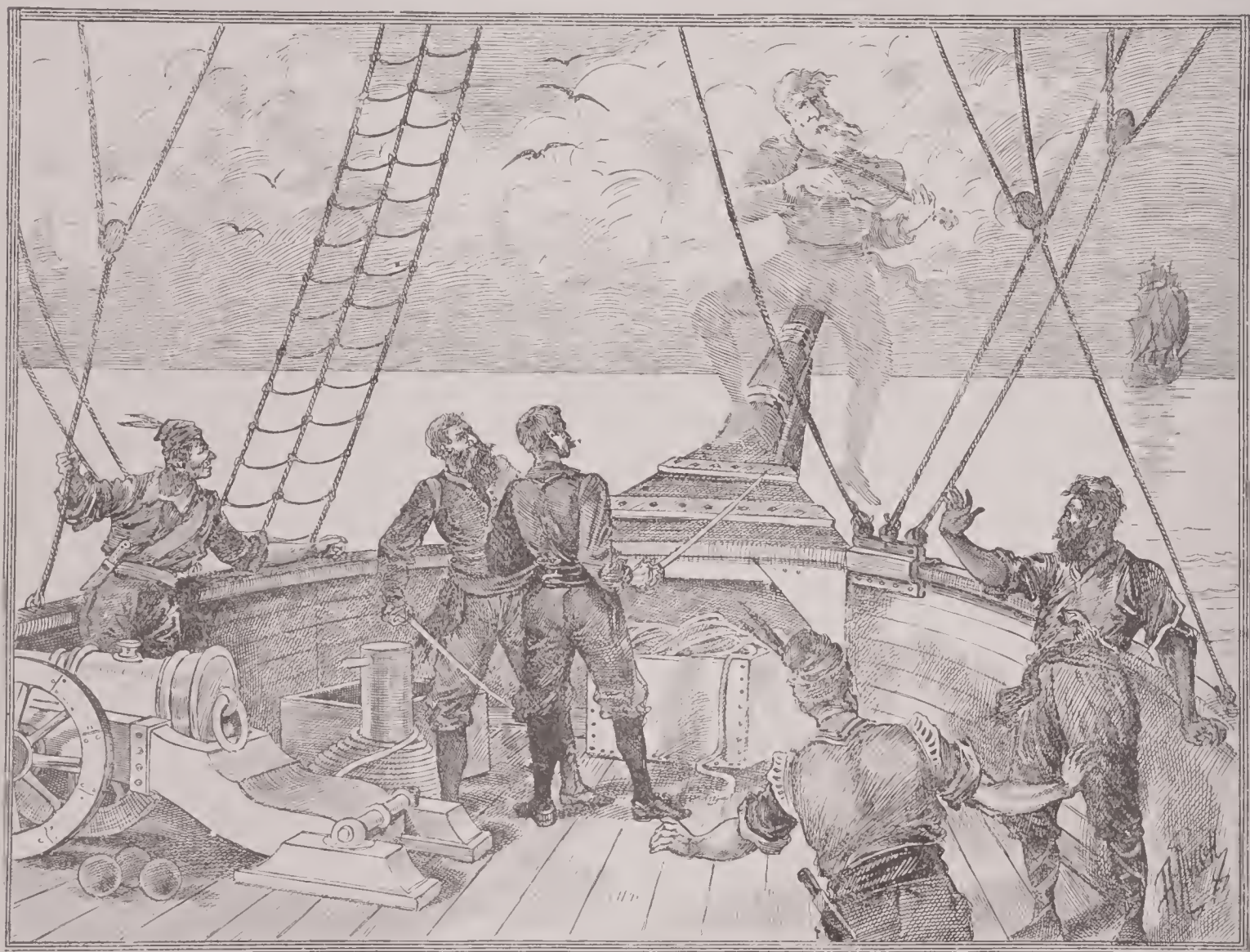
ing from the horrors with which his fancy has painted them. He has peopled the world of waters with beings of an ethereal kind; with weird forms, with unsubstantial shapes, with shadowy lands. He has given the novelist material for a thousand tales, the poet matter for a score of epics. It is impossible to overrate the literary value of material which had its origin in the sailor's fancy. Every human being has, somewhere in his composition, an element of poetry, and a poetic germ, developed through successive generations, produces luxuriant fruit. Sailor literature is full of ghosts, for the sailor is a firm believer in the immortality of the soul. There is endless variety in the phantoms, for endless are the complications which give rise to the ghost. Sometimes the supernatural visitants are benevolent, coming to warn of impending danger. Such a spectre appeared in 1664, to Captain Rogers of the British Navy. He was heading for the Hatteras Capes, but still deemed himself at a safe distance, when one night, as he was seated in his cabin, he glanced up from his book and beheld on the other side of the table the spectre of a sailor who had been drowned during a previous voyage. "Go on deck," said the ghostly visitor, "and look about you," and then vanished. The captain did so, but seeing nothing unusual returned to his cabin and lay down. Hardly had he done so, than the sailor's ghost again stood by him, and bade him go on deck and heave the lead. He obeyed, and to his horror found but seven fathoms, and immediately ordered the ship put about. It was done, and when morning came the captain discovered the capes in plain view, and had it not been for the supernatural warning all on board would probably have been lost.

#### THE SPIRIT OF A MURDERED FIDDLER.

Sometimes the spectres give an omen of approaching death, as in the story told by Grant: An officer of the English Navy was pacing the deck when his sister's spirit appeared to him, and he fell to the boards insensible at the touch of her cold hand. She died that day and hour, and during a storm on his next cruise, again the spectre appeared, passing over the side and beckoning him to follow. A few hours after the last appearance a giant wave swept him overboard. Sometimes they come back to torment those who in life had offended them. Dana tells such a story, of a sailor whose dearest possession was a violin, on which he could play but one melody, "The Girl I left behind me." The sailor was brutally murdered by the captain, and on the night after the body had been committed to the deep, the spirit of the murdered man took a position on the bowsprit and played his favorite tune. A storm of terrific power came on, and in the midst of the blast were heard the strains of the ghostly violin; higher and higher they rose as destruction became more and more imminent, and the spirit could be seen laughing in glee at the horror of the affrighted officer as he stared death in the face. Sometimes ghosts appear only at the moment when their victims are passing into the spirit world, as in the tale told by Gregor: A sailor had deserted his sweetheart who died of grief. During the course of the next cruise, he told his companions that Jenny



would come for him, because he frequently dreamed that she was calling him. One night when the sky was clear and the sea smooth, his companions heard him cry, "Yes, Jenny, I am coming," and beheld him leap overboard and distinctly saw the spirit of the deserted girl receive him in her arms as his body cleared the vessel. Sometimes the wicked ghost lurks about the place of its crime, as the spirits of the buccaneers haunt the islets of the Caribbean, and as the ghost of Captain Kidd guards his hidden treasures on Long Island Sound. Again the spectre appears to prevent the memory of some terrible crime from fading from the minds of men, as the screaming woman of Marblehead still



THE GHOSTLY FIDDLER.

cries along the beach. She was a Spaniard, the wife of a captain whose vessel was taken by pirates. The outlaws brought the ship and her crew to Oakum Bay and there murdered all who refused to join their band. The lady in vain begged for mercy for herself and husband; but it was refused, and she was dispatched by a sabre in the hands of one of the outlaws; so, every year on the anniversary of the horrid deed, the whole scene of the massacre is re-enacted in the secluded glen where the butchery was consummated; again the lady flees from the cruel steel, again her screams for mercy are echoed by the cliffs. Some-



times the spectres give notice of their own death, as in North Germany the spirits of sailors drowned at sea go into their own houses on the shore, drop a trail of sea water after them on the floor, and leave the chairs and beds on which they reclined soaked with the briny liquid.

#### STORIES ABOUT SPECTRAL CREWS.

Occasionally the spectres come in companies. The Maine fishermen have a story of the *Hascall*, a fishing vessel which broke from her anchorage on George's Banks and ran down the *Andrew Johnson*. For many years after, the ghosts of the drowned sailors would come on board the *Hascall* and go through the motions of fishing and, so general was the belief that no sailor would go on the ship, no man would buy her, and at length she was broken up, because no further use could be made of her. Often the spectres accompany the "fires of St. Elmo," electrical lights which appear on the masts of ships during foul weather, and more than one sailor historian has seen the supernatural visitors and described their appearance.

The range of superstitious fancy is not confined to the limits of ship's decks, for all sailors can tell of sunken cities, engulfed for the crimes of their inhabitants. These unfortunates are in some cases still imprisoned beneath the waves, and only occasionally are allowed to go on shore for the purpose of attending divine service. At Ballyvaughn, on the west coast of Ireland, a boat was, one Sunday morning, noticed approaching the shore. The people in it disembarked, proceeded to the church, which they entered, reverently took part in the worship, retired, passing through a wondering crowd who knew them not, re-entered their boat, put to sea, and when a mile or more from shore suddenly sank, returning to the city whence they had come, and where, tradition affirms, they must remain for a whole century ere they can have another outing.

And old salts tell of islands which come and go; which are here to-day and gone to-morrow; which have never been trodden by foot of man, which are the abodes of demons. One such travels up and down the Irish coast, appearing at various points once in seven years; another is seen from time to time off the coast of Spain. Very dangerous are these travelling rocks, for no mariner can tell at what moment he may find the wandering island rising under his bow, when of course all hope is at an end.

#### THE PHANTOM SHIP.

It is easier to imagine a wandering ship than a wandering island, so the tale of the Phantom Vessel is the best known and most poetical of all the nautical legends. Novelists have used it, poets have embellished it, dramatists have put it on the boards with all the accessories of magnificent scenery, composers have made it familiar to the lovers of music in more than one famous opera. The story is told with variations by the sailors of every land, but a striking similarity exists in the main point of all the



legends,—in each the vessel is condemned to wander forever on account of a great crime committed by the captain. The commonly accepted version

of the story is that given by Jai: An unbelieving Dutch captain, endeavoring to double Cape Horn against the force of a head wind, profanely swore that he would persist in his course in spite of the decrees of Providence. Undeterred by the remonstrances of his crew, he laughed at their fears, made some of them, who threatened mutiny, walk the plank from the deck into the sea, and flogged others at the mast. Cries from suffering victims rose to heaven, and holy spirits swooped down before him and made merciful appeals to the enraged wretch, but at some he threw dish-water, at others he fired a pistol, and finally a voice from above proclaimed that on account of his blasphemy he should be condemned forever to sail the sea, the evil genius of sailors.



THE PHANTOM SHIP.

Thus the appearance of the Flying Dutchman is ever dreaded as the forerunner of disaster. O'Reilly sings :



"Heaven help the ship near which the demon sailor steers,  
The doom of those is fixed to whom the Phantom Ship appears ;  
They'll never reach their destined port, they'll see their homes no more ;  
They who see the Flying Dutchman never, never reach the shore."

#### IN PURSUIT OF THE SPECTRAL SHIP.

The Phantom Ship brings sudden squalls and howling tempests. She leads those who follow in her wake on to shoals, quicksands and reefs. She is the Purgatory of wicked sailors ; her skeleton crew is composed of the souls of thieves, murderers, pirates who are condemned to everlasting toil, with no rest, no play, and very little food. The Phantom Ship is never seen twice under the same circumstances. By one she is beheld in the midst of the storm, with all sails set, placidly plowing her way through the wildest billows ; by another, she is beheld on a calm night, with sails closely reefed, pitching and tumbling as though in a terrible storm. All the main features of the legend are detailed by Marryatt in his *Story of the Phantom Ship*. In this remarkable sea-tale the incidents are told by her captain, who narrates his adventures from the time when, on account of impiety, he was condemned to wander, until, by the restoration of a relic, his aimless voyages came to an end. The dramatic feature of the tale lies in the fact that the captain's son undertakes his redemption, and filled with a filial purpose follows the Phantom Ship to and fro over the watery waste. He sees her first in a cloud, just at sunset, and his ship approaches so close to the spirit vessel that the whistles of the boatswain, the orders given on the decks, the rattling of the cordage are plainly heard. Again he beholds her in a good breeze, her hull enveloped in mist. A gun is fired from her bow ; voices are heard and the trampling of the crew as they man the ropes, and she passes out of sight. Again he sees her as she decoys other vessels into dangerous waters, herself passing over the reef without altering her course, and at last she rises slowly out of the water, a demon ship, and awaits the coming of the boat sent by her pursuers.

#### GHOSTLY SHIPS OF EXTRAORDINARY PROPORTIONS.

The Flying Dutchman is not the only phantom vessel ; the sailors of the olden time had many, some of gigantic size. The Frisians believed in a Phantom Ship so large that the captain rode about on horseback giving his orders ; the sailors, who, as boys, started aloft to execute an order, came down as old men ; in the rigging were dining-halls ; the cabin was larger than all England. But even this mighty craft was a toy boat compared to the *Chasse Foudre*, "The Lightning Chaser," of old French mariners, which was so large that seven years were required to tack or change her course ; when she rolled, whales were stranded on the shore ; thirty thousand men were thirty years in digging the iron to make her hull. Her cables were as thick as the diameter of St. Peter's dome and so long that they could seven times encircle the globe ; her lower masts were so tall that a boy grew white-headed before reaching the first yard ; her smallest sail was larger than all Europe ; twenty-five



thousand soldiers could manœuvre on the cap which covered the top of the main-mast; in her fore-castle was a garden larger than the whole of France; in every block of the rigging there was a tavern; every quid of tobacco used by one of her sailors would supply a frigate's crew for three years; a dram of grog was composed of seventeen hogsheads of rum, to say nothing of the water. These were stories of the olden times, when the Phantom Ship was in her prime; but within the last three centuries she gradually diminished in size, until sixty years ago she was no larger than an ordinary vessel. She still remained, however, a place of punishment for wicked sailors, and some who beheld her saw death-heads grinning from her ports, a skeleton captain walking her bridge, the corpse of a seaman on the lookout, and a ghost taking his trick at the wheel. She is sometimes inhabited by demons, who chastise the spirits of evil seamen with whips of scorpions; dogs are set to guard the prisoners and inflict ten thousand tortures on the hapless wretches; in her fore-castle, cabin and hold, serpents, cats, hobgoblins, creeping things, all kinds of horrors abound.

#### A MONK WHO VISITED THE ISLANDS OF THE DAMNED AND THE BLESSED.

The Phantom Ship takes long voyages; visits strange countries. The lost continent of Atlantis is its frequent destination, although sometimes it lets fall its anchor at the Isles of the Blessed. According to tradition, these were located to the west of Ireland, but judiciously shifted their position as the sea became better known. They were, however, sometimes visited even by the living. St. Brandan, an Irish monk, started to explore them in a phantom boat, and after sailing twenty-four days and nights, came to an island of fiends and volcanoes, where whole fleets of phantom ships were at anchor in the harbor, and spectral sailors wandering to and fro on the shore. Such a spectacle as a monk had never before been seen on the island. He was attacked by the demons, and was only saved by the intercession of a saint more powerful than himself, who conducted him through the island, showed him all the torments in progress, and gave him material for a narrative closely resembling the story of Dante. Leaving this horrid island, after twenty-four days and nights he arrived at the Islands of the Blessed, which were filled with delights of every kind. No night was there, nor heat of the sun; pleasant prospects charmed the eye; soft music from unseen sources fascinated the ear; every flower was fragrant, every taste a pleasure. In this paradisaical place the good monk probably spent the remainder of his days, for we do not hear more of his adventures.

#### ORIGIN OF THE GHOSTLY SHIP.

Since the ocean has been thoroughly explored and its lands located, the Islands of the Cursed and of the Blessed have alike disappeared, but not so the spectral ship; and it is a curious fact that science has supported the old sailor in his superstition by often presenting to the most skeptical a view of the phantom vessel. The mirage is more common on the water than on land,



and it often happens that a vessel or fleet many miles distant is plainly in view of men on shore, or of mariners at sea. Too many instances are recorded to doubt the fact, and the observers are too cautious to be deceived. During Owen's travels he visited Port Danger, of the South Africa coast, and there he and all with him beheld in the offing the British man-of-war *Barracouta*. So plainly visible was the vessel that she was recognized by all on shore; even the figures on her deck were plainly to be seen. Some days after she arrived, when it was proven that she was three hundred miles away at the time her spectral counterpart sailed into the harbor and vanished. At Oporto, Lisbon,



ST. BRANDAN ON THE ISLAND OF FIENDS AND PHANTOMS.

Marseilles, and other ports of Southern Europe, the phantoms of vessels are often seen during the summer season a day or two before their arrival; in the North Sea, the spectre of a ship upside down is a certain forerunner of bad weather. The Fata Morgana, a daily phenomenon in the Straits of Messina,



shows the phantoms of vessels in all sorts of positions and with all kinds of distortion. Sometimes the ship is in the air; sometimes a double reflection is presented in the water; occasionally there are three images of the same vessel, two in the water and one in the air. The tropical seas are full of optical wonders. The Arctic Region abounds with reflected images; of icebergs, of mountains, of continents, of vessels. All these things have become familiar to the modern scientist, and for all a natural explanation has been found. The Flying Dutchman is not an optical delusion, but an optical reality, so the old sailor was right in one particular, the basis of the story; and, given a starting point, the rest was easy. A derelict bark, seen under circumstances of danger, perhaps gave rise to the supernatural appearance of the phantom; a vessel whose crew were all dead of the plague—a slaver laden with fetid corpses—gave the idea of the wandering ship haunted by the souls of the dead. The presence of electrical lights at the mast-heads, the brilliancy of the Aurora Borealis, the appearance of peculiar mists, the resonance of the air at certain times, did the rest and embellished the tale with all its fanciful and grotesquely horrible additions.

#### A REAL FLYING DUTCHMAN.

There was even a good reason why the wandering vessel should be a Dutchman. At the time the legend was crystallizing the Dutch were the best sailors in the world; cool, impassive, little prone to excitement, their remarkable skill was naturally attributed to sorcery. It is even asserted that the Flying Dutchman was a real person, by name Bernard Fokke, of the seventeenth century. He was a reckless, daring seaman who, that he might carry the more sail in a high wind, cased his masts with iron. One voyage to India he made in ninety days, then an unprecedented rate of speed, and so rapidly did he traverse the water-world that even in his own time he was believed to be in league with Satan. But Bernard took one risk too many, and setting sail from Amsterdam with the expressed determination to beat his own record to India, was never afterwards heard of, and of course Satan took him and the ship and set them to travelling up and down the world to the bewilderment of better men.

#### DYING SUPERSTITION.

The steamship dissipated the legend by taking away its most attractive feature, for the steam vessel, as easily as the phantom, can move against wind and tide. The use of better lights on board ship banished the ghosts, for it is well known that no ghost can stand the glare of an electric lamp. The old sailor himself will soon be as rare as his spectres, for with improved navigation come increased confidence and decreased credulity. The sailor no longer feels his way across the sea, but calculates exactly where he is, knows how far he has travelled, how far he has still to go. Every rock in the ocean is laid down on the maps, and the seaman knows exactly what course to take to secure the safety of his vessel. He has confidence in his ship, and in his

ship's captain; the voyages of the present day are short in comparison to those of former years; appliances for the sailor's safety are more efficient than ever before; the hiss of escaping steam, the crashing of the propellers are a wonderful relief from the dead silence which once reigned over the deep. The sailor knows that on every headland in civilized countries around the globe a lamp blazes, warning him of danger; he hears the steam siren singing from every light-ship, but her voice is significant of peril, not an enticement to destruction. Fear, on eagle pinions, follows banished danger, and with whistle sounding and lights flashing from foretop and sides, with captain and first officer on the bridge, with second and third officers pacing the deck, with double lookout at the bow, the sailor plunges into the fog, forgetful of his phantoms.





## CHAPTER VII.

### MARCO POLO'S VISIT TO THE GREAT KHAN OF TARTARY.



MOST interesting and wonderful of all overland journeys of which history affords any account, is unquestionably that performed by Marco Polo who, proceeding from Venice, his native place, made a trip to the regions of the far east and abode with the great Khan of Chinese Tartary for a period of twenty-six years. A description of this most celebrated trip is especially important as an indispensable link in the chain which binds in harmonious sequence the voyages of discovery as I shall attempt to relate them; for to the report of Polo's travels are we indirectly indebted for the discovery of America.

Directly after Polo's return from Cathay, he caused to be printed an account of all the wonderful things that he saw in the east, in which was contained such extravagant descriptions of the inconceivable riches in gold, silver, precious stones, and valuable spices, which distinguished the country bordering on the Pacific, that Columbus, after reading Polo's book, became so ambitious to reach that auriferous region that he conceived the project of making a voyage westward, in the belief that, as the world was round, this route must offer the easiest and most direct passage to that country. It was in pursuit of this ambition and belief that Columbus discovered the West Indies on his first, and South America on his second voyage.

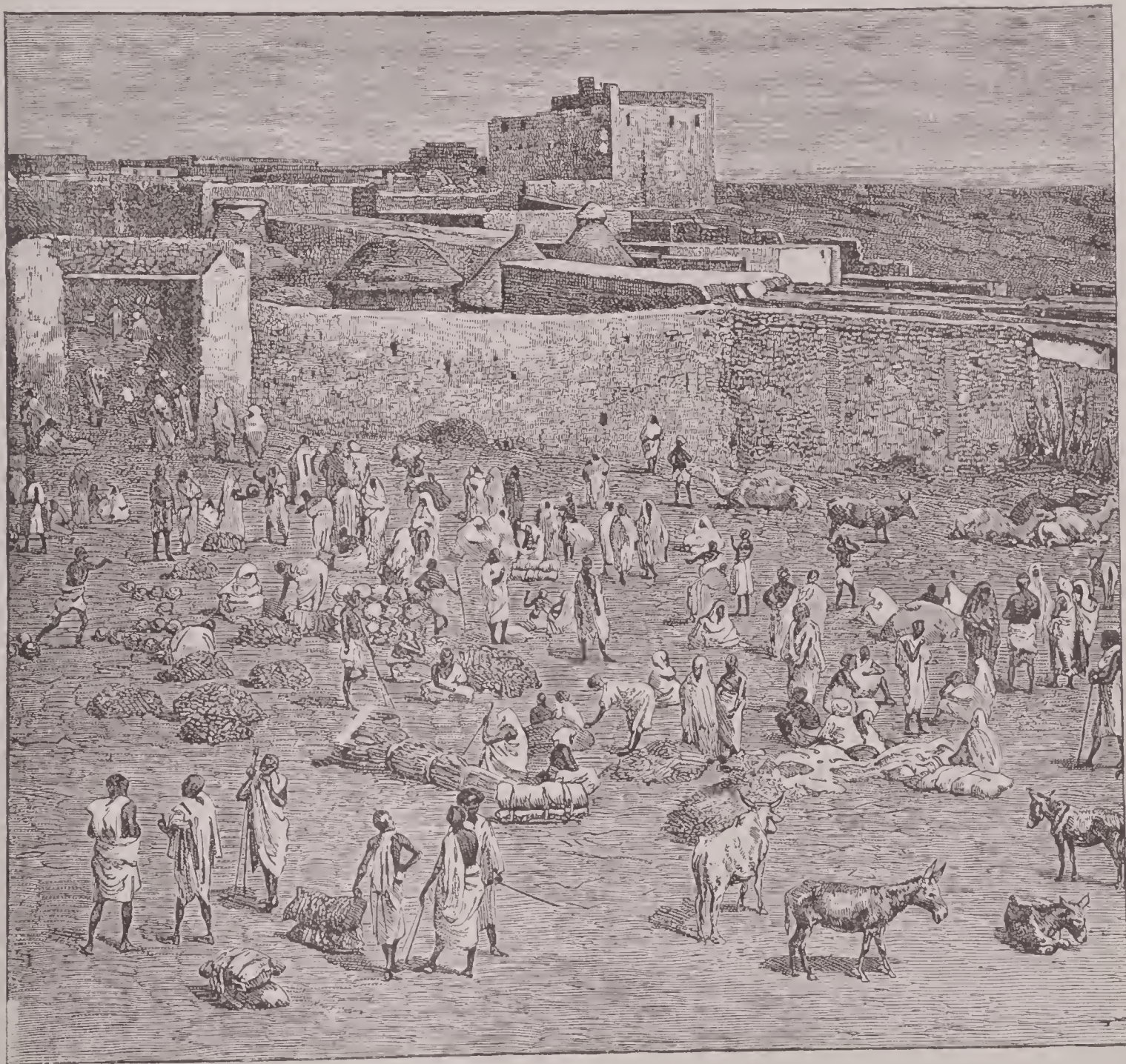
Directly after Columbus started on his first voyage, John Cabot had occasion to visit Mecca, and there seeing caravans arriving from the far east with great stores of spices, beheld in these what he considered as proofs of the stories that Polo had related, which he had previously doubted. Being now excited by the same ambitions that had actuated Columbus, Cabot set sail with a fleet equipped by some English merchants for farther India, which he likewise hoped to reach by a directly westward route, and thus came upon the shore of North America.

In view, therefore, of the importance and captivating interest which attaches to Polo's travels, it is proper to preface their relation with a brief notice of this most distinguished traveller.



## A COUNTRY ABOUT WHICH MOORE AND MILTON SANG.

The birth of Marco Polo is said to have occurred in the year 1254. His father, Nicolo, one of the most distinguished men of his time, had acquired an immense fortune in commercial pursuits, which finally led him, with his brother Maffei, to visit the Crimea with a view of extending his trade to the nations of the east. Ormus, at the entrance of the Persian Gulf, was the city



THE MARKET PLACE OF MECCA.

to which was directed the commerce of the east and the west, the people there making exchanges of goods as those of Asia and Europe do at Nishui Novgorod on the Volga to-day. Thus Ormus became in its day one of the richest cities on the globe, about whose wealth Milton afterwards sang. Nicolo and Maffei, after reaching the Crimea, were induced by promises of more lucrative trade in the farther east to extend their journey to Bokhara, celebrated



in Tom Moore's *Lalla Rookh*, and from thence they were induced to visit Kubla Khan, who was the Emperor of China. The country of China was not at that time described by its present limits, but included the whole of Tartary, of which latter country Genghis Khan was originally ruler, but having conquered China he annexed that country, and his successors made their seat of government at Cambaluc,—the modern Peking,—which Kubla Khan enlarged, fortified and glorified. The particular inducements which led the two Polos to visit the great Khan (which is the Tartar word for Emperor) are not understood, but they must have been considerable; and their coming was evidently heralded in advance, for the great Tartar ruler received them with every manifestation of cordial hospitality, as the first visitors to his country from European civilization.

#### THE KHAN SENDS FOR CHRISTIAN INSTRUCTORS.

After their residence for several years at Cambaluc, the two Polos were sent back by the Khan as envoys to Italy, bearing a golden tablet which served them as a passport through all the countries of the east, and a written request from the Khan to the Pope to send to China teachers of the Christian religion. On their return to Venice, however, they found Pope Clement IV. dead, and his successor not yet appointed. Nicolo Polo's wife had also died in the meantime, but directly after his departure for the far east had borne him a son who was now eleven years of age. The brothers remained in Venice for a period of two years, when they started again for the far east, accompanied by the lad, Marco, the hero of our narrative. Directly after their departure Gregory X., who had succeeded to the office of Pope, in compliance with the request which had been brought by the two Polos, sent two Dominicans to carry the Christian religion into the Tartan Empire. But before they had completed any considerable part of the journey they became discouraged by the hardships endured, and returned. Marco, with his father and uncle, continued on, however, intending to take a ship at Ormus and make the journey to China (or Cathay) by sea. But failing to find a ship ready upon their arrival at that place, they proceeded overland until they reached the hill country of Badakhshan, situated in Central Asia, where Marco falling sick they remained a considerable while, and until his recovery was complete. Thence their journey lay by way of the great desert of Gobi, which is 1200 miles long, and thence in a north-easterly direction until in the spring of 1275 the three reached Xanadu, where they were met by the imperial courtiers of Kubla Khan who conducted them to Cambaluc. Though their mission to the Pope had not been successful, the Khan was no less pleased to see them, and being favorably struck by the appearance of young Marco, he took him to the royal court and placed him under instructors, where the young Venetian speedily acquired a knowledge of four of the leading languages of Tartary, and thus fitted himself for active service under the Emperor. In the year 1277, Marco was attached to the Imperial Council, and was soon afterward sent by Kubla Khan

on a mission to Yunnan, which was a province in the extreme south-western part of China.

#### THE POLOS ATTACHED TO THE ROYAL COURT.

In the meantime, the two elder Polos remained with the great Khan, who never tired of showing them his favors, and who in turn received from them helpful suggestions and a knowledge of the usages of the extreme west, which he employed to the great advantage of his country. After Marco returned from Yunnan, and before he was yet twenty years of age, he was appointed to the position of governor of the city of Yangchow, the modern city of Hanchow. After a residence of nearly twenty years with the Tartan Emperor, the two elder Polos became anxious to return to their homes in Venice, having acquired great riches during their visit in the east. But their repeated requests for permission to visit Venice again were denied, through the desire of the Emperor to retain their wise counsels. But in 1292 their services as experienced travellers were sought by the Emperor to conduct to Tabreez a bride, chosen from among the Mongols, for a Persian Khan who was an ally of the Tartan Emperor. Under this commission, Marco and his father and uncle sailed from Chinchew. But after a perilous journey of nearly two years (a surprisingly long while), during which many of their companions perished, they succeeded in reaching their destination, only to find that the royal bridegroom had died in the meantime. According to the custom of the country, she was then married to the eldest son, after which the Polos returned safely to their country.



CHINESE WAR-SHIP OF THE TIME OF POLO.

In the year 1298 Venice became engaged in a war with Genoa, in which Marco enlisted, and in a naval battle which occurred between the two powers soon after, Polo was taken prisoner, and remained in the fortress of Genoa until peace was declared between the two republics, in July of the following year. During his imprisonment, he was persuaded by a fellow captive, Rusticiano, to dictate a description of his travels, that it might be published for the benefit of his countrymen. The narrative was written by Rusticiano in the Venetian language, but it was first printed in the Latin, from which it was directly after translated into the French. It is to the story thus related that we are indebted for the wonderful, interesting, and valuable history which is summarized in the following pages.







## DESCRIPTION OF MARCO'S TRAVELS.

Marco Polo begins the description of his journey with a resumé of the history of the great Tartan Empire. As his entire relation makes a book of considerably more than two hundred pages of the size of this, exceeding brevity causes me to hasten rapidly over the territory which he traversed. He relates the history of the extension of Tartan territory in the following manner:—"When the Tartans began to extend their conquests there were four brothers, the eldest of whom, named Mangu, reigned in Sedia. These purposing to subdue the world, went one to the east, another to the south, named Ulan, a third to the north, and the other to the west. In the year 1250, Ulan, having a great army of one hundred thousand horse, besides infantry, used policy, and having hid a great part of his men, brought by pretending flight the Caliph into his ambuscade, and took him to the city in which he found infinite store of treasure, insomuch that he was amazed. He sent for the Caliph, and reproved him, that in that war he had not provided himself with soldiers for defence, and commanded that he should be enclosed in that tower where his treasure was, without other sustenance.

## TALE OF A DEVOUT SHOEMAKER.

"This seemed a just judgment from our Lord Jesus Christ on him: for in the year 1225, seeking to convert the Christians to the Mohammedan religion, and taking advantage from that place in the Gospel, 'That he that hath faith, as a grain of mustard-seed, shall be able to remove mountains,' he summoned all the Christians, Nestorians, and Jacobites, and propounded to them in ten days to remove a certain mountain, or turn Mohammedan, or be slain, as not having one man amongst them which had the least faith. They therefore continued eight days in prayer, after which a certain shoemaker, in consequence of a revelation made to a bishop, was fixed upon to perform it. This shoemaker, once tempted to lust by the sight of a young woman in putting on her shoes, zealously had fulfilled that of the Gospel, and literally had put out his right eye with an awl. He now on the day appointed, with other Christians, followed the cross, and lifting his hands to heaven, prayed to God to have mercy on his people, and then with a loud voice commanded the mountain in the name of the Holy Trinity to remove; which presently, to the great terror of the Caliph and his people, was effected, and that day is since kept holy by fasting, also the evening before it."

It will be observed by the reader that the cities mentioned by Marco Polo have no place in our present geographies. The reason of this must be apparent upon consideration of the fact that, not only have several centuries elapsed, but on account of fierce wars which have agitated the Tartan Empire for a like period, there must have resulted not only the destruction of cities, but of tribes as well, and a change of routes, so that the face of the entire Tartan Empire has since undergone a complete transformation nor is it possible for us to accurately locate the places mentioned by Polo, though this in no wise affects the truthfulness of his relation.



**A PARADISE FILLED WITH PERIS.**

Having traversed the whole of Persia, Polo came at length to a city called Mulehet, which signified in the Saracen language the place of heretics, the prince of which was denominated "The Old Man of the Mountain," whose name it will be remembered occurs in the story of "Sinbad the Sailor," related in the "Arabian Nights." The true name of this ruler was Aloadine, and his religion was that of Mohammedanism. With the peculiar resources which distinguish the people of that creed, he had provided a singular means of attaching to himself, by the strongest bonds, the valorous youths of his country. Marco relates that this sovereign had "in a lovely valley, betwixt two mountains which were very high and inaccessible, caused a pleasant garden to be laid out, furnished with the best trees and fruits he could find, adorned with divers palaces and houses of pleasure, beautified with gilded bowers, pictures, and tapestries of silk. Through this place, by pipes to different parts of these palaces, ran wine, milk, honey, and clear water; in them he had placed beautiful damsels, skilful in songs and instruments of music and dancing, and to make sports and delights unto men whatsoever they could imagine. They were also richly dressed in gold and silk, and were seen continually sporting in the garden and palaces. He made this palace because Mohammed had promised such a sensual paradise to his devout followers. No man could enter it; for at the mouth of the valley was a strong castle, and the entrance was by a secret passage. Aloadine had certain youths, from twelve to twenty years of age, such as seemed of a bold and dauntless disposition, whom he instructed daily as to the delights of Mohammed's paradise, and how he could bring men thither; and when he thought proper, he caused a certain drink to be given to ten or twelve of them at a time, which cast them into a deep sleep, and then he caused them to be carried into several chambers of the said palaces, where they saw the things he described; as soon as they awaked, each of them had those damsels to supply them with meats and excellent wines, and yield all varieties of pleasure to them; inso-much that the fools thought themselves in paradise indeed.

**THE KEEPER OF PARADISE BROUGHT TO JUDGMENT.**

"When they had enjoyed these pleasures four or five days, they were cast into a sleep, and carried forth again; after which he caused them to be brought into his presence, and questioned them where they had been? who answered 'By your grace, in paradise;' and recounted to him all what hath been before mentioned. Then the Old Man answered; 'This is the commandment of our prophet, that whosoever defends his Lord, he allows him to enter paradise; and if thou wilt be obedient unto me, thou shalt have this grace;' and having thus animated them, he was thought happy whom the Old Man would command, though it cost him his life; so that other lords, and his enemies were slain by these assassins, who exposed themselves to all dangers and contemned their lives. Aloadine, having thus surrounded himself with so many





THE SENSUAL PARADISE OF ALOADINE.



brave young men, robbed all who passed through his territory, until in the year 1262, Ulan sent and besieged his castle, and after three years so reduced the robber chief by famine that he captured his capital and directly put him to death."

#### ILLUSIONS IN THE DESERT.

Passing through this territory of the robber chief, Marco Polo entered the city of Samarcand, which was situated in a most fertile plain which, though a part of the Khan's territory, was chiefly occupied by Christians. Beyond Samarcand was the city of Lop, through which merchants passed to Cathay. But directly beyond Lop lay a great desert which was most difficult to traverse, having neither water nor vegetation. In it, Marco reports, there were neither beasts nor birds, and it was rendered more dangerous by the superstitions of the people, who declared that it was inhabited by spirits, that caused great and marvellous illusions to travellers, and lured them to destruction. If a caravan became separated, it was believed that the travellers heard strange whisperings in the air and concerts of musical instruments, and the drums and noises of armies, which so disconcerted them that they were unable to see their way, and being thus led out of their course, would invariably perish on the burning sands.

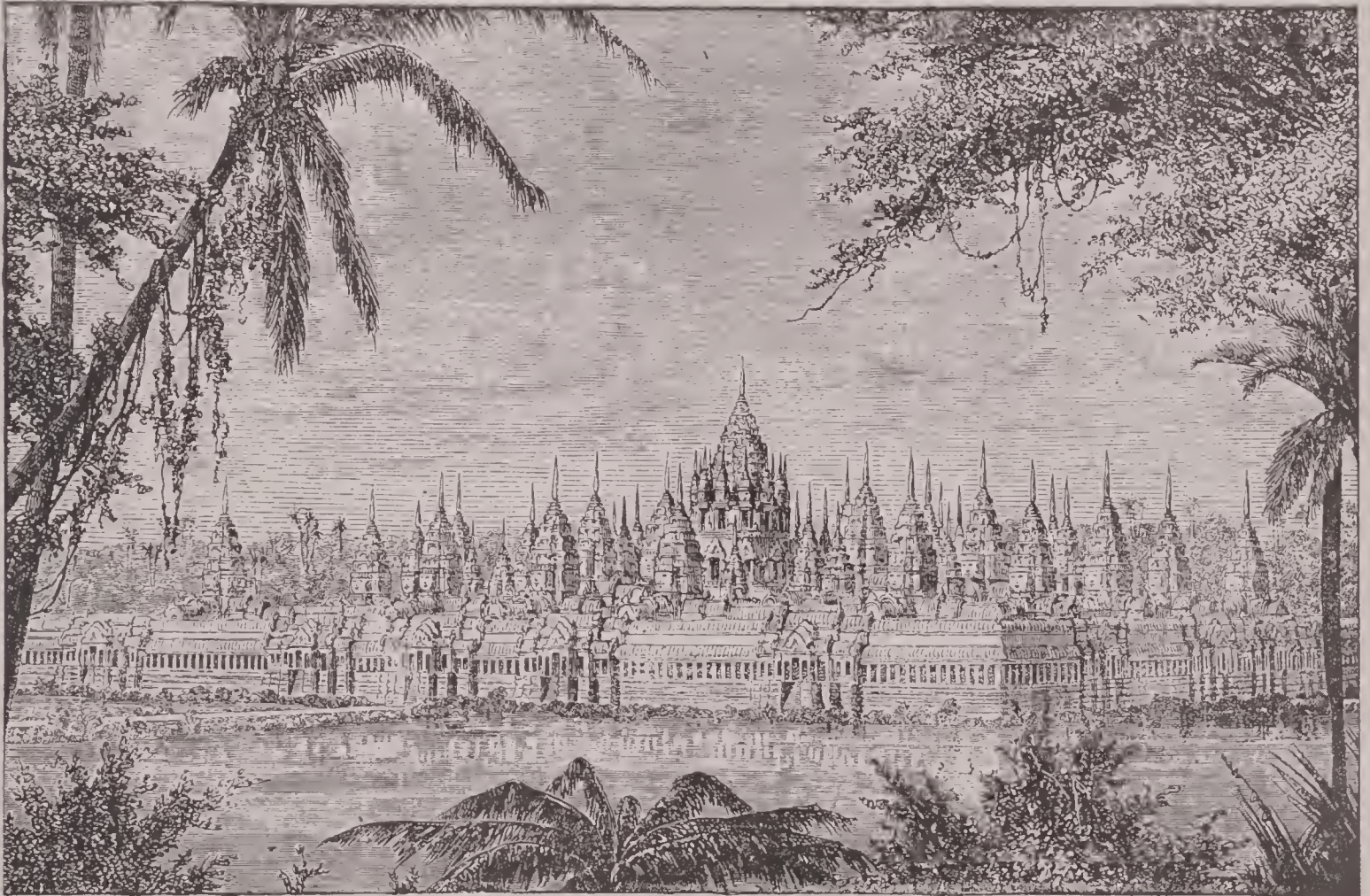
Beyond the desert lay the city of Sachion, which was in the province of Tangut. It was in the midst of a very fertile country, furnishing such abundance of fruits that the inhabitants lived chiefly off such products. Being idolaters, they practised many curious rites, and employed astrologers to forecast the future of every enterprise which they undertook. Their funeral rites were no less curious, their custom being to embalm their dead with spices and to cover the body with painted and embroidered cloths. The dead were also kept for many days in the house, and at meal-time a fair proportion of food was set before the bodies, in the belief that the soul of the dead lingered about and required nourishment the same as the living. The astrologers some times forbade the carrying out of a body through the chief gate, and not infrequently required that it be taken through an aperture broken through a wall in the house, to prevent, as they maintained, the interference of evil spirits, which played a conspicuous part in all their affairs. When the body was finally deposited in the ground, the custom was to paint the images of men and women and animals upon paper, which were burned over the dead body, and occasionally the body itself was burned at the same time, in the belief that these pictured images would serve the spirit of the deceased in the land to which it had emigrated.

#### A WONDERFULLY DEGRADING CUSTOM.

From Sachion, the Polos came to the province of Camul, which was also in that of Tangut, and subject to the Great Khan. The chief city was also called Camul, and though lying between two deserts, had a large number of inhabitants, who practised the most curious customs, but whose principal ambi-



tion was to glorify themselves with magnificent buildings and rich ornamentation. The people of Camul applied themselves to sensual pleasures of the most degrading character. Their chief occupation seemed to be sporting, singing, dancing, and the playing on musical instruments. But the most distinguishing characteristic, as related by our traveller, was the custom of abandoning the house and its female inmates to any stranger who might choose to seek entertainment. Describing this exceedingly strange practice Marco says: "When any traveller passing by goes into any man's house for entertainment, the master of the family receives him with great joy, and commands his wife and all the family, that as long as he will abide with them, they obey



THE CITY OF CAMUL.

him in all things. In the mean time he departs, and returns not so long as the guests remains at his house; and during all this space, the stranger is entertained by the wife and daughters, as if they were his own family. The women of the country are beautiful, and ready to obey all these commandments of their husbands, who are so besotted with this folly that they think it a glorious thing for them, and believe it so acceptable to their idols that through their favor, thus obtained, they prosper and enjoy plenty of all things." The Emperor, Mangu Khan, upon one occasion issued a command forbidding the folly of these people, which order they obeyed for a period of three years; but during this time, it happened that they were troubled with domestic afflictions and



failure of crops, which they attributed to their obedience to this order of their Emperor, and upon their petition to re-institute the custom, the Khan answered them, "Since you desire your reproach and shame, let it be granted you; go and do herein after your wont." The messenger returning with this answer brought great joy to all the people, and the custom was immediately renewed and was prevalent at the time of Marco's visit.

**INDESTRUCTIBLE CLOTH OF SALAMANDER SKIN.**

Beyond Camul lay the province of Chinchintalas, which was bounded on the north by a desert, and sixteen days' journey in extent. It had several



RUINS OF CARACARUM.

large cities and many castles, and was inhabited by Nestorians, Mohammedans, and idolaters. In this province, Marco maintains, there is a mountain where great numbers of salamanders were to be found, of the skins of which a cloth was made which would resist the action of fire. Marco does not relate the story as an eye witness, but received the statement from a Turk who was one of his companions, and a man whom he vouched for as being endowed with singular industry, intelligence and honesty. This Turk, after telling him of



the wonderful qualities of the cloth made from the skins of the salamanders, declared that a certain mineral was also to be found in that mountain, which yielded thread not unlike wool, which being dried in the sun and bruised in a brazen mortar, and afterwards washed, was then spun like other wool and woven into cloth; and when it was desirable to cleanse these cloths, it was only necessary to cast them into a fire for the space of an hour, when they might be taken out uninjured and whiter than snow. Marco would not vouch for the truth of what had been related to him concerning the indestructible quality of the salamander skin, but he repeats a story that was told him, to the effect that there is a certain napkin in Rome woven of salamander wool, wherein the handkerchief of the Lord is kept wrapped up, which a certain king of the Tartans sent to the Bishop of Rome.

#### IN THE COUNTRY OF PRESTER JOHN.

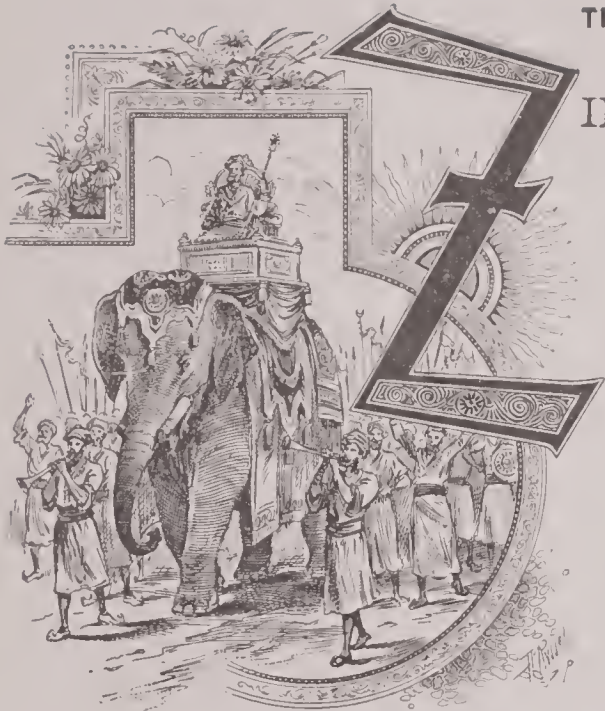
After leaving the last places named, our travellers came to a city called Caracarum, which was three miles in circumference, and strongly fortified with earth embankments, there being no stone in that country. In this place, which seems to have had nothing in particular to recommend it as a stronghold, the Tartars of olden times were accustomed to assemble, and prepare their schemes for attacking neighboring nations. To the north there were many vast plains uninhabited, but abounding in pastures, rivers and lakes, which region was used for pasturing cattle, of which the people possessed vast herds. The inhabitants of Caracarum had no direct ruler, but paid tribute to a certain king named Umcan, whom Polo identifies as presbyter, or priest John, more commonly known as prester John. To him the Tartars gave annual tithes. But despite this burden, they increased in number until Umcan, becoming fearful of the power which they were developing, thought it prudent to disperse them. For this purpose he sent several bodies of Tartars against them, whose power they made no effort to oppose, but abandoning their country, went to the south, where they resolved themselves into an independent nation. This happened in the year 1100.

Sixty-two years later they found themselves so numerous that they desired a ruler, and selected from among themselves a distinguished warrior, named Zingis (Genghis) Khan. The new sovereign ruled with such justice that he begat the love of his people, and his fame soon spread afar, and with such favor that neighboring provinces came voluntarily under his rulership. Finding himself now at the head of a large and prosperous nation, Zingis armed his people with bows and other weapons, and began the conquest of other nations. Whenever he captured a city or a province he placed it immediately under the direction of a wise governor, who was instructed to seek only the good and happiness of the people whom he was thus appointed to govern.



## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE GREAT KHAN WINS A WIFE BY BATTLE.



INGIS' power continued rapidly to increase until at length he sent an ambassador to Umcan, entreating him to bestow his daughter upon him to be his wife. Instead of receiving the request civilly, Umcan rejected the ambassador of Zingis with great indignation, saying, "Doth my servant demand my daughter? Get ye out of my sight, and tell your master, if he ever make such demand again, I will make him die a miserable death." Receiving this austere message, Zingis prepared immediately to invade the country of Umcan, and assembling a great

army marched to a plain called Tanduc, from whence he sent to Umcan a haughty message, telling him that he had come to lay waste his country. This challenge was immediately answered, and Umcan led out of his city an immense army, which pitched their tents on the plains ten miles from the camp of Zingis. Learning this fact, Zingis commanded his astrologers to predict for him the result of the battle which was about to be fought. The astrologers accordingly cut a reed lengthwise in two parts, and writing upon one the word Zingis, and upon the other, Umcan, set them in the ground opposite each other. Then they said unto the Tartar ruler, "it shall come to pass, with the idol's power, that these two parts of reeds shall fight together, and whose part shall fall on the other, the king shall obtain victory in the battle." The astrologers then fell to reciting their prayers, and reading their incantations, when presently the parts of the reeds moved and fought together, until the part upon which had been written the word Zingis had fallen on the part of Umcan. This prediction assured the Tartars of a great victory, and thus encouraged, they went into the battle with great precipitation, and falling upon the army of Umcan, slew a greater part, and in the rout Umcan himself was killed, so that by this means Zingis obtained the daughter of the ruler who had so haughtily treated his civil message.

### IMPOSING FUNERAL CEREMONIES AT THE BURIAL OF A KING.

Zingis continued his prosperous reign for a period of six years thereafter, during which time he conquered many provinces. But while besieging a certain



castle called Thaigin, he was shot in the knee by an arrow, from which wound he soon afterwards died, and was buried somewhere in the Altai mountain. In this mountain all the rulers and princes of the blood of Zingis were buried, however remote may have been the place at which they died. When the royal corpse was being carried to this sepulchre in the mountains, the soldiers who attended the funeral were commanded to kill all persons that they met on the way, saying, "Go and serve our Lord the King in another life." They likewise killed the best horses, in the belief that these might serve the royal spirit



A TARTAR BRIDE.

in the other world. Polo claims that at the burial of Kubla Khan the soldiers accompanying the procession slew no less than ten thousand men, and half as many horses. The successor of Zingis was Khen-Khan, the next was Bathyn-Khan, the fourth Efu-Khan, the fifth Mangu-Khan, and the sixth Kubla-Khan, who was the ruler of all Tartary at the time of Marco's visit.

#### MUSK ANIMALS OF TARTARY.

In the region beyond Caracorum, Marco mentions another famous city named Cinguy, which was the name also of a province tributary to the Grand Khan in Tangut. The people were divided into Christians, Mohammedans and



idolaters, but were generally peacefully inclined and given to pastoral pursuits. In this region, he avers, were to be found wild oxen, nearly as large as elephants, in which description we recognize the Yaks, peculiar to Tartary. He relates that the best musk in the world is also to be obtained in this province, and that it is taken from a beast of about the size of a goat, having hair like a stag, feet and tail like a gazelle, but is destitute of horns. It has four teeth, two above and two beneath, of the length of three fingers, and as white as ivory. When the moon is at the full, near the navel of this beast there grows what Marco calls an imposthume or bladder, full of blood; and the animal being taken in the full moon, this swelling is cut off and dried in the sun, from which is obtained the valuable musk for which that country is famous.



WILD SHEEP OF TARTARY.

Here also are to be found the beautiful Himalayan pheasants, with their dazzling and iridescent tails as much as five feet in length.

The next great city of special consequence visited by Marco was that of Jangamur, which means the White Lake, wherein was built a very large palace for the accommodation of Kubla Khan, when he had occasion to go upon a sporting expedition, which he did two or three times a year. In this region were many lakes and rivers, in which were great abundance of swans, cranes, and on the ridges pheasants, partridges and other fowl.

Three days' journey north-eastward lay the city of Ciandu, where the Great Khan built the most marvellous palace of marble and other stones to be found in the entire empire. This he had surrounded by an impregnable wall sixteen















miles in circuit, a portion of which was again divided, so as to form an enclosure or park, which was stocked with deer and other game, and where hawks and gerfalcons were trained for hunting purposes. Here the Great Khan usually dwelt during the months of June, July and August, on the 28th of which latter month, at the time of his departure, he made a solemn sacrifice. Within this wall the Khan also maintained a herd of ten thousand white horses and as many mares, the latter being kept for the milk which they yielded, and which none were permitted to drink except they were of the imperial lineage of Zingis-Khan, or of one family called Boriat, which had been granted this privilege for the great valor some member had shown upon a past occasion.

#### MARVELLOUS POWER OF THE ASTROLOGERS.

Marco tells us that the astrologers instructed the Khan that, on the 28th of the moon of August, he should distribute the milk of the white mares in honor of the spirits and of his idols, that they might thus be persuaded to preserve all the things which he possessed. These astrologers were divided into parties called Chebeth and Chesmu, who in the midst of storms ascended to the top of the palace and by their incantations permitted no rain to fall thereon. Notwithstanding their supernatural power, they had a horrible custom



PLAN OF CIANDU.

of dressing and eating the criminals condemned to death by imperial judgment. But though they had great liking for such food, they would not touch the body of one who died naturally. Marco ascribes to them most extraordinary power, and relates that whenever the Great Khan sat at his table it was raised eight yards high; and in the midst of the hall, a good distance from the table, was a large cupboard of plate from which these sorcerers caused wine and milk to fill the goblets without any hand touching them.

After thus hastily describing the palace of Kubla Khan at Ciandu, and the royal treasurers, and the power of the sorcerers, which was exercised always for the benefit of the king, Marco tells us of the extraordinary resources and valor of Kubla Khan, to whose quick understanding and decisive action was due the suppression of a formidable insurrection headed by his uncle Naïam, who had placed himself at the head of five hundred thousand trained cavalrymen. Kubla



having learned of the intentions of his uncle did not, however, wait to be attacked, but taking the initiative, travelled with extraordinary speed, and succeeded in surprising Naiam in the night, and falling on the rebels he routed them with extraordinary slaughter. He also took Naiam captive, and put him to death by ordering the rebel to be sewed up in a carpet and tossed until he



ASTROLOGERS ON THE PALACE ROOF.

expired, this peculiar execution being accomplished in order to prevent the shedding of royal blood.

#### THE HAREM OF THE GREAT KHAN.

Polo thus describes the personal appearance of Kubla Khan, for whom he conceived a great attachment, which was undoubtedly reciprocated by the great Tartar ruler: "He is," says Marco, "a comely man, of middle stature, of a



very fresh complexion, black and bright eyes, well-fashioned nose, and all the lineaments of his body in due proportion. He has four wives who are esteemed lawful, and the first born of them is to succeed him in the kingdom, and every one of them is called Empress, and holdeth a peculiar court, and that in a magnificent palace, having about three hundred women to attend her, and many eunuch servants, and at least ten thousand persons in their families." In addition to these wives the Grand Khan also had many concubines, which he



EXECUTION OF NAIAM.

recruited from a nation of fair people among the Tartars called Virgut, among whom he sent ambassadors every two years in search of the fairest women that they were able to find. These ambassadors usually returned with four or five hundred handsome damsels who, however, were subjected to a rigid examination, and from the large number only twenty or thirty of the most beautiful were generally received. The candidates for the royal harem were very closely scrutinized, and even of the thirty thus chosen sometimes only a small proportion was finally accepted; for these latter, says Polo, were first placed under the



care of his barons' wives, who determined if they had sweet breaths or snored in their sleep, or if their behavior was in any wise offensive. Those that were finally approved were divided into fives, which took their turn in waiting upon the Emperor, and served him in all his desires.

#### THE BEWILDERING PALACE AT CAMBALUC.

The greatest palace which Kubla Khan maintained, where he resided during the months of December, January, and February, was at his capital in Cambaluc, supposed to be the modern Peking, which is in the north-east borders of Cathay.



FEAST OF THE CANNIBAL PRIESTS.

This magnificent city and the palace which the Emperor had caused there to be built, are particularly described by Marco, whose representation is that of one of the grandest cities that any king ever conceived. We will quote from our distinguished Venetian traveler: "First there is a great wall, each square being eight miles, with a deep ditch environing, and a gate in the middle of each; after which is a space of a mile in circuit where soldiers stand; after this is another court of six miles square, with three gates on the south square, and three on the north; that which is in the midst being in both the greater, and kept shut, except when the Khan passeth that way; the other is always open to



others; in each corner of this wall, and in the midst is a fair palace (arsenal), eight in all, very large, in which are kept the Khan's ammunitions, and furniture of all sorts; horses in one; in another bows and shooting artillery; in a third castlets, cuirasses, and leather armor; and so in the rest.

#### THE WALLS OF THE CITY.

"Within this circuit is another walk like the former, very thick and ten paces high, all the battlements white, the walls square, each square a mile in length, with six gates as the former, and eight palaces also very large, wherein are the Khan's provisions; between these two last walls are also many fair trees and meadows, in which are deer with other game, and store of grass, the paths being raised two cubits to spare it; and no dirt or puddles being therein.



AVENUE OF STATUES IN CAMBALUC.

Within this last wall is the palace of the Great Khan, the greatest that hath been seen, extending to the wall on the north and south, and opening where the barons and soldiers pass. It hath no ceiling, but a very high roof; the foundation of the pavement is ten palms high, with a wall of marble around about it two paces wide, as it were a walk. At the end of the wall without is a fair turret with pillars. In the walls of the halls and chambers are carved dragons, soldiers, birds, beasts of divers kinds, histories of wars gilded; the roof is so made that nothing is seen but gold and imagery; in every square of the palace is a great hall, capable of holding a multitude of people; the chambers are disposed the best that may be devised. The roof is red, green, azure, and all colors. Behind the palace are great rooms and private store-houses for his treasure and jewels, for his women and other private purposes.

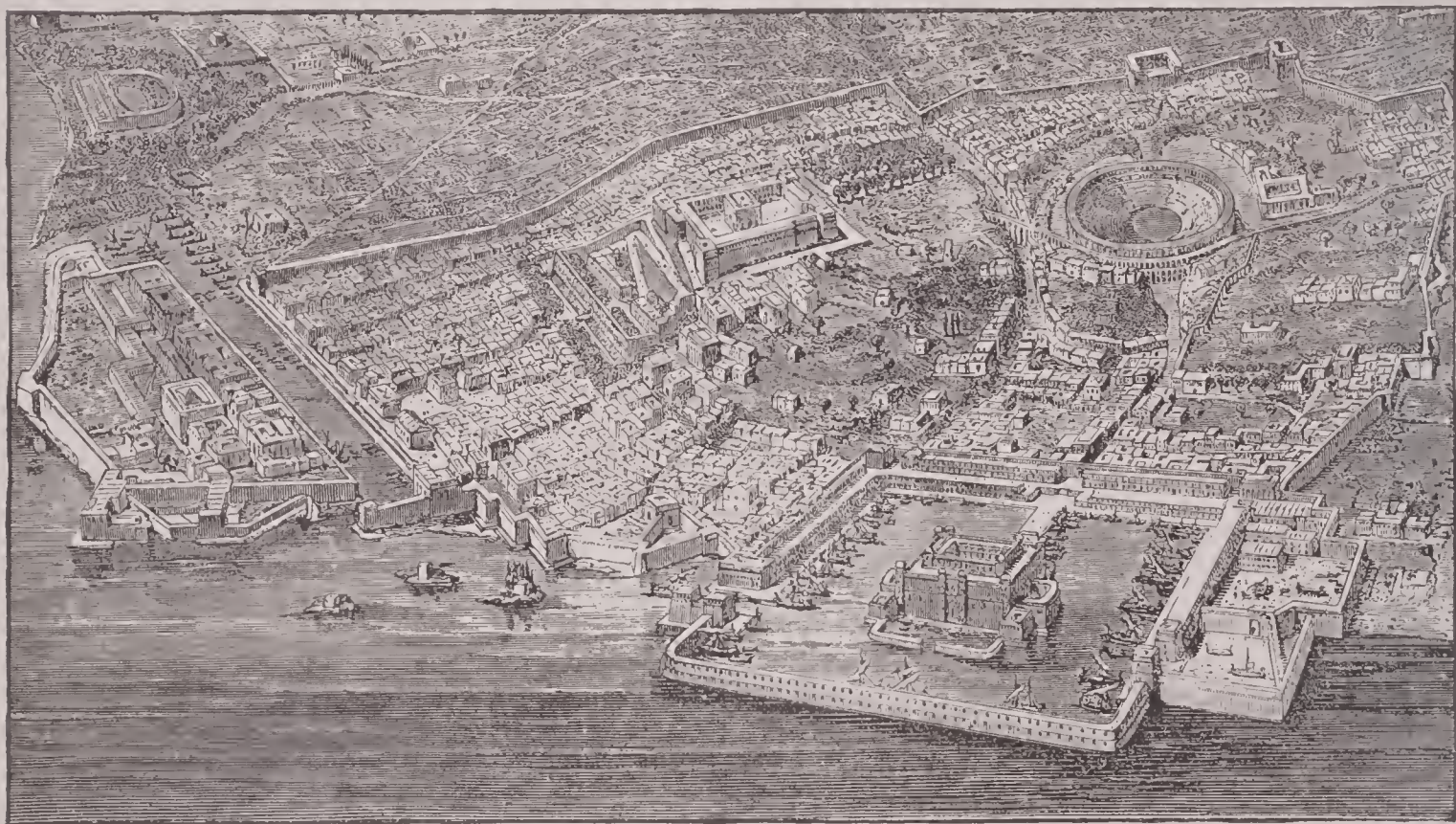
"Over against the said palace of the Khan is another for Zingis his son,



whose court was in all things like his father's. Near this palace towards the north is a mount made by hand, a mile in compass, one hundred paces high, adorned with trees that are always green; unto this mountain the king commands all the trees to be brought from remote parts, lading elephants with them, for they are taken up with the roots, and are transplanted in this mountain; and because this mountain is always green, it is called the Green Mountain; and where the earth of the mount is taken away are two lakes answering each other, with a small river supplying them with stored fish, and so grated that the fish cannot get out.

#### BATTLEMENTS AND STREETS OF THE CAPITAL.

"The city of Cambaluc in the province of Cathay, seated on a great river, was famous, and the royal seat in ancient times; and this name Cam-



CAMBALUC AS IT APPEARED TO POLO.

baluc signifies the city of the Lord or Prince. This city the Great Khan removed to the other side of the river where the palaces are, for he understood by the astrologers that it would rebel against the empire. This new-built city is called Taivu, and he commanded all the Cathayans to go out of the old city into the new; which contains in compass four and twenty miles, every side of the square containing six miles. It hath walls of earth ten paces thick at the bottom, and at the top but three, as growing by little and little thinner. The battlements are white; every square of the wall hath three principal gates, which are twelve in all, having sumptuous palaces built over them. There are also certain pavilions in the angles of the walls where the arms of the garrison, which are one thousand at each gate, are kept; the buildings are



squared, and the streets laid very straight by line throughout the city; so that from one gate a free prospect opens throughout the city to the opposite gate; having very stately houses built on both sides like palaces with gardens and courts, divided according to the heads of families. In the midst of the city is a certain noble building, wherein hangeth a very great bell, after the tolling whereof in the night no man must go out of his house until the beginning



BURNING THE BODIES OF IDOLATERS.

of the day following, except it be for some extraordinary cause, as for a woman in travail, and then they are compelled to carry lights with them.

#### UTILIZING THE SOCIAL EVIL.

“Without the city of Cambaluc are twelve large suburbs, three or four miles long, adjoining to each of the twelve gates, more inhabiting in the suburbs than in the city; here merchants and strangers live, each nation hav-



ing several store-houses, or burses, in which they lodge. No dead corpse of any man is burned within this city, but the bodies of idolaters are burned without the suburbs, where the dead bodies of other sects are buried; and because a huge multitude of Saracens inhabit there, they have about twenty-five thousand harlots in the suburbs and in the city; and these have a chief captain appointed over every hundred and thousand, and one general, whose office is that when any ambassadors come, or such as have business with the Khan, whose charges he defrays, then this captain giveth every ambassador and every man of his family, a change of woman every night at free cost, for this is their tribute. The guards, every night, carry such to prison whom they find walking late; and if they be found guilty, they are beaten with cudgels, for the Bachsi tell them that it is not good to shed man's blood; but many die of these beatings. The Great Khan hath in his court twelve thousand horsemen, which they call Casitan, faithful soldiers of their lord, who guard his person, more for state than fear; and four captains have the charge of these, whereof every one commandeth three thousand. When one captain, with three thousand soldiers within the palace, hath guarded the King for three days and nights, another captain with his soldiers succeeds; and so, throughout the year, this course of watching by turns is observed.

#### THE GREAT KHAN AT DINNER.

“When on account of any festal day he keeps a solemn court, his table, which is higher than the rest of the tables, is set at the north part of the hall, his face is to the south, having the first Queen on his left hand, that is, his principal wife; and his sons and nephews, and those of the royal blood, on his right; yet their table is in a lower place, so that they scarcely touch the King's feet with their hands, the seat of the eldest being higher than the rest; the princes sit in a lower place than that; their wives also observe the like order: first, the Khan's sons' wives and his kinsmen sit lower on the left hand, and after those of the lords, and of every captain and nobleman, each in their degree and order; and the Emperor himself, while he sits at his table, may cast his eyes upon all that feast with him in the hall. There are not tables for them all to sit; but the greatest part of the soldiers and barons sit on carpets. At all the doors stand two gigantic fellows with cudgels, to see that none touch the threshold, which if he does they take his garments away, which he must redeem by receiving so many blows as shall be appointed, or else lose them. They who serve the King and those sitting at the table all of them cover their mouths with silk, lest their breathing should by any means touch the King's meat or drink, and when he hath a mind to drink the damsel who giveth it goes back three paces and kneels down, and then the barons and all the people kneel, and the musicians sound their instruments. There is no cause, since I would avoid prolixity, why I should write anything concerning the meats which are brought to the table, how dainty and delicate they are, and with what magnificence and pomp they are served.



## THE KHAN IN HIS BIRTHDAY ROBES.

"All the Tartars observe this custom, to celebrate the birthday of their lord most honorably. The birthday of Kubla is kept the 28th of September, and this day he accounteth more solemn than any in the whole year, except



PROCESSIONAL CELEBRATION OF THE KHAN'S BIRTHDAY.

the 1st of February, on which they begin the year. The King, therefore, on his birthday, is clothed in a most precious garment of gold, and about two thousand barons and soldiers are clothed in the same color of gold, though of silk stuff, and a girdle wrought in gold and silver, which is given them with

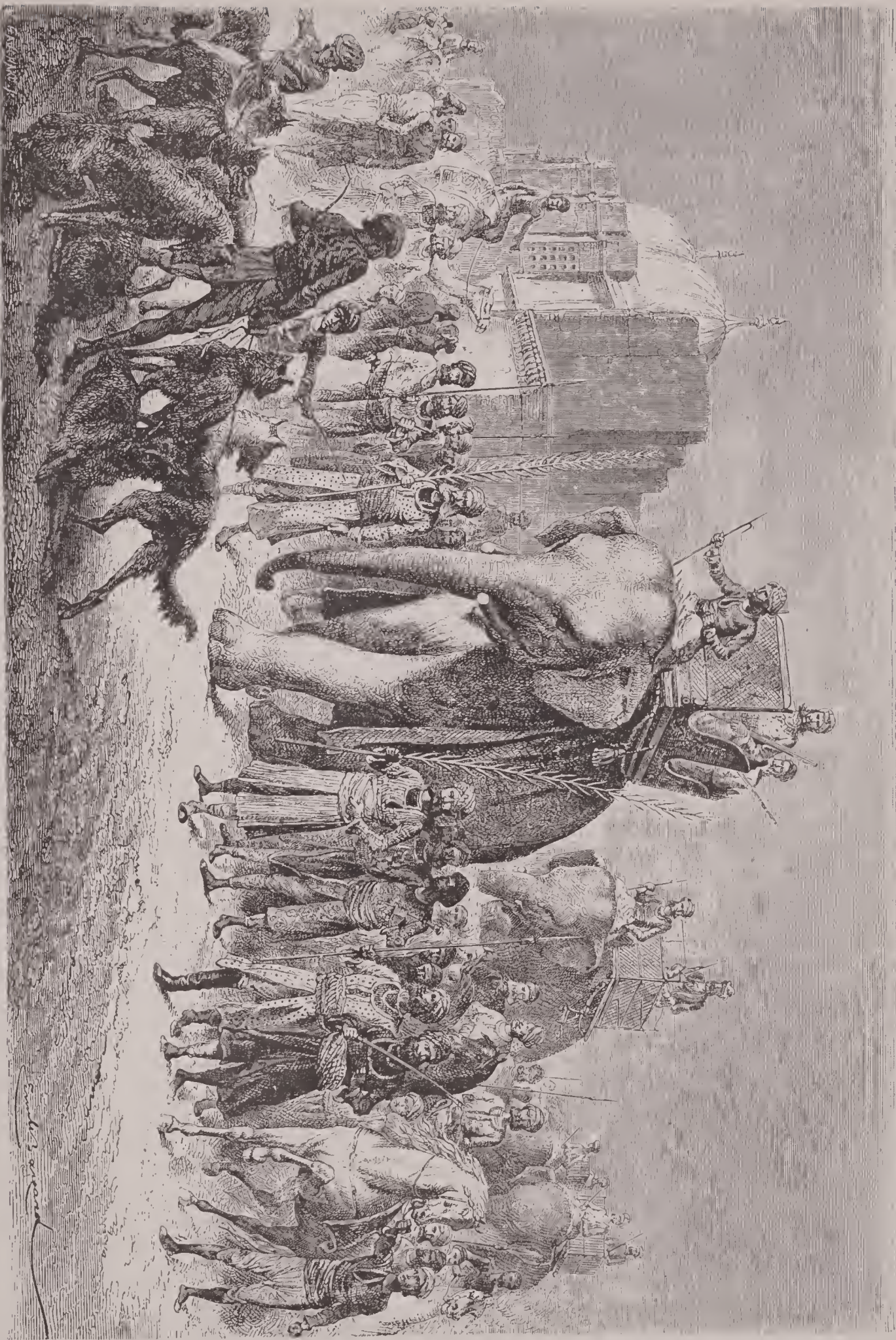


a pair of shoes. Some wear pearls and garments of great price, who are next to the Khan; and these garments were not worn but on thirteen solemn feasts, according to the thirteen moons of the year; all are then clothed like kings. This custom is also observed by the Tartars, that on the birthday of the Great Khan, all the kings, princes, and nobles, who are subject to his dominions, should send presents unto him, as to their Emperor; and they who desire to attain any place of dignity or office of him offer their petitions unto twelve barons appointed for that purpose; and what they decree is all one as if the Emperor himself had answered them. All people also, of what faith or sect soever, whether Christians or Jews, Saracens or Tartars, and Pagans, are bound solemnly to call upon their gods, for the life, safety, and prosperity of the Great Khan."

#### THE GREAT KHAN AS A HUNTER.

Marco Polo dwells at great length upon the magnificence of the court of the Grand Khan, and gives a picturesque description of the grand hunts in which this royal personage indulged two or three times each year. But unlike royal sportsmen of to-day, the Grand Khan made his entrance upon the field in quest of game in a style of splendor almost if not equally as great as that which became him in his court at Cambaluc. Having no fire-arms in that day, the King made use of trained leopards, hawks, and gerfalcons, which pursued and took the prey before the sight of the great ruler as he reposed in regal luxury in the downy bed of a howdah, on the back of one of his elephants. The Emperor was also attended upon these hunts by no less than ten thousand persons, and sometimes twice that number, the multitudes being protected at night in vast tents spread upon the plains. Describing these tents, Marco Polo says: "The first is the Khan's pavilion, under which ten thousand soldiers stand, besides barons and noblemen, with the door to the south, sustained by three pillars, wrought with curious and excellent carved work, and covered with the skins of lions and other wild beasts, which keep out rain; but within, the walls of the pavilion are covered with most costly skins of ermines and sables, although in those countries these skins are accounted most precious, so that sometimes skins worth two thousand sultanines of gold are scarce sufficient for one pair of vests. The Tartars call the sable the queen of furs. The cords wherewith these pavilions are supported are of silk. There are also other pavilions erected, wherein the wives, sons, and concubines of the king remain. Further also the falcons, hawks, gerfalcons, and other birds, which serve for hawking, have their tents; for there is so great a multitude of tents that to them that come thither it seems at a distance as if a famous city was built there." It thus appears that the royal court, fully equipped, was present wherever the king might appear, and it is not improbable that he issued royal mandates from the howdah in which he made his bed, for his absence on these hunts was generally for a period of three months, during which time he was lavish in his distributions among the poor who hovered about the camp.





THE GRAND KHAN STARTING ON THE HUNT.



**EXTRAORDINARY RICHES OF THE GREAT KHAN.**

The inconceivable sumptuousness of all the surroundings of the Grand Khan, and the extraordinary wealth which he amassed is easily accounted for, when we consider the scheme which he employed for collecting and retaining the gold that was brought into his kingdom. Thus Marco Polo says, "The money of the Great Khan is not made of gold or silver or other metal; but they take the middle bark from the mulberry tree, and this they make firm, and cut into divers round pieces, great and little, and imprint the king's mark thereon; of this paper money therefore the Emperor causeth a huge mass to be made in the city of Cambaluc which sufficeth for the whole empire, and no man under pain of death may coin any other, or spend any other money, or refuse it in all his kingdoms and countries; nor any coming from another kingdom dare spend any other money in the empire of the Great Khan. Hence it follows that merchants, often coming from remote countries unto the city of Cambaluc bring with them gold, silver, pearl, and precious stones, and receive the king's money for them; and because this money is not received in their country, they change it again, in the empire of the Great Khan, for merchandise, which they carry away with them."

It is small wonder that Columbus and his contemporaries should have been carried away with the reports of Marco Polo, at the prospect of sharing with the Grand Khan, either by conquest or commercial relations, the vast stores of precious metal which he must have had in his treasury; for Marco Polo says that there was not a king to be found in all the world whose treasures exceeded that of the Great Khan.

**THE WISDOM AND GENEROSITY OF THE EMPEROR.**

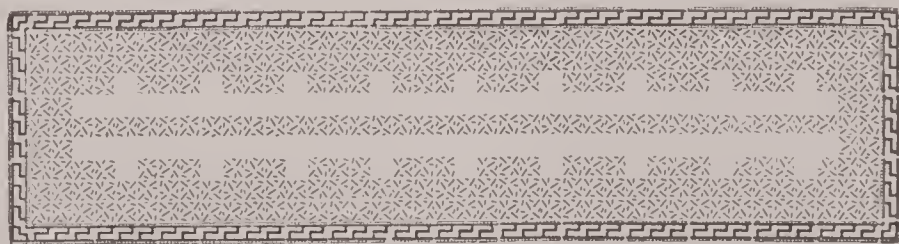
But if the Emperor was covetous in making a great collection of precious stones and the more precious metals, he was equally considerate of the wants of his people, and established measures for their relief in times of great scarcity, and appointed officers to relieve also the necessities of those who were impoverished by accident or other unfortunate cause. Of this kindly disposition of the Grand Khan Marco Polo writes: "He sends yearly to the divers provinces of his empire to inquire whether any prejudice be done to the corn by tempests, locusts, worms, or other means; and when he hath notice given him that any province or city hath sustained any damage, he remits his tribute to that people for that year, and sends grain for victuals and for seed out of his own granaries; for in a time of great plenty the King buys abundance of corn, and keeps it with great care by his officers three or four years in granaries that when there happens to be a scarcity of corn in one country, that defect may be supplied out of the king's storehouses in another. He selleth his grain for a fourth part of the common price, and always provides that his storehouses are kept fully supplied. Likewise when any murrain lights among cattle, he sends them other cattle, which he has for tenths in other provinces; and if a thunderbolt has stricken any beast of any herd or flock, he receives no

tribute from it for three years, let the herd be ever so great; neither will he receive any custom of a thunder-stricken sheep, as thinking God is angry with them that are stricken." This wise provision was a very much more liberal one than was made by the early Jewish rulers, or by any modern sect or religionists who have exacted tithings from their followers.

#### THE KING'S CARE OF THE POOR.

The king's provident care for the unfortunate in the various provinces of his kingdom was yet more liberal in the bestowals which he made upon the poor of Cambaluc, for Polo says: "When the King hears of any honorable family decayed by misfortune, or of any which cannot work, and have no subsistence, he gives to such families the whole year's expenses, each head of such families going to the officer for that purpose, and, showing the bill of allowance, receives provisions accordingly. There is a place set apart for those officers; they are provided also with garments for winter and for summer. The Khan receives a tenth of all wool, silk and hemp produced in his country, which he causes to be made into clothes, in a house for that purpose appointed; for all trades are bound one day in the week to work for him. He provides also apparel for his armies, and in every city causeth cloth to be made of his tithe wool. You must understand that the Tartars, according to their ancient customs, bestowed no alms, but rather upbraided those that were in necessity, as hated of God; but the idolaters, especially those Bachsi, have propounded it as a good work acceptable unto God, and have taught him to be thus bountiful; so that in this court bread is never denied to any who ask it, and there is no day in which is not given away twenty thousand crowns in rice, millet and panike; wherefore he is esteemed as a god by his subjects." It is possible that Sir Thomas More obtained from this account of Polo's the ideas for his Utopian Government.

Marco mentions a very curious thing which he had not seen elsewhere, that in the province of Cathay there were to be found certain black stones, which, being dug, were used as fuel, and which burned a much longer time and gave greater heat than wood. This reference is manifestly to coal, which was discovered in the eastern countries shortly before the twelfth century, and which was so little known in England that it was first used in London in 1240, nor was it in common use until sixty years later.





## CHAPTER IX.

### IN THE LAND OF GOLD AND UGLY BEASTS.



AFTER Marco Polo had remained a considerable while at the court of Canbaluc and had executed several special missions for the Emperor, he seems to have travelled to the westward for several days, but upon what special function he neglects to state. The narrative, we may mention, is hardly a consecutive one, and hence to follow the writer is to proceed, at times, with considerable indefiniteness. He states that after departing from the city called Jaci, and travelling ten days' journey westward, he came to a city called Carazan, which was governed by a son of the Khan. The rivers in the immediate region were distinguished as yielding great quantities of

gold, both in dust and nuggets, while on the mountains near by was an auriferous vein of gold of such remarkable richness that gold was exchanged at the ratio of one of gold for six of silver. But notwithstanding this plentifulness of the precious metals, it was not used for money, porcelain being substituted instead. The inhabitants here, like those in nearly all the other cities described, were idolaters, and by the inference which we gain from his descriptions they were quite barbaric.

#### POLO CONFOUNDS CROCODILES WITH SERPENTS.

Polo speaks of the country being infested with great serpents, growing to a length of thirty feet, and bodies of proportionate thickness. He describes them as having two little feet near the head, armed with three talons or claws like lions, while their eyes were larger than a loaf, and of exceeding brightness. They had mouths and jaws so very wide that they were able to swallow a man, and with teeth so strong and sharp that they were able to rend the largest animals; they indeed attacked and devoured lions, wolves and other beasts. Their appearance struck great terror to the natives, who destroyed them by fastening iron spikes in the tracks through which these great animals usually passed, and as these trails were invariably followed by the animals in going to and from the water, they thus empaled themselves upon the sharp instruments thus set. When the animal was killed, the native hunters took off the skin, which they used for various purposes; but the most precious thing



obtained from the creature was its gall, which the people used as a medicine, esteeming it of the greatest virtue for the curing of mad-dog bites, and for carbuncles and all malignant eruptions. It is not difficult for us to determine, though the description is inexact, that the creatures thus described were crocodiles such as infest all the rivers of the lower countries of Asia.

#### THE TARTAR ROBBERS AND THEIR MEANS OF PREVENTING TORTURE.

The Tartars of that region were great robbers, and being armed with spears and strong bows, and protected with an armor made of the hides of crocodiles and buffaloes, they were enabled to overcome any small party whom they went against. Living by robbery and rapine, they provided themselves against every emergency, and as they carried death in all their attacks, so they expected that their crimes would sooner or later bring them to a more wretched end; for it was customary at that time to put such felons to death, when captured, by the most horrible tortures. The robbers carried with them a potent poison which they swallowed when they found themselves unable to escape; but to prevent them from dying in this manner, and thus cheating justice, the lords of the Great Khan, who were sent against them, carried potions of dog's dung which they forced the captives to swallow, thus causing them to vomit the poison, and leaving them to suffer the tortures which would then be inflicted upon them.

One of the most curious customs practised by the strange people in the province of Carazan is thus described by Polo: "When one of their women is once delivered, she forsakes the bed, washes the child and dresses it, and then the husband lieth down, and keeps the child with him forty days, not suffering it to depart; is visited all that time by friends and neighbors to cheer and comfort him. The woman looks to the house, and carries the husband his broths to the bed, and gives suck to the child by him."

#### A GOLD AND SILVER MONUMENT SET OVER THE BODY OF A KING.

The next remarkable city described by Marco was called Mein, the capital of the province of that name, which was a part of the Great Khan's kingdom. But prior to its conquest by Kubla, it was governed by a king whose name is not given, but who left a peculiar memento of his sovereignty:—when being ready to die, he commanded that near his sepulchre there should be erected two towers, in the form of pyramids, one at the head, the other at the feet, both of marble, of the height of sixty feet. On the top of each was placed a round ball, one of which he caused to be covered all over with gold a finger thick, and the other with silver; and upon the top, round about the balls, were made many little gold and silver bells, which were so hanged that the wind imparted to them a swinging motion, and caused them to send forth a pleasant, tinkling sound. The domes of these towers were covered with plates, one of gold and the other of silver, but of what thickness our traveller does not state. These two monuments were set up in honor of his soul, and with the intent that his memory should never die among men. When Kubla Khan undertook to sub-



due the city of Mein he sent the greater part of his army, which was composed of cavalry, under his most valiant general, who made such an onslaught upon the city that it fell into his hands with small resistance; but while it was the custom to demolish or burn the buildings of cities thus acquired by conquest, the general would not consent to such vandalism as the destruction of the gold and silver towers without first communicating with the Emperor and ascertaining his will. To the great credit of the Tartar monarch, let it be



CITY OF MEIN AND TOMB OF THE EMPEROR.

said, that upon ascertaining that the monument was erected in honor of the soul of a great ruler, he immediately commanded that the towers be preserved from injury, to the end particularly that no violence might be done to the things which belonged to the dead. It is very evident, from the description thus given of Mein, that it must have been the modern Burmah, formerly called the Old Pagan, on the Irawada river, which has from time immemorial been the royal residence.



Eastward of Mein was the province of Cangigu, which was also a country yielding vast quantities of gold, and which lay near the sea. These people are described as being handsomely made, and given much to the practice of tattooing, which Polo describes as a process of embroidering the flesh.

#### THE LION HUNTERS OF CINTQUI.

Eastward of Cangigu is Amu, where the people worshipped idols and made sacrifices to them both of flesh and the products of the field. The people were very wealthy, both men and women wearing bracelets of gold and silver of



THE LION HUNTERS OF CINTQUI.

great value on their arms and legs. The province of Tholoman, which is eight days further eastward, was also remarkable for its wealth of the precious metals; but in no place was either gold or silver used as money, porcelain being substituted instead. At Cintiqui Marco found the people little addicted to such finery as distinguished the neighboring provinces to the west. Instead, therefore, of adorning their bodies with gold and silver ornaments, they used only the simplest cloths, made from the bark of trees, which, however, were dexterously made and worn most becomingly. Many lions were found in that region,



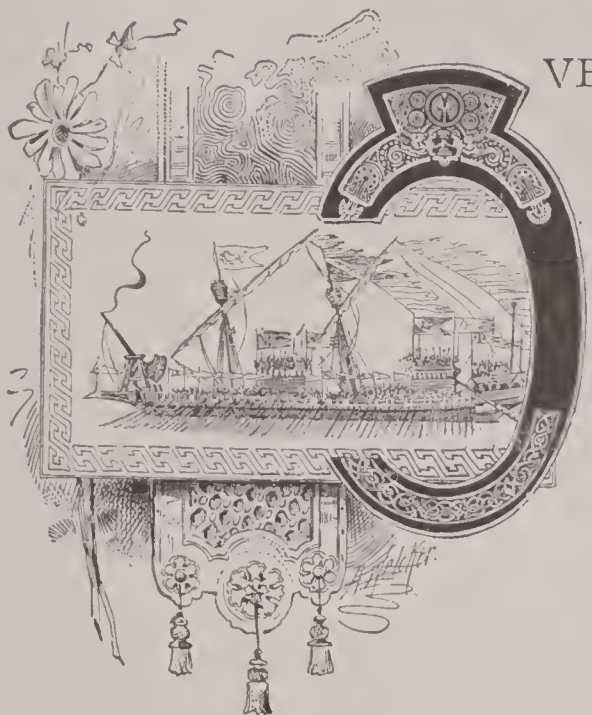
and which betrayed such ferocity that the people never exposed themselves at night, and even the vessels sailing on the river never approached the bank at night-time, but anchored in mid stream. The natives, however, hunted these lions with dogs of extraordinary size and ferocity. The native hunter, armed with bow and arrow, boldly disputed with the king of beasts by the aid of his powerful dogs which he sent in to worry the animal, while he made his attack from behind, and was thus able to give the lion a mortal arrow wound without incurring any great danger himself.





## CHAPTER X.

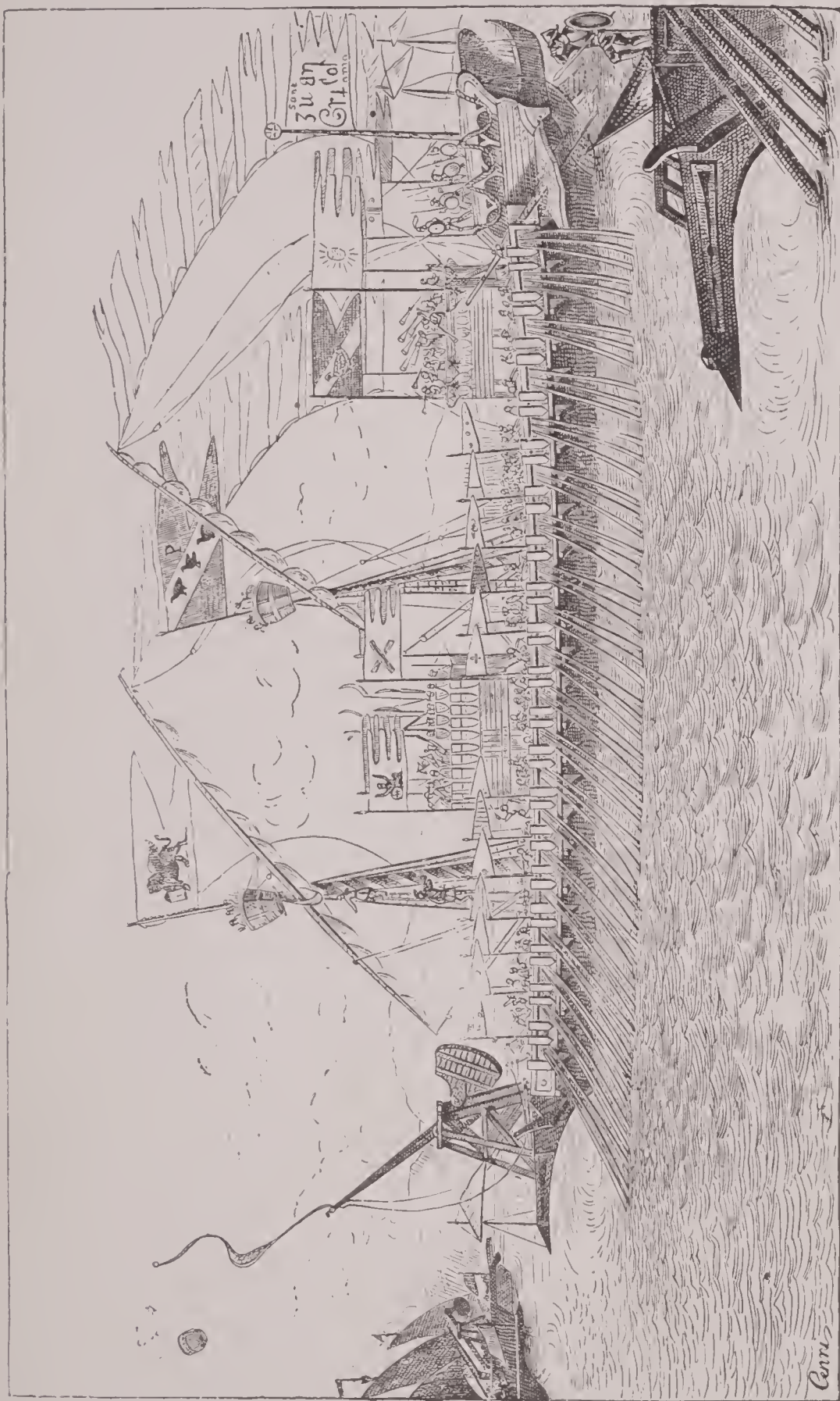
### A REMARKABLY JUST EMPEROR.



VER the fairest portion of Cangu Marco Polo wandered, everywhere meeting with generous hospitality, but after leaving the two cities last described he entered the district of Mangi, which he represents as being the richest and most famous found anywhere in the East. This province is supposed to be the lower half of China proper, the upper portion being designated as Cathay proper. Up to the year 1269, Mangi was governed by a king called Fanfur, who was richer and mightier than any ruler that had preceded him for a hundred years, and his greatness was such that he feared no invader; and as his kingdom had been at peace a great length of time he gave no heed to the possi-

bility of interruption from neighboring powers. He thus surrendered himself to all manner of pleasures until he at length became entirely unfitted to be the governor of so great a country. But with all his sensuality, he was reputed to be a man who ruled with justice, and who had the tenderest regard for his people. His laws were so equitable and dispensed with such regard for the rights of all classes that no one, however powerful, might in any manner wrong the humblest, without being visited with the severest punishment. These laws provided such perfect protection that Polo avers artificers would often leave their shops full of wares open by night, without the least fear of molestation, while travellers and strangers safely walked day and night over the whole kingdom fearless of anyone. The King himself was also merciful towards the poor, and looked with a tender regard upon all oppressed with any necessity, or suffering from penury. In addition to the carefulness with which he regarded the poor, he established foundling asylums in which as many as twenty thousand infants whose parents were for any cause unable to properly provide for them were cared for every year. These children were brought up at the expense of the court, and when grown the two sexes were intermarried and then set at various occupations by the Emperor. But while Fanfur had given attention to the poor and to the impartial administration of justice, he had not protected his kingdom against invaders; so in the year mentioned (1269), as Marco Polo relates, Kubla Khan, whose disposition was that of one bent upon conquest,

made an invasion into Mangi, and after assaulting several of the chief cities, he easily made himself master of that country. Indeed, Fanfur offered no



BOMBARDMENT OF SAINFU.

opposition whatever, for at the earliest intimation of Kubla's approach he sought safety on a vessel and departed to some island of the Archipelago, where he died, first, however, committing the custody of his chief city, Quinsai, to his wife. At the capitulation of Quinsai, the wife of Fanfur was captured and taken to the court of the Great Khan, where, instead of being detained and subjected to indignity she received the most honorable treatment and was maintained like a queen until her death some years later.

One of the chief cities of Mangi, visited by Marco, was Sainfu, which is described as abounding with fabulous wealth of silks, and cloths of gold, and which was so strongly fortified that a three years' besiegement

by an enormous army of Tartars failed to effect its capture, and thus it continued in security until the invasion of Kubla Khan. The city was situated on a great river and enjoyed an enormous commerce with neighboring countries



and islands of the Pacific along which at that time were situated many great cities. The subjugation of this place was accomplished through the ingenuity of the uncle and father of Marco Polo, to whom Kubla applied for suggestions how he might overcome the city which had for three years resisted every effort its former besiegers had made for its capture. At the suggestion of the two Venetians, powerful engines were devised after the manner of those used by the Romans and Greeks in their earliest wars, by which great stones and projectiles of as much as three hundred weight were cast over the walls of fortified cities, to the destruction of the buildings within. The two Venetians drew specifications and gave instructions how these great machines of war might be built, and under whom the Khan appointed carpenters who made three of the engines in a short while, and setting them on ships Marco's relatives sailed away for Sainfu, and having anchored before the walls, they began a terrific bombardment of the city. The first stone thus thrown fell upon a certain house supposed to have been a part of the imperial quarters, and demolishing it so alarmed the besieged inhabitants, who were unable to comprehend the nature of this new weapon brought against them, that they speedily capitulated.

**A WONDROUSLY RICH AND POPULOUS COUNTRY.**

The enormous population and extraordinary wealth of Mangi may be estimated by a statement of Polo which is to the effect that in the country there were twelve thousand cities, all inhabited by rich and industrious people, in each of which a large garrison was maintained, in none less than one thousand, and in the largest twenty thousand soldiers. In the city of Quinsai, which is reputed to have been the richest city of Mangi, there was a garrison of thirty thousand soldiers, this place being esteemed not only for its enormous population, but for the grandeur of its buildings, and especially the palace built by King Fanfur, which occupied a site near the centre of the city. The palace proper was within an inclosure of ten miles circuit, defended by very high walls, and divided into three parts; that in the midst was entered by a gate on the one side, while on the other were great and large galleries, over which was a roof sustained by pillars, painted and wrought in pure gold and fine azure. By the entrance of the others there were also galleries, equally rich with ornaments of gold and silver, and the walls were also gorgeously painted, lending a dazzling appearance to the several entrances. The grounds were also diversified by lakes, in which were many islands where were grown flowers of every hue, and where sported birds of as many colors. On the lake was also a royal barge, which the King and Queen used for recreation and in which to visit the idol temples that were set up on the islands. Another division of the palace grounds was devoted to a game preserve where such beasts as roebucks, stags, hares, conies, etc., were kept for the king's divertisement, who, when going upon the hunt, was accompanied by a thousand of his concubines, so that his manner of hunting was not unlike that of Kubla Khan, already described. During these hunts, however, no men





THE EMPRESS FANFUR AND HER BARGE.

J. THOMAS



were permitted to accompany the Emperor, these privileges being accorded only to the ladies of his seraglio, who, having tired of the chase, would divest themselves of their garments, and sport in the lake in the king's presence.

#### THE MAN-EATERS OF FUGIU.

To the south-east of Quinsai, Marco Polo came to a city called Fugiu, which was occupied by merchants who were subjects of the Khan. The city was beautifully situated among fertile hills and dales, but which were not cultivated to any considerable extent, the principal products being ginger, and some other spices which Polo neglects to mention. While the inhabitants of Fugiu are represented as merchants, they are also described as a people ad-



BATTLE SHIPS OF THE CATHAYANS.

dicted to vicious customs and beastly practices. While they had an abundance of animals, they preferred human flesh to that of all other meat, and as Marco Polo says, "They commonly eat man's flesh, if the person die not of sickness, as better tasted than others. When they go into the field they shave to the ears, and paint their faces with azure; they are very cruel, and when they kill an enemy, presently drink his blood, and afterward eat his flesh."

#### GREAT VESSELS IN THE INDIA TRADE.

Still further to the south-east, probably in Corea, but in a realm which Polo calls Concho, was a great seaport city, Zaitum, which enjoyed a most lucrative commerce with India, so that the port was always filled with the merchant vessels from that country. From the custom duties levied upon the



merchandise brought into Mangi through this port, the Khan received an enormous revenue, as he exacted a tenth of all the importations. But notwithstanding this exaction, and that the hire of vessels cost merchants the half of their goods, the traffic was conducted with great profit. The ships used in this trade are thus described by Marco Polo: "They are made of fir, with one deck, on which are twenty cabins, more or less according to the bigness of the ships, each for one merchant. They have a good rudder, and four masts with four sails, and some two masts which they either raise or take down at pleasure. Some greater ships have thirteen divisions on the inside, made with boards enchased, so that if by a blow of a whale, or a touch of a rock, water gets in, it can go no farther than that division, and the leak being found it is soon stopped. They are double, that is, have two courses of boards, one within the other, and are well caulked with oakum, and nailed with iron, but not pitched, for they have no pitch, but anointed with an oil of a certain tree mixed with lime and hemp, beaten small, which binds faster than pitch or lime. The greater ships have three hundred mariners, the others two hundred, or one hundred and fifty. They use also small oars in these ships, four men to one oar. They have also with them ten small boats for fishing and other services, fastened to the sides of the larger ships, and let down when they please to use them." It thus appears that the vessels used in this India-Cathay trade in the thirteenth century would compare favorably with the largest sailing vessels of the present day, in which, indeed, it appears there have been no material improvements except in the use of sails. It is curious also to note that these vessels were built in compartments to prevent sinking, and that each was provided with cabins for passengers, as our modern vessels are to-day.

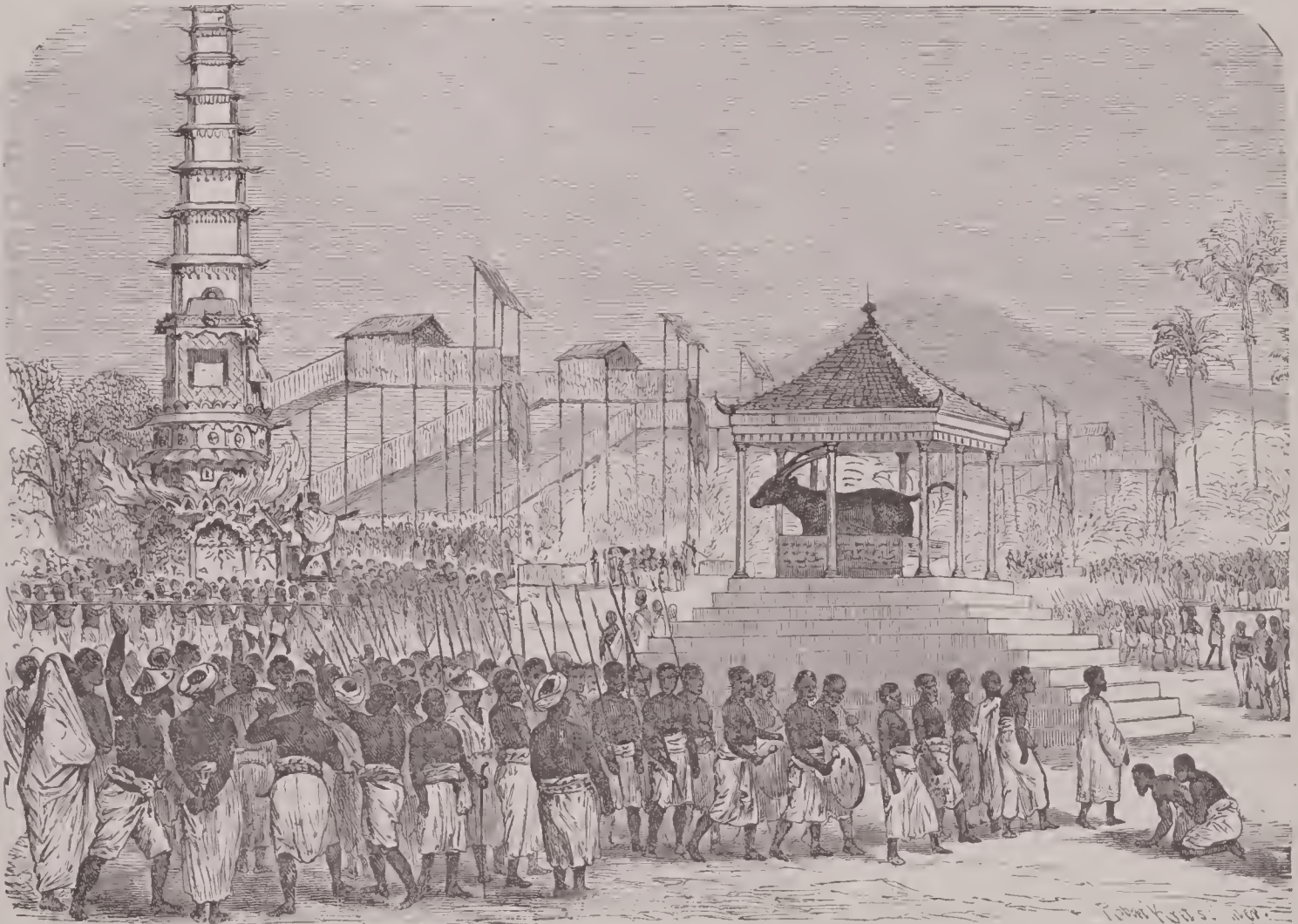
#### THE FIGHT FOR ZIPANGU.

From the seacoast of Mangi, Marco Polo seems to have taken a trip to Japan, which he calls Zipangu, the people of which he describes as being of a white complexion and gentle behavior, and whose religion was that of idolatry. These people, at the time of Marco's visit, had not been entirely subjugated by Kubla, and therefore continued to live in peace and contentment with their vast possessions. They had little intercourse with other peoples, and those who came to visit them for trade were not permitted under any circumstances to take any gold away with them, of which these Japanese, Polo declares, possessed enormous quantities. So great, indeed, was the king's possession of the precious metal that his house was covered with gold, and its walls were gilded with the same, and its floors were made of beaten gold. The people were also said to be opulent with precious pearls, yielded by oysters in the bays and inlets of the island. Reports of these fabulous riches having reached Kubla Khan, he sent two of his barons with a great fleet of ships to conquer the people; but arriving there, the two commanders fell out after capturing one city, so that their enterprise resulted in small profit. Polo states that after the two jealous commanders had taken the city, they beheaded all their captives, except eight.



persons, who wore enchanted precious stones enclosed in the right arm between the skin and flesh, so that these eight favorites of the guardian spirits could not be wounded with iron. The enchantment, however, was broken by the use of a wooden club with which the two barons commanded that the last eight should be slain.

Directly after landing at Zipangu, a furious storm assailed the ships and scattered them, so that several were driven out of their course and on to reefs, and wrecked. But as many as thirty thousand of the crews sought safety on an island, four miles off Japan, to which they managed to escape,



IDOLATRY OF THE JAPANESE.

but destitute of arms and provision. The people of Zipangu, learning of the helpless condition of the wrecked crews, sent a fleet with the intention of destroying the refugees. Upon landing on the island, they left their ships, and sought the Tartars, who had concealed themselves behind a high land, and who, observing the movements of their enemies, retreated around the protecting hills, as the Zipanguans came in sight, and being swift of foot contrived to reach the abandoned ships and to set sail, leaving the Zipanguans themselves unable to escape. The Tartars now having another fleet, which they had so ingeniously captured, sailed again for Zipangu and laid siege to its chief city, which they succeeded in capturing after a six months' besiege-



ment. This happened in 1264, or nearly twenty years before Marco Polo's visit to the East.

#### EXECUTION OF THE TWO BARONS.

The Great Khan, having heard of the jealousy of his two commanders, to which was due the destruction of so many of his ships, had them brought before him, and after due inquiry he ordered that the head of one be cut off, and commanded that the other be taken to a desert island called Zerga, a place to which were sent culprits condemned to death by a singular means of torture:—the offender's hands were bound in the fresh hide of a buffalo, which, in drying, shrank so that the hands of the victim were kept in inconceivable torture until death at last ended his indescribable miseries.



FLEET OF THE GRAND KHAN.

From the island of Japan, Marco Polo started on a voyage to the Chinese Sea, around the Malay Archipelago, and thence to India, having been the first European visitor to the island of Japan, as he was the first to enter China. We have from him some quaint descriptions of the peoples and animals which he met upon the islands of the East Indies. The most of his descriptions, however, concern Borneo and Java, which he calls the Greater and the Less Java. In the former he found many Saracens, drawn thither by promises of a lucrative trade with the neighboring Malays of the Continent. He saw numerous cities, but of what size or consequence he does not mention, but leaves us to infer that their inhabitants were of a very low order of humanity. He says that in the cities "the mountaineers are very beastly, eating man's flesh and all kinds of impure food, and worship all day what they first see in the morn-



ing." The Khan exercised authority over these islands, but he seems to have derived no other revenue from them than occasional consignments of hawks, the population being too beastly to produce more valuable things.

**THE UNICORN OF BORNEO AND THE CANNIBALS OF JAVA.**

On Borneo Polo also found many savage beasts, such as elephants and unicorns, the latter being the rhinoceros which is still occasionally to be seen on several of the islands of the Archipelago. These Polo describes in the following unique manner: "Their feet are like elephants' feet, they have one horn in the midst of their forehead, and hurt none therewith, but with the tongue



BORNEAN UNICORN KILLING A HUNTER.

and knee; for on their tongues are certain long prickles, and sharp, and when they hurt any they trample on him, and press him down with their knees, and then tear him to pieces with their tongue. The head is like a wild boar's, which he carries downward to the ground. They love to stand in the mire, and are filthy beasts, and not such as unicorns are said to be in our parts, which suffer themselves to be taken by maids, but quite contrary." Polo also says that in that country are certain small apes, which have faces so like men that they are put in boxes and preserved with spices, and are afterwards sold to merchants, who carry them through the world, showing them



for pigmies or little men. In another of the seven kingdoms into which Borneo was divided, Marco learned of a very singular, and no less abominable custom practised by the people:—when one of the natives fell sick his friends would send to the sorcerers to inquire whether he should recover. If the answer was unfavorable, the kindred sent next for one whose office it was to strangle to death those who were considered hopelessly ill. After being thus executed, the body was cut in pieces and eaten by the kindred with great jollity, even the marrow of the bones being consumed by those voracious people under the belief that if any substance of the body remained, worms would be bred therefrom, which would afterwards devour the soul of the deceased. These natives were also accustomed to killing and eating any strangers who might fall into their power, a practice which is not obsolete even to this day, and the former custom is still prevalent among the Battas of Sumatra.

**A CITY OFFERED FOR A RUBY.**

From the East Indies Polo sailed to the Island of Ceylon, which he declares to be the finest land in the world. He states that anciently it was 8600 miles in circumference, as might be seen by maps more than a thousand years old, but that constant ravages of the sea have reduced it to its present comparatively small proportions. The people, as he found them, were idolaters, and used no clothing except a breech-clout. Their products were rice, oil of sesame, milk, flesh, and what Polo describes as the wine of trees. But though the natives were in a condition of savagery, the country yielded great quantities of rubies, sapphires, topaz, amethysts, and other gems. Polo says the King possessed the finest ruby that was ever seen; that in size it was as long as one's hand, and as big as a man's arm, without spot, and shining like a fire, and which the King valued so highly that he would not part with it for any sum of money. Kubla Khan sent and offered the value of a city for it, but the possessor's answer was that he would not give it for the treasure of the world nor part with it, not because of its value particularly, but because it had been the property of his ancestors.

**A KING'S DRESS LIMITED TO A COLLAR, BREECH-CLOUT AND STRING OF BEADS.**

Polo next visited Malabar, where he found the people equally barbarous, and where he was surprised to see the King going about as naked as his subjects, save for the distinction of a collar of precious stones about his neck and a thread of silk on his breast with 104 pearls strung upon it, to count his prayers by. Though the people showed small cultivation or little ambition to rival their more civilized neighbors, they possessed as fine horses as were to be found anywhere in the world, bringing them from Ormus, and considering no price too great to pay, so that they might have the animal that would suit them. Not many of their practices are described by Polo, but among the few, he states that condemned persons would offer themselves to die in honor of an idol, to which they paid the most devout worship. In case of such self-condemnation, these self-executions were performed with twelve knives, with which



as many wounds were made in divers parts of the body, at every blow the voluntary martyr exclaiming: "I kill myself in honor of my idol." The last knife thrust was delivered into the heart, after which the body was burned by his kindred. The wives also cast themselves into the fire on the bodies of their husbands, disrepute following those who refused, a practice which continued a considerable while after Great Britain took possession of and ruled India. If these people had unholy customs and were moved in many cases by a savage barbarity, yet on the other hand they were great lovers of justice, and were hospitable to strangers.

Describing their impartiality and love of a rigid equity, Marco Polo says: "Justice is severely administered for crimes, and a creditor may in some cases encompass his debtor with a circle, which he dares not pass till he hath paid the debt or given security; if he does, he is to be put to death; and I once saw the King himself on horseback thus encircled by a merchant, whom he had long delayed and put off; neither would the King go out of the circle which the merchant had drawn till he had satisfied him, the people applauding the King's justice."

#### SOME EXTRAORDINARY STORIES.

From Ceylon Marco sailed westward and landed on the African coast, and also visited Madagascar, and probably the island of Zanzibar. His descriptions of the natives and products of these lands are grotesque, not concerning what he himself saw, but in repeating stories told to him by others, and for whose absurdities he cannot in justice be held responsible. Among other astonishing reports which he added to his otherwise valuable history, is that of a fabled bird called a roc, which he states was native to the East Africa coast, and of such an enormous size that it might easily carry away an elephant in its talons. Another story which he soberly relates is to the effect that in this same region there is a deep valley in which large and most perfect diamonds abounded, but which no man might approach because of numerous monstrous and poisonous snakes that had their haunts there. The only means of obtaining any of these diamonds was by casting pieces of fresh meat into the valley, which eagles would voraciously seize and carry to a distant perch to devour. As more or less diamonds would adhere to the meat, these would drop off while the eagle was eating it, and might then be recovered. Both of these stories, soon after their relation by Marco, were added to the apocryphal adventures of Sinbad the sailor, and have ever since been a part of the Arabian Nights Entertainment.

Marco Polo returned to Venice in 1298, and after his liberation by the Genoese, who held him captive barely one year, he married a rich Venetian lady by whom he had three daughters, but what his engagements were up to the time of his death, in 1324, history does not tell us.

#### THE DISASTERS OF A STORM CULMINATE IN THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.

Kubla Khan reigned from the year 1259 until 1294 of the Christian era. It was towards the close of his reign that he sent a fleet conveying a large



army against Japan with the intention of conquering that island country and adding it to his kingdom. But the fleet encountered such a dreadful storm that it was scattered and scarcely half of the vessels thus sent out ever returned to China. Those thus unaccounted for were supposed to have been lost, as Marco Polo relates, but circumstances lend plausible coloring to the belief which many now entertain that they met with a better fate. About this period, or shortly before the close of the thirteenth century, there sprang up in Central and South America two great empires, viz.: those of Mexico and Peru, which possessed regular institutes of religion, and which preserving distinctions of rank were measurably civilized, recognized social bonds, practised agriculture, and holding sacred the ties of matrimony forbade polygamy so as to protect the right of inheritance. In Mexico, particularly, a higher cultivation was to be seen in the hieroglyphic writings in which their history has been transmitted. When we consider the fact that both empires were surrounded by savage nations in which not a trace of civilization is to be discerned, and that being widely separated from each other there is yet discoverable a marked similarity of custom, character and cultivation, the supposition seems to be justified that both empires were founded by people from the west brought to the American shores by accident or design contemporaneously. And if this presumption be reasonable we must admit the correctness of the theory that they were the result of the reëstablishment of those supposed to have been lost in the expedition to Japan, for the violence of a storm long prevailing may have driven them so far out of their reckoning that the shores of America became their last refuge.





## CHAPTER XI.

### THE FALSE HOPES OF COLUMBUS.



ON the return of Marco Polo, after five years of journeying in the far east (through India and China), bringing to the civilized world report of the extraordinary wealth of the empires of that oriental region, many wild schemes were projected for reaching those remote shores. Among the navigators moved by this ambition was Columbus, who held to the belief that farther India might be reached by sailing westwardly, in which effort he came upon the West Indies, and for a time believed that in these he had found the rich country so glowingly described by Polo. The discovery of the continent of America by Cabot soon followed, as will

be presently related. But though the importance of this discovery was appreciated, yet there was a consuming ambition to reach the land of Cathay, where inconceivable wealth and a higher civilization was believed to preside, so that the intervening land of America soon came to be regarded as a barrier to these greater attainments. When Columbus finally became undeceived in his belief that Cuba was a part of India, he conceived the idea that America was but a narrow strip of land, washed on the western side by another sea, which he vainly sought to reach through a strait which he thought must divide the continent. It was largely to search for such a passage that he made his third and fourth voyages, and became a martyr to disappointed ambition and to the wiles of designing adventurers who were envious of his honors, and more covetous than himself.

### THE POPE APPORTIONS THE WORLD.

The court of Spain, however, did not abandon the researches which Columbus had instituted and in which many brave men afterwards perished, but whose fate only served to increase the ardor for further discovery. Portugal now entered the list, and in its rivalry with Spain, the two countries came into frequent collision. The discoveries of the earlier Portuguese navigators, along the coast of Africa and outlying islands, had been eclipsed by the more illustrious success of Columbus, who had now planted the cross,—as the insignia



of conquest and possession,—on a large extent of the coast of South America and the rich West Indies. These lay far apart from the Portuguese possessions on the African coast, but the jealousies of the two nations became so great that Rome was appealed to, being the chief arbiter in all the disputes of the European nations, for a settlement of the claims of the two countries. Accordingly, Pope Alexander the VI issued a bull of donation wherein was fixed a partition of the possessions already acquired and those which might be obtained through future discovery. These limits were divided by a meridian drawn a hundred leagues west of the Azores and Cape De Verde Islands, assigning to Spain all lands newly discovered or to be discovered, as far as



JOHN CABOT'S FLAG-SHIP.

180 degrees to the west of this land; and to Portugal all that land within the same extent, east of this meridian.

England and France refused to acknowledge the inherent right of the Pope to make gifts of unknown territory, and in the face of his edict the former power sent out explorers without so much as a consultation with his holiness. France acted with equal disrespect to the Pope, and, without any regard whatever for his desires, prepared to push her conquests in the new world.

#### DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY CABOT.

In 1496 the English, indifferent to the Pope's charter of donation, fitted out a fleet, conducted under letters-patent from Henry VII., who gave the command to John Cabot, a native of Venice, who with his three sons, Sebastian, Louis and Sanctius, set forth to seek a western passage to the north of the new Spanish discoveries, by which he hoped to reach Cathay, which was supposed to be eastern India. In pursuit of this ambition, in 1497 Cabot discovered the American Continent, probably first landing in Newfoundland, but being unable to find the strait which Columbus had also sought for in vain, he returned to England, and was loaded with honors by Henry VII., who appreciated to the fullest extent the importance of the continental discovery. His son



Sebastian made two voyages thereafter, one in 1498 and the other in 1517, on which he explored a great extent of the coast from Hudson Bay on the north, and as far as Virginia on the south. Like his father, he was compelled to return to England without having attained the immediate object of his voyage, but he had gained the greater honor and distinction of having coasted a large part of the American Continent and obtained an idea of its extent.

#### SHIPWRECK AND LOSS OF THE CORTEREAL BROTHERS.

Three years after the first voyage of Cabot, or in 1500, Gaspar Cortereal, a Portuguese gentleman of high birth and great wealth, set sail under the sanction of King Emanuel, following in the track of the Cabots, and with the same object. But instead of pursuing the southerly course after reaching Newfoundland, he believed that he might be able to reach India through a northwest passage, an ambition which many navigators have since cherished only to suffer the same disappointments that the Portuguese gentleman did. Cortereal, however, discovered the mouth of the St. Lawrence, which for a time he believed to be the long sought-for passage. But being baffled he turned back and sailed along the coast of Labrador, and thence to Hudson Bay, from which he returned again to Portugal; and in a second voyage, having the same object in view, the ship in which he sailed was wrecked, and nothing more was ever heard of him.



FLEET OF GASPAR CORTEREAL.

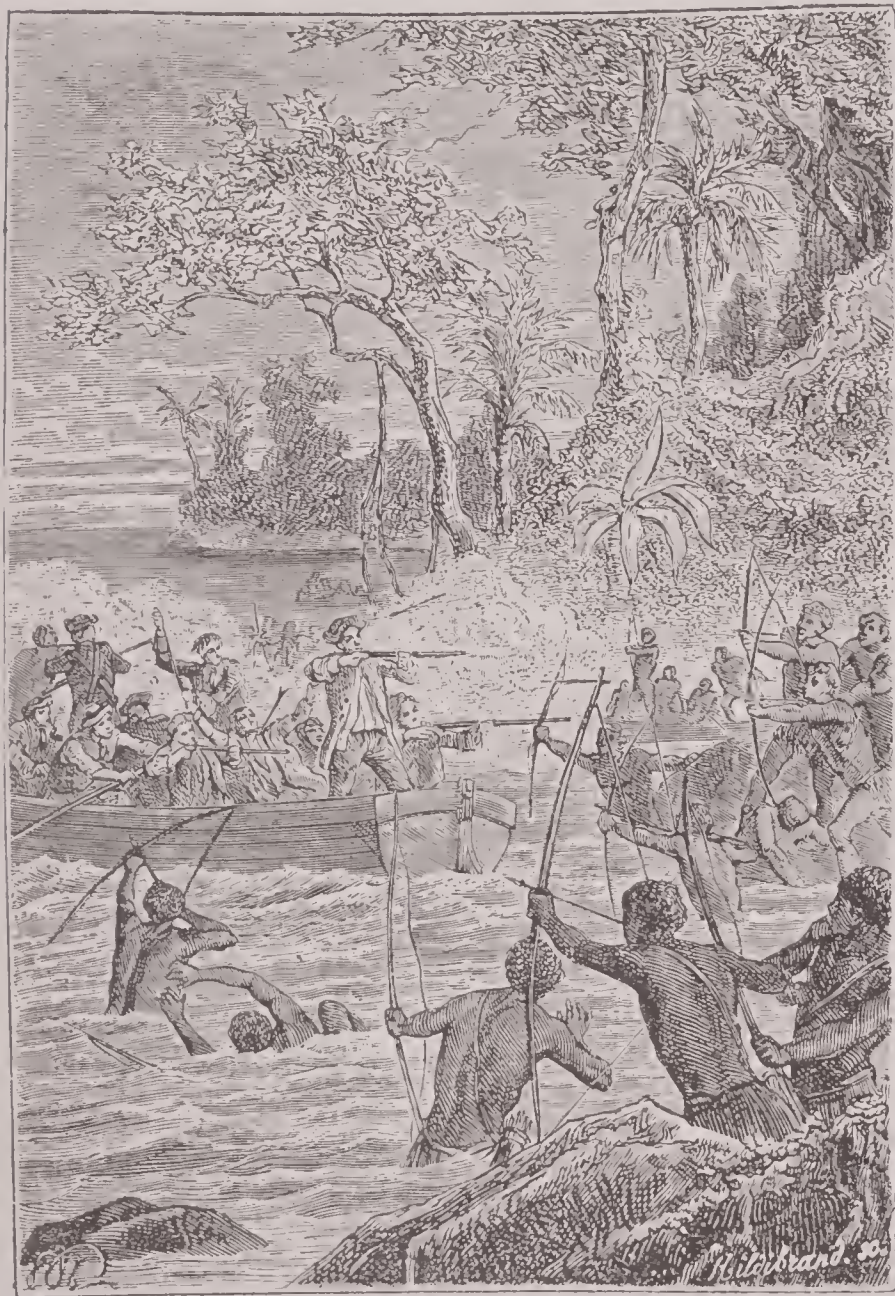
His brother, Michael Cortereal, fitted out three ships, and sailed to the western continent in search of his lost brother. The vessels arrived at some portion of the coast where there were several inlets and river mouths, possibly in Chesapeake Bay, and each ship, in the hope of discovering the wrecked mariners, took a different course, with the understanding that they should meet again at an appointed rendezvous on a fixed day. Two of the vessels returned at the designated time, but Michael was as unfortunate as his brother, for nothing further was ever heard from him. That both perished is certain, but in what manner will always remain a secret with the sea, which tells no tales of its dead.



The third brother had a great desire to set out in search of Gaspar and Michael, but the King refused his permission, saying that he would not consent to a third sacrifice. In memory of the disastrous fortunes of the Cortereals, the mouth of the St. Lawrence was for a long while called by the Portuguese "The Gulf of the Three Brothers," not however, because they are supposed to have perished there.

#### PINZON'S ADVENTURES.

The record of hardships and disasters attending many expeditions which sailed about this time is a long one. Yet this fatality seemed to act as a



PINZON ATTACKED BY INDIANS.

stimulant upon resolute spirits and increased the effort to make a complete exploration of the new continent, and to reach India. No sooner then was one crew destroyed than another almost immediately embarked in the same perilous track in pursuit of honor and wealth, impelled by that restless and roving spirit of adventure which characterizes the man who is born a sailor.

Among the most renowned voyagers of this period was Vincente Yanez Pinzon, one of three bold brothers, who by their means and influence assisted Columbus in overcoming the many obstacles which opposed him, and who became his companions on his first voyage. In December, 1499, Pinzon sailed from the port of Palos with a fleet of four caravels, or small vessels, taking with him two sons of his deceased brother and some of the seamen and pilots who had accompanied Columbus. After sailing three hundred leagues to the

south-west and passing the equinoctial line, the fleet was overtaken by a fearful tempest which drove the vessels at a furious rate and so far south that when the storm abated the Polar star was no longer to be seen. The dismay of the mariners, now deprived of their only guide, cannot be conceived. Their sole compass had been the stars, and having passed the equator, a new constellation,



now known as the Southern Cross, had taken the place to them of the Polar star. Nevertheless, Pinzon continued on until at length he arrived at the coast of Brazil which he was resolutely bent upon exploring. At Cape San Augustine he went on shore, and with the usual formalities took possession of the country in the name of Spain. At the time of landing no natives were to be seen, though large footprints were noticed on the sand. The next day fires were observed lighted on the coast, and the Spaniards debarking were immediately



encountered by a band of Indians of the most fierce and warlike character. They were men of great stature, armed with immense bows and poisonous arrows, while their features were ferocious, their looks haughty, and to the further astonishment of the Spaniards, they regarded the glittering toys and trinkets proffered them to gain their friendship with supreme contempt.

Considering these natives to be too dangerous for him to attempt any exploration of the inland, Pinzon again set sail, and proceeded southwesterly

VALIANT FIGHT OF A SPANIARD.



along the coast until he came to the mouth of a river too shallow to admit his ships. He sent several of his boats ashore, led by armed men, for the purpose of treating with the Indians whom he had observed on the right bank of the river. But when one of the bolder soldiers, armed with sword and buckler, attempted to approach them with signs of amity, one of the natives threw to him a piece of gold, and when he stooped to seize it, they rushed down with the intention of overpowering him. The Spaniard, immediately perceiving his danger, quickly arose and wielded his sword so dexterously that he kept his enemies at bay until some of his companions came to his assistance. The Indians, however, rallied and made such a vicious charge upon the soldiers that they killed ten of the Spaniards with darts and arrows, and pursued the entire party into the water, after which they bore off one of the boats. Several of the natives were killed, but this only served to increase their ferocity, so that the soldiers were glad to make their escape after such severe loss and to return to their ships unrefreshed. Turning, and sailing back again in a north-east direction forty leagues, Pinzon discovered the mouth of the Amazon river, and landing found the natives confiding, kindly and free-hearted, ready to share their possessions with their visitors, who however, after the usual custom of Spanish adventurers, repaid this hospitality by making thirty-six of the Indians captives. Thence the expedition continued its course northward until it came into the Gulf of Paria, whence, after taking in a cargo of Brazil-wood, it set sail for Hispaniola (Hayti).

This expedition, beyond the discovery of the Amazon river, was of small importance, as the only thing that Pinzon took back to Spain with him which excited any curiosity was an opossum, which aroused the liveliest curiosity of the court of Spain.

In 1500, Roderigo De Bastido, a Spanish gentleman, set out with two ships with John De La Casa, who had been a pilot under Columbus, and steering directly for the continent, discovered the land now called New Spain. Their object was to find the long sought for strait, but they were compelled to return disappointed like their predecessors. In the year following, Americus Vesputius, a Florentine who was in the service of the king of Portugal, set out upon a voyage and coasted South America for a distance of six hundred leagues. But his expedition resulted in no material benefits.

#### THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH AND DISCOVERY OF THE PACIFIC.

In the latter years of the fifteenth century and in the early years of the sixteenth, more than fifty voyages were undertaken to the American coast. While many of these were prepared with the hope and desire to reach India by a western passage, not a few were actuated by fantastic desires. Among the reputed wonders said to have been discovered in the New World was the fountain of youth, though Indian tradition had located it in the fabled Island of Bimini. This marvellous fountain was said to possess the power of renewing youth and restoring to vigor whoever dipped in its waters. It is reasonable to



believe that not a few of the astonishing legends which were then told were employed by adventurous navigators to induce their often mutinous but credulous followers to engage in dangerous and difficult enterprises. It was in search of this fabled fountain that Juan Ponce De Leon discovered the coast of Florida, but though he endured almost incredible hardships by a penetration of the interior, he was unable to find the fountain that had lured him to the New World. In 1513, Vasco Nunez De Balboa, who had been made sub-governor of a colony at Santa Maria, in Darien, discovered the Pacific Ocean, the long sought for sea-route to India. His ecstasy was so great that he plunged into the sea, carrying aloft the standard of Spain, and had the presumption to lay claim to the great ocean itself in the name of his ambitious king, a claim which was presently contested by other powers, and which led directly to piracy and opened a field for the cruel and adventurous.

It was a passionate desire for gold, which seems to have actuated all the Spaniards in their expeditions to America, that led to the discovery of the South Sea. Balboa was a man not only of talents, but one of great courage and capacity, and was one of the most illustrious of the companions of Columbus. While living at Santa Maria, he made many journeys into the interior, and by his generous treatment of the natives gained the good will of the caciques (or Indian chiefs), whom he had conquered. By entertaining friendly relations with the Indians, he acquired considerable quantities of gold, and also a knowledge of the interior. The first intimation had of the great ocean which lay to the west, was given during a quarrel between some of the followers of Balboa, over some spoils which they had recently acquired, and about which they were unable to agree as to a fair division. Seeing them thus in dispute, a young cacique, throwing some of the gold out of the scales into which it had been placed for weighing, exclaimed, "Why do you quarrel for such trash. If you are so passionately fond of gold as for its sake to abandon your own country and disturb the tranquillity of ours, I will lead you to a region where the meanest utensils are formed of this metal, which seems so much the object of your desires." The avarice of Balboa was thus strongly excited, and following the indication of the young cacique, after the greatest hardships he crossed the Isthmus of Darien, and from a western summit beheld the South Sea stretching away in boundless perspective.

Having taken possession of the country in the name of Spain, he exacted contributions in gold and provisions from the natives; after which he departed southward in search of a country where he was told the people possessed the greatest abundance of gold and used beasts of burden, which he was led to believe was the camel, which served to confirm his opinion that he was in the vicinity of India. The animal, however, proved to be the llama of South America, and Balboa was doomed to disappointment, for he was unable to find the golden country to which the cacique had referred, or the civilized people whom he set out to seek.



## EXECUTION OF BALBOA.

The failure of Balboa to realize the golden dreams which had moved all Spain gave opportunity for his inveterate enemy, Davila, governor of Darien,



BALBOA LAYING CLAIM TO THE PACIFIC.

whose hatred was first inspired by the honors which Spain had conferred upon him, to wreak a vengeance which he had long contemplated. A short recon-



cilement of this bitter jealousy followed the marriage of Balboa to Davila's daughter; but the fresh honors bestowed by Spain upon the discoverer of the Pacific excited the governor's hatred anew. Davila seized a pretext for charging him with treason, and forced him to trial before a mock court, which according to prearrangement found him guilty, together with four of his friends. In pursuance of the sentence, Balboa and the others condemned with him were beheaded at Castillo del Oro, in Darien, in 1517.

After the death of Balboa, the Spaniards constructed some small barks,



BEHEADING OF BALBOA.

and making a voyage in the Gulf of St. Michael, they discovered and took possession of several small islands, which they named the Pearl Islands, and from the natives of which they exacted a large tribute of pearls. These were the first fruits of European dominion in the Pacific.

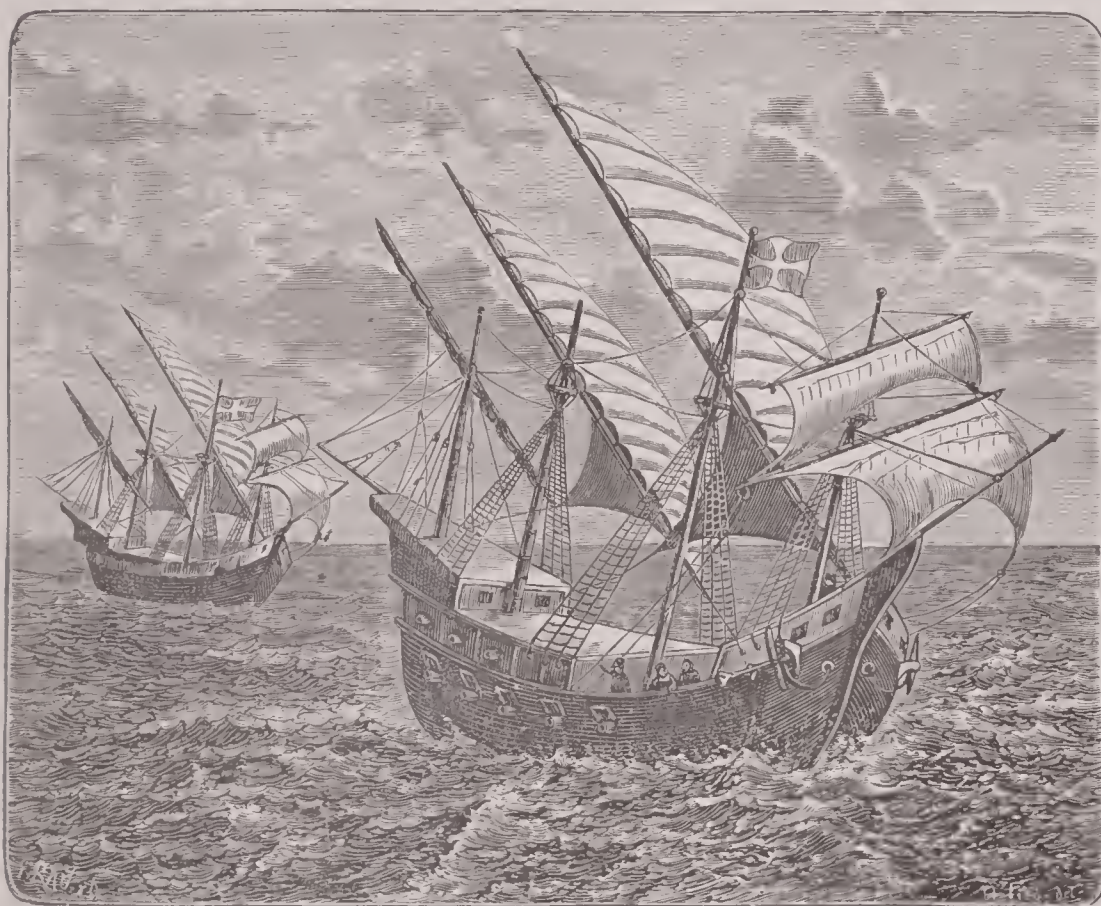
The failure of many voyagers to reach the Pacific through a strait finally led to an abandonment of that idea, and was followed by the opening of a regular intercourse across the Isthmus, for the convenience of which an entrepot was established at Panama. This scheme, however, was not productive of any immediate material benefits.



A proposition was soon afterwards made to cut a canal across the Isthmus, which seems to have been received with decided favor, but work was not begun, and the idea was relinquished, to be revived several times in the next fifty years, but always with the same result. The entrepot established at Panama was also presently abandoned, and the vessels which were sent to make an expedition into the Pacific returned again to Spain, owing to the death of De Solis, who in discovering the Rio de la Plata was murdered by the natives.

#### DISASTERS OVERTAKE LOYASA'S EXPEDITION.

The next important expedition was undertaken by Magellan, a Portuguese who had served with great reputation under Albuquerque in India. He sailed under the patronage of Charles V., full particulars of which voyage will be



LOYASA'S VESSELS PURSUING A TRACKLESS COURSE.

given in a subsequent chapter. The discoveries made by Magellan were claimed by Spain as its possession, an assumption of right which the other European powers were unwilling to concede. The old dispute of the boundary and partition-line was accordingly renewed, and referred to a convocation of learned geographers and skilful pilots. The subject was fiercely debated, but both sides were alike so tenacious of the claims of their royal constituents that they were unable to reach any agreement. The respective governments were therefore left to establish whatever right of possession that they found most convenient. Spain, therefore, immediately fitted out another expedition for the purpose of securing to the utmost the advantages of Magellan's discoveries. The fleet consisted of four ships, of which De Loyasa, a Knight of Malta, was appointed commander. The squadron sailed in July 1525, with every promise of great success; but the imperfect state of nautical science in that day led to several disasters which brought the expedition to wreck and failure.

The strait discovered by Magellan was a subject of uncertainty and dispute, and in an effort to reach it one of the vessels was wrecked near Cape



de las Virgines. Two of the other vessels were severely injured, and that on which de Loyasa sailed was separated from the rest and driven so far south that several of the seamen died of extreme cold. On the 26th of May following, the three vessels were again united and entered the South Sea, but were almost immediately dispersed in a storm. One of the vessels thereupon steered for New Spain, while the other two held to the north-west. Both Loyasa and Sebastian del Cano, the second in command, fell sick, and on the 3rd of August the former died, and the latter expired a few days afterwards. The command of the fleet now devolved upon Alonzo de Salazar, who steered for the Ladrones, discovering the Island of St. Bartholomew on the way, which lies between Magellan's Strait and the Ladrones. But thirty-eight of the seamen died here, and the whole crew were so enfeebled by the hardships to which they had been so long subjected, that they were forced to land on the island, and to kidnap eleven Indians to work the pumps. A month later, Salazar also succumbed to the fatigues which he had suffered in common with his seamen. The remainder of the expedition finally succeeded in reaching Spain, but in a dilapidated condition.

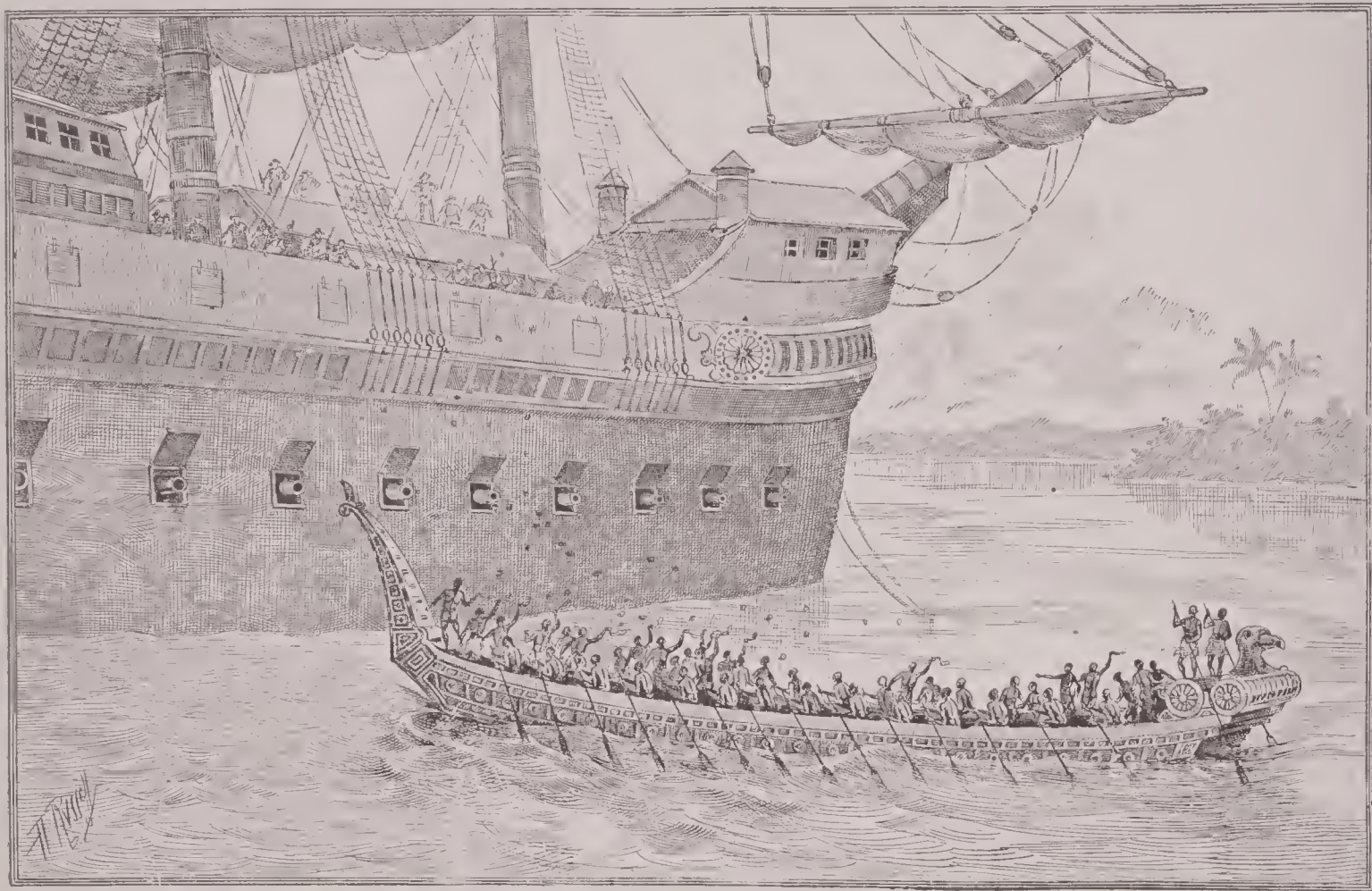
In this same year, 1526, Papua, or the Island of New Guinea, was discovered by Don Meneses while attempting a passage from Malacca to the Moluccas, of which latter he had been appointed governor by the court of Portugal. It was also in this year that another Portuguese captain, Diego da Rocha, discovered the Pelew Islands.

#### SAAVEDRA'S DISCOVERIES.

In the year 1527, Hernando Cortez equipped three ships for the purpose of making a voyage to the Spice Islands in the Pacific, and the fleet set sail on All Saints Day (November 1), under the command of his relative, Alvaro de Saavedra. After the vessels had been three days at sea they separated, and the commander pursuing his course alone after leaving the Ladrones, discovered a cluster of islands to which he gave the name of Islands de los Reyes. The natives whom he met on those islands were an extremely savage people, destitute of clothes save a piece of matting about the loins. They were, however, robust and swarthy, with long hair and rough beards. They had large canoes, and being extremely brave and armed with lances of cane, Saavedra hastily sailed away from the islands in order to avoid an encounter which he felt must prove disastrous to his men. He succeeded in reaching the Moluccas without further adventure, but was attacked by the Portuguese there who claimed possession of the islands. But a re-enforcement came to his aid from the residue of Loyasa's fleet,—who had now built a brigantine,—which enabled him to overcome his adversaries. After completing his cargo he again sailed for New Spain on the 3d of June, and shortly afterwards discovered another island to which, on account of his belief that gold there abounded, he gave the name of Island del Oro. Historians since, however, have generally believed this land to have been New Guinea, from the resemblance which the natives bore to the negroes of the Guinea coast.



Saavedra made his return to Spain, bringing a cargo of valuable spices, and in the following year set sail again for the Moluccas. On this voyage he discovered a group of small islands in seven degrees north, which he named Los Pintados, in designation of the practice of the natives of tattooing and painting themselves. He found the people extremely fierce and warlike, and scarcely had he anchored when a large canoe filled with warriors boldly attacked his ships with showers of stones thrown from slings. Several other low-lying and inhabited islands were discovered to the north-east of Los Pintados, which Saavedra named Los Buenos Jardines (The Good Gardens). Here coming to anchor, the natives came flocking upon the shore waving a flag. Like demon-



SAAVEDRA'S SHIP ATTACKED BY SLINGERS.

strations were made in return by the crew, which were followed by a party of warriors, accompanied by a female supposed to have been a sorceress, putting out in a canoe and going on board one of the vessels. After a short communication by means of signs, the natives induced Saavedra to go on shore, where he met a cordial welcome. He found the females of the natives both beautiful and agreeable and, unlike others of the South Sea Islanders, they wore dresses of fine matting. The hospitality of this people was limitless, for besides supplying the crew with fowls, cocoanuts, and many vegetable productions, the men and women came in procession, and with tambourine and festal songs gave a generous welcome to their strange visitors. Saavedra died directly after

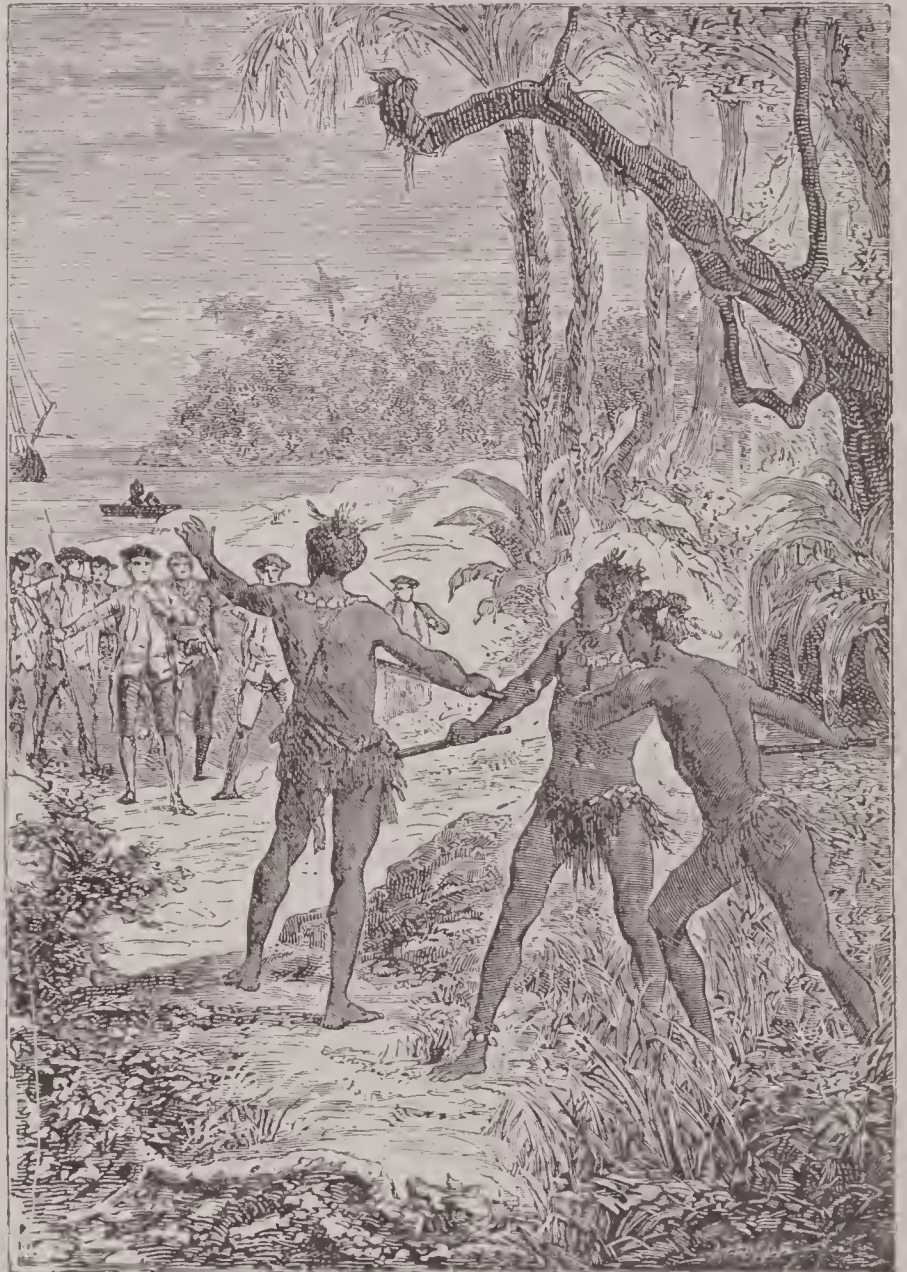


leaving the Good Garden Islands, and the ship after vainly attempting to reach New Spain by a direct easterly course, again returned to the Moluccas.

To Saavedra is ascribed the bold project of cutting a canal from sea to sea through the Isthmus of Darien. An attempt might have been made to have put his plans into execution had it not been for Acosta's preposterous claim that the Pacific Ocean being higher than the Atlantic, the undertaking, if accomplished, must be followed by some awful calamity to the globe.

#### FURTHER DISCOVERIES IN THE PACIFIC.

In 1529 the Peninsula of California was discovered by Cortez, and its gulf and shores thoroughly explored. New settlements were now rapidly being made in both Mexico and Peru, which so engrossed the attention of the Spanish governor that it was not until the year 1542 that any fleet set out from that country to make further explorations. In that year, the Viceroy of Mexico entrusted the command of two vessels which he had fitted out to his brother-in-law, Lopez Villalobos, and sent him upon a voyage of discovery in the Pacific. This expedition met with great success, being favored by fair winds and good fortune, which led first to the discovery of the Island of St. Thomas and a cluster of low islands near by which Villalobos named the Corals. In January, 1543, a hundred miles from the Coral Islands the fleet passed ten other islands, which from their fertile appearance they called The Gardens. The fleet coasted along Mindanao, and then set westward to the Island of Sarrangan, where it was determined to fix a settlement. To this intention



VILLALOBOS LANDING ON THE PHILIPPINES.

the natives offered hostile objection, but they were easily subdued and possession of the island was taken in the name of the Emperor. It was here that the Spaniards raised their first crop of Indian corn in the Philippines, a name which Villalobos gave to these islands in honor of the prince-royal of Spain. After estab-



lishing a prosperous settlement upon the island Villalobos became engaged in petty intrigues among the native chiefs who favored different European leaders. This led to a charge of treason against him by the Spaniards, which he was unable to defend, and directly after his return to Europe, in a Portuguese ship, he died of sickness and chagrin.

**A SETTLEMENT ESTABLISHED IN THE ASHES OF A BURNED CAPITAL.**

Upon the accession of Philip the Second to the throne of Spain, he issued an order to the Viceroy of Mexico for the conquest of the Philippines, in which Portuguese influence had become dominant. The expedition was under the command of Lopez Legaspi, whose assistant was Friar Urdaneta, who was a celebrated navigator, and had been a companion of Loyasa. The expedition set sail in the latter part of 1564, and in January following discovered a small island which Legaspi named De los Barbudos. On the following morning they came in sight of a chain of islands which, because of the shoals that surrounded them, they called De los Plazeres. Two days later, another chain of islands was found, and which was called the The Sisters. These islands are supposed to be the Piscadores and the Arrescifes of modern charts. The fleet finally landed at the Ladrones, where it was decided to form a settlement; but the sealed orders of the King being opened here, they found that the decree ordered the establishment of a settlement in the Philippines. The natives were found to be kindly and hospitable, but were such consummate thieves that from this propensity the islands received their European designation. Their dwellings were handsomely formed and lofty, being raised some distance from the ground by stone pillars, and divided into square chambers, which were usually occupied by several families, living in a strictly communal state. The only creatures which they found among them were turtle doves, which the natives kept in cages and taught to speak, and a few chickens. The islanders had an extremely rude kind of religion, consisting, it would seem, of the worship of the bones of their ancestors. This would appear, however, to have been more of the nature of reverence than a system of worship, as they seemed to have no idea of a spiritual existence. In February the fleet anchored off the eastern shore of the island Tandaya, which is one of the Philippines. The natives received them with manifestations of friendship, and at the solicitation of Legaspi they entered into an alliance, which was attested by the chiefs and the commander drawing blood from their arms and breasts and mingling it with wine or water, and drinking it together as a pledge of mutual fidelity. This pledge, however solemnly made, was not faithfully kept; for the natives soon discovered the avaricious policy of the Europeans, and directly accused them of giving good words, but performing bad deeds. The fleet sailed from one island to another, but the inhabitants of each exhibited a similar want of confidence in the Spaniards, so that one station after another was abandoned, until at last Zebu was selected as the place for a settlement. The natives here were no more disposed to enter into friendly relations with the Spaniards than





SACK AND BURNING OF THE CAPITAL, OF ZEBU.



on the other islands, so that, losing faith in peaceful methods, the Spaniards found a pretext for aggression, and the foundation of the first settlement of the Spaniards in the Philippines was made in the smouldering ashes of the sacked capital of Zebu.

Hostilities having now begun, they were waged for a considerable time between the islanders and the invaders with great fierceness, until at length mutual interest dictated peace, and the settlement was completed. The news



ENCOUNTER WITH CANNIBALS.

of the occupation was carried back to America by the Friar Urdaneta, who, leaving the Philippines on the 1st of January, reached Acapulco on the 3d of October—a passage which won for him great honor, as the voyage between the Philippines and the mother country had hitherto baffled every navigator. This route afterwards became the regular one between the Philippines and New Spain, the track being called Urdaneta's passage. The fame of this monk became so great that among European navigators he was credited with having discovered the north-west passage, long before Sir Francis Drake had attempted that difficult enterprise.

#### AN ISLAND WHENCE SOLOMON DERIVED HIS RICHES.

Maritime science and discovery were now advancing surely, and individual sagacity and experience were anticipating its progress. Juan Fernandes, a Spanish pilot, who had

made frequent passages from Peru to the new settlements in Chili, now ventured far out upon the high sea, and in the progress of his voyage discovered the island which bears his name, but which is best known as Robinson Crusoe's Island. In this inviting land he found everything that the seaman requires, wood, water, safe anchorage, and a great variety of palatable vegetables. About this time also Cocos Island, and the Galapagos, (which afterwards became the haunts of the English Buccaneers), and the Solo-



mon Islands, were discovered. These latter islands were first seen by Mendana, who left Callao, a port of Lima, in 1567, on a voyage of discovery in the South Seas. After sailing 1450 leagues he discovered the Isle of Jesus, the island of St. Isabella and the Star, and then came upon a group to which he gave the name Solomon Isles, in the belief that it might attract attention by indicating great wealth in gold and other precious commodities. He also gave it out that it was from these islands that Solomon had obtained his gold, sandal-wood, and the rare materials employed in the erection of the temple.

#### AMONG THE CANNIBALS.

Mendana found the natives of these islands very savage in disposition, and practising cannibalism to an astonishing extent. They not only ate the enemies which they slew in battle, but upon occasion parents devoured their own children; and attacks of one tribe upon another were frequently made with no other object than to obtain bodies to satisfy their horrid appetites. The natives both young and old wore no clothing, and the only religion which they practised was the worship of reptiles and toads. When the Spaniards landed upon these shores they carried the cross and set it up as a sign of Spanish occupation; but during this ceremony they were savagely attacked by the natives, who fortunately were driven off after several were slain, though no serious damage was sustained by the invaders. After the Spaniards had remained a considerable time on the island a friendly intercourse was begun with the islanders, which was interrupted at length by the cruel violence of the Spaniards, who seized a native boy with the intention of carrying him back to Spain to exhibit as a sample of the new subjects which they had brought under Spanish rule. A chief accompanied by a large body of warriors, made a demand upon Mendana for the return of the boy, which being refused, he lay in wait until opportunity offered, when he set upon and murdered ten of the Spaniards whom he succeeded in surprising while they were on shore for a supply of water. This act aroused the vengeance of the Spaniards who, arming themselves, went on shore and spread a dreadful havoc among the natives, many of whom they killed, burned half their houses, and destroyed all their possessions.

Upon Mendana's return to Lima, he gave the most exaggerated accounts of the wealth and surprising fertility of this new Ophir, which led to several projects looking to a settlement of the islands; but none of them matured, and owing to the rapid extension of continental settlements remembrance of the Solomon group faded away. Thirty years afterwards Mendana undertook another voyage to the same islands, which after a search of many months he was unable to find; nor were they discovered again until two centuries later, when M. Surville, in 1769, happened upon them.

Juan Fernandes had laid claim to having seen the coast of New Zealand, and pretended to have visited a continent to the south, which all the navigators of that age believed to exist, but which none had been able to find. Fernan-



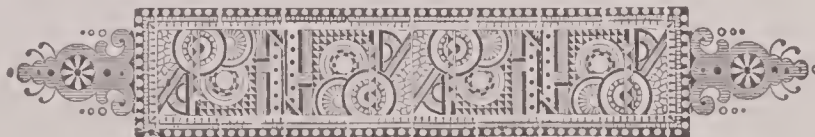
des' claim that he had found a fertile portion of this unknown country, inhabited by white people, who were dressed in woven cloth and whose manners were kind and hospitable, was received with many doubts; as was also the claim set up by a navigator named Gali to have discovered an island which he named Table Mountain, the external appearance of which led him to believe it was one of the Sandwich group. The more are these statements to be



SPANIARDS SURPRISED AND MURDERED BY ISLANDERS.

doubted from the fact that at the time that Drake undertook his famous voyage, they were either unknown or completely forgotten; which is not likely when the importance of such a midway station for the Spanish fleet and ships passing between Mexico and the Philippines is considered.

The foregoing is a brief but complete record and results of the important voyages undertaken to the South Seas preceding that of Drake in the year 1577.





## CHAPTER XII.

### VOYAGES OF VASCO DA GAMA.



DISCOVERY of a strange land by Columbus, in 1492, in pursuance of his ambition to reach India by a sea-route to the west, aroused to its highest pitch the spirit of adventure and exploration. While it was a general belief that the coast of Asia extended very far eastward of its real line, and that Columbus had really found an island off the main shore of India, if not the country itself, there were yet a few who held to the opinion that the most direct water route to India lay by sailing east. This belief was fortified by many traditions, such as the voyage of Hanno which, though generally regarded at that time as a fiction, was yet accepted as probable, if

not true, by a few voyagers, of which number Vasco da Gama, a bold Portuguese navigator, was one.

King John, one of the wisest of Portugal's rulers, had manifested his faith in the theory that Africa was a peninsula the point of which might be doubled, and that an open sea-route direct to India would then be found. So strongly did he cherish this belief that he provided the means for several expeditions and despatched them to disprove or verify his opinion. These enterprises had, unfortunately, resulted in no practical benefits, chiefly on account, as it was maintained, of the small size of the vessels that had been sent upon such expeditions, some of which had been wrecked, and others disabled by severe storms encountered in southern latitudes. But all the failures that had attended these attempts in no way discouraged King John, or in anywise disturbed the strength of his opinions; but observing that his theory ran counter to the general belief of his people, to avoid censure which might follow persistence in his efforts, he resolved to build three large vessels, not only great in size, as compared with ships of that time, but of extraordinary strength, intending secretly to dispatch them on their completion, under command of his bravest and most experienced navigators, in quest of the passage which he believed existed around the point of Africa. But his proud purpose was abruptly terminated by death, who strode into the halls of his palace and taking his hand led him away forever from the ambitions of this life to another land where

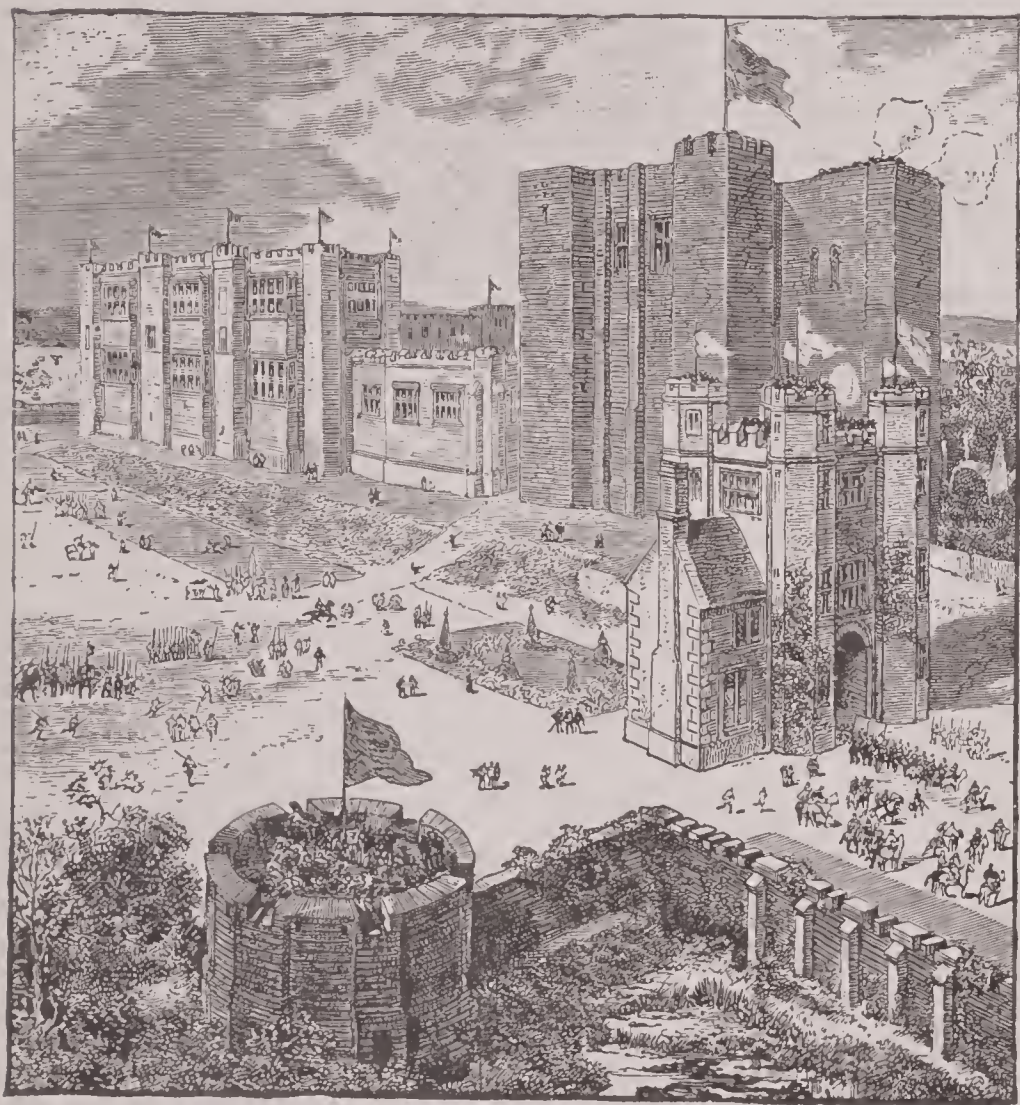


kings and paupers find no distinctions, and the spirit of adventure and discovery is without motive.

#### THE CEREMONIALS OF COURTS.

"Yes, the good King John is dead." Within the stately towers, the halls of which for three hundred years have echoed to the tread of kings, a senseless lump of clay, a ghastly thing, alone recalls the Majesty of Portugal, while servile nobles in silence slip away to hail the rising sun. The King is dead, why should they stay? "Can flattery soothe the dull, cold ear of death?" So one by one they hurry off to pay their court where compliment is current coin and adulation is the price of place.

In the street, where thick layered-straw from curb to curb deadens the



THE OLD PALACE IN LISBON.

sound of hoof and wheel, lest the passing dream of the dying King should be broken, women, whose thin faces and tattered, scanty raiment tell of pinching want, kneel, and with busy fingers tell their beads and murmur paters that the good King's soul may rest in peace. To his enemies terrible, to his people he was kind, and the word of charity has its echo in the heart of the poor. "The King is dead;" men whisper the sad news one to another, for all Lisbon is gathered in the streets around the palace, and the people watch while attendants drape door and window with black, and the royal standard is displayed with sable streamers, and

trumpeters and heralds sally forth and call all men to mourn, for John was greatly beloved. But their sorrow was not unalloyed, for as the heralds following the buglers proclaim in the market places and squares the death of the sovereign, they also cry aloud, "Long live his royal cousin and successor, King Emanuel." And men rejoice even in their tears, for Emanuel had long been known as "The Fortunate," and during the days that intervene between the death and funeral, the life and character of the



good John are discussed far and wide. His virtues are compared with those of John the Great, his predecessor; his merits are equal to those of Prince Henry the Navigator, so much respected and so greatly feared; whose harsh voice and forbidding red face were known along the African coast from Morocco to Guinea; and the people wondered whether the explorations which had been the delight of John the Great and his son the Sailor Prince, would be continued and what would be done with the three great hulks whose unfinished frames had stood in the dock-yard so many years. What they were built for nobody knew, not even the courtiers, for the King had kept that to himself. But conjecture was lively, and it was commonly supposed that some matter of more than usual moment had inspired their construction, although the work was some time before suspended, at the commencement of the King's long illness.

But time would tell. For the present it is enough to mourn the death of the good John and rejoice at the accession of the Prince Emanuel; so in silence Lisbon follows the great black car which bears the poor remains of the proud King from the magnificent Bemposta Palace to their last home in the Church of St. Vicente de Fora, just outside the Saracenic walls, where, in the little dark chapel, close by the high altar, King John is laid away to sleep with his fathers.

#### THE HIDDEN CHEST DISCOVERED.

Emanuel was a man of affairs, and lost no time in putting himself in possession of all information which might be of assistance in the administration of the kingdom's business, but for some time he could find nothing in the papers of the late King throwing light on the three hulks, nor on any of the numerous marine enterprises of John, or of Henry the Sailor. But one day, in a private room, a secret recess was discovered, and the spring of the hidden door being touched, it answered to the finger, the door rolled back and disclosed a large chest. Here was a mystery; the great box of heavy oak was securely locked, and no key could be found. A smith came, and the chest was opened. It was filled with papers. The King kneeled, and began an examination of the contents of the chest. One package after another, parchments, commissions, letters, reports, maps were drawn forth to the light, and the mystery was solved, for here were full accounts of all the naval enterprises of John, and Henry the Navigator. The royal dinner was not eaten that day, and for many days subsequently the King was hardly seen by the court, for hour after hour went by as he and his secretaries examined the contents of the big box.

#### LEGENDS OF OTHER VOYAGERS.

And then and there for the first time he learned of a visit made to Portugal years before by a Caffre king; of the legend then currently believed of Prester John and the magnificence of his court; of the determination of King John to send out spies to the east; he learned of Gonzallo de Pavia and João



Peres Covillião (or Covilham) and the wonderful medal that was given each, inscribed with the message of the King of Portugal engraved in every known language; of the jewels given them to sell for their expenses, of moneys paid for the support of their families while they were absent; of the rewards promised them in case of success. He learned how they travelled, disguised as the servants of merchants, to Turkey, to Arabia, how they parted at Mecca, Gonzallo going to India, and Pero along the African coast; how the former died, while on his return; how the latter was detained in Abyssinia; he learned how the King started an expedition in search of Covilham along the west coast of Africa, being convinced that if it sailed far enough it would circumnavigate the continent and arrive at Abyssinia; how Janifante, an African merchant,



DA GAMA EXPLAINS HIS PURPOSE TO EMANUEL.

was placed in command of the fleet of four caravels; how he sailed along the coast until he came to a certain cape, the Cape of Storms, which he spent many weeks trying to weather, but was prevented by the small size of his boats; how he returned, and informed the King that had he larger vessels he certainly would be able to pass the cape by keeping out at sea, and go to Abyssinia, and to India too; how John started to build

larger ships, and how thus the mystery was solved, for according to the parchments found in the box they were intended for the Indian voyage.

#### AN ASTROLOGER CASTS THE KING'S HOROSCOPE.

The imagination of the world was on fire with the discoveries of Columbus, and the King's ambition was readily aroused by the narratives that had been recovered from the old box. But he was cautious and, not disposed to rush madly into any enterprise, he sent for a certain Jewish astrologer in whom he had great confidence. The Jew came, and as one chronicler tells us, "consulted his devils," who announced to Emmanuel that his ship should sail, would pass a great continent, and give to the Portuguese an empire comparable only



to that which Columbus had already bestowed upon Spain. It was enough. Hammer and saw and adze were at once plied on the three big ships, haste was enjoined upon the builders, work was pushed day and night, and by the king's command stores were gathered and preparatious made for the expedition which was to carry the glory of Portugal farther than it had been borne even by Henry the Navigator.

In the meantime, while work was progressing on the vessels, there came one day to Lisbon a travel-stained Oriental who would see the King and would tell his business to none but Emanuel. Repeatedly driven from the gate as an imposter, he at last returned, his pertinacity finally receiving its reward in a private audience with the sovereign, who soon after, in a state of great agitation, summoned his council, introduced the stranger and announced that the ragged, dusty wanderer was a messenger from Covilham, then a prisoner in Abyssinia. Although unable himself to return to his native country, Covilham had thus managed to communicate with his master, and in the letter sent by this strange messenger gave advice that ships should be sent down the west coast of Africa, confidently expressing the opinion that if they would sail far enough to the south they would be able to pass the cape and come up on the east side of the continent, whence it was but a short distance to India.

#### PREPARATIONS FOR A DANGEROUS VOYAGE.

The haste previously made in preparing the vessels which King John had begun was personified tardiness to the zeal with which their completion was now pushed. They were finished, were launched, and stores which in quantity and variety exceeded anything before known in Lisbon, were laid up for the cruise. Double sets of tackle, triple sets of sails, boards, pitch, oakum, all sorts of food, preserves, perfumes, all the medicines known to the pharmacist, and a doctor and a priest for each ship, were provided. All manner of merchandise was purchased and sent on board; all kinds of coined money were placed in the treasury of the fleet, together with jewels, ornaments of gold and silver and of precious stones, with swords and daggers and shields, with lances and chains and bracelets, with crowns, with gewgaws of every description, designed as presents to the people and potentates that might be visited, with spices of every kind,—nothing was forgotten. All Europe was searched for slaves who understood eastern languages, and when one was discovered no price was too high to pay for his purchase, for who could tell how great might be the service he would render. The bravest and most trustworthy men, both soldiers and sailors, were selected for the expedition, and last but not least, eighteen murderers from the various prisons of Portugal were pardoned on condition that they would enlist in the fleet for "dangerous duty," this expression being understood to mean that when the Captain General wished to send a man on shore at a point where the temper of the natives was uncertain, and did not desire to risk the lives of his men, one of the murderers should undertake this duty; if he lived, so much the better for him; if he should be killed, so much the better for the expedition, for then he would save the life of a more useful man.



**APPOINTMENT OF VASCO DA GAMA.**

The fleet being ready, a strife arose as to the commander, for not a nobleman in the country but desired to share the honor of so vast an expedition. Scores of applications were received from rich and noble and valiant, but Emanuel hesitated, delayed the matter until the last moment, and "after several days of fasting, prayer and deliberation," selected almost by chance one Vasco da Gama, a gentleman of the court, who had proved his valor in the Moorish wars, and his naval skill in more than one crusade along the coast of Morocco. So Vasco took the command, taking with him his brother Paulo, and a great friend of the two as the commander of the third ship. He named his vessels San Miguel, San Gabriel and San Raphael, or in English, St. Michael, St. Gabriel and St. Raphael, in honor of the Archangels, and fearing lest provisions might run short for so long a voyage, at his request a fourth ship was added to the squadron, in which were carried large quantities of stores that could not be loaded into the other vessels.

**DEPARTURE OF THE SQUADRON.**

The powers of an ambassador were conferred on da Gama; he was given letters-patent to annex all lands which he might discover; a special embassy brought from the Pope authority for Portugal to conquer all countries in Africa and India not already appropriated by Spain, and preparations for the expedition were thus happily completed. The momentous day finally arrived. The king's standard was blessed in the cathedral; the fleet weighed anchor and dropped down the river to Belem where it waited a favorable wind to put to sea, and during the three days of detention a roll was made of the crew and of their relatives, and the list laid up in the archives of the kingdom that they might never be forgotten. Largesses were to be paid the wives and other dependents of the heroes engaged in this memorable service; absolution was given to all who should perish during the undertaking, and on March 25, 1497, the desired breeze sprang up, the anchors were weighed, the sails were hoisted, the king's banner thrown to the breeze, and amid the tears of the spectators and with the blessings of the Patriarch the fleet stood out to sea to add new empires to the Portuguese crown.

**FIRST PASSAGE OF THE CAPE.**

The expedition stood down the coast of Africa for many weary weeks, and to the sailors the continent seemed to have no end. From time to time landings were made along the shore at such points as seemed to afford shelter from the almost constant storms, but the harbors were poor, the inhabitants were hostile, and from one place after another the Portuguese retired, preferring to brave the dangers of the main than to contest a worthless territory with the hardy blacks. The region of the Cape of Storms which Emanuel, before the departure of the expedition, had already named the Cape of Good Hope, was reached, but so surely as a tack was made toward the east, so surely did forbidding breakers and precipices rise up under the bow and sev-



eral times with difficulty were the ships rescued from destruction. Unprecedented storms prevailed and for two months the ships beat in vain in an effort to round the inhospitable cape. The crew became despondent, and even Vasco's brother seemed to lose heart. A proposition was made to change the tack, and after doing so, to the inexpressible gratification of the Captain General it was discovered that the cape had been weathered and that the land now appeared to the west instead of to the east of the storm-beaten fleet. But the sailors finding themselves in new and hitherto unexplored regions, began to be afraid, and some of the petty officers uniting with them, projected a mutiny which Gama thwarted only by a daring stratagem. Sending for all the pilots to come on board the flag-ship with their maps, charts and instruments, he put the



FIRST PASSAGE OF THE CAPE.

men in irons and sent them below; collecting all the nautical apparatus, including every map and chart he threw overboard these instruments of their craft, then announced that as the pilots were to be kept in irons and there were neither maps nor apparatus by means of which they could return, they must go on.

#### MALADIES AND FEARS.

The voyage continued, but so long a confinement at sea told severely on the health and strength of the crews. From two hundred and forty men the expedition was reduced to one hundred and forty, the rest having died. The ships began to leak, and discovering a large river, probably the Zambesi, Vasco



ordered the fleet to put in to rest and recruit. Hardly were the crews landed on the shore when a terrible and hitherto unknown disease broke out among them. Their flesh decayed upon their bones, their lips fell away, their teeth dropped out, the muscular portion of the body became so soft that a finger could be pushed into the arm or leg, "which was most pitiful for to see;" and no wonder, for this was the first appearance of the scurvy, which the hapless Portuguese attributed to a certain kind of fruit brought them by the natives, and not for a long time did they discover that it was due to the salt diet and lack of vegetable food consequent upon their long voyage. Their condition would have been even worse, but for the capture of several hammer-head sharks, the flesh of which, though somewhat unpalatable, the crews greedily devoured, because it was fresh meat.

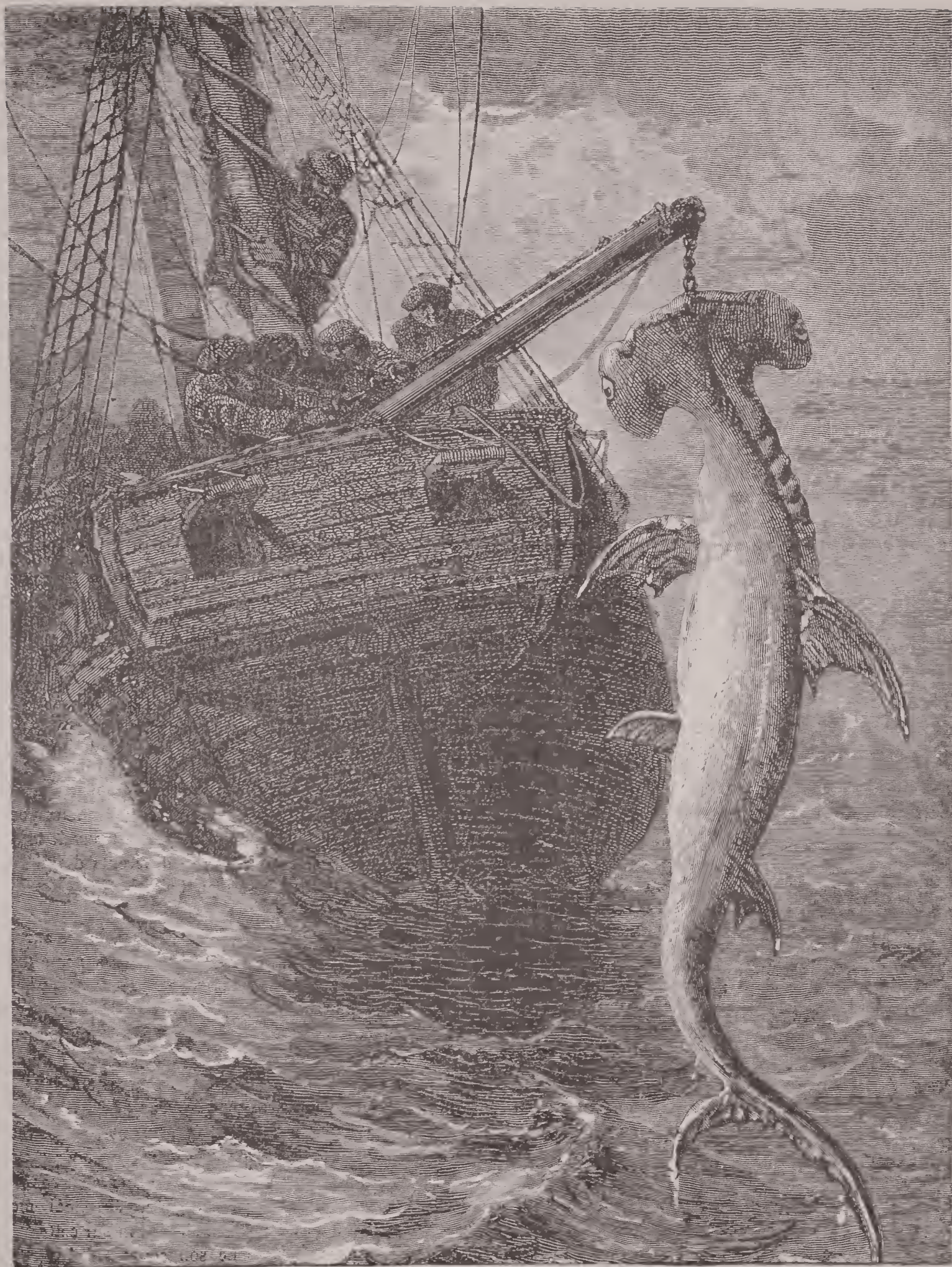
#### **TROUBLE WITH THE SULTAN OF ZANZIBAR.**

Coasting along the eastern shore of Africa for a long time, Vasco saw only the blacks who rarely came to the ships, but at last a vessel at anchor was discerned in a little bay. Being pursued by one of the ship's boats, the crew of the smack made their escape, but the merchant who owned and commanded the little coaster was taken, and being treated in a friendly manner, guided them to Mozambique (or Zanzibar), where the weary voyagers cast their anchor, hoping for a long rest. At first they were kindly received by the Sultan, who hoped by trade with them to realize large gains, but on ascertaining that they desired to go further, he inquired of what kind of merchandise they were in search. They showed him pepper, cloves, cinnamon and ginger, and he at once knew by the sight of these spices that India was their destination. Dissembling his indignation at their refusal to remain with him, the Sultan formed a plot to seize the ships, but his scheme was discovered by the friendly Moor, and da Gama having, partly by persuasion, partly by force, induced two pilots to come on board, the ships left the port of Mozambique, taking the pilots with them. At this point, however, they lost one of their men, a condemned murderer who had been sent on shore as a messenger. Many years later, when a Portuguese ship touched at the port of Mozambique, the grave of this man was discovered. He had lived among the people of that region for a number of years after being left there by Gama's ships, having in the meantime become one of the king's ministers and a man of much renown.

#### **RECEPTION BY AN AFRICAN KING.**

Escaping the dangers of Mozambique, and still following a north-east course, the expedition came to Melinda, where Gama and his companions were received with great honor. Their favorable reception was due in no small part to the king's soothsayer. In most African, and in Oriental, countries the office of soothsayer or astrologer to the court is deemed one of great importance. In every emergency the astrologer is consulted, and his advice being in most cases consonant with the wishes of the sovereign, is strictly followed. Knowing the importance of the soothsayer, the captured Moorish merchant





CAPTURING HAMMER-HEAD SHARKS.



took time by the forelock, and when sent on shore with a message to the King, made it his especial business to bribe the prophet, who thereupon announced that the strangers were come with pacific intentions, and that the King of Melinda could do no better than receive them as friends. After so auspicious a beginning in this new country, they found themselves so well treated that they remained for three months waiting for the monsoon, in order with it to cross the Indian Ocean. The King's favors were extended in a practical way: Whenever the sailors, or purchasing agents of the fleet went on shore, a messenger of the King attended them through the streets that they might not be ill-treated by the people, to the market places in order that they should not be cheated, and through the country lest they should lose their way. Appreciating his kindness, Gama gave him a reception on board the ships just before sailing, and presented to him a royal robe, a gold mounted sword and lance, and a throne of wood inlaid with plates of bronze and silver gilt. While greatly pleased with their liberality, he did not fail to impress upon their minds that he was a very great king, and that their generosity was but in proportion to his mightiness. He told them of the extent of his dominions, of the number of slaves and wives he possessed, of the vast fields in which his yams were raised, of the numbers of his oxen and buffaloes, and of the boys he had in training to become soldiers. In return for this boastful assurance, the Portuguese exercised their imaginations and impressed the African king with the prowess and dominions of their own sovereign, declaring that his kingdom reached from the regions of eternal summer to the land of perpetual snow; that he had sent out a fleet of two hundred ships, and the four boats in which they came formed the least division; that they had lost their company in a storm and had wandered up and down the sea for several years, seeking where they might find the remainder of the fleet. Impressed as he might have been by these stories, the King was more affected by the silver service which was exhibited on the ship's table the day of his reception, which the Portuguese were careful to explain was a thing of every-day use, and of no moment whatever.

The vessels took in supplies of rice, butter, of sheep salted whole like pork, of fowls and vegetables, of sugar in powder and enclosed in sacks; of oranges, and last but not least, of cocoanuts, or ghost-nuts, as they called them, "cocoa" being a Portuguese word signifying "ghost," and the nut was so called from the fanciful resemblance which the three dark spots on the tip bear to the eyes and mouth of a human face. Leaving one of the banished murderers, who was at once made a gentleman of the king's household and subsequently became Premier, the vessels lifted their anchors and stood out to sea, and the last Vasco and his crew saw of Melinda was a procession of the King and nobles going up from the beach to the town, the trained servants bearing the sword and throne in solemn state before the African potentate.



## CHAPTER XIII.

### A REMARKABLE PROPHECY.



**I**N Calcut an old legend or prophecy was current that when the fulness of time should come to pass, India would be conquered and possessed by strangers who would arrive in ships from the west and fight with the thunders of Heaven. A hundred years before Vasco sailed from Portugal an immense number of Chinese, driven from their native country by causes at the present day unknown, had sailed along the Indian coast and settled in its bays and harbors. By some this was supposed to be the prophesied invasion, but others more familiar with the terms of the prophecy knew that not thus could it be fulfilled, for these strangers came from the east and not from the west, nor did they fight with the thunders of Heaven, or any other weapon, but arrived as peaceable settlers, seeking shelter and a home. When, therefore, twenty days after Melinda had faded from view on the western horizon the Portuguese fleet came in sight of Calcut (a large city on the west coast of India and now the seat of the Madras presidency), the prophecy was at once recalled by king and people, and preparations were hastily made to repel the expected hostile invasion. But, to the astonishment of the King of Calcut, the vessels came to anchor in the offing, and neither approached the shore nor sent any messenger to the land. A day passed, two days, three days, and still no message was despatched from the strangers. Who were they, and what did they want? The fishermen who passed in their boats at some distance from the strange crafts said the men were white, but otherwise they could give no information. His curiosity getting the better of his determination to keep the strangers at a distance, the King finally despatched a messenger to the flag-ship to ask who the strangers were and what they wanted in his port. This was the opportunity for which da Gama had waited, for the Moor explained to him that in dealing with the Oriental he must appear indifferent, and in nowise to venture on shore or put himself in the power of an eastern potentate without security and hostages for his personal safety. So da Gama had waited with what patience he might, knowing that sooner or later a messenger would come from the shore to ask his business.





A MESSENGER FROM THE KING OF CALEUT CALLS ON DA GAMA.



**A GREAT STORY-TELLER.**

The Moorish merchant, who acted as the purchasing agent of the fleet, was sent on shore to explain the presence of the vessels in the harbor of Calcut. When asked who were the strangers he at once waxed eloquent, according to directions given him before leaving the ship. Under his flexible tongue the dominions of the Portuguese sovereign stretched from the north to the south and extended from the rising to the setting sun. Da Gama and his company had left Portugal years upon years before with a monstrous fleet of not less than a thousand sail; had lost their company in a storm, and had been going up and down the world for two years seeking the lost vessels; that they had come to Calcut hoping to find their friends there, and as they were disappointed they would immediately go away. But the Moor's eloquence did not stop here. He told of the visit to Melinda and of the munificence with which da Gama had treated the King; he told of the might and power of the Captain General, of the wonderful engines of war which they carried in the ships, of the presents they had made at Melinda, of the purchases, and liberality with which they had paid for everything they bought. Now that they were here, continued the Moorish merchant, they would, if permitted, buy drugs and spices and then go away. While the King was considering this proposition, permission was given the natives to go out in their boats and sell spices to the fleet, and soon all Calcut was ringing with the praises of munificence shown by the strangers. They bought fish and vegetables, and not in a single instance contested the price, always paying what was asked, no matter how extravagant the demand. Nay, even more than this, for on one occasion a boat came off from shore with a load of wood for sale. The vessels needed no wood and as the craft was going away da Gama ordered a small coin to be given to each one of the boatmen. The pilots, the Moor and the boatmen were alike astonished, and asked the reason of this strange conduct, when da Gama benevolently explained that these were poor men who came to sell their wood, and that the coin given to each was a reward for his trouble in bringing it out and taking it back again, although the ships needed it not.

**TRAFFIC WITH THE PEOPLE OF CALCUT.**

Like wildfire the stories of the strangers spread throughout Calcut, and the people and merchants clamored for permission to sell to those who seemed to know nothing of the value of money. The cupidity of the King was excited, his interest was roused by the story of the golden sword, the gilded lance and the great throne which won the heart of the King of Melinda. He invited da Gama to go on shore. The Captain General asked for hostages, and although none came, such plausible messages were sent that da Gama concluded to land.

Along the coast of India the Moors had for many years been the ruling commercial power. Ages before this, in their little boats with sharp prows and great triangular sails, they had crossed the Indian Ocean and established them-



selves in the principal harbors of India as merchants, brokers and factors. Few in numbers, they soon acquired a considerable influence, and their commercial establishments, like those of the great East India Company in later times, were often fortified and guarded by their own hired troops. For this service they had enlisted large numbers of the natives of the country, the Pariahs, or outcasts, who were so accursed that when they went along a road they were required to shout at every seven steps lest they should by chance meet a member of the higher classes, who would be defiled by the touch of them. Their condition was hopeless, so they readily entered the service of the Moors or Arabs as soldiers, and speedily found their circumstances greatly improved, for not only was their caste raised by their employment, but their pay, lodging and food were far better than they could have hoped for had they remained Pariahs. By the employment of these outcasts the Moors had acquired considerable military, as well as commercial, power on the coast of India, and so great was their prestige that to be "as fortunate as an Arab" was a proverb in Calcut. Although their influence was so great, the Moors were intensely jealous of any interference with their monopoly, and learning that the strangers were merchants they at once bribed the King's ministers to refuse the Portuguese permission to trade.

#### OFFERINGS OF PRESENTS TO THE KING.

Among the first visitors from the shore was a man of tall stature and grizzled beard who, to the astonishment of the sailors, greeted them in very good Spanish. Being invited on board, he stated that he had formerly lived in Spain, but was now employed in trading along the Indian Ocean and on the coast of Africa. This man, who had really come as a spy for the purpose of ascertaining the strength of the squadron, was won over by da Gama, and subsequently proved a most valuable friend to the Portuguese. Entering their service while still ostensibly engaged in the interest of the King, he on several occasions brought them intelligence which proved of the greatest value. When da Gama made up his mind to go ashore, he invited this man to attend him, and before leaving the ship, caused all the presents intended for the King to be displayed on tables placed on the deck. Under pretence of furbishing and cleaning them, they were kept in sight for several days, and the Castilian Moor speedily bore to the city news of the magnificent gifts which da Gama had prepared for the King of Calcut. The day of the visit, the King sent to the fleet his signature on a palm leaf, as a mark of friendship; a procession was formed, and the Captain General with a number of his attendants, having their weapons concealed under their garments, got in the boats and pulled for the shore. They landed, and a procession was again formed, the sailors bearing in trays on their heads the presents intended for the King, which were "a piece of very fine scarlet cloth and a piece of crimson velvet, a piece of yellow satin, a chair covered with brocade of large nap, studded with silver-gilt nails; a cushion of crimson satin, with tassels of gold thread, and another



cushion of red satin for the feet; a hand basin chased and gilded, with a ewer of the same kind, a very handsome thing; and a large, very splendid gilt mirror; fifty scarlet caps, with buttons and tassels of crimson twisted silk and gold thread on the top of the caps; and fifty sheaths of knives of Flanders, with ivory handles, which were made in Lisbon, and the sheaths gilded. All these things were wrapped in napkins, and all in very good order."

#### DANGEROUS JEALOUSY OF THE MOORISH MERCHANTS.

For some days before the landing of da Gama trading had been briskly conducted by the men of the fleet, to the great disgust of the Moors, who watched with jealous eyes the progress of their rivals. But the commander, in his effort to conciliate the people of Calecut, and thus make a favorable impression, carried his policy a little too far, and thus excited the suspicions of the cunning and watchful Arabs who, seeing the Portuguese paying the highest market prices for cloves that were all stick, for cinnamon whose weight was doubled by clay, and for pepper that was half sand, came to the reasonable conclusion that the strangers were not merchants, but soldiers who, under a pretence of trade, were laying plans and making preparations to occupy the country. To the King they went with their suspicions, but he would hear nothing of them; and equally in vain did they attempt to prevent the proposed audience with da Gama. The King suspected that they were anxious to continue and perpetuate the monopoly which they had acquired in the trade of Calecut and refused to allow any change in his plans.

#### IN THE PALACE OF THE KING.

With much ceremony, therefore, da Gama and his companions were escorted to the palace where, after passing through many courts and passages, they were finally ushered into a large inner chamber, the door was closed and they were in the presence of the Zamorin, or King of Calecut. He was a tall dark man, having for clothing only a waist-clout of white linen; but what he lacked in raiment he made up in jewels, for every part of his body glittered with gold and precious stones. A large belt in which were set diamonds and rubies of priceless value encircled his waist, a diamond-spangled collar was around his neck, two diamonds each "the bigness of a thumb" hung from his ears, he had bracelets on his arms "as big as the irons they put on a runaway sailor," and even his waist-clout was embroidered with pearls. He held his court in great state; on each side stood men who carried the royal standard, sword and shield, a lad near the King held a golden cup into which, at fitting seasons, royalty expectorated; a priest of the highest dignity stood by with the areca loaf (made of the betel-nut, pepper plant and limes) which the King chewed; an official of much self-importance was in readiness with a small tankard and a golden goblet in case his majesty should chance to thirst, while a soldier of the royal guard held over the king's head as an emblem of authority a golden umbrella.

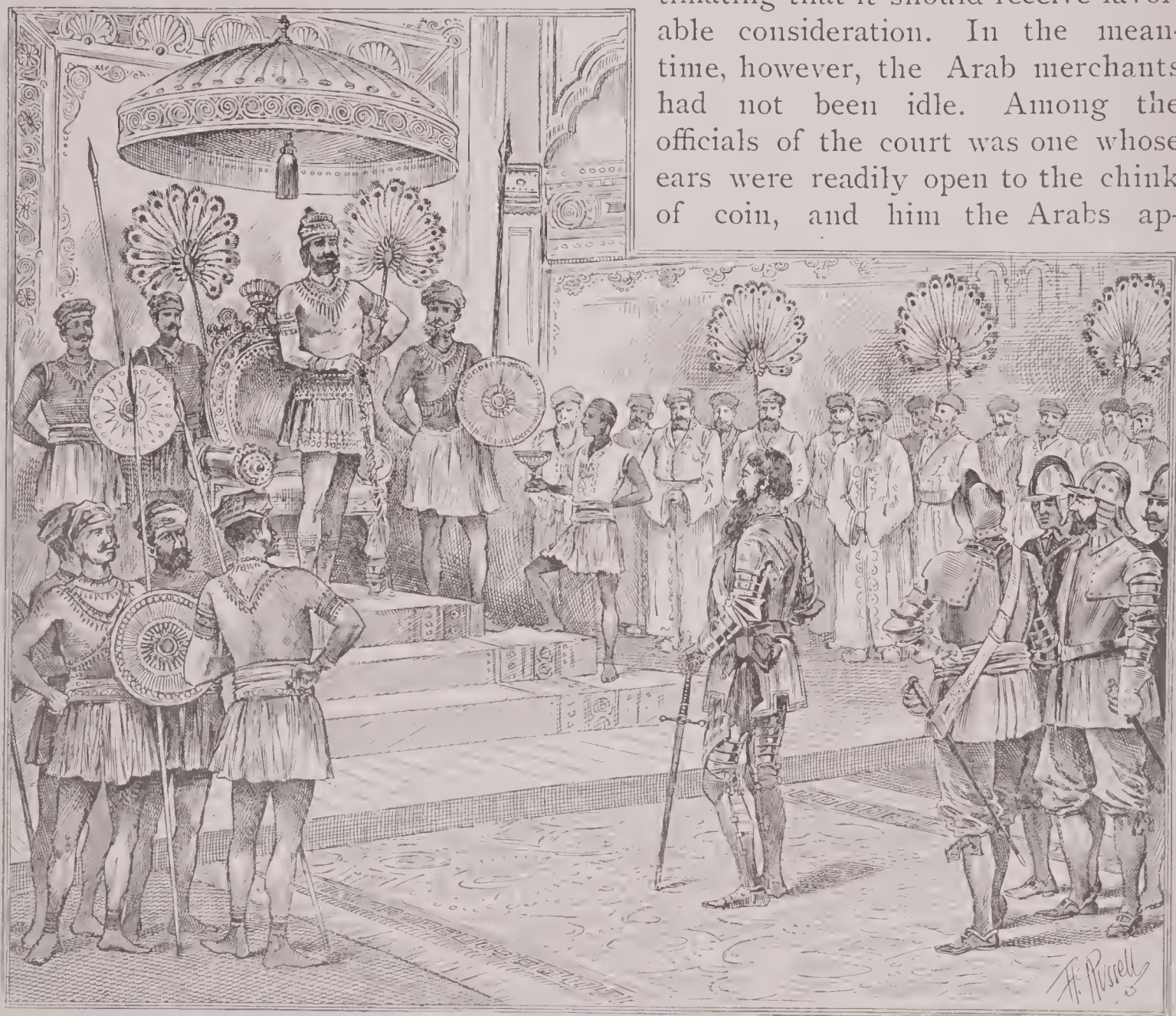


Before this magnificent potentate da Gama sounded the praises of his own sovereign, the King of Portugal, rehearsed the stories already told of the fabulous extent of his dominions, which by this time comprised all the earth except India, told about the gigantic fleet with which he had sailed and from which he had been separated, and after the most extravagant tales of what his master would do in case the King of Calicut should offend him, wound up his high-flown oration and asked for leave to trade and to establish a factory.

**DA GAMA IS MADE A PRISONER.**

The Zamorin, who seemed disposed to be friendly, partly on account of the prophecy, partly because of the presents, took the matter under advisement, in-

timating that it should receive favorable consideration. In the meantime, however, the Arab merchants had not been idle. Among the officials of the court was one whose ears were readily open to the chink of coin, and him the Arabs ap-



DA GAMA BEFORE THE KING OF CALEUT.

proached with a bribe. Enlisting himself in their service, he readily undertook the task of getting the Captain General out of the way. As soon, therefore, as the Zamorin had left the city for his palace in the suburbs, the false minister made da Gama a prisoner and placed him in close confinement,



his fate being shared also by the twelve men who had accompanied him during his audience with the King. For some time the incarceration continued, since da Gama, anxious to keep up the fiction of being a merchant, had previously directed that only in the last extremity should any resort to arms be made. The captive Portuguese were subjected to various indignities, this being a part of the plan projected by the Moorish conspirators, as they thus hoped to drive the strangers to violence, then by throwing on them the blame of any bloodshed that might ensue, to secure their expulsion from the country. With admirable art the Portuguese played their part, enquiring with apparent innocence why peaceable merchants were thus treated. No answer was given them, and finally, after some days of detention, the minister, fearing the consequences should his treachery become known to the King, allowed them to depart with an admonition to leave the harbor at once. To ensure their doing so, a body of armed men was collected on the shore and a number of boats prepared to attack the fleet. Not caring to risk a conflict at that time, da Gama ordered the sails to be set and the vessels moved out of a harbor where at first the prospects of the expedition had seemed very bright for friendly and profitable intercourse.

#### **SURPRISING SIGHTS IN THE FAR EAST.**

The fleet now sailed away, down the coast of India, putting in here and there as fancy prompted, and everywhere the crew noting with keenly interested eyes whatever they saw that was strange or new. Sailors all, it was not remarkable that they should fill the pages of their journals with accounts of the queer vessels and men which they saw. With a nautical interest in the subject, they tell of the native craft which have only one mast and but three ropes; which are guided by a large rudder of thin planks; which are partly of wood and partly of canvas; which are made water-tight with bitumen; which have no decks, but are provided with a roof of cane matting; which have leather buckets instead of pumps; which have but one sail and carry their water in large tanks instead of barrels; whose anchors are of wood, with stones to make them sink; which are as large as the ships of the Portuguese, and much better adapted for a tropical climate, since they do not become leaky. With ever active interest, the Portuguese watched the Indian catamarans, here seen for the first time by Europeans, examined the long narrow hulls, criticised the outlying beam which prevents an upset, even in the heaviest sea, and admired the seamanship of the natives and the ease with which, a native standing on the beam, they flew through the wildest billows. Many other marvels they saw which, to them strange, have to us long since become familiar through sketches and books of travel.

#### **AN EXCITING RACE AFTER NATIVE SWIMMERS.**

On their arrival in the vicinity of Goa, a plot was contrived by the Sultan of that place for the capture of the entire fleet, he having learned of its coming through the Moors, who in their light vessels everywhere went before the Portuguese squadron and stirred up evil feeling against the strangers. Know-



ing nothing of Goa or its people, it was with delight that the lookout at the bow heard himself hailed from a boat beneath in good Spanish with the words "God bless the ships and the Christian crews and all who sail with them." Looking down, he beheld a man of venerable aspect and long white beard, who responded to his questions with plausible words and announced himself as a messenger from the Sultan of Goa. Invited on board, he was questioned by da Gama as to his purpose in coming, but soon excited suspicion by his hesitation and contradictory replies. Just then word was sent to da Gama that the crew of one of the boats which had been cruising in search of a better anchorage had discovered behind the islands of the bay an immense number of fustas, or native boats, filled with men who to all intents seemed to be soldiers. This bit of intelligence intensified the suspicions of the Captain General, who at once ordered the visitor to be seized and put in irons and the crew of his boat to be detained. The former order was quickly carried out, but the latter not so easily, for the native rowers finding themselves about to be apprehended, at once deserted their boat and took to the water.

"Out with the boats," shouted the officer of the deck, "Don't let one of them get away." A dozen boats were instantly lowered to the water and filled with lusty sailors, roaring with glee at the unexpected fun. Away went the natives, as much at home in the water as on the land, their brown bodies shining through the blue waves. Catching them was no easy matter. They swam almost as fast as the boats could be rowed, and when the chase became hot, dived and changed their course, coming up many yards away in an entirely different direction.

The water splashed, the sailors shouted, the men on the ships, crowding the deck and rigging, howled with delight at the novel spectacle. Now a boat would come up to a native, a sailor would reach out his hand, when flash, the boat would pass over the place where the swimmer had been, and a moment later he would reappear in the rear, swimming away for dear life. After him again, the boat would slowly turn, but not before the native had made a long gap between his heels and the pursuing prow. Slowly it would be lessened. At last overtaken a sailor often seized the fugitive's legs only to be himself pulled into the water by his reluctant captive. But human lungs have limits of endurance, so one by one the divers were tired out and hauled on board more dead than alive, after which the captives were counted but only eleven found, whereas there were twelve in the boat. The sea was scanned but the missing native was nowhere to be seen; no black head was seen to make its way toward shore. The crew thought he must have been drowned, and the boats were ordered drawn up, when a sudden shout arose from the crew of one passing beneath the stern of the *San Miguel*.

"Here he is," and everybody rushed to the sides and stern, and two sailors in their anxiety to see lost their balance and fell overboard, but were fortunately fished out with boathooks, while the missing native was ignominiously hauled



out from under the ship, where with only his nose above water he had been holding on to the rudder.

#### TORTURE OF PRISONERS.

The natives were sent below, and da Gama questioned the old man who had come on board. Closely pressed, he admitted nothing, but tortured by drops of hot fat being let fall on his body, he finally confessed that he was a Jew of Grenada; that he had come on board with treacherous intent, to observe the number and arms of the crew in order that the boats in waiting behind the islands might that night surprise and capture the vessels. The truth having thus, by means too cruel to be mentioned without reprobation, been extracted from the Grenadian Jew, immediate preparations were made to attack the hostile fustas. Boats were manned and loaded with hardy Portuguese soldiers and sailors, small carronades were placed in the bows, the men were armed and provided with cross-bows and plenty of arrows, and the few firelocks there were, these not yet having come into general use, were placed in trusty hands.

But more than on all the rest of their arms the Portuguese relied on diabolical devices of their own invention, "powder pots" they called them, small vessels, in size and shape closely resembling the cans in which, at the present day, meats and vegetables are preserved. Made of strong earthenware, the cover was securely fitted on, the pot filled with powder, and a fuse left to hang outside. The "powder pot" was really an incipient bomb, and the fuse being lighted, the messenger of destruction was thrown by hand among the enemy. While its explosion did little mischief compared with the terrible weapon of later times, the noise, the injury done by flying fragments, were sufficient to spread consternation among an enemy to whom its employment was a novelty. But this was not the only variety of the powder pot. Another kind was intended not so much to hurt as to frighten the foe. It consisted of a vessel similar to the powder pot, save that in the cover an orifice of an inch in diameter was left. Through this passed the fuse, and the contents of the vessel instead of dry powder, was a mixture of dampened powder and finely pounded sulphur, the fumes of which would readily induce an enemy to beat a retreat.

#### A MASSACRE OF THE NATIVES.

The shades of night were heavy on the bay as the ten boats pulled away from the fleet, following a light boat in which were eight soldiers and the Grenadian Jew, heavily ironed and guarded by a man on each side. A screen behind the blazing torch kept from the view of the enemy the soldiers in the boat and those in the little squadron following its lead. Boldly the light-boat rounded the point of the island behind which the fustas of the natives were lying in fancied security. "Who comes there?" shouted a native in the Indian tongue. Putting a dagger to the throat of the Jew, da Gama bid him answer, and whispered that instant death would be the penalty of treachery. "'Tis I," hallooed the Jew in reply, "returned with news from the Christian ships." Recognizing his voice, the natives allowed the boat to approach, not having the



slightest suspicion of treachery, and in a moment the Portuguese were among them.

A scene of wild terror and confusion ensued. The heavy Portuguese yawls ran down the flimsy boats of the natives, while the discharges of the cannon and firearms, the wounds made by the arrows from the cross-bows, the sharp biting of the falchions, and crushing blows of the heavy maces and



MASSACRE OF THE CAPTIVES.

broad-swords, added to the dismay of the natives. The powder pots exploded on board of the Indian vessels, and threw their crews into the greatest panic, while even more dreadful were the fumes of the sulphur pots and the hissing of the damp gunpowder. The onset of the Portuguese was so sudden, it left the Indians time neither to flee nor to prepare for fight. Endeavoring to put



their boats about, they ran each other down; crowded together in a helpless mass of boats and men, they fell an easy prey to the merciless Portuguese. Hundreds were drowned, hundreds more were butchered like so many sheep, hundreds were captured. In one brief hour the invaders were masters of the situation and those of the enemy not dead were huddled together, a band of hopeless captives, awaiting the slaughter of which they were presently the victims.

#### RETURN OF THE EXPEDITION.

Fearing a savage retribution if he remained longer on the coast, da Gama set sail to return to Portugal. The voyage was completed without especial incident, and from the Tower of Belem, a coast village then, but now a suburb of Lisbon, the King watched the entrance of the squadron which had accomplished a water journey to India and results which were destined to make Portugal a leading power in Europe for many years.

Enthusiastic was the reception of the voyagers; every one was a hero; every one had some story of thrilling adventure or hair-breadth escape; every one vied with his fellows in magnifying the wealth of the country which they had reached by a hitherto unknown route. It was evident that the importance of the discovery could not be overrated, and King Emanuel began at once preparing to avail himself of da Gama's discoveries. The return of the latter was in September 1499, and in less than six months a fleet of thirteen vessels was on its way to India, to trade and establish factories. For some cause, which has never been made clear, the command of this imposing squadron was given to Alvarez Cabral, instead of to da Gama, the latter remaining quietly on his estates while Cabral sailed on the voyage of conquest. The first result of the new expedition was the discovery of Brazil, which was an accident, Cabral having sailed too far to the west in the hope of doubling the Cape of Good Hope without encountering its storms. Having claimed this new country in the name of his master, he proceeded on his way, arrived at Calicut, loaded his ships with spices and precious woods, founded a factory, left one ship and a number of men to await his return, and sailed for home.

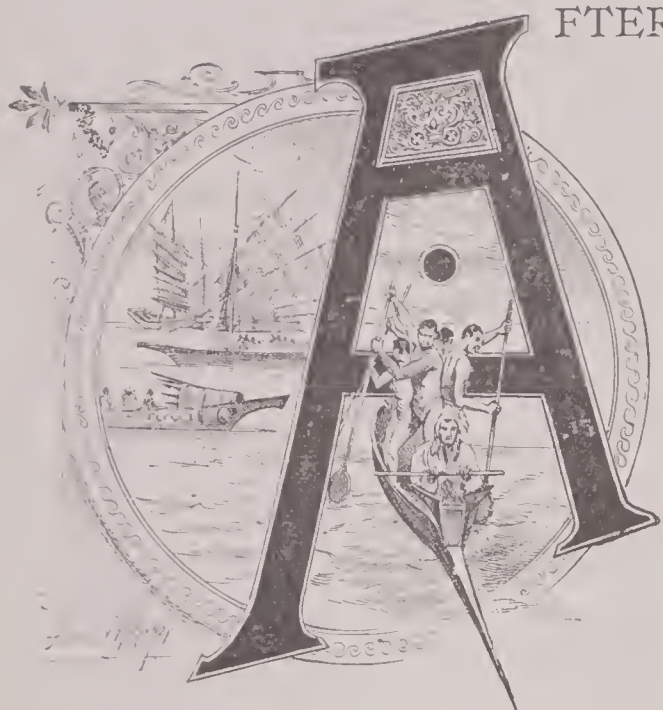
#### DESTRUCTION OF ENTERPRISES FOUNDED IN THE EAST.

The rejoicings with which his arrival in Lisbon was greeted had scarcely subsided when a strange sail was seen in the offing, and the vessel coming into port, proved to be the one which Cabral had left in Calicut. Its speedy return was soon explained. No sooner had the Portuguese fleet departed, than the natives rose, massacred the few men whom Cabral had left, burned the factory, and in fear that the fate of the sailors on shore might be their own, the crew of the ship had hastily put to sea, and flying before the monsoon, had crossed the Indian Ocean almost in sight of Cabral's fleet, left Melinda three days after their departure, and in their wake had beaten up the coast of Africa and thus arrived at Lisbon.



## CHAPTER XIV.

### DA GAMA COMMANDS ANOTHER EXPEDITION.



AFTER a short sojourn in Lisbon da Gama set all Portugal in a fever of excitement by his impassionate demands and golden predictions. His appeals met with such hearty response that there was no delay. The cry went up that a fleet must at once be sent to punish the massacre of Cabral's men, and Vasco da Gama must be its commander. Again the sound of busy hammers came from the dock-yards; again the sail-makers and the rope-makers, and the carpenters and the blacksmiths were working day and night. Again the kingdom was ransacked for supplies, and prices rose and went higher and higher, for merchants must profit while opportunity stretches forth the hand of plenty.

From foreign ports came sailors of every land, for the fame of the new expedition under the famous captain spread far and wide, and men were eager to share the glory of a new voyage. Hundreds were enlisted, desperadoes all, for none but desperadoes cared to venture their lives in a service which promised no end of hardships and in which fighting would be the only diversion. A hardy crew of practiced cut-throats filled each of the ten ships fitted out for the voyage, and as da Gama said, in any one vessel could be heard all the languages of the continent. The statement was true. There were Portuguese, and Spaniards, and Italians, a few Frenchmen from Marseilles and Lyons, a few Dutchmen from Rotterdam and Bremen, a few skillful and daring Norway sailors, descendants of the Vikings, who had spread terror over every coast in Europe six hundred years before; a few Englishmen, fugitives from their native country; a few Irishmen from Galway, who had come to Spain in the ships which constantly trade on the Irish coast and from Spain had found their way to Lisbon; a few Scotch fishermen from the Frith of Forth; a few Greeks, the sons, it may be, of the men who cruised with Ulysses, of the sailors who won the battle of Salamis. It was the gathering of the west against the east. The dogs of war were to be let loose on the unhappy natives of a land only too peaceful.

The utmost haste was made, but the greatest expedition was too slow to satisfy the impatient King and still more impatient da Gama. Preparations



were pushed to the utmost, but so extensive was the armament that two years elapsed before the fleet was ready to sail, and not until the spring of 1502 did the Captain General go on board, give the final orders for departure, and the fleet, the finest and most perfectly equipped that up to that time had ever left the port of Lisbon, sailed for the east, the commander breathing out dire threats of what he intended to do if the saints spared him to see the city of Calcut.

#### THE BLOOD THIRSTINESS OF DA GAMA.

Safely the fleet doubled the terrible cape and began its voyage up the African coast, and then, disguise cast aside, all the tiger in the character of the man appeared. No longer hampered by the weakness of his force, the despotic master of a powerful fleet and an army of men, he cast to the winds all considerations of justice and mercy. Native African rulers who had received him kindly were admonished that tribute was expected, and if not paid at once, its collection would be enforced by the edge of the sword. Gratitude was forgotten. He plundered those who on his former voyage had sent him on his way with presents and benedictions.

Forcible resistance gave no security, for what native arms could withstand the Portuguese artillery? A tender of friendship was no guarantee of safety, for the Portuguese plundered alike foe and friend; in abject submission there lay no hope, for the merciless strangers considered themselves lucky in being able to rob without personal danger. Nor were their depredations limited by their necessities and those of the fleet; they plundered at will, and burned what they could not carry away. Thus sacking, slaying, destroying, making good the worst predictions uttered against him by the Moors, da Gama and his murderous men made their way up the coast of Africa and finally from Melinda set sail to cross the Indian Ocean and wreak terrible vengeance on Calcut.

#### DEVOTION OF MOHAMMEDANS.

For ages Mecca has, to the Mohammedans, been the most holy spot on earth. Every follower of the prophet must, at least once in his life, kiss the sacred Kaaba stone and recite his prayers in the mosque consecrated by the foot of the great Arab leader whose followers, even in the present day, equal in number those of the Nazarene. To Mecca every true believer of the Moslem faith turns his face five times a day when reciting the prayers imposed upon him by his faith; to Mecca his face is turned when he is laid in his narrow home.

Only at one season is the pilgrimage made, and during that time all Arabia is in commotion. Every road swarms with pilgrims; singly, here and there a lonely traveller, tattered and dusty, with scrip and staff, making his way over parching sands under a blazing tropical sun; in groups, little bands of men, well armed, for every road is infested with robbers, and keeping a sharp lookout at every suspicious turn; in great caravans, whose numbers preclude the probability of bandit interference or whose armament would render hostile demonstration futile.



Nor is the interest confined to Arabia. Dhows bring pilgrims to Jeddah from the coast of Africa just across the Red Sea, vessels of larger burden ply up and down the shores, each laden with its human freight, all journeying in the same direction. From the African coast, from the shores of the Mediterranean, from Persia, from India, from Ceylon, from the isles of the sea, from Siam, from the limits of far away China, come ships bearing the Moslem faithful to their holy shrine.

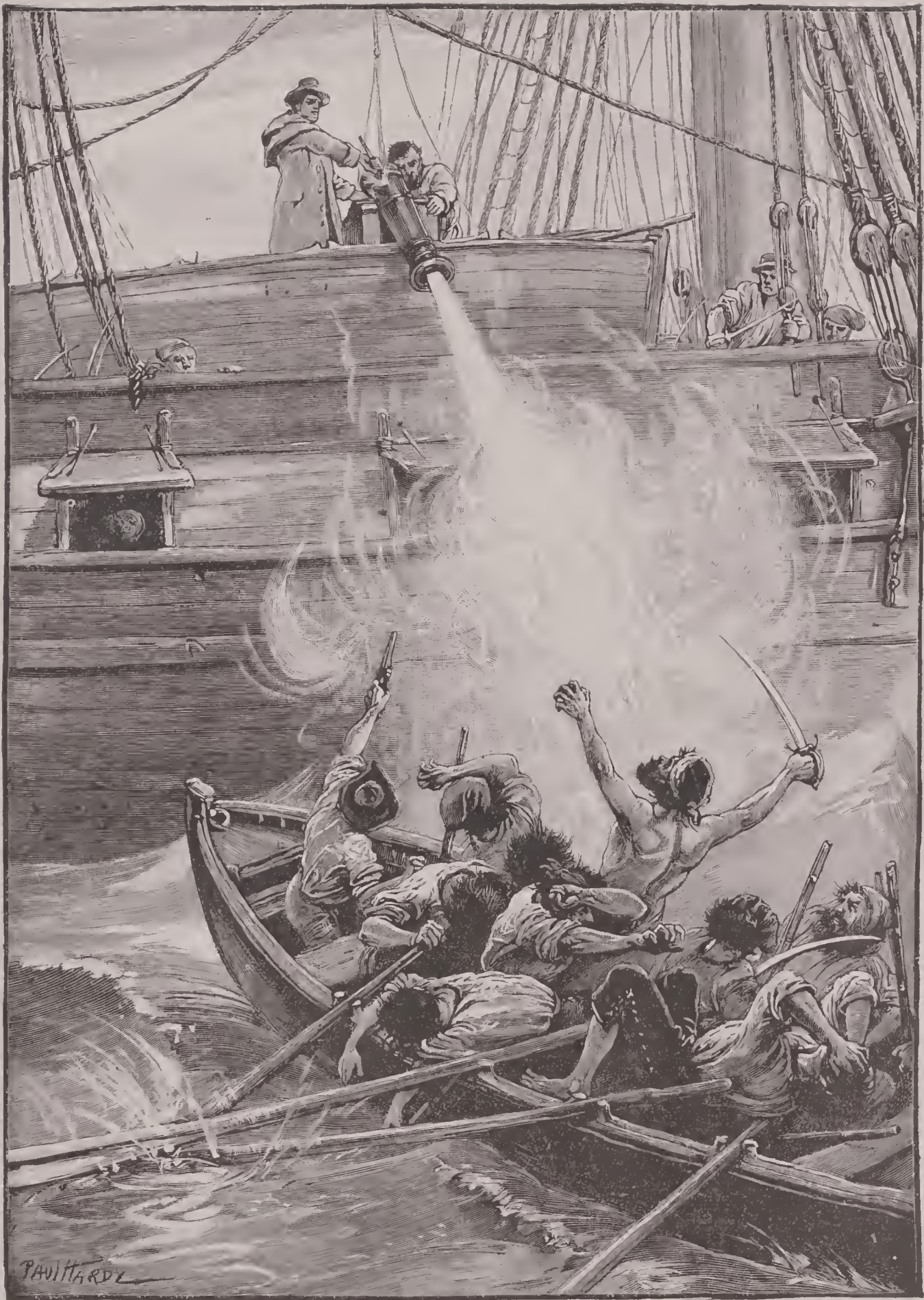
Filled with enthusiasm on the journey to Mecca, the pilgrims are still more jubilant on their return. Having made their devotions in the temple and kissed the Kaaba, its holy stone; having stood in long lines in the holiest mosque in the world and prayed where Mohammed bent his knee; having gazed on the grave of Ishmael and drunk of the water from the well of Hagar; having heard a sermon from the top of Ararat, and proceeded thence to Medina and prayed at the tomb of the prophet; having done all that was required by their law and prophet they felt their salvation was assured; thenceforth they might wear the prophet's green, and in Paradise share his bliss.

#### JOY IS TURNED TO MOURNING.

It was in the month of September, 1502, that the good ship Khadija, so named from the wife of the Prophet, was returning from Mecca to Calcutt with eight hundred pilgrims; men, women and children, a select company of wealthy and noble people. They had made the pilgrimage with great *éclat*, scattering their money with lavish hand wherever they went, for during the time of his pilgrimage, if ever, the Mohammedan is liberal. Their journey had not been long, for the staunch vessel, flying before the south-west monsoon, had crossed the Indian Ocean in a remarkably short time, and already the eyes of the pilgrims turning to the east caught sight of the hills of their native land. Here and there familiar headlands were pointed out by the pilot. On board there was mirth and gladness, and the tinkle of the vina and the tap of the drum was heard as parties on the deck amused themselves with song and dance. The dangers of the sea were almost past, the pilgrims were nearly home, why should they not be merry? So the music and the dancing proceeded, while the grave, bearded Arab merchants relaxed their rigid features and smiled, and the women, veiled to the eyes, looked on at amusements they were not allowed to share.

There was a sudden stir; the pilot shaded his eyes, and looking intently to the east, sent a messenger for the Captain. The Captain came, and assumed a serious expression, and so did many others when several suspicious sails appeared on the horizon just off the coast. "They are probably pirates," the Captain announced. There was a hurried concealment of money and valuables, gay clothing was quickly laid aside, for costly raiment was signally out of place with pirate ships in sight. Quickly the hostile fleet came up with the big pilgrim ship, but while the strange vessels were yet far away, the ships and their standards were recognized by captain and pilot, who told those standing about that these were Portuguese vessels, and anxious men and frightened





MOHAMMEDANS ATTACKING DA GAMA



women watched the manœuvres of the fleet as it took up a position round the Khadija, and children with big, round, innocent eyes peered through the port holes at the unusual sight and at the white men in bright armor and with glittering weapons as they hurried to and fro on the decks of the Portuguese ships.

#### PIRACY AND MURDER.

Boats were lowered and approached the Khadija. There was a moment of awful suspense, for all the men in the boats were seen to be armed, and no one knew what fate might have in store for the pilgrims. When within hailing



DA GAMA SETTING FIRE TO THE PILGRIM SHIP.

distance the Portuguese, through an interpreter, proclaimed who they were, and demanded money and valuables of the crew and passengers of the Mohammedan ship. "Oh, they want money then, do they? They are pirates, these Christians." The countenances of the grave Arabs assumed a sneer. "These Portuguese have shown themselves in their true light; pretending to be merchants, they are pirates. Well, if they want money, let them have it." It was indeed impossible to refuse a demand thus made, when supported by so overwhelming a force; so one contributed jewels, another gold, one gave silver, another ornaments, until the sum of twelve thousand crusadoes (\$8,500) was made up, and placed in a box, and let down into the nearest boat as ransom, the Arabs hop-



ing that with this the Portuguese pirates would be content. Not so, however; the valuables were taken to the flag-ship, and directly a boat approached the Mohammedan ship with a demand for more. The case was then more serious, and men looked grave when considering the possibility of being robbed of all they had. Still the money had to be given. The value of twelve thousand crusadoes additional was thus raised and sent, but still the pirates refused the pilgrims permission to depart, but despatched an order that men must be admitted on board to search the vessel. "What thieves these Christians are; they are worse than the Bedouins of the desert." Nothing, however, remained but submission, so the Portuguese crews came on board, plundered everybody, and seized everything of value that they could find. "Now surely we may go," thought the Arabs; "Since they have taken all, our lives can do them no good, and even with the loss of all our property we are almost home." But not thus are they to escape. Their horror was increased by the sight of a boat leaving the Admiral's ship laden with combustibles, the crew bearing lighted torches. "What does this mean? Would they burn us alive?" The men came on board, adjusted piles of straw and shavings about the vessel, and made ready to apply the torch, for it was the Admiral's order that the pilgrims should be burned alive.

The unhappy Arabs with a valor born of despair, seized what few arms they had, considering it better to die fighting than to be burned like rabbits in their burrow, and with the resolution of desperation they fought with such energy that the Portuguese sailors were unable to stand against them, and being driven to their boats some fell into the sea and were drowned, while many were only saved by being pulled out of the water by their companions. Re-enforcements were then sent from the fleet but they fared no better. The three hundred desperate men on board the *Khadija* proved themselves more than a match for all the boarding Portuguese. Those having swords, lances or bucklers stood first along the sides, and aided by others with improvised weapons, with planks torn from the deck, with bits of iron made fast to pieces of ropes and used as clubs, they withstood and drove off the boarding parties. One attack after another was thus repelled. Finally, one of the Portuguese ships was laid along side the *Khadija*, but the desperate pilgrims became assailants in their turn and not only boarded but captured the Portuguese vessel, drove its sailors overboard into the sea, and seized the weapons of the vanquished. Not only did the Arabs possess themselves of the swords, the cross-bows, the lances and targets found on the ship, but they even dragged the carronades on board the *Khadija* though they proved useless for the want of powder to load them. But with cross-bows and arrows, lances and javelins, they kept up a desperate battle and foiled every attempt of the Portuguese to retake or to board the vessel. A large number were killed and wounded in the attack, until at length seeing the futility of further effort to recover his vessel uninjured da Gama ordered his ships to stand off and use their artillery on the *Khadija*. His entire fleet thus





DESTRUCTION OF THE RHADIJA AND ALL ON BOARD.



engaged all day long in a one-sided battle with this single and defenceless ship. The heroism of the Mohammedans was of no avail against cannon balls. One by one the brave band was stricken down by shots and splinters, but not until the last of the brave three hundred were dead or disabled did the Portuguese venture on the now shattered Khadija. When there was no longer any man to oppose them they crowded on board, massacred the wounded, enclosed the women and children in the cabins, locked and nailed the doors, set the vessel on fire, and as the flames rolled up and the stifled screams of his victims came across the waves, da Gama stood and laughed at the awful agony of the hapless human beings consuming before his eyes.

#### **HORRIBLE BUTCHERIES.**

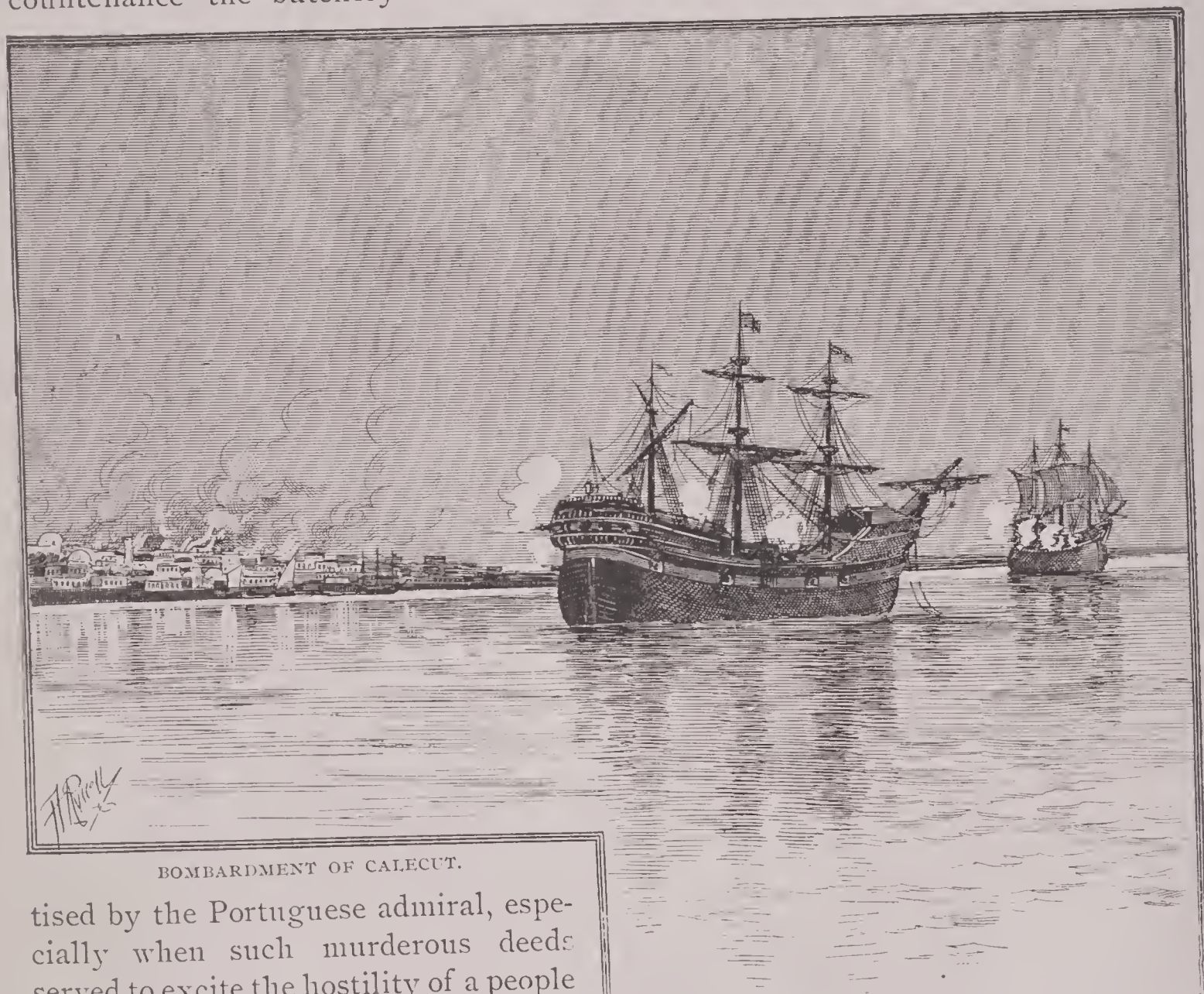
This was but the beginning of the massacres which earned for da Gama the name of Butcher. When he arrived at Calicut he bombarded the city, giving no previous notice of his intentions, so that men, women and children alike shared a common fate. Having captured the city he laid it in ashes, not leaving a house standing. In the harbor were many ships, both Arab and native, and apparently simply from the love of blood the Admiral, taking the men of the crews, cut off their ears, hands and lips, strung them on cords around the necks of the miserable victims, tied their feet together, and lest they should untie the strings with their teeth ordered them to be beaten in the face until not a tooth was left. The order being obeyed in the most brutal manner, the vessels were set on fire and the hapless men of the crews were buried in the flames. An ambassador, a Brahmin of the highest caste, was sent by the king to sue for peace. Da Gama ordered his lips and nose to be cut off, the ears of a dog to be sewn on his head instead of his own, and thus mutilated and insulted the unhappy man was sent on shore to tell how the Christians punished their enemies. Numberless indignities were practised on the helpless captives and atrocities were committed that disgraced the name of humanity. Nor were the massacres confined to places where the Portuguese had suffered real or imaginary wrongs. Like a tiger da Gama revelled in blood and killed when there was neither necessity nor excuse. On the whole west coast of India the Portuguese commander left a red trail and his progress might be traced by the ashes of burned cities. For a year he continued his butchery, then sailed away for Portugal congratulating himself that by the massacre of inoffensive and unarmed natives he had made an example.

#### **MISERABLE END OF THE BARBAROUS VOYAGERS.**

It is a curious historical fact that among the early explorers there were few, particularly of the Spanish and Portuguese, who did not come to some bad end. They were men of generally irregular lives and violent temper, whose bloody deaths were in most cases a fitting conclusion to careers of unbridled passion. Even the noble Columbus was sent back from America to Spain in irons, where he soon afterwards died of a broken heart; Ovanda died under circumstances that strongly pointed to poison; Bobadilla was



drowned; Magellan perished in an unprovoked attack on peaceable islanders; Las Casas was disgraced and took the cowl; Ojeda died of want; Nicuessa perished by the treachery of his own men; Balboa died at the block; Narvaez was imprisoned and died of exposure and privation; Alvarado was killed in battle; Pizarro died by the assassin's dagger; Almagro was garroted. Da Gama was no exception. On his return to Portugal from his bloody journey to the east he was disgraced, for even the barbarity of that day could not countenance the butchery of miserable savages in the wholesale fashion prac-



BOMBARDMENT OF CALECUT.

tised by the Portuguese admiral, especially when such murderous deeds served to excite the hostility of a people with whom commercial intercourse would have been a substantial blessing. He lived in retirement on his estates in Portugal for twenty years, but finally mismanagement in India brought the provinces there to the verge of ruin, while the arrogance of the Portuguese officials embroiled the colonies with all the neighboring states, and as da Gama had shown how mercilessly he could deal with naked savages, he was sent out as viceroy to make another example, but directly after his arrival he died, not without suspicion of poison. His body was buried at Cochin, and a few years later was taken back to Portugal. A man of slaughter, his fame was great,



not on account of his achievements so much as because the labors and genius of the greatest poet Portugal ever produced were employed in describing his first expedition. It was Camoens who made da Gama the great popular figure of Portuguese history, by installing him in the *Lusiad* as the personification of all that was great and good. The remains of the Admiral lie side by side with those of Camoens, beneath a marble shrine in one of the noblest churches of Lisbon, but in India the memory of the Portuguese conqueror has not



SPIRITS OF DA GAMA'S VICTIMS PURSUING HIS GHOST.

faded away; along the west coast of the Indian Peninsula, the words "Demon" and "Portuguese" are synonymous, and the Indian mother quiets her fretful child with "Look thee, little one, be still, else devil Gama cometh."

#### DA GAMA'S GHOST.

Nor is the memory of his bloody deeds forgotten, for at the present day, three hundred years after da Gama's soul went to confront his victims before that court which admits no appeal, the belated fisherman on the India shore sometimes sees a strange spectacle: The phantom of a tall man with long, black hair and beard, with dark, stern face, clad in old-time armor, flies along



the beach, while a vast crowd of natives, whose mutilated faces, handless arms and ghastly wounds, tell of the awful torture in which their souls departed, chase the flying fugitive. Men, women and children are in the crowd of phantoms, which is made up of Indians and Moors, of Mohammedans and Pagans. The ghost of the Portuguese is overtaken, and cries for vengeance sound along the shore mingled with da Gama's prayers for the mercy he never showed, and the unwilling looker-on sees the Indian spectres place their captive in a ship of strange form. Again the flames arise as the sails of the ghostly ship are set and it stands out to sea. It is joined by others; the Portuguese fleet is reproduced in lines of fire, and the phantom Hindoos dance on the sand as the flaming vessels bear the tortured spirits of "Butcher Gama" and his crew away to scenes of yet deeper agony, and the fisherman knows that the great Admiral is still undergoing an awful punishment for his crimes.















HISTORICAL PUB. CO., PHILA., PA., U. S. A.

OF THE MOHAMMEDAN PILGRIMS.







## CHAPTER XV.

### DISCOVERY AND CONQUEST OF MEXICO.



A GAMA'S return from the India Orient with tales of fabulous wealth, supporting the reports made by Marco Polo, naturally, in an age when Portugal and Spain were rival powers in an extension of their sovereignty over unexplored regions of the earth, quickened public energies and caused the spirit of discovery to blaze up with ten-fold greater intensity than was even excited by the adventures of Columbus. In her efforts to colonize Cuba, St. Domingo and the islands of the Caribbean, Spain sent ships, supplies, and men to several points which appeared favorable for settlements, and over those established in Hispaniola (St. Domingo) Ovando, one of Columbus' bravest comrades, was appointed governor. But Ovando became inimical to the interests of Columbus, and at the latter's instigation he was recalled, and Diego, the eldest son of Columbus, was appointed in his stead. Upon assuming this dignity Diego took the title of Viceroy and affected such magnificence as is usually reserved for royalty. But he was not content with an august and splendid rule on a small island, and scarcely had he gained the gubernatorial office when he became ambitious to extend his power over new dominions in the name of Spain. In pursuance of this desire for greater glory Diego organized an expedition of 300 men against Cuba, with the view of annexing that large and most beautiful island, and gave the command to an adventurous and daring character named Diego de Velasquez. Such an enterprise of course attracted the attention of all the bold spirits that had settled in Hispaniola, and among those who sought enlistment under Velasquez was a youthful scapegrace named Hernando Cortez. This remarkable character was a native of the little town of Medellin, in Spain, where he was born to a captain in the Spanish navy in the year 1485. With a disposition remarkable for recklessness, we are not surprised that he should be expelled from school, and that he gave his father no end of trouble by his wild escapades, in which guilty and shameless amours were most frequent. Unable to restrain Hernando at home, his father concluded to send him to St. Domingo, but on the evening of his intended departure the reckless boy, then but seventeen years of age, while making an effort to secretly gain the balcony of his lady love's room, lost his hold upon the railing and fell so heavily to the ground below that his life was for a while despaired of. Recovering at length, however, he sailed away to the new world and found congenial companionship with the bold rovers who had preceded him.



**JOINS AN EXPEDITION AGAINST CUBA.**

Hernando spent seven years with his uncle, Ovando, governor of St. Domingo, occupying some minor official positions, but in this time performing no special service beyond that of messenger to natives living in the interior of the island, whose hostility and treachery were such that no one but a daring character could be engaged to treat with them.

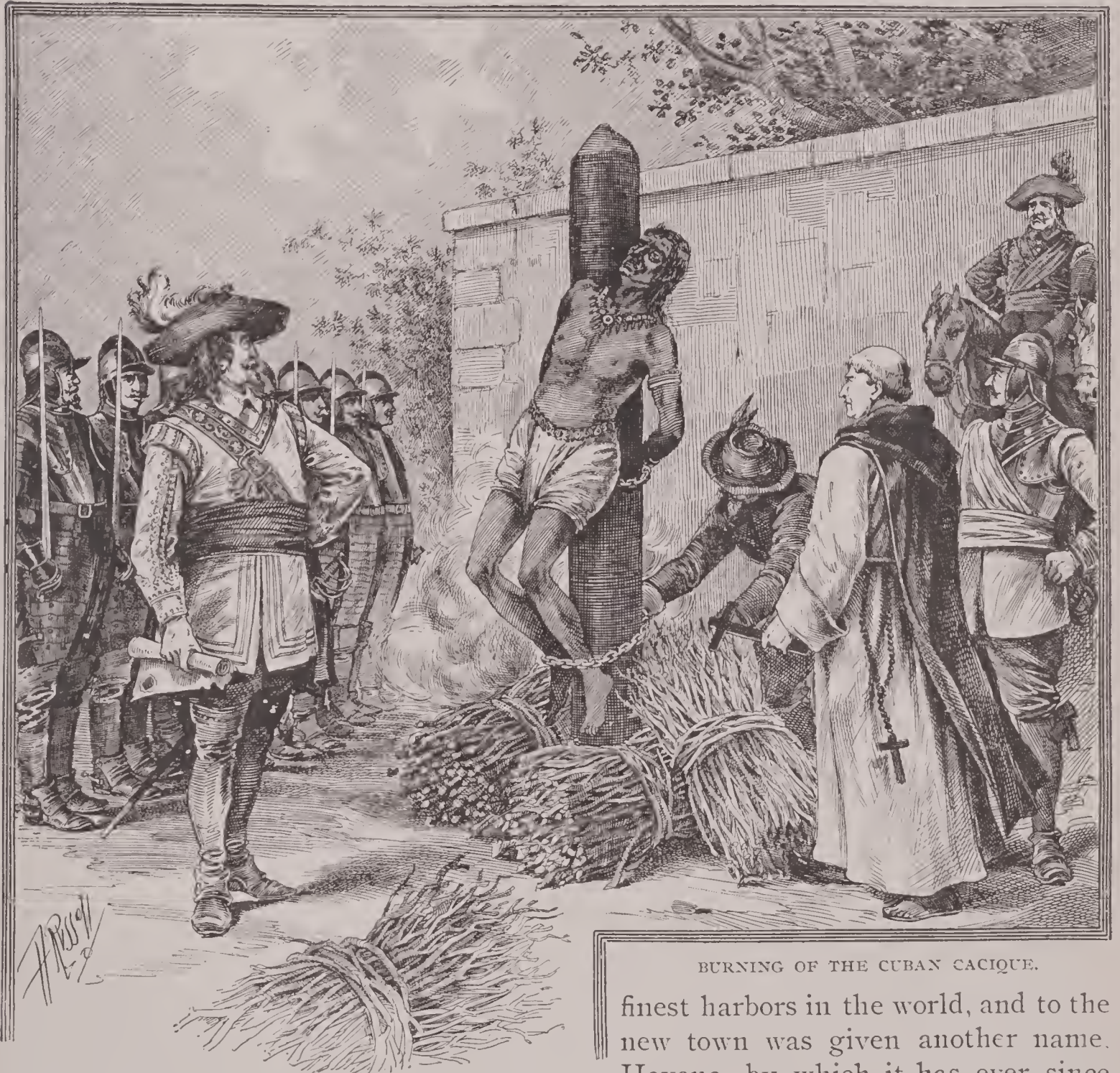
On account of his bravery and the experience acquired by his intercourse with the natives of St. Domingo, Hernando was accepted as a valuable acquisition to the expedition sent out by Diego Columbus in 1511, under Velasquez, to accomplish the subjugation of Cuba. This most fertile island on the globe was discovered by Columbus during his first voyage (Oct. 28, 1492) and in honor of Prince John, son of Ferdinand and Isabella, was named Juana, but at the death of the King the name was changed to Fernandina. Some years later it was designated, in honor of Spain's patron saint, Santiago, and subsequently it was called after the holy virgin, Ave Maria. These several names became so confusing that it was finally decided to continue the designation by which it was known to the natives at the time of its discovery, viz., Cuba. At this time the island was divided into nine principalities, each preserving its independence, and ruled by as many caciques or chiefs. The people are described as living in an easy, voluptuous and contented manner, and at peace among themselves because they appeared to be indifferent to conditions. They were semi-religious; that is, they appeared to entertain a belief in the existence of a supreme being and in the immortality of the soul, but they practised no ceremonies, and employed no rites, nor were their beliefs well defined.

**BURNING A CACIQUE AT THE STAKE.**

In the several conflicts between the marines who accompanied Columbus and the Cubans the latter had exhibited little valor, being, as they were, such voluptuaries that they accepted any harsh conditions rather than engage their foes, whose severities they had more than once felt. The invasion of Velasquez met with so little opposition that the march was not once interrupted, the natives fleeing at the sight of the white invaders, leaving their burning villages to be plundered at will. Only one cacique offered the slightest resistance, and for his appeal to his people to repel the white robbers he was taken by Velasquez and given the alternative of embracing the Christian religion or being burned alive. When told, in reply to his enquiry, that many Spaniards were in heaven he accepted the latter, for said he, "I would rather be annihilated by fire than be compelled to associate even in heaven with such fiends as are the Spaniards." With characteristic malignity and mercilessness Velasquez bound the unhappy chief to a stake, and heaping fagots about him ordered fire to be applied to the pile, and watched with satisfaction the slow consumption, and heard with laugh of pleasure the piercing screams of his helpless victim. This horror brought the natives to make an acknowledgment of perpetual submission to Spain, and by this bloody title Cuba has continued to remain a possession of that country to this day.



Having mastered the island, on July 25, 1515, Velasquez established a settlement on the south coast, at the mouth of the river Mayabeque, and in honor of Columbus called the place San Cristobel de la Habana. But the location proving unhealthy the town was removed to the mouth of the Rio Almenderes; but this site being no better than the first, the settlement was again transferred in 1519 to its present location, at the entrance of one of the



BURNING OF THE CUBAN CACIQUE.

finest harbors in the world, and to the new town was given another name.

Havana, by which it has ever since been known. At nearly the same time that a settlement was formed at San Cristobel, another was established on the south-east coast and called Santiago, which Velasquez made his capital, while still another was made on the south central coast and named Trinidad, both of which flourished and developed into important ports of commerce, and which they have continued to be to this day.



**CORTEZ IS THE HERO OF A LOVE ADVENTURE.**

The acquisition of Cuba was directly followed by the appointment of Velasquez as governor, and in recognition of his valuable services Cortez was chosen his secretary. But the intimate relations between Velasquez and his secretary were not to remain long undisturbed, for an enmity was presently engendered by the infamous conduct of Cortez towards one of four sisters, daughters of a rich gentleman from Castile, who had come over with hundreds of other wealthy families to settle in the fair land of Cuba. Velasquez resented the insult, being deeply attached to one of the young ladies, and to avenge himself Cortez entered into a conspiracy to secure the removal of his chief. He was detected, however, and being arrested was tried and sentenced to death, but he contrived to break his fetters, and forcing his way through a window of the prison sought refuge in a church where, according to the customs of the time, he was secure, for the church sanctuary must not be violated. After remaining for some days in this place of refuge he attempted to escape in the night, but was again arrested and taken on ship-board to be sent to St. Domingo, with a cord, as the badge of a traitor, about his neck. But for a second time he managed to divest himself of his manacles, and slipping out upon the deck plunged into the sea and swam ashore and regained the sanctuary of the church. Being badly disabled and exhausted, to end his distress he offered to marry the girl that he had wronged, and his proposal was accepted. This act reinstated him in the good opinion and confidence of Velasquez, who soon after selected him to command an expedition, the results of which served to establish his fame for all ages.

A year before the incident just related, Velasquez had despatched an expedition of three small vessels, and something more than 100 men, under the command of Francisco Hernandez, to make an exploration among the adjacent islands with the view of attaching them to the Spanish Crown. This expedition sailed as far west as Yucatan, which they discovered, and by trading with the natives the Spaniards obtained a large number of brightly burnished hatchets and other articles which they thought were gold. But they were so avaricious that what they were unable to secure by barter, they sought to possess by force, which precipitated a conflict, in which a greater part of the Spaniards were killed. Only about thirty of the original number returned, and several of these were so severely wounded that they died, among these latter being Hernandez, the commander.

The fate of the expedition was, however, forgotten in the wild excitement produced by reports that the land from which the remnant of the voyagers returned so abounded with gold that the natives used it as the commonest of metals. And even after an assay of the burnished hatchets had disclosed the fact that they were copper instead of gold, the excitement did not seem to abate, for the belief continued that somewhere in the interior of the country thus discovered there were mines and mountains of the precious mineral from which the



natives procured it in great abundance. Acting under this belief Velasquez fitted out another expedition of four ships and 240 men, which under the command of Juan de Grijalva, left the port of Santiago in April, 1518. After a sail of eight days they reached the shore of Central America, but found the natives so hostile that it was not deemed prudent to make a landing. Continuing along the coast, therefore, the expedition anchored before a Mexican town, which has since been named St. Juan de Uloa, where they were hospitably received, and a profitable trade was conducted with the people. A considerable quantity of gold was here secured in exchange for glass beads, and information was also obtained of a wondrously rich kingdom and of a magnificent capital in the interior, where a mighty ruler known as Montezuma lived in unexampled splendor.

#### **CORTEZ IS APPOINTED COMMANDER OF THE MEXICAN EXPEDITION.**

When the expedition under Grijalva returned with its report and with many specimens of gold in verification of the stories concerning wealth of the Mexican Kingdom, excitement was unbounded, not only in Cuba, but also in Spain, where the news was transmitted by Velasquez with request for assistance in organizing another expedition for the subjugation of the new country. The help asked for was so speedily rendered that in a surprisingly short time a fleet of vessels was provided, and Hernando Cortez was appointed to the command, but a full complement of men yet remained to be obtained. Before preparations were fully completed, with the fear that Velasquez might deprive him of the honors bestowed, Cortez raised his anchors and sailed away from Santiago for Trinidad to procure additional troops. Here, by his impassioned appeals to the people, exciting both their religious zeal and their cupidity, he succeeded in enlisting several hundred cross-bowmen, and besides muskets and other weapons he obtained several small cannons. Having been joined by nearly 200 men in Trinidad, Cortez collected a large quantity of military supplies, provided padded coats for some and armor for others of his soldiers, and set them through a thorough course of drill. Besides inspiring his followers with promises of large rewards in the land of gold, Cortez intensified their ardor by declaring that one of his prime purposes in undertaking the conquest was to supplant the idol-worship of the Mexicans with the cross of Christianity, and to emphasize this intent in the minds of his men, he planted before his tent a banner of black velvet embroidered with gold, on which was a gilt sign of the cross surrounded with an emblazoned device, "Let us follow the cross, for under this sign we shall conquer."

Just before his departure from Trinidad, Cortez perceived two ships with valuable cargoes putting into the harbor, which he captured under the pretence that the Lord had made him an instrument for spreading the gospel, and that as a servant of God he had need for the vessels, which with their cargoes should be devoted to the Lord's service. Singular enough his eloquence was such that he persuaded the crews of both vessels, including their owners, to join his expedition, after which he sailed to Havana, and there completed his



preparations for the enterprise which he had so auspiciously undertaken. He found his expedition now to consist of eleven vessels, most of which, however, were only open barks, with one of 100, and three of seventy tons, but into these he embarked 110 seamen, 553 soldiers, and something over 200 Indian men and women who acted as servants. On account of the smallness of his vessels Cortez took with him only sixteen horses, but these valuable animals had not been brought over from Spain in any considerable numbers as yet, and were, therefore, difficult to procure; but had he known the important part they were to play in his expedition he would have taken a larger number at whatever expense or hazard. Formidable weapons were also scarce, so that he was able to arm only thirty of his men with muskets, and thirty-two with cross-bows, the rest having to be content with swords, spears, and a few battle-axes.

Thus poorly provided in an undertaking to subjugate millions whose power he had no means of knowing, Cortez left Havana on the 18th of February, 1519, for the shores of Yucatan.

**IN THE IDOL TEMPLES  
OF YUCATAN.**

After a stormy passage of a week's duration, the expedition came in sight of the Island of Cozumel, which



CELEBRATING MASS IN THE IDOL TEMPLE OF COZUMEL.

is a considerable body of land thirty miles from the shores of Yucatan. A large number of natives were assembled upon the beach, and viewed in terror the sails of the approaching squadron. They were horror-stricken at the spectacle, in expectation of the Spaniards coming to avenge the murder of their comrades under Grijalva, whose expedition met with such a sorry defeat at their hands. After the squadron had made anchor, a large party of Spaniards debarked and entered one of the native temples in which an idol, decorated with gold, was discovered and was seized as lawful prey by one of the sub-commanders of the party. Cortez, however, rebuked this rash and impolitic act, and not only restored the idol to the sanctuary from which it had been ravaged, but took every means to assure the natives of his peaceful intentions, by which efforts he finally obtained their confidence and opened a lucrative traffic, which redounded in no small benefits to the Spaniards.



## A BATTLE WITH THE NATIVES.

On the 4th of March the squadron departed from the island upon which they had had a pleasant stay, and on the following day reached the shores of the continent, along which he sailed a distance of 200 miles, until he reached the mouth of the river Tabasco, before which he anchored his ships, and with a well armed party, in boats, ascended the shallow stream. After proceeding several miles he attempted a landing at a beautiful place before which stretched a wide and inviting meadow. But he was intercepted by a large party of natives, who, flourishing their weapons, shouted words of defiance, and as the day was far spent, Cortez prudently decided to wait until morning before engaging the hostiles. He accordingly anchored off shore, where, for the time, he would be secure, as no canoes were near in which the natives might reach his boats.

When morning broke on the following day, there was presented to his startled view an enormous force of savages who had been rallying the entire



night and now stood in battle array, armed with weapons from which the sun flashed in blinding brilliancy, and with heads covered with plumes that gave them both a wild and martial appearance. The blast of trumpets and the roll of drums, mingled with shouts from thousands of dark-skinned natives, was quickly answered by the firing of the few muskets that Cortez had, and a charge from the entire force of Spaniards. The natives were armed principally with bows and arrows, and at the first attack the air seemed filled with these missiles. But the Spaniards were protected by their helmets and shields, so that few casualties resulted to the invaders, and a heroic charge soon put the natives to rout, with a loss of several hundred. The Indians had believed the thunder of the cannons and muskets was produced by supernatural powers, and fled from what they were convinced was the anger of an enraged god. Only fourteen of the Spaniards were wounded, and none of these so seriously but they



were able to continue the march. On the following day Cortez proceeded to Tabasco, which was the capital of a province in Central America, of which he took possession without meeting any resistance from the natives, all of whom fled in dismay upon the approach of the invaders. Cortez' arrival in the town was the signal for another gathering of the Indians, who sent out couriers in every direction, and in a surprisingly short time thousands came flocking to the standards of their chiefs to repel their white foes. But anticipating an attack, Cortez sent back to his vessels for all the arms that were brought over and for every man that could be spared from the ships, so that he was able to marshal a force of more than 500 men, splendidly equipped, and six cannons the thunder of which was more terrible to the natives than the slaughter which they wrought.

#### A TERRIBLE SLAUGHTER OF INDIANS.

On the 25th of March, the great battle which had been anticipated for nearly a week began. The enemy is estimated to have numbered 40,000 warriors, armed with arrows, slings, stones and javelins, against which there were to contend less than 600 Spaniards, whose lack of number was more than compensated by their superior weapons and their religious fanaticism, Cortez having been careful to arouse their fervor by declaring that God would fight their battles for them, and that they were but instruments in His hands to extend Christianity in the New World. The natives were first to attack with a volley that wounded seventy Spaniards, but only one was killed. But the charge was heroically met by the invaders, who opened a fire with muskets and cannons that tore great gaps in the ranks of the Indians, and was followed by a slaughter that has few parallels in the history of Mexico. Cortez, at the head of his small force of cavalry, had made a detour, and arrived unperceived in the rear of the natives whom he charged with such impetuosity that many were trampled beneath the hoofs of his horses and hundreds were cut down by the broad-swords of his men. But the slaughter and dismay caused by the charge were nothing to the terror inspired by the sight of the horses, which the natives had never before seen. They believed that horse and rider was some strange creature, half man, half beast, that devoured as well as killed, before which nothing mortal could stand.

The slaughter had now been so great that 30,000 of the natives lay dead upon the field, while but two of the Spaniards had been killed outright, and scarcely more than a hundred wounded. Terror-stricken and beaten, a panic now seized the Indians, and a dreadful rout ensued, in which many more were slain. Upon this blood-stained field Cortez now re-assembled his army, and setting up his banner and erecting the cross, prepared to celebrate mass in a manner as imposing as the scene immediately before had been awful; the wounds of the Spaniards were then dressed with fat stripped from Indians that had been killed, and night coming on, peace again brooded over that terrible field.

The power of the natives about Yucatan having been completely broken, they were ready to sue for peace upon any terms, and accepted the conditions



which Cortez imposed. They renounced their own religion, embraced Catholicism, destroyed their idols, and accepting the priests that were offered them, were confirmed in the holy religion from which they have not since departed. Before leaving Yucatan, Cortez was presented with twenty Indian girls whom he distributed as wives among his captains, retaining for himself the most beautiful one, whose name was Marina. Polygamy was the custom of the country, so that this young woman believed her relations to Cortez to be legitimate, and by her devotion and loyalty soon won his love. She was the daughter of a powerful Mexican cacique, but her father having died, her mother married again, whose affections were estranged from the daughter by the influence of a son by her second husband, so that the beautiful Marina was finally driven from home, and became a slave to a merchant of the country. Thus she acquired the language of Yucatan, and being familiar also with the Mexican tongue, proved invaluable in her services to Cortez, not only through her devoted loyalty to him but by acting as interpreter through a Spaniard who had some years before been driven by a storm and wrecked upon the shore of Central America, among the natives of which country he had lived until the landing of Cortez gave him opportunity to escape and join the expedition.



SLAUGHTER OF THE TABASCANS.

Leaving Tabasco, Cortez continued his voyage up the Central American coast, until he arrived before the Island of San Juan de Uloa, which is at the mouth of one of the principal harbors of the empire of Mexico.





## CHAPTER XVI.

### EMISSARIES OF MONTEZUMA VISIT CORTEZ.



CORTEZ resumed his voyage up the coast, with gay streamers of various colors floating from the masts of his vessels, until his squadron dropped anchor in the beautiful harbor of Uloa, where he was directly visited by a canoe bearing two important chiefs of the natives, acting as an embassy from the court of the Emperor of Mexico. The Indians were not entirely unacquainted with the Spaniards, for they had met the expedition of Grijalva some years before, and held a short intercourse with their visitors, which so impressed them that when they perceived the large squadron now lying at anchor they believed that the strangers had come with the purpose of invading and destroying

their peaceful homes. The emissaries, therefore, came bearing rich presents to Cortez and to pay respectful homage, with the hope of averting the disaster which they believed was now impending. Cortez received them kindly, and gained their confidence through a long interview, conducted by the aid of Marina and the Spaniard as interpreters. Having reassured them of his peaceful intentions, Cortez obtained the information that 200 miles in the interior was the capital of the empire, where dwelt a monarch named Montezuma, who was beloved by his subjects, and whose reign extended over a vast realm. He ascertained also that the country was divided into provinces, over each of which a governor presided, and that the executive over the territory at which he had landed was named Teutile, whose residence was some twenty miles distant.

Dismissing his official visitors with some gifts, and renewed assurances of his peaceful intentions, Cortez landed his entire force upon the shore, and set immediately about constructing a fortified camp, the outer works of which was defended by his artillery, so planted as to command the immediate surrounding district. In this work the Spaniards were assisted by the natives, who brought daily an abundance of provisions, and in every way manifested their hospitality and kindness.

### AN INTERVIEW BETWEEN THE INDIAN GOVERNOR AND CORTEZ.

After a week spent in this place, during which time the Mexicans and Spaniards mingled freely on intimate terms, Governor Teutile, with a numerous



retinue, made a visit to Cortez, at which demonstrations of friendship were exchanged. The cupidity of the Spaniards, however, was excited by the rich ornaments of silver and gold of the most splendid workmanship which decorated the persons of the governor and his staff, and incited them with a stronger desire to penetrate the territory where incredible wealth was now confidently believed might be had. At the request of Cortez, Teutile sent a communication to Montezuma, informing him of the arrival of the strangers and their desire to visit the Mexican capital. This communication was made by picture writing, as the Mexicans made no use of letters, which custom was peculiar to all the peoples of North America up to the time of the settlement of the country by the whites. Mexican painters were also employed to make pictures of the Spaniards and of the arms which they bore, also of the fleet and the armor, horses, and general equipment of the expedition, by which means they were enabled to convey to Montezuma a very correct idea of the arms, character and power of the Spaniards.



CORTEZ RECEIVING THE EMBASSY FROM MONTEZUMA.

On the eighth day after the transmission of the communication to the Emperor, an embassy, consisting of two nobles, accompanied by a staff of a hundred men laden with magnificent gifts from Montezuma, presented themselves before Cortez with the Emperor's reply. Among the many presents which they bore were articles of silver and gold, wrought in such exquisite manner that they vastly surpassed the best workmanship of European artists; and besides these, a Spanish helmet, which had been sent to Montezuma, was returned filled with nuggets of pure gold. Accompanying the presents was the following reply to the communication transmitted through Governor Teutile: "Our master is happy to send these tokens of his respect to the King of Spain. He regrets that he cannot enjoy an interview with the Spaniards, but the distance of his capital is too great and the perils of the journey too serious to allow of this pleasure. The strangers are, therefore, requested to return to their own homes, with these fruits of the friendly feelings of Montezuma." This reply not only disappointed but chagrined Cortez, who, though unwill-



ing to immediately offend the great emperor, insisted upon a renewal of his request for permission to visit the Mexican capital; but the ambassadors assured him that another application would be equally unavailing. However, they accepted of a few presents of shirts and ties, and departed again on their return to Montezuma, and conveyed this second message from the Spanish commander.

#### A PEREMPTORY REFUSAL.

Days passed without any reply from Montezuma, and as the natives now began to feel some uneasiness, they acted with more reserve, and withheld the supplies of provisions which they had before freely given. The weather, too, was insufferably hot, and a deadly sickness was soon manifested in the camp, from which thirty of the Spaniards died. Some of the party were now anxious to return to Cuba, fearing to encounter the perils which they must endure on a trip through a country of which they knew nothing, and among people whose number exceeded the entire population of Spain. But Cortez was not to thus supinely abandon an undertaking which promised both wealth and glory, and by impassioned appeals and assurances of success he succeeded in exciting anew the ambitions of his comrades, and it was determined at length to push on, despite whatever might happen, for the Mexican capital.

At the expiration of ten days, another message was received from Montezuma, more peremptory than the first, declaring that the Spaniards would not be permitted to approach the capital, and begging that they would depart from his shores, lest the friendship which he entertained might be turned to hostility. This reply of Montezuma inflamed Cortez with passion, which he made no effort to conceal, and turning to his soldiers he said: "This is truly a rich and powerful prince. His great treasures shall repay us well for the hardships which we must encounter. If we cannot visit his capital by invitation, we will go as soldiers of the Cross." The ambassadors retired with expressions of courtesy, but with manifest displeasure at the pertinacity of the Spaniards.

On the following morning, the huts of the Mexicans about the place where Cortez had built his fort were abandoned, and not one native reappeared to offer the Spaniards food, or to exchange the kindly civilities which had before characterized them. When provisions began to grow scarce, there was another disaffection among the members of the expedition, fully one-half of whom now seemed so determined to return to Cuba that Cortez apparently acquiesced, but secretly set those who were favorable to marching to the capital to cause a mutiny in the camp against the proposed return. According to a preconceived arrangement, his emissaries surrounded his tent in the evening, and with great show of force declared that, having entered upon an enterprise of converting the country to Christianity, they were determined to persevere in the effort, and that if Cortez wished to return with the other cowards to Cuba, they would choose another general more valorous, who would lead them through paths of



glory to the palace of the idolaters. This ruse was completely successful, for Cortez seized the occasion to make another patriotic address to his followers, which changed their former determination and set everyone to contemplating the wealth and glory which must follow their efforts to win the country to Christianity.

#### A SELF-CONSTITUTED COUNCIL SET UP BY CORTEZ.

Cortez now established a settlement on the coast at Uloa, and assembled a council for the organization of the government. Before the council thus selected, he bowed in obsequious homage, and in order to obtain a commission from the government, surrendered the authority which he had received from Velasquez, which had indeed been long before revoked; and in exchange was tendered a commission from this body ostensibly representing Charles V. of Spain. By this means he was chosen Chief Justice of the colony and Captain General of the army, thus shaking off his dependence upon Velasquez and assuming the dignity of a governor responsible only to his sovereign.

About this time, and while preparations were being made for the invasion, five Indians of rank came soliciting an interview with the commander. They represented themselves as envoys from a chief of a province not far distant, who reigned over a nation called Totonacs, a people who had been conquered by Montezuma and annexed to the Mexican Empire; but that they suffered all manner of severities and trials under their conqueror, and now sought an alliance with the Spaniards with the hope that they with their help might regain their independence. Cortez saw that this was an opportunity that he could not afford to waste, as here lay the means for largely augmenting his force, and by stirring up civil war he might divide the empire so as to make its subjugation more easily accomplished. First changing his settlement to a more desirable location some forty miles further up the coast, Cortez set himself at the head of his army and proceeded on a journey to a city twelve miles in the interior, where the cacique resided. When he had arrived within three miles of the palace of the chief of the Totonacs, he was met by a vast concourse of men who brought presents of gold, fruit and flowers and who omitted nothing in a generous exhibition of their friendship and desire for an alliance.

#### SCENES IN THE CHIEF CITY OF THE TOTONACS.

The country through which the Spaniards passed was beautiful almost beyond comparison, and the inhabitants possessed elements of refinement which might well do credit to the most civilized of European nations. The town too was beautifully laid out and handsomely ornamented with shade trees, and was as clean as the most carefully swept floor. The chief gave a magnificent welcome to his visitors, and exhibited such polished manners as led Cortez to believe that he had acquired his conduct at some magnificent court. After the first greeting, the cacique addressed Cortez in these words: "Gracious stranger,



I cannot sufficiently commend your benevolence, and none can stand in more need of it! You see before you a man wearied out with unmerited wrong. I and my people are crushed and trodden under foot by the most tyrannical power upon earth. We were once an independent and happy people, but the prosperity of the Totonacs is now destroyed; the power of our nobles is gone. We are robbed of the produce of our fields; our sons are torn from us for sacrifices and our daughters for slaves; and now, mighty warrior, we implore thy strength and kindness that thou wouldst enable us to resist these tyrants, and deliver us from their exactions." Promising him his assistance, Cortez rode through the streets of the capital, and through the great court of the temple which had been assigned for his accommodation. At the head of his column floated gilt-bespangled banners, followed by his cavalry of sixteen horses, animals which the Totonacs had never before seen, and behind these came the artillery, which, in the eyes of the natives, were supernatural agents, dealing lightning bolts and thunder roars at the will of the Spaniards.

On the following morning, Cortez returned to the point selected for the settlement, and was met by another cacique, who tendered him the service of 400 men to assist him in removing his baggage, or to perform any other labors which he might desire. The country was densely populated, and Cortez was offered such aid that in a short while a sufficient number of huts were erected to house all his people, and a flourishing town was brought quickly into existence, the first established by whites on the continent of the New World.

#### THE CUSTOM OF OFFERING UP HUMAN SACRIFICES.

Every movement of the Spaniards had been reported to Montezuma, who, now perceiving the intention of the strangers, saw the necessity of doing something to prevent their more thorough establishment in the country. Accordingly he sent five messengers, large and imposing men, each of whom carried a bouquet of flowers, followed by obsequious attendants. These ambassadors visited the settlement with authority from the Emperor to take such action against his rebellious subjects as the exigencies of the occasion seemed to justify. They commanded that the Totonac chiefs appear immediately before them, which, like terrified children, they promptly obeyed. At the conclusion of the interview, the Totonacs in great fear appealed to Cortez, informing him of the indignation of the Emperor at their conduct in supporting the Spaniards, and of his demand that, as a penalty for their actions, they immediately surrender to the five ambassadors twenty young men and as many young women of the Totonacs, to be offered in sacrifice to their gods. The terror inspired by this demand may well be excused, when it is known how these sacrifices were obtained and accomplished: At the time of Cortez' visit, and long anterior thereto, it was a practice among the Aztecs (which word may be used to designate all the peoples occupying that territory lying between the isthmus of Darien and the Rio Grande river) to make sacrifices of human beings to their Sun god. These



victims were generally obtained from the flower of the people, as those thus offered up were supposed to be without blemish; otherwise, they would not be acceptable to the deity. The place of sacrifice was in the temple court, upon a pyramid specially constructed for the purpose. Here the victims were laid upon a sacrificial stone, with arms extended and bound with iron wristlets and collar. Six priests officiated upon these occasions, one of whom plunged the copper knife into the breast of the offering, and tearing out the heart, held that fresh, palpitating, and bleeding organ towards the sun, at the same time reciting his orisons and devotions. The religion of these people was essentially a bloody



OFFERING OF HUMAN SACRIFICES.

one, calling so frequently for human sacrifices that it has been estimated that no less than fifty thousand victims were required every year to placate the Aztec gods. But in addition to these pious offerings, the Aztecs invariably tortured their prisoners and celebrated their victories by the bloodiest rites, and not infrequently the bodies were served up and eaten at sacrificial banquets with accompaniment of great rejoicing.

#### AN ACT OF INCONCEIVABLE PERFIDY.

When the determination of the ambassadors despatched by Montezuma was described to Cortez, he assumed an air of bitter indignation, and set earnestly



about promoting an open rupture between the Totonacs and the Mexicans. Not only did he declare that God had commissioned him to abolish the abominable practices of these heathens, but he commanded the Totonac chiefs to arrest the ambassadors and convey them immediately to prison. Having been accustomed to look upon Montezuma as the greatest monarch of the earth, whose power none might successfully resist, the Totonac chiefs were horrified at the order given them by Cortez. But reflecting again upon the surrender of their young men and women to be sacrificed for their own rebellious acts, and feeling themselves now between two fires, they accepted the last alternative and, with many misgivings, they hurried the ambassadors away to prison. This was an act of open rebellion, which they realized was unpardonable, and henceforth they were to be the slaves of Cortez, to whose strong arm they could alone look for protection. With a perfidy which the most depraved of human wretches would scarcely manifest, on the following night Cortez secretly released two of the ambassadors, and with specious words of friendship sent them back to Montezuma, with a promise to set the others at liberty at the earliest possible moment. The next morning, the other three were also set free and were given some presents to convey to Montezuma, and bidden specially to report the outrage (as he characterized it) which had been committed upon them by the Totonacs. Thus, while pretending to be the friend of each, Cortez succeeded in his design of setting one part of the empire against the other, and fomenting a rebellion of which he was to be the chief beneficiary.

#### INDIAN MAIDENS BECOME WIVES TO THE SPANIARDS.

The settlement which Cortez had thus established he named Villi Rica de la Vera Cruz, which interpreted means The Rich City of the True Cross. Its location was a few miles above where the present city of Vera Cruz stands. Here he remained for some time, and until he received another message from the court of Montezuma, which was couched in very different language from that which had previously been transmitted. The Mexican Emperor, being deceived by the specious pretensions of Cortez, and alarmed as well by the appalling power which he manifested and which the Emperor believed must be supernatural, adopted a conciliatory policy, and even invited Cortez and his soldiers now to visit his capital. The peaceful relations which had thus been suddenly established between Cortez and Montezuma were kept secret from the Totonacs as far as possible, and, appreciating their position towards the Emperor, they omitted no opportunity to show their faith and reliance in the strangers with whom they had thus formed an alliance, and to strengthen this bond the cacique made an offering to Cortez of eight of the most beautiful maidens that he was able to find in the country, and in urging the acceptance of this singular gift begged that they be joined in marriage to his officers. This proposition Cortez turned to his advantage by a show of gracious condescension and a promise to receive them upon the condition that these maidens would renounce their idolatry and

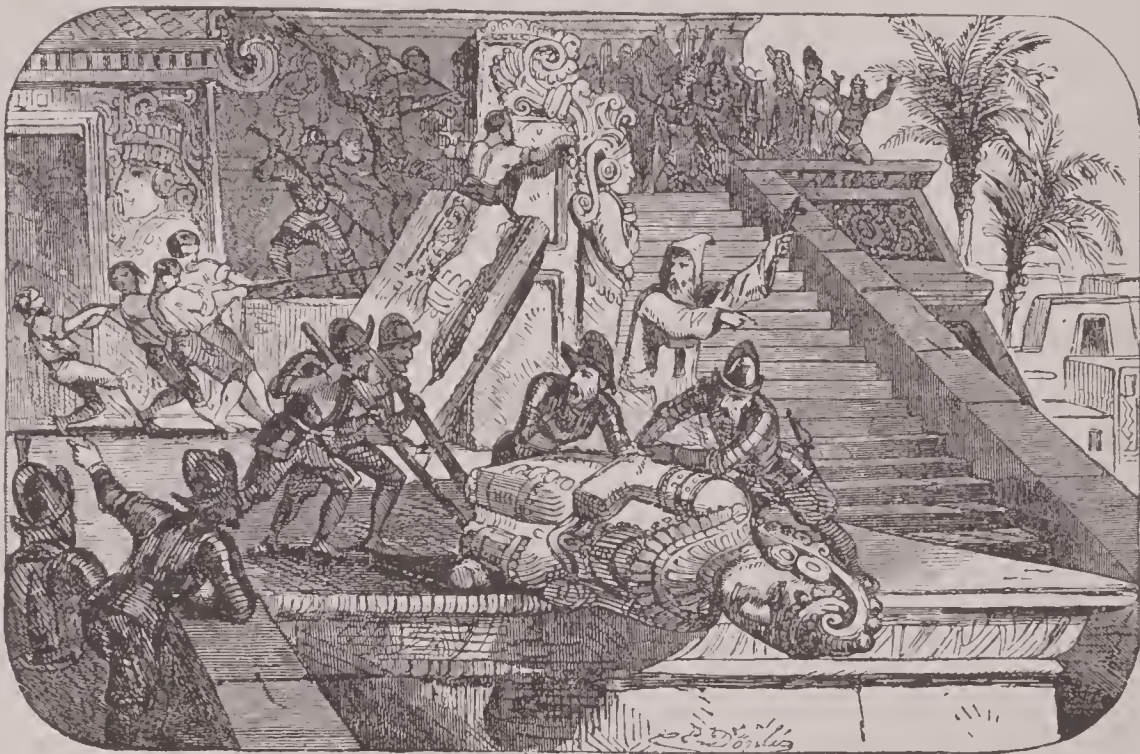


be baptized into the holy Catholic Church, which the Totonacs agreed to, and thus were the first converts to Christianity made among the people of Mexico.

#### DESTRUCTION OF THE IDOLS OF THE TOTONACS.

Having thus succeeded in his first efforts to convert a few of the people by peaceful means, he urged upon the Totonac chiefs an abandonment of their heathenism and a general adoption of the Catholic faith. But this proposition they respectfully declined, reminding Cortez of the power of their gods, whom they had from time immemorial faithfully worshipped, and declaring that their abandonment now would result in the destruction of the entire nation. This loyalty to their religion severely provoked Cortez, who, unable to appreciate the nobility of these sentiments, attributed their inclination to an obstinacy which he was determined to

overcome by force, if persuasion were unavailing. Accordingly, on the following day, in a solid column, the soldiers marched directly to one of the most magnificent temples of the district, and amid the panic created by the pageantry that he presented, he ascended with fifty of his men up the winding stairway



DESTROYING THE IDOLS OF THE TOTONACS.

of the pyramid within the temple's court, and with violent hands hurled down the massive wooden idols, which broke in fragments as they struck the streets. Gathering up the remains, he placed them in a pile and applied the torch, by which they were speedily consumed. Appalled by this violence, and realizing their own helplessness the Totonac chiefs docilely acquiesced in all the demands made upon them by the invaders. Cortez then ordered that the Totonac be dressed in the sacerdotal robes of the Catholic priesthood; and placing lighted candles in their hands, he forced them to participate in the rites of the Papal church. Upon the apex of the pyramid, where human sacrifices had been offered upon more than a hundred occasions, Cortez erected an altar, before which mass was solemnly performed. And there, on that bloody spot, the psalmody of the Catholic priests ascended in the air, the first offering made to the true God from a country in which, aside from its religion, there was a splendid civilization. This incident so affected the



minds of the natives that many wept, and the whole nation directly accepted the Christian religion, perceiving its superiority to the brutalities of their own.

Thus far there had been no serious obstacles to the progress of the purpose of Cortez. But about this time, for some unexplained cause, there was another disaffection among his soldiers, a party of whom had secretly seized one of the brigantines with the intention of escaping back to Cuba. At the last moment, however, one of the conspirators disclosed the intention of his comrades, and Cortez, at all times fearful of the results of his assumption of the gubernatorial position, as already described, determined to make an example of the conspirators. He accordingly ordered all the mutineers to be brought upon shore, where, after a brief trial, the two ringleaders were condemned to be beheaded. The pilot was committed to the more brutal penalty of having his feet cut off, while two others of the foremost sailors received 200 lashes, from the effects of which they did not recover for several months. But not entirely satisfied with the results of his harsh measures, to prevent the destruction of his disaffected followers, Cortez adopted a desperate expedient: He was now upon an unknown shore, in the midst of millions of people, the most of whom were loyally attached to their emperor, and who by combination might easily accomplish his destruction. But dismissing all danger, in his blind ambition Cortez ordered all the vessels of his fleet dismantled, and after every movable thing had been placed on shore, the ships were scuttled and sunk. At this bold act the soldiers were struck with consternation, for they perceived how hopeless was their expectation of ever again returning to their friends unless Providence protected them in all the perilous marches which lay before them, and which the majority of the company contemplated with feelings of despair. But their destiny lay entirely in the hands of their leader whom it were no avail now to oppose, and their feelings of insubordination gave place to a blind obedience, which was directly aroused to enthusiasm and devotion by a thrilling speech which Cortez delivered to pacify his men.

On the 15th of August, 1519, Cortez had so far completed his preparation for the great march to the interior that he brought up his little army in review, and after putting them through many military evolutions, addressing them again in the most impassioned manner, appealing alike to their cupidity and religious zeal, he marched out of the town where he had formed a flourishing settlement, and set his face towards the capital of Mexico. His force consisted of 400 Spaniards, armed as already described, fifteen cavalymen, and seven pieces of artillery. The rest of his party he left at the garrison at Vera Cruz, many of whom were sick or disabled, and the others were required for the defence of the place. But the cacique of the Totonacs furnished him with 2300 men, a majority of whom, however, went as porters to the expedition, to carry burdens and to draw the artillery. At the head of this considerable force, Cortez set out upon a career of cruelty and bloodshed positively unparalleled in American history, as we shall see.



## CHAPTER XVII.

A PICTURESQUENESS OF LANDSCAPE TRULY MARVELLOUS.



FLAMING meads and waving meadows stretched away almost as far as the eye could reach on either side of the road over which Cortez marched his troops towards the magnificent capital of the Mexicans. At brief intervals Indian villages were passed, out of which came the wondering population stricken with amazement at the military procession as it sped swiftly by. On elevated sites, commanding lovely prospects, might be seen beautiful villas of rich natives, which betrayed the marvellous wealth and unexampled productiveness of the country. It was not until the fourth day that they reached the mountain slopes of the Cordilleras, at the foot of which they entered a large and populous town,

called Naulinco, which was distinguished not only for its numerous population, but also for its many massive temples, upon whose altars sacrifices of human bodies were made many times every year. At sight of these the indignation of Cortez was again aroused, and he would have proceeded to demolish both the idols and the temples but for the restraint that lack of time put upon him. He was, therefore, content to erect in the broad plaza of the place a giant cross, as a memorial of his visit.

The route now lay up the mountain side, and it was not until the third day, over rugged paths and assailed by fierce storms of wind, that they reached a table-land seven thousand feet above the sea. But at this elevation they found the country as luxuriant with fields of maize, and as populous with towns and villages as the level lands over which they had before passed. On the westward side of this table-land was located the city of Tlatlanquitepec, the architecture of which was vastly more imposing than that of any place the Spaniards had seen. The houses were nearly all built of stone, much of which was exquisitely carved and of rocks of extraordinary size. But more wonderful than these structures were thirteen enormous temples which attested the religious fervor of the people. While the sight of these buildings excited wonder and amazement, the Spaniards were appalled by the spectacle of one hundred thousands human skulls, piled up in the form of a pyramid, and exhibited as an evidence of the devotion of the citizens to their gods.



The people of the city received Cortez with cold formality and endeavored to persuade him against visiting the Mexican capital. But he was not to be thus deterred from his purpose, and would have desecrated the temples and destroyed the idols of those debased people, as he had done before, had not a priest, a prudent father, named Olmedo, who accompanied him, showed the rashness of such a course.

#### A MEETING WITH THE TLASCALANS.

After a rest of five days in Tlatlanquitepec, the march was resumed over a beautiful roadway that ran along a transparent stream of water and an unbroken line of Indian villages. Fifty miles further brought them to the city of Xalacingo, which was on the frontier of a very powerful nation, called the Tlascalans, who were not only numerous but so warlike that they had successfully resisted every attempt of the Mexican Emperor at their subjugation. Every man among them was a warrior, holding himself in readiness for service at any instant, and bloody battles were of constant occurrence between them and the Mexicans, by which they had been able to maintain their independence. Appreciating the importance of an alliance with such a valorous people, Cortez rested several days at Xalacingo, and sent an embassy of Totonacs with a courteous message to the chief of the nation, soliciting permission to pass through his country. Contrary to his expectation, the embassy was not a success, for having had information of the landing of the Spaniards, who were represented as being armed with thunder and clad with wings, and been informed of the desecration of the temples and the destruction of the gods wherever they went, the Tlascalans seized the ambassadors and were determined to sacrifice them to their gods. But by some means, which history does not explain, the four ambassadors contrived to make their escape, came back with all speed to the camp of the Spaniards, and made report of the cruel manner in which they had been received. A less bold man than Cortez would have hesitated to attempt a passage through the country with so small a force in the face of such a number of powerful warriors as the Tlascalans were able to muster. But he seems never to have been moved by any feelings of fear, but rather by a consuming ambition which did not allow him to hesitate before any obstacle. Lifting high the standard of the Holy Cross, Cortez, again appealing to his soldiers in the name of God, resumed his march towards the country which he had been forbidden to enter.

#### A BLOODY BATTLE WITH TLASCALANS.

A few miles brought them in view of a solid wall of masonry, extending to the right and left, through valleys and over hills, until lost to view. It was constructed of immense blocks of stone with a base fully twelve feet in thickness, narrowing at the top to half that breadth, and strengthened at intervals with castellated parapets, in which respect it bore a striking resemblance to the great Chinese wall, and that it was built for a like purpose was evident. To the grateful surprise of the Spaniards they found the main gate undefended, nor did their approach seem to have been heralded; for no



Indians were to be seen until an entrance had been secured, and the march continued towards the city. Suddenly, from behind the hills and out of the woods dashed a large force of Indians, who attacked the Spaniards with the greatest fury, and succeeded in killing two of the cavalry horses and wounding several of the invaders before Cortez really comprehended his danger. For the moment the Spaniards were thrown into dismay, so splendid had been the discipline and military tactics of the Indians. But his somewhat distracted force was directly rallied by Cortez, who quickly ordered the artillery brought into position, and opening fire, a terrible storm of grape-shot went tearing through the ranks of the Indians, dealing such dreadful carnage that they were instantly thrown into confusion and retreated, leaving six thousand of their dead upon the field. This decisive defeat of the Tlascalans resulted to the very great advantage of Cortez, for from their ranks he recruited nearly a thousand warriors, and the whole nation promptly acknowledged their fealty to the conqueror.

But, though Cortez subjugated the people about Xalacingo, he was yet to encounter other bodies of these people, who were to offer him an obstinate resistance. The recruits which he obtained were therefore carefully drilled, and the Totonac allies were also made effective by a discipline which readily made them available as soldiers. Cortez recognized the necessity of having every man under him, whether porter or servant, sailor or soldier, ready for service in case necessity called. Occasion soon arose to justify and commend this wise precaution. A five days' march after his battle with the Tlascalans brought him to a lovely valley, where to his astonished gaze he saw the enemy drawn up in battle array, and in such numbers that their boundary on either side could not be perceived.

#### ANOTHER TERRIBLE BATTLE.

It was not until late in the afternoon that Cortez stretched his tent and posted sentinels to watch the foe, feeling certain that on the following morning he would be required to give battle to an enemy whose strength he was unable to estimate. Two of the chiefs whom he had captured at the first battle informed Cortez that the foe before him consisted of five divisions of ten thousand men, and that each division was under the command of a chief, and designated by a distinct uniform and banner. With the hope of averting a dreadful calamity, Cortez sent his captive chiefs with a conciliatory message to the enemy, asking permission to pass unmolested through their country and declaring that he had no designs against the Tlascalans. But to this a fierce reply was returned, to the effect that they would not only resist his passage through the country, but that if he attempted it they would offer the hearts of the Spaniards as a sacrifice to their gods and then devour the bodies, according to the custom with which they treated all their prisoners. It was a supreme moment for the Spaniards, and fear of the result caused a solemn feeling to brood over the camp, and in the night, during the still watches, the voice of prayer arose from every tent, for God alone seemed able to deliver them from their desperate situation. Cortez nevertheless at no time exhibited any alarm, but went about



among his troops encouraging them by every means he was able to put forth, and prophesying the certain defeat of the Indians whose power, he declared, would be speedily dissipated by the arm of the Almighty.

At an early hour, on the 5th of September, the blare of bugles aroused the sleepless camp, and the order was given to prepare for action. Even the wounded men that were barely able to stand in rank with assistance were compelled to do such duty as they were capable of performing, while the recruits from the two Indian nations were stationed in the centre, supported on either wing by the Spaniards, and the cavalry was sent forward to bring on the battle. As the sun rose over the Cordilleras a magnificent view was presented: stretching away across the valley from hill to hill, and covering a plain fully six miles square, was the vast army of the Tlascalans, sturdily awaiting the moment for the conflict. The native warriors were gorgeously decorated with feathers and paint and other appliances of barbaric pomp, and as they were separated in divisions, Cortez was now able to form a correct estimate of their number, which he declares was fully one hundred thousand. Their weapons were slings, arrows, javelins, clubs, and wooden swords, while flints were imbedded in their wooden weapons, which made them extremely effective in close combat. Scarcely had Cortez put his troops in motion towards the valley when a vast field of natives began to move with celerity, but military precision, towards their advancing foe, and in a few moments the attack was begun by such a discharge of arrows and darts from the Tlascalans as to fairly becloud the sky. The armor worn by the Spaniards was scarcely a sufficient protection against such a hail of weapons, and many fell sorely wounded. But employing tactics which had served him so efficaciously in his first battle, Cortez brought up his pieces of artillery and opened a fire of ball and grape-shot upon the astonished natives, which slaughtered them in astonishing numbers at each discharge. But so desperate was their courage that the Tlascalans, while betraying amazement, rushed in and filled up the gaps made by the cannons, and regardless of the rain of death that was now mowing down thousands every moment, they continued valorously the unequal fight. On every side the dead lay piled up in ghastly confusion, while of the Spaniards every horse was wounded and seventy of the men were severely injured, and nearly every one had been struck by some of the flying missiles. The chief of the Tlascalans, at last seeing how futile it was to contend any longer with an enemy which he now believed was fighting by the aid of supernatural weapons, sounded the retreat. But in retiring, the same discipline that had distinguished their advance characterized the present movements of the natives, who left the Spaniards with little more glory than the mere satisfaction of having routed their enemies, for exhausted with the long and severe fighting, and maimed, wounded, and discouraged, the victors sought repose upon the grass, too nearly depleted of physical strength and ambition to erect tents for their protection. During the day a storm arose, and the temperature fell so low that the sufferings from cold were even greater than



from the wounds that the soldiers had received. The previous night they had slept little or none through fear of the results of the following day, and the weather was now so inclement that they were unable to obtain the rest and refreshment which they so sorely needed. To discouragement a mutinous feeling succeeded, and the expedition was again upon the point of disbandment through the open threats of more than half the number to abandon a course which seemed so hopeless, and which must, if persisted in, bring irreparable calamity upon the whole.

Our surprise is exceedingly great when reading the reports furnished by Cortez, and a comrade named Diaz, who seems to have been historiographer of the expedition, to learn that in this bloody contest, in which it is said thirty thousand of the enemy were slain, only one Spaniard was killed upon the field of battle, and that all their sufferings arose from wounds which in every case healed, so there was no substantial loss in the fighting force which Cortez had marshalled.

#### A THIRD DESPERATE BATTLE.

Again the influence of Cortez was exerted to quiet the fears and mutinous spirit of his followers, and his success in this effort was as signal as it had been on many previous occasions; for when he was unable to arouse them by assurances of the glory that they would obtain, as well as the wealth which awaited the expedition at its conclusion, he had the unfailing resource of appealing to their religious zeal, which in every instance brought such immediate change that from depression the most mutinous rallied again to his standard with assurances of their renewed devotion. On the day succeeding the battle, Cortez armed some of his soldiers sufficiently to make a foray among the neighboring villages, which he despoiled and burned, taking also 400 prisoners, about one half of whom were women. He then pitched his tents and gave his soldiers an opportunity for the rest which they had not had since leaving Xalacingo. But on the second day he was surprised by an army very much larger than that with which he had contended in the unfortunate valley, and which, he declares, exceeded 150,000 in numbers. This enormous force had been collected through the extraordinary exertions of neighboring caciques, who brought their legions from every direction, and appeared in front of Cortez without any intimation having preceded them of their intention. Almost as quickly as they came in sight this immense army made a fierce charge, and descended upon the Spaniards in such awful might that Cortez was completely overwhelmed. Everything for a while was in inextricable confusion, the natives and the Spaniards grappling in a deadly contest which would have meant annihilation to the Spaniards had not the artillery been brought promptly into action, and its thunders inspired the natives with a new terror. For four hours this desperate battle continued, at the end of which time, to the surprise of Cortez himself, so many thousands of the natives had been slain that the rest drew off in hopeless discouragement, feeling that their gods had abandoned them and were fighting upon the side of their enemies. When night came on,



Cortez made another foray among the villages several miles in the surrounding country, and after pillaging them of their contents, burned three thousand houses and took many of the inhabitants prisoners. Contrary to his previous treatment, he kindly cared for his captives, and so amazed the natives by his humanity, that, disheartened, the Tlascalans were ready to sue for peace. Accordingly, they sent a delegation of fifty of their principal men, bearing a great quantity of valuable presents to Cortez, and conveyed through a respectful message their desire to form an alliance with him. But misinterpreting the purpose of their visit, and suspecting some treachery intended, which seems to have been thoroughly justified by the second attack that had been made upon them, but with inexcusable cruelty he ordered the ambassadors to be seized and their hands cut off, and thus mutilated he sent the unfortunate victims back to the Tlascalan camp with a defiant reply.

#### AN ALLIANCE WITH THE TLASCALANS.

Subdued by terror and cruelty, and the supposed supernatural power of the Spaniards, the chief of the Tlascalans made no further resistance, and with a numerous retinue entered the Spanish camp, with abject proffers of submission, promising also to prove as faithful in peace as he had been bold in war. Thus yielding themselves as vassals to the Spaniards, they completed an alliance with Cortez, and the two armies thus amalgamated proceeded together to the great city of Tlascala, and there concerted measures against their common enemy, the Mexicans. Tlascala is represented by Cortez to have been one of the most imposing cities that his eyes ever rested upon, more nearly resembling Grenada, the great Moorish capital, than any other place that he had seen. Upon their entrance to the city, they were met by an enthusiastic multitude, who came out to greet them with barbaric music, preceding native warriors gayly decorated with variegated plumes, and clothed in the splendors of half civilization. Among the other surprises which awaited Cortez was the splendid police regulation of the city and the many luxuries which the people enjoyed; for here he found barber-shops, and baths with hot and cold water, broad plazas in which native bands of musicians discoursed every evening, flowing fountains, and seemingly all the accessories of a highly refined people. On the way, however, fifty-five of the Spaniards had died of wounds received in the latter engagement, while the most of his army was so fatigued that palanquins had to be provided to convey them. Those that were wounded had also received small attention, as the injuries could only be dressed with the fat cut from the dead bodies of the natives, the result of which treatment Cortez unfortunately neglects to record. But upon reaching Tlascala every comfort was immediately provided, not only for the care of the sick but for the perfect rest of the fatigued, while provisions were in such abundance that the army forgot their troubles in the luxurious entertainment which they now received. It is estimated by Cortez that at least thirty thousand people appeared daily in the market place of the city, and that the population of the province which he had invaded numbered not less than 500,000.



## CHAPTER XVIII.

### PREPARATIONS FOR THE INVASION OF MEXICO.



RAND and imposing was the entrance of Cortez into Tlascala, while so magnificently hospitable was his entertainment that opportunity was offered not only for acquainting himself with the resources of the Empire, but for persuading the Tlascalans to join him in the enterprise of overthrowing Montezuma. So well did he succeed that the entire fighting force of the province was placed at his disposal, and preparations were begun on a gigantic scale for the invasion. In the meantime, however, Montezuma had been made acquainted with the result of Cortez' conquests, and his fears being excited that the gods were in some mysterious way working to accomplish his ruin,

with the hope of averting such fate the Emperor sent an embassy of five noble-men, accompanied by a retinue of 200 prominent men of the empire, to visit the Spanish conqueror; nor did he forget to send with them such valuable presents that the gold which they brought is alone estimated to have been equal in value to \$50,000. Accompanying the presents was a message couched in the most respectful language, beseeching him not to invade the empire and pledging the assistance of the Emperor in any undertaking which Cortez might have in mind that did no violence to his own territory. Surprised and angered at this sudden change in the disposition of Montezuma, whose invitation to visit the capital had only a few weeks before been extended to him, Cortez returned a reply full of courtesy, but declaring his intention nevertheless to visit the Mexican capital in obedience to his sovereign's order, and intimating that he should do so regardless of the wishes of the Emperor, even to the extent of employing force and laying waste the country.

Before departing from Tlascala, Cortez had carried his crusade against idol worship and the cruel practices of the natives so far that he prevailed upon his new allies to discharge the prisoners whom they had in the temples fattening for the next sacrifice; and he also obtained from them a promise to discontinue such heathen practices thereafter, a promise, however, which was no longer kept than the stay of Cortez in their capital continued, for almost immediately upon



his departure the old orgies and bloody rites were re-instituted, and their altars flowed with the blood of the offerings of hundreds of victims almost before the sound of the tramp of the vanishing Spaniards had died away.

#### OBSEQUIOUS MESSAGES FROM MONTEZUMA.

But Cortez nevertheless left some of the seeds of the church, by receiving into baptism five beautiful maidens who had been offered to him by the chief of the province, as wives for his soldiers. These, having been first formally baptized and received by the church, were left with one priest to propagate the faith in Tlascala, while Cortez at the head of an immense army continued his journey towards the Mexican capital. About this time also Cortez received a second embassy, with even richer presents than those which the first had carried, and these, making the most abject obeisance to the white conqueror, presented their gifts, together with a message assuring Cortez of the Emperor's high consideration and regard, and in the hope of winning his friendship as well as averting the fate which he believed was impending, he renewed his invitation to Cortez to visit his capital and promised him an enthusiastic and friendly welcome. But he besought him to form no alliance with the Tlascalans, whom he designated as the most fierce and unrelenting foes of his empire, and whose natures were so treacherous that they might not be depended upon even in the face of the strongest protestations of fidelity. But Cortez no longer regarded the messages from Montezuma, having now a sufficient force to easily make his way against any resistance that the Emperor was able to offer.

Indeed, the Tlascalans flocked to his standard in such numbers that Cortez declares he might easily have enlisted 100,000 volunteers. But instead of taking soldiers from among these indiscriminately, he accepted but 6000 select troops, with which large re-enforcement he now set out, with banners streaming, trumpets sounding, and his enthusiastic soldiers shouting, for the great Mexican capital.

The great city of Cholula, having a population of 100,000 souls was only eighteen miles from Tlascala. But it was situated in the Mexican empire, and the bitterest animosities then prevailed between its inhabitants and the Tlascalans. Cortez was, therefore, warned against treachery in case he made an entrance into this city. But, regarding these alarms merely as the fears of an excited people, he continued on to this great metropolis, and when in sight of its gates a delegation came out to receive him and to pay their respectful homage. But though they welcomed him with smoking censers, waving banners, and bands of music, the people of Cholula declined to admit their enemies within the city walls, and to avoid giving offence before he had been able to ascertain what were the defensive forces of the city, Cortez ordered his Tlascalan allies to camp outside the walls. It was a city not only of extraordinary proportions, but distinguished for its handsome streets and magnificent dwellings, while here and there the most splendid temples rose in grandeur from the city's squares, and there was every indication of extraordinary wealth and the rewards of successful industry.



## MASSACRE OF THE CHOLULANS.

While viewing the grandeur of the place, Cortez had not failed to note several suspicious movements, which his quick comprehension taught him to believe denoted that some treachery was in contemplation. To re-enforce this belief, two Tlascalans, who had been acting as spies, having entered the city in disguise, reported to him that six children had just been sacrificed in the chief temple, as an offering to the god of war and as an imploration for the destruction of the Spanish invaders. This information did not serve to considerably increase the fears of Cortez, half-believing that it might be prompted by the sincere desire of the Tlascalans to embroil Cortez with their inveterate enemies. But the facts as they disclosed them were presently confirmed by testimony furnished by Marina, the faithful native wife of Cortez. This woman had by some means obtained the confidence of a wife of one of the Cholulan nobles, who, to save Marina, had disclosed to her a plot then in progress designed to accomplish the ruin

of the Spaniards. She told how deep graves had been dug in the streets and concealed, which were intended to serve as pitfalls for the Spanish cavalry, and that stones had been carried to the tops of the houses and temples to be hurled at the proper moment upon the heads of the invaders, as they marched through



SLAUGHTER OF THE CHOLULANS.

the streets. To counteract this treachery, and to bring punishment upon the inhospitable people, Cortez conceived a horrible project: He gave orders to quietly assemble all the Spaniards and Totonacs, at a given moment, in the chief market place of the city, and to come prepared for a desperate measure. At the same time he ordered the Tlascalans to approach at a given signal, and when he should signify, they were to rush in and fall upon the Cholulans, whom they were to strike down and massacre without mercy. He next sent a friendly message to the chief men of the city and nobles, requesting their immediate presence at a public place in the city, and when these responded, an order for the slaughter was given. Taken completely by surprise the Cholulans could offer no resistance while the Tlascalans, finding this their



opportunity for a savage vengeance upon their implacable enemies, swept through the streets like devouring wolves, and instituted a carnival of blood more terrible than that which drenched the streets of Paris during the slaughter of the Huguenots. They were no respecters of persons: children, women, old age, alike fell before the merciless hand of slaughter, and when the carnage ceased the pillage began. For two days this riot of murder, plunder, and burning continued, until at last the city presented the sad spectacle of nothing but smouldering ruins, while the streets were filled with mutilated carcasses polluting the air. Six thousand persons were thus massacred, the other inhabitants fortunately escaping to the hills and avoiding pursuit. A proclamation of amnesty was now issued to the fugitives, who were induced to return to the ruins from which they had fortunately escaped; and, as some amends for the ruthless desecration and spoliation that he had wrought, Cortez set about erecting other buildings and restoring order, so as to make the place again habitable. The idols had all been broken up and the temples defaced, so that Cortez thought now was a suitable time to institute the Christian religion. Accordingly, he set up in several places crosses and images of the Virgin, and ordered public thanksgivings to God for having purified the temples of the heathen, and for the establishment of the holy religion in the places built by idolaters.

Some idea of the extraordinary size of the temples which were built in Cholula may be formed by a statement made by the Hon. Widdy Thompson, who visited the place where once the city of Cholula stood, in 1842. He says that not a single vestige of that great city remains except the ruins of the principal pyramid or temple, which still stands in solitary and gloomy grandeur in the vast plain which surrounds it. Its dimensions at the base are 1440 feet, its present height 177 feet, while the area on the summit is something more than 45,210 square feet, or a little more than 212 feet square. A Catholic chapel now crowns the summit of this enormous mound, the sides of which are covered with grass and trees.

The terrible massacre of the inhabitants of Cholula was a great advantage to Cortez, for the news spread rapidly to all the other cities of Mexico, and so appalled the people that from every point came messages of humble submission, accompanied by rich presents and offerings, as a propitiation to secure the favor of the Spaniards. Montezuma, when he heard of the thunder and lightning of Cortez' artillery, aided by cavalry horses, destroying thousands in the streets of Cholula, and that they had even put to flight the vast armies of Tlascalaus, trembled with fright, and, retiring to his secret chamber, spent a week in consultation with his priests, and in petitionings to his gods for protection against the ruthless invaders. But the gods of Montezuma had deserted him, as they had the Totonacs, the Tlascalans, and the Cholulans, and Montezuma read his fate as plainly as Belshazzar perceived the handwriting on the falling walls of Babylon.

The success of Cortez had also drawn to him many disaffected parties from other provinces who had real or imagined grievances against Montezuma, and who, while seeking to avenge their wrongs, sought to protect themselves by



joining the standard of the invader. Thus Cortez found his force continually increasing, until it became so unwieldy that further accessions to his ranks were refused. From less than 500 in the beginning his force had augmented until it now numbered nearly 20,000, and it might have easily been recruited to ten times as many without effort on his part. The most of these, however, were hardly available in battle, except as they might be used to draw the fire of the enemy and act as a barrier for his own men. With this vast army Cortez left the ruined city of Cholula and marched towards Mexico, which lay less than seventy miles towards the east.

The country through which he advanced was luxuriant and immensely populous; provisions were everywhere abundant; the water was clear and wholesome, and the journey being without annoyances was pleasant in the extreme. There were on every side rivers, orchards, lakes, beautiful villages, highly cultivated fields, splendid villas, and a tropical growth of flowers and vegetation positively amazing. Through this Edenic country Cortez continued his journey with short advances, being in no anxiety to reach the end of what was proving only a delightful excursion.

**THE FIRST SIGHT OF THE  
MEXICAN CAPITAL.**

It was not until seven days after leaving Cholula



CORTEZ' FIRST VIEW OF THE MEXICAN CAPITAL.

that the Spaniards gained the heights of Ithualco, from which a majestic and splendid view of Mexico was obtained. Under the spell of the landscape that spread out in picturesque panorama below him, Cortez stood in pious contemplation of how God had protected and aided him in carrying the banners of Spain and of the cross over such a stretch of productive country, to be planted in the heart of the richest heathen nation of the world. As the verdant landscape stretched away into the distance, there were outlined against the sky mountain peaks and the snow-covered volcanoes of Pococatpetl and Iztaccihuatl, rising in grandeur and overtopping the great city of Mexico, which lay in queenly splendor upon islands in the bosom of Lake Tezcuco, more than five hundred miles in circumference. On the margin of the lake were suburbs of the capital, with lofty temples, snow-white dwellings, from which long causeways led to the main city that was



surrounded by the lake. There were everywhere the indications of a refinement fully equal, if not superior, to that found anywhere in Europe. The architecture would rival that of the Moors, who introduced into Spain a style which has never since been abandoned. There were bridges, and buildings, and tunnels that exhibited the most splendid engineering skill; factories that provided the most costly fabrics; plantations that were most perfectly cultivated, and machinery of various kinds that manifested the progressive spirit of the people. Before these sights the boldness of the Spaniards recoiled, considering how few they were in number and in the centre of a hostile country where so many hundreds of thousands of bold warriors might be mustered upon a call from the Emperor, and how easily destruction might be brought upon them if their allies should be weaned from the loyalty which they professed. But Cortez exhibited the most striking self-assurance, reposing a perfect reliance in the destructive power of gunpowder and the protection which the sacred banner of the cross afforded.

Though Cortez was in sight of Mexico, he was yet some considerable distance from the city, and it was necessary to pass through several large towns which lay in the Mexican valley. He accordingly marched through the cities of Amaquemecan and Ayotzingo, which, Venetian-like, was built in Lake Chalco, and Cuiclahuac, which was also in the lake, where many floating gardens were constructed that moved about like beds of roses driven by the wind; and thence on to Iztapalapan, which latter place was near the city of Mexico, and was remarkable for a gigantic stone reservoir which had been built of such ample dimensions that it held sufficient water to irrigate the grounds over a district many miles in extent. It also possessed an aviary filled with birds of the most gorgeous plumage and of sweetest song. Here Cortez halted for a day, and was most hospitably entertained by the people, who were in constant dread lest he should violate their beautiful homes and put them to the sword.

#### A SCENE OF BEWILDERING SPLENDOR.

On the following day, which was the 8th of November, 1519, Cortez proceeded on his journey to Mexico, and when within two miles of the outskirts of the city, he was met by a procession of a thousand of the principal inhabitants, each of whom was provided with a waving plume and clad in the most exquisitely embroidered mantle. They came to announce the approach of their beloved Emperor, who desired to personally welcome the strangers to his chief city. This procession met Cortez as he approached the principal causeway leading from the mainland to the island city. It was nearly two miles in length, substantially built, and wide enough to admit of a dozen horsemen riding abreast. On either side the lake was covered with gondolas and boats of various shapes, all laden with interested spectators, while further down the long avenue was seen approaching the glittering train of the Emperor, that reflected the sunlight back in dazzling splendor from the tinsel decorations of his retinue. Montezuma was himself seated in a gorgeous palanquin trimmed with gold, and borne on the shoulders of four noblemen, while from the top spread out six gigan-



tic plumes of various colors. Immediately before the palanquin three officers walked, each holding a golden mace, while over his head four attendants carried a canopy of skilful workmanship, gorgeously embellished with green feathers, gold, and precious gems, that sheltered him from the sun. The Emperor wore upon his head a crown of gold, which, being open at the top, permitted a beautiful head-dress of plumes to project. Over his shoulders he carried a mantle that was embroidered with costly ornaments, and was brought together in front with a rosette composed entirely of jewels. Buskins fastened with gold lace work were worn upon his feet and legs, while the soles of his sandals were of pure gold. His features were peculiarly handsome, but he was of an effeminate appearance, evidently unused to public appearance and seldom exposed to the sun.

#### AN INTERVIEW BETWEEN CORTÉZ AND MONTEZUMA.

As the Emperor drew near, Cortez dismounted from his horse, as Montezuma alighted from his palanquin, and they proceeded towards each other. Montezuma was supported by two of the highest dignitaries of his court, and other attendants spread before him rich carpets, that his sacred feet might not be profaned by contact with the ground. He showed in his face the deep anxiety and melancholy which had depressed him constantly since news of the arrival of the Spaniards had reached his capital. Cortez greeted him, and the two extended courtesies in a manner which outwardly professed high appreciation, but inwardly there was a distrustful feeling felt by each. After an interchange of civilities, Montezuma conducted



PLAN AND SURROUNDINGS OF THE CITY OF MEXICO.

Cortez to the quarters which had been prepared for his reception in the heart of the metropolis. In order to reach these it was necessary for the immense cortege to pass over the causeway again, and through streets thronged with thousands of men, women and children, who viewed with painful anxiety the visit of the strangers. The place assigned to the Spaniards was a palace of immense proportions, having a correspondingly large court. It stood in the centre of the metropolis, and had been erected by Montezuma's father, who, not always feeling secure of his person, had surrounded the palace with a strong stone wall, surmounted with towers for defence. The proportions of this building may be understood when we know that it was ample for the accommodation of seven thousand men, who found very comfortable lodgment in the chambers with which it was provided. The rooms which were assigned to Cortez were tapestried with the finest cotton cloths, elegantly embroidered, while mats were spread upon the floor, soft and downy, which might easily be removed for purposes of cleanli-



ness. Cortez immediately set about securing himself against the possibility of surprise or treachery, and besides keeping nearly the half of his army posted by night and day, he planted his artillery in such a manner that it would sweep every street leading to the palace. Nor were these precautions ill-advised, as subsequent events showed.

On the following evening after his arrival, Montezuma paid a visit to Cortez, taking with him presents of great value, which he distributed among the officers and the privates also, after which he retired to the royal audience chamber and there held a lengthy interview with Cortez, in which each professed a friendship for the other, not omitting to expatiate upon the grandeur of their respective countries. When these matters had been talked of to the satisfaction of each, Cortez conveyed to Montezuma a request, which he claimed to

have brought from his sovereign, Charles V., to adopt certain laws and customs which had obtained in Spain, and to accept the holy Catholic religion as superior to the bloody creed which the Mexicans professed. As Montezuma lent a willing ear to an explanation of the tenets of Christianity, Cortez was



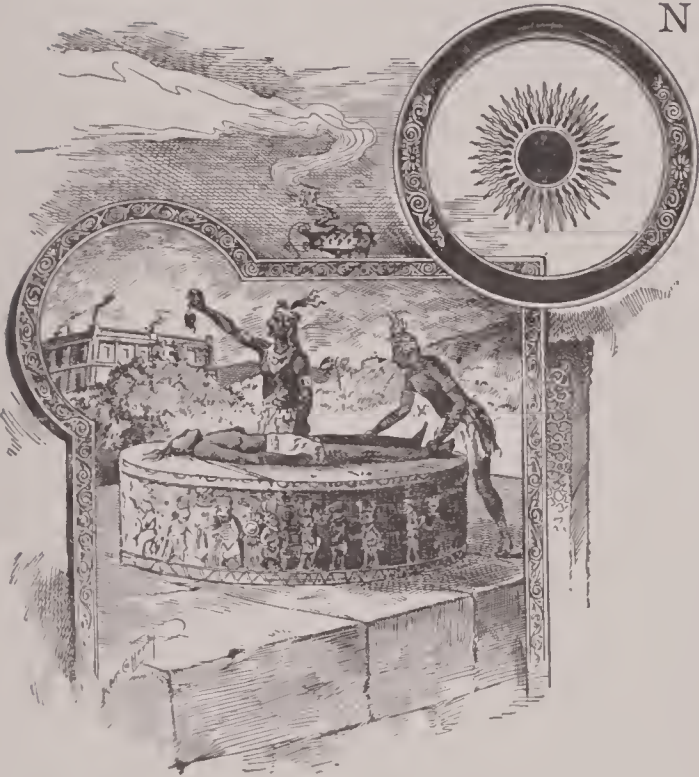
MEETING OF CORTÉZ AND MONTEZUMA.

impelled to press his request for an abolition of the rites of human sacrifice and the eating of the flesh of the victims, to which Montezuma made no other reply than a nod of the head, which might be construed either as an acknowledgment of the awfulness of these rites, or a determination to continue in their practice. After the interview had terminated, Cortez ordered all his artillery, at the moment of the setting of the sun, to be discharged simultaneously, in the belief that the noise would bring Montezuma to an understanding of the great power which he possessed. At the sound of the booming guns, and sight of the dense smoke that rolled up in stifling volume, the Mexicans fled in terrorized amazement, confirmed in the previously circulated opinion that the Spaniards were favored of the gods and fought with supernatural weapons, against which no human agency could contend.



## CHAPTER XIX.

### CORTEZ'S FEARS ARE EXCITED BY THE IMPORTUNITIES OF THE TLASCALANS.



ON the day following his spectacular entrance into the city, which ended with noisy demonstration, of roaring cannon and rattle of musketry Cortez proceeded, at the head of a retinue of horsemen, on a visit to the Emperor, who graciously met him at his palace door, and with a large body of police accompanied him on a visit to the important places of the capital. The chief object of interest which attracted the attention of the Spaniards was a gigantic pyramidal temple, which rose from the centre of an extended plain to a height of nearly 150 feet, the summit of which was gained by an ascent of 114 steps. It was upon this pyramid that bloody human sacrifices were offered up by the devout Mex-

icans of the city, and before the sacrificial stone, which occupied a corner of this altitudinous plain, was the hideous image of two idols, thickly encrusted with the dried blood of thousands of victims that had been slaughtered as a propitiation before it. On the summit was also an enormous gong, which the priests sounded at the time of the execution of their victims, the noise being made to drown their shrieks and groans, and to heighten the effects of the ceremony. After viewing this horrible spectacle, Cortez besought Montezuma to order an abandonment of the bloody rites, and expatiated upon the abominableness of their religion and the inefficacy of their gods; which, however, instead of producing a favorable impression, caused Montezuma to turn away in anger, shocked at what he regarded as the blasphemy of his visitors' declarations, and, in fear that a swift retribution would be wrought by the angered gods, he entreated Cortez to appease their wrath by an abjuration of his sacrilegious sentiments.

Unwilling as yet to proceed to violence to accomplish his designs, Cortez hoped to counteract the influence of the Mexican priests by the institution of the Christian worship, to which end he converted one of the halls of the residence that had been set apart for him into a Christian chapel, where the rites of the church were solemnly performed by Father Olmedo, and prayers were offered up for the speedy conversion of the heathens.



Several days were spent inactively, until at length the question arose what should be their next proceedings. Cortez was not unmindful of the dangers which beset him, for, in addition to being in the centre of a city whose population was not less than 500,000 souls, the adjacent district was numerously populated, and every advantage was upon the side of the Mexicans for an annihilation of the Spaniards, had they chosen to make an exhibition of their power.

The Tlascalans, to whose inveterate enmity for the Mexicans was added the fear of punishment for their rebellion against the Emperor, became importunate for some action upon the part of Cortez that would inaugurate immediate hostilities, thinking that by so doing they would be enabled to wreak a vengeance upon their enemies similar to that which they had satisfied upon the Cholulans. They accordingly sought every opportunity to impress Cortez with the peril of his situation, and daily advised him that the Mexicans were planning a strategy by which to overcome them. They called to his mind the fact that the causeways were bridged at certain intervals, which might be easily cut so as to prevent an escape from the Mexicans if hostilities were begun, and they directed his attention to many suspicious actions which seemed to confirm their worst fears.

#### MONTEZUMA SEIZED AND HELD AS A HOSTAGE.

It was not long until these persuasions induced Cortez to adopt an expedient to prevent the fate which had been predicted unless averted by prompt and heroic measures. He therefore caused Montezuma to be seized and held as a hostage for the safety and peace of his soldiers, an act which he excused by the hostile measures adopted by some of the officers of Montezuma, who had laid a tribute upon the Totonacs, several of whom had been killed for their refusal to make payment of the taxes thus levied. Montezuma at first refused to submit to such indignity to his person, but yielded at length, upon the assurance that his prerogative as emperor would be in no wise interfered with, and that in the Spanish quarters he would be permitted to execute his edicts in the same manner as before.

The holding of Montezuma as a hostage, however, proved to be only the beginning of greater indignities, which Cortez had foreseen could not be continued without involving the Spaniards and Mexicans in open hostility. His next act was the seizure of the chief who had levied tribute upon the Totonacs, and in revenge for the execution of those who had refused payments, he submitted the chief to a torture which wrung from him a confession that he had acted upon his sovereign's orders. Having obtained this admission, Cortez, not content with merely torturing the chief and his aids, caused them to be bound to stakes in the market places of the capital, where they were burned to death before the gaze of the terrified inhabitants. A raid was then made upon the magazine of the city, from which was forcibly taken all the arms, consisting of javelins, spears, arrows, and clubs, which were thrown into a pile and con-



sumed, thus greatly reducing the power of resistance to his cruel conduct. Continuing his harsh measures, Cortez pitilessly ordered his soldiers to bind the hands and feet of the Emperor in iron manacles, and set him out before his palace in the character of a common felon until sunset, when the shackles were with a show of magnanimity stricken from him. But the insult which had thus been offered, in addition to the inexcusable crimes which Cortez had perpetrated, while humbling the Emperor, aroused the indignant ire of the populace, who began to concert measures for the annihilation of the Spaniards. But their attempt at resistance, for the time being, only resulted in the levying of a tribute of gold upon the whole of the Mexican territory, by which was exacted for the benefit of the conquerors a sum equal to a million of dollars.

#### BRIGANTINES BUILT IN WHICH TO ESCAPE IN CASE OF RETREAT.

Things quieted down again for a while, but there was a constant dread in Cortez's mind that his rash acts would yet lead to disasters, and he continually conceived new means for strengthening his position. Retreat by way of the causeways, which at intervals might be easily destroyed, was so precarious that Cortez set about the building of two brigantines, in which to embark his troops in case it became necessary to suddenly abandon the city, when other avenues of escape were closed. With the aid of hundreds of natives, whose curiosity to see vessels which had never before been upon their waters prompted them to lend an industrious assistance, in a few weeks the brigantines were completed.

Being now more securely situated than heretofore, Cortez resolved upon the overthrow of the bloody religion of the Mexicans, and the institution of Catholicism in its stead. He again appealed to Montezuma to renounce his false gods, but so deeply ingrained was his faith, that the Emperor turned a deaf ear to all entreaty, which so provoked Cortez that he ordered his soldiers to march to the temples and despoil them of every vestige of Paganism. At the first hostile demonstration thus made towards the destruction of Mexican idolatry, the Aztec priests called the multitude to their assistance, who with every available weapon, hastened heroically to the defence of their religious institutions; the force thus mustered was so large that Cortez soon discovered how rash had been his undertaking, and withdrew his soldiers before any violence had been committed.

#### CORTEZ DEFEATS A FORCE SENT FROM SPAIN.

Nine months thus passed with intermittent acts of violence and condescension, without any substantial gain, or an attempt to execute any radical measures, until Cortez received information that a large fleet, and 1500 soldiers, had been sent by Velasquez to Mexico, under command of Spanish officers, with orders to seize him for his assumption of viceregal honors and for other acts of insubordination. Narvaez was General-in-Chief of this considerable army, who, beside bearing orders from Velasquez, was entrusted with a message from Charles V., directed to Montezuma, disclaiming all sympathy in the acts committed by Cortez and an appeal to assist in driving the invaders from his country. Upon receipt



of this information, which had been secretly conveyed by a friend of Cortez after the arrival of the fleet at Vera Cruz, with his characteristic sagacity Cortez immediately assembled 250 of his bravest men, leaving the remainder of his troops on guard at the Spanish capital, and by forced marches reached Vera Cruz in less than a week's journey. The troops of the fleet had been debarked with more than twenty pieces of artillery and eighty horses, and had gone into camp at the place of settlement founded by Cortez, to await the landing of their stores, which consumed considerable time. This delay enabled him to reach Vera Cruz before any intimation of his intentions could precede him, while the weather favored his designs in a surprising way. Cortez arrived in sight of Vera Cruz just as the shades of night began to envelop the landscape in darkness. An hour later a terrible storm arose, and the rain poured down in such torrents that the Spanish camp was compelled to be astir to save some of the stores that had been landed. All this favored Cortez, and as he was a man not to waste opportunities, at the moment when everything was in greatest confusion, he rushed to the attack. Taken completely by surprise, the Spaniards under Narvaez could make no resistance (for indeed they were totally unprepared) and in less than half an hour Cortez was complete master of the situation and received from Narvaez terms for the most abject submission. Instead of submitting his prisoners to any punishments, in a spirit of affected magnanimity he loaded them with favors, and by artful speech contrived to win the whole expedition over to his service; and thus augmented by a force of nearly 1500 effective men, all of whom were well armed, and with an ample supply of military stores, he started on his return journey to complete the subjugation of Mexico. On his way, he was joined by two thousand more soldiers of the Totonacs, and he felt himself now strong enough to contend with the combined armies of all Mexico.

#### A SLAUGHTER OF MEXICANS.

Scarcely had he started upon his return, when news came to Cortez by a messenger that the Mexicans had fallen upon the feeble force which he had left under his sub-officer, named Alvarado, and had massacred the entire party. With the hope that some might have escaped, and a desire to execute speedy vengeance for this act of treachery Cortez made no halts, but pushed on with incredible speed, vowing constantly to exterminate every Mexican within the capital as he had slaughtered his enemies at Cholula. But when he reached the main causeway leading to the capital, he found the bridges still intact and the city apparently peaceful, though no one came out to receive him, nor were there any demonstrations to indicate that any serious event had transpired during his absence. When he gained his quarters, his surprise was all the greater to learn that, instead of Alvarado and his command having been massacred, they themselves had been the aggressors, and that for some fancied grievance they had descended upon the Mexicans while they were in the performance of their religious rites in the court-yard of the great temple, and had cut down nearly six



hundred of the flower of Mexican nobility. The indignation of Cortez, upon receipt of this information, was almost boundless—though it is more than probable that he affected a feeling which, in reality, he did not experience. But before the people, he showered upon Alvarado all manner of vituperation, and pronounced his conduct that of a madman. The only excuse which his subordinate gave for this atrocious act was that he had suspicions that the Mexicans were preparing to cut off his retreat and massacre his soldiers, though he could give no substantial reason for this supposition.

#### A FURIOUS ATTACK UPON THE SPANIARDS.

This act of incredible cruelty was followed almost immediately by a desperate resolve upon the part of the Mexicans, who had already suffered the limit of indignity and cruelty. So, on every side arose the sound of drums, and there was a hurrying to and fro of the natives upon a mission which it did not take Cortez long to interpret. His force now consisted of 1200 Spaniards and 8000 native allies, who were well protected by an encampment encircled by stone buildings; but provisions were scarce, and the Mexicans had refused to continue their contributions. The dangers of starvation now became greater than the power of the Mexicans, and immediate action was necessary to avert a calamity which threatened the entire force with destruction. Cortez accordingly sent 400 of his men into the streets to reconnoitre, but scarcely had they made their appearance before the fortress when they were assailed by a large party of Mexicans, who, with cries for vengeance, opened fire with arrows and javelins with such effect as to throw the Spaniards into a wild disorder. It was with the greatest difficulty that they were able to fight their way back to the fortified quarters, having lost in the onset twenty-three killed and twice as many wounded. The success of this attack inspired the Mexicans with a new resolution. They found that their enemies were not invulnerable, and cutting off the heads of the slain, they carried them about the city to show how easily the invaders might be destroyed, if the Mexicans would but act boldly and in concert. The fortress was now besieged by a body of probably 50,000 Mexicans, while their forces were continually augmented by volunteers who poured in from every part of the surrounding district. The artillery, which now comprised twenty-five pieces, was opened up and tore great gaps through the assaulting force, but did not succeed in putting them to rout as it had done heretofore. Fighting for their altars and their gods, the Mexicans were inspired to the most extraordinary acts of valor, and twice they were upon the point of scaling the walls and gaining the Spanish quarters, and were only prevented by desperate hand-to-hand conflicts, in which swords, cannons and muskets of the Spaniards wrought dreadful havoc among the unprotected bodies of the besiegers. All day long this frightful conflict continued, until in the evening the ground was covered with the slain, and darkness put a stop to the horrible carnage.

Resolved to adopt a desperate expedient and release himself from an appalling situation, before dawn on the following morning Cortez placed himself at



the head of is cavalry, now numbering 100, and made a rush upon the enemy that were sullenly awaiting the light of day to renew the attack. Another desperate fight now took place, in which the Spaniards were repulsed, though not before they had slaughtered more than a 1000 of the Mexicans, but whose numbers had so increased during the night that Cortez estimates their force at above 200,000. Nor had they been inactive, for under cover of the darkness they had destroyed the bridges which connected portions of the causeway, thus cutting off retreat, while great quantities of stone had been carried to the housetops, which they poured down with great destruction upon the Spanish cavalry, that wounded where their other weapons would have been ineffective. Besides the desperate fighting which characterized the day, they set fire to a large number of houses, the conflagration of which added immensely to the other excitements.

But towards evening there was a cessation of hostilities both parties for a while resting upon their arms, neither being willing to assume the aggressive. During this interval however the Mexicans continued to increase, as they had the day before, and Cortez, who had been severely wounded in the hand by a stone, began now to appreciate the fact that he could only save himself through the intercession of Montezuma himself. In this dire extremity, he had the audacity to transmit a message to the Emperor, couched in the most beseeching language, deploring the awful carnage that had drenched the streets of his fair capital with blood, and begging that he would interpose his royal influence to put a stop to a slaughter, which, if continued, must end in the entire destruction of the city and a greater number of its people.

#### WOUNDING OF MONTEZUMA UPON THE WALLS.

Montezuma, who had watched with bitterest anguish the progress of the battle, and had seen so many thousands of his people slain while heroically battling for their homes, was moved by compassion not only to hesitate, but to actually issue an order for the cessation of hostilities. But the populace was now so insanely excited that the order was not credited, and on the following morning the battle was renewed and continued through the better part of the day, until there lay in ghastly piles, on every avenue and housetop of the city more than 50,000 dead bodies of the Mexicans. Suddenly, as if heaven itself had declared a truce, the tumult of battle ceased; the Mexicans laid down their arms, and stood in an attitude of the most devout veneration. This instant cessation was caused by the appearance of the Emperor, who, dressed in his imperial robes, walked out upon the walls in front of his palace and waved his imperial hand to command the attention of his loyal subjects. In this moment of silence he earnestly besought them to cease the fierce conflict which was resulting in the destruction of so many thousands of his loyal people, giving them his assurance that the Spaniards would retire from the city if his subjects would lay down their arms and cease the bloody strife. During



the delivery of this peaceful declaration, Cortez had sent a body-guard to stand by Montezuma and protect him upon the wall; but, misconstruing this act, the Mexicans conceived the idea that their Emperor was but voicing the dictation of the Spaniards, and that he was, indeed, a prisoner in their hands. Their indignation and desire for vengeance was such that there arose a loud cry from the enraged Mexicans, which was instantly followed by a shower of arrows, two of which pierced the body of the unfortunate Emperor, and he fell back badly wounded into the arms of some of the body-guard that had attended him. He was tenderly carried to the apartments of his capital, but so thoroughly crushed in spirit that he resolved no longer to live to be the subject of Spanish tyranny and insult: so, after his wounds had been carefully tended, and he had patiently



THE FALL OF MONTEZUMA.

submitted himself to the care of the surgeon, in a moment when the attention of his attendants was directed elsewhere, he tore the bandages from his wounds and declared his resolution to die. This he carried so far that he refused all nourishment, and at every favorable opportunity he aggravated his wounds, and thus lingering between suffering of both mind and body, in three days after the receipt of his injuries he was released by death from all the contentions of this life.

#### THE HAND-TO-HAND FIGHT ON THE TOWER.

The assault which wounded the Emperor was the signal for a fresh renewal of the battle, which continued now to rage with intense fury, nor did it abate at any time during the whole of the day. The Mexicans contrived to gain possession of a high tower which overlooked the Spanish quarters, from which lofty vantage they hurled down stones upon the Spaniards, and thus succeeded in killing several who were otherwise inaccessible to the weapons of the besiegers. So commanding was this situation that Cortez saw the necessity of dislodging the enemy, and to this hazardous enterprise he resolved to lend his own aid. His left hand had been dreadfully crushed in an attack on the preceding day, but he ordered his shield to be bound to his arm and placed himself



at the head of a select party who had been chosen to attempt the dislodgment. In spite of a shower of stones and arrows, this heroic body bravely ascended until they reached a spacious platform, where a dreadful hand-to-hand battle now took place. Two Mexicans, who were members of the nobility, anxious to destroy Cortez, even at the sacrifice of their own lives, seized him by the body and made a desperate effort to drag him to the edge of the battlements, where they had hoped to hurl him and themselves to destruction below. But by his wonderful agility and extraordinary strength, Cortez contrived to break from their desperate grasp and slay them both, after which the other Mexicans were put to rout, and the tower was set on fire.

The battle thus went on, nor did it halt when night's shades fell; for everywhere the lurid flames of consuming buildings lighted up the scene, and enabled the combatants to continue the dreadful slaughter. Thousands had been slain, but thousands yet were to pay the penalty of heroism, and so the fires, and shrieks, and groans of bloody tumult continued until towards morning Cortez summoned the Mexican chiefs to a parley. His beautiful wife, Marina, acted as his interpreter and through her he admonished the Mexicans to immediately submit or else suffer the entire destruction of their city and the slaughter of every man, woman, and child who composed its population. But the answer was a defiant one. The Mexicans had correctly measured the strength of the Spaniards. But, against their superior weapons, they were ready to measure their own superior numbers.

#### RETREATING THROUGH HAIL STORMS OF WEAPONS.

Failing in his efforts to compromise, or to secure the peaceful withdrawal of his troops, while his position was every moment becoming more perilous, Cortez resolved to retreat at any hazard, since the dangers which lay ahead could not exceed those which encompassed him. To this end he set about the construction of movable towers, which, after a week, were so far completed that he attempted at midnight to withdraw under their protection. A platform was constructed on the top of each tower from which his soldiers might fight, an elevation which placed them upon a level with the tops of the Mexican houses, while inside were placed the sharpshooters and the artillery, so disposed as to sweep the streets. The army thus singularly protected was separated into three divisions, led respectively by Sandoval at the head, Alvarado commanding the rear, while Cortez had charge of the central division, in which were placed the distinguished prisoners that he had made, among whom were a son and daughter of Montezuma, besides many noblemen. He had also provided a portable bridge, which he hoped to be of service in throwing across the breaches that had been broken in the causeways. Scarcely had this strange march of moving towers begun when out of the darkness poured a volley of stones and javelins that broke like hail-stones upon the sides of the towers, and harmlessly fell upon the ground. Progress was slow, but the Spaniards had provided an effectual



protection, while giving such free play for their cannons and muskets, that they swept down opposing obstacles and piled up the streets afresh with bleeding victims. Thus the Spaniards moved cautiously and slowly until they at length reached one of the broken causeways, when the portable bridge was let down in the hope of providing a passage. The head of the Spanish column succeeded in crossing, but when the weight of the tower with its heavy contents was drawn upon the superstructure, with one great crash it fell into the chasm, and left hundreds of Spaniards struggling in the water and with their foes. A greater part, however, by some extraordinary fortune, succeeded in escaping, and now, abandoning the towers, rushed towards another breach, planting their cannon in such a manner as to partially keep the pursuing Mexicans at bay. In the mean time, stones and timbers of every kind torn from demolished buildings were thrown into the breach to make a passage; but it was slow work, and for two days the battle continued as before, the Spaniards being unable to make their escape.

The story of this remarkable battle, which continued for nearly a week, is more tragic than that of Waterloo, or of Gettysburg, or of the Wilderness. It is so gory that pen runs red while writing it. It is so horrible that heart turns sick in its contemplation.



THE FIGHT AT THE BREACH.

Though the Spaniards numbered less than 1,500, and their loss did not exceed 500, owing to the protection which their armor afforded, their enemies, whose heroism has perhaps never been equalled in all history, were slaughtered in numbers that are positively astounding, and equalled only by that of Megiddo's bloody field.

#### A NIGHT OF TERRIFIC AGONY.

On the last day, the wail of anguish, the groan of dying, the crackling of burning houses, the roar of cannon and musketry, the pandemonium of noise, were increased by the shriek of the storm that broke in wind and rain, as if in sympathy with the woes of the contestants. Under the cover of this storm, the Spaniards, having abandoned their towers, sought retreat through the two miles of causeway, and were proceeding, apparently without pursuit, when of a sudden their progress was stopped by an assault of natives, who



poured up from out a thousand boats, where they had been lurking in anticipation of the approach of the Spaniards. Their attack was one of incredible fury, and the defence which the Spaniards made was no less terrible. Under the blanket of darkness, it was impossible to distinguish friend from foe, and the fight went on without abatement through all the dreary hours of that dismal night, until Cortez, left with scarcely a hundred men, and using the bodies of those whom he had slaughtered to bridge the breaches which he had yet to cross in order to reach the mainland, pushed on despite the missiles of his foes. They at length succeeded by herculean and heroic effort in reaching the shores, where the possibility of their escape was increased. But behind him he left scores of his faithful soldiers, more than forty of whom, though all wounded, were taken alive and reserved for a fate as horrible as he had visited upon many of the unoffending Mexicans. Others of his men contrived to escape, and he now rallied a feeble force and awaited approaching dawn.

#### A GHASTLY SIGHT.

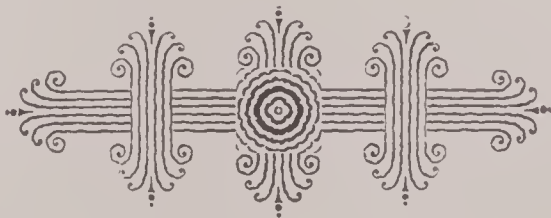
When the sun uprose, it shone down upon a spectacle that wounds the eye of remembrance. Along the two miles' length of that causeway lay piled in confusion and deadly embrace friend and foe, and in the breaches were not only thousands of dead and distorted bodies, but baggage of every description, cannons, and plundered treasure, while about upon the lake were seen floating fragments of every character, including broken canoes and bloated bodies. Four thousand of the Spanish allies had given up their lives in this slaughter, while 870 of the Spaniards, despite the armor which they wore, had surrendered their lives in this horrible and long-continued battle. Cortez himself, though inflexible in defeat, and whose heart seemed prompted by the most cruel passions, was unable to look upon such a scene without being moved by the mute appeals of humanity, and bowing his head, for the first time in his life he wept bitter tears of sorrow and disappointment. The Mexicans had suffered so seriously in the fight, however, that there was no longer disposition to pursue him. They were content to wreak their vengeance upon the captives that had been left in their hands, and to permit a retreat of the remnant which they knew had received already a punishment which only the hardiest spirits could possibly survive. Cortez accordingly retreated to a large stone temple some distance from the lake, where he fortunately found both protection and a supply of provisions. Here he reorganized as best he could the little force that was left him, and after a short rest proceeded upon the long journey back to Tlascala, a distance of sixty-four miles, where he reasonably expected provisions and relief which he still stood so sorely in need of. But on the way they were not to escape further tribulations. The tributary tribes of the Mexicans were now set upon their heels and harassed them at every step, and so effectually prevented them from securing food on the way that, in their extremity, they were at times forced to kill some of the few horses which had survived the fight to save themselves from starvation.



**A DESPERATE FIGHT IN THE MOUNTAIN PASSES.**

While pursuing this dreary and terrible march, in passing through a defile of the mountains, the Spanish were suddenly brought in sight of an enormous army of the enemy assembled upon a plain, awaiting to descend upon them. Even the stout heart of Cortez sank with despair before such a spectacle of vengeance. But rallying his nearly exhausted band around him, he animated them as best he could by a speech appealing to their vanity and to their faith in God. At the word of command they dashed into the great masses of serried ranks of the enemy. The onset of the Spaniards was so fierce that the natives recoiled before it, and knowing the superstitious veneration which the Mexicans entertained for their imperial banner, at the head of his force, Cortez drove directly towards it, and by unexampled valor he cut a pathway through the enemy, and at last, seizing the sacred banner from the hands of the bearer whom he had stricken down with his broad-sword, he waved it aloft and shouted praises to God for the favors He had bestowed. With cries of grief and rage the Mexicans immediately broke in wild tumult, and fled away to the mountains, in the belief that their gods had abandoned them, leaving twenty thousand of their dead upon the field.

Without meeting any further obstacles, the Spaniards reached the territory of the Tlascalans, where they were hospitably received and generously entertained until the sick and the wounded were fully recovered. It was here that Cortez for the first time gave any attention to his own wounds, which had now become so severe that he had to submit to an amputation of two of his injured fingers, and the trepanning of his skull, that had been fractured by a club in the hands of one of the natives, and from which injury he was threatened with concussion of the brain. But he recovered despite the dangerous character of his hurts, seemingly destined by fate to continue his career of unexampled spoliation, cruelty, and insatiable ambition.





## CHAPTER XX.

### CORTEZ PLUCKS THE FLOWER OF GLORY OUT OF THE BED OF DEFEAT.



DEFEAT, misfortune, suffering, tribulation of any kind could not repress the indomitable spirit of this extraordinary man, and despite the calamities through which he had passed, Cortez in his sorest hour resolved to seek a means to continue the enterprise which had apparently ended so disastrously. When able to rise from a bed of suffering, he began recruiting his force from among the Tlascalans until he had secured the co-operation of several thousand, after which he returned again to Vera Cruz, where he enlisted as many more of the Totonacs. He sent a dispatch also to the sovereign of Spain, giving specious reports of his acts while in Mexico, and assigning as a

reason for an invasion of the territory his desire to win souls to God and to magnify the splendor of his sovereign. At the same time, or directly after his return to Vera Cruz, two ships were seen approaching the harbor, that had been dispatched by the Governor of Cuba with supplies for Narvaez, report of whose conflict with Cortez had not yet been received. No sooner had these vessels dropped their anchors than they were visited by Cortez, whose influence seems to have been irresistible, and by his flattering promises he induced the crews to enter his service and surrender to him all the stores that had been brought over. Three vessels, which had also been dispatched by the Governor of Jamaica to conduct an independent expedition of discovery and contest, also cast anchor at Vera Cruz about this time, and these likewise fell into the hands of Cortez, and the men composing the expedition enlisted under his banner. Another ship, that had been fitted out by some merchant, arrived from Spain with military stores, the cargo of which Cortez purchased, and then persuaded the crew to join his army. He had also sent agents to Hispaniola and Jamaica, whose commissions were so successful that in a short while they returned with 200 soldiers, 80 horses, two cannons, and a large supply of ammunition and muskets. In this manner he succeeded in raising his force to 818 foot soldiers, 86 cavalymen, three heavy guns, and 15 field pieces. Besides these recruits, he enlisted the services of 8000 men of burden, chiefly from among the Tlascalans and Totonacs, and provided material for the construction of a fleet



of thirteen brigantines, which were to be carried a distance of sixty miles over rough roads on the shoulders of men, for use upon the lake about the city of Mexico. Thus provided for renewal of the siege of Mexico, and with a determination to accomplish the subjugation of the territory, he returned to the outskirts of the city and began his preparations to carry it by assault.

#### A PLAGUE OF SMALL-POX.

At the death of Montezuma, his brother, Cuitlahua, succeeded to the emperorship, and being more warlike than Montezuma in disposition, it was under his energies that the Spaniards had been driven from the metropolis. Directly after the retreat of the invaders, he set about fortifying his capital and recruiting and drilling his army that had now become familiar with European weapons. He also sent an embassy to the Tlascalans, urging them to remit their former enmity and unite with him against the common foe, who, without their assistance, would be helpless. But his overtures to his old enemies were without effect, and in addition to the other woes from which he suffered, that had been introduced by the Spaniards, small-pox made its appearance in his territory, which, breaking out suddenly, swept like a besom of destruction throughout the land, until it became a pestilence so fearful that it threatened the depopulation of the entire country. Within a few weeks' time several cities were plague-stricken, and the living were insufficient to bury the dead, so rapid was its ravages. It was not long until the disease invaded the Mexican capital, and one of its first victims was the Emperor, Cuitlahua. His death intensified the panic, and but for the fact that several Spaniards also succumbed to the epidemic, the Mexicans would have no doubt abandoned their city in the belief, which for a while obtained, that this disease, of which they had never before heard, was another supernatural aid employed by the Spaniards for their destruction.

Cuitlahua was succeeded by Guatemozin, a son-in-law of the late Montezuma, who, though only twenty-four years of age, quickly proved himself more heroic, resourceful, and indomitable than his predecessors. With an admirable conception of the exigencies which threatened his crown, Guatemozin set resolutely about repairing the damage wrought by Cortez, and putting his capital in a more perfect state of defence. Outwardly manifesting a friendly spirit for the Spaniards left in the country, he craftily hid his designs, or kept them from reaching Cortez. His army, which was recruited to a force exceeding 200,000, was carefully drilled, stores of provisions laid in, barricades erected on the several causeways, and a large fleet of canoes built to co-operate with the land forces, their use having been proved in the battle of the dismal night.

#### A BATTLE UPON THE LAKE.

Cortez having completed his preparations for another siege of the capital, by having provided himself with an immense supply of military stores and a largely increased force, started on his return for Mexico, presenting a pageantry



that attracted to his banner 200,000 Tlascalans and Totonacs, with which army he felt himself equal to any undertaking. He proceeded directly to Tepeaca, a considerable town on the northern shore of the lake, where he put together the timbers of his fleet of thirteen brigantines, each of which he manned with twenty-five Spaniards, and set on the prows a cannon, so as to command a sweep of the lake.

A few feeble efforts were made to harass the Spaniards while they were at Tepeaca, but it was not until the squadron was ready and the sails were spread for crossing the lake to enter upon a siege of the capital, that an attack of any pretension was made. Guatemozin, perceiving how these vessels might be employed to his great disadvantage, sent against them a flotilla of more than three hundred canoes, each manned by twelve natives armed with bows and arrows, thinking to overpower the Spaniards and destroy the ships by sheer force of numbers. But to his horror he saw his armada run down by the large and fleetier vessels, while a hail of grape-shot and showers of arrows from the Spanish cross-bowmen literally annihilated the fleet of canoemen, leaving the waters red with their blood and choked with their mutilated bodies. A wail of anguish went up from the Mexicans at this destruction of their hopes, but they were not long permitted to peaceably indulge their lamentations, or to make their sacrifices unmolested to their gods, for, having destroyed their fleet, Cortez now began the siege in earnest. He divided his army into three divisions, under command respectively of Sandoval, Alvarado, and Olid, who were to begin the attack upon three separate causeways, while Cortez himself assumed command of the brigantines, and co-operated with the land forces by attacking from the sides. The bridges over the causeways were obstructed, as before described, by formidable barriers, behind which the Mexicans were stationed in immense force. But by concentrating a heavy artillery fire upon them, these were gradually battered down, and every foot of the way was then hotly contested by hand-to-hand conflicts. At the moment of beginning the assault, the fleet opened fire from the side and slaughtered thousands, whose bodies interposed additional obstacles, which could only be surmounted by throwing them over again into the water.

#### THE SPANIARDS FALL INTO A TRAP AND MEET WITH AWFUL DISASTER.

The obstinacy of the Mexicans, despite the frightful slaughter to which they were subjected, was so astonishing to Cortez that he feared disaster even at the time of his most effective assault, and to provide means for a retreat, in case of necessity, he carefully bridged all the breaches, and threw out a force to protect his rear. But at length the Mexicans relaxed the vigor of their defence, and by inaction lured the Spaniards into the belief that their victory was already secure, which so excited their hopes that, unmindful of possible treachery, they rushed across the remaining portions of the causeway and directly into the city. The strategy which Guatemozin had thus employed, directly became apparent, for suddenly the alarm drum sounded from the summit of the great temple, which was



the signal for the collection of the full fighting force of the capital, who now, in concert, threw themselves in a fierce charge upon the surprised Spaniards. So sudden and irresistible was the onslaught that both the Spanish foot and horsemen were alike thrown into the utmost confusion and driven in great numbers back into the last chasm which they had neglected to bridge. For the moment defenceless, the Spaniards fell in great numbers, victims to the showers of arrows and javelins of their encouraged enemies. More than a score were killed outright, while twice as many more were wounded and fell into the hands of the Mexicans, besides the loss of a thousand of their allies. This awful and unexpected reverse became presently still more dreadful, when the Spaniards viewed the frightful fate that was about to overtake their captured comrades.

#### **A HORRIFYING SACRIFICE OF SPANISH PRISONERS.**

The darkness of night had now settled down, but towards the middle watches a great light suddenly appeared upon the summit of the temple, and a spectacle speedily followed which fairly froze the blood of the Spaniards, as they plainly saw the awful rites that were now being performed. Amid a great gathering of priests and waving plumes of soldiery that had assembled in great number upon the lofty plain of the pyramid, were to be seen, by the aid of the torches, the white bodies of the Spanish victims, as they were stripped by their captors and prepared for the sacrifices which were now to be offered up.

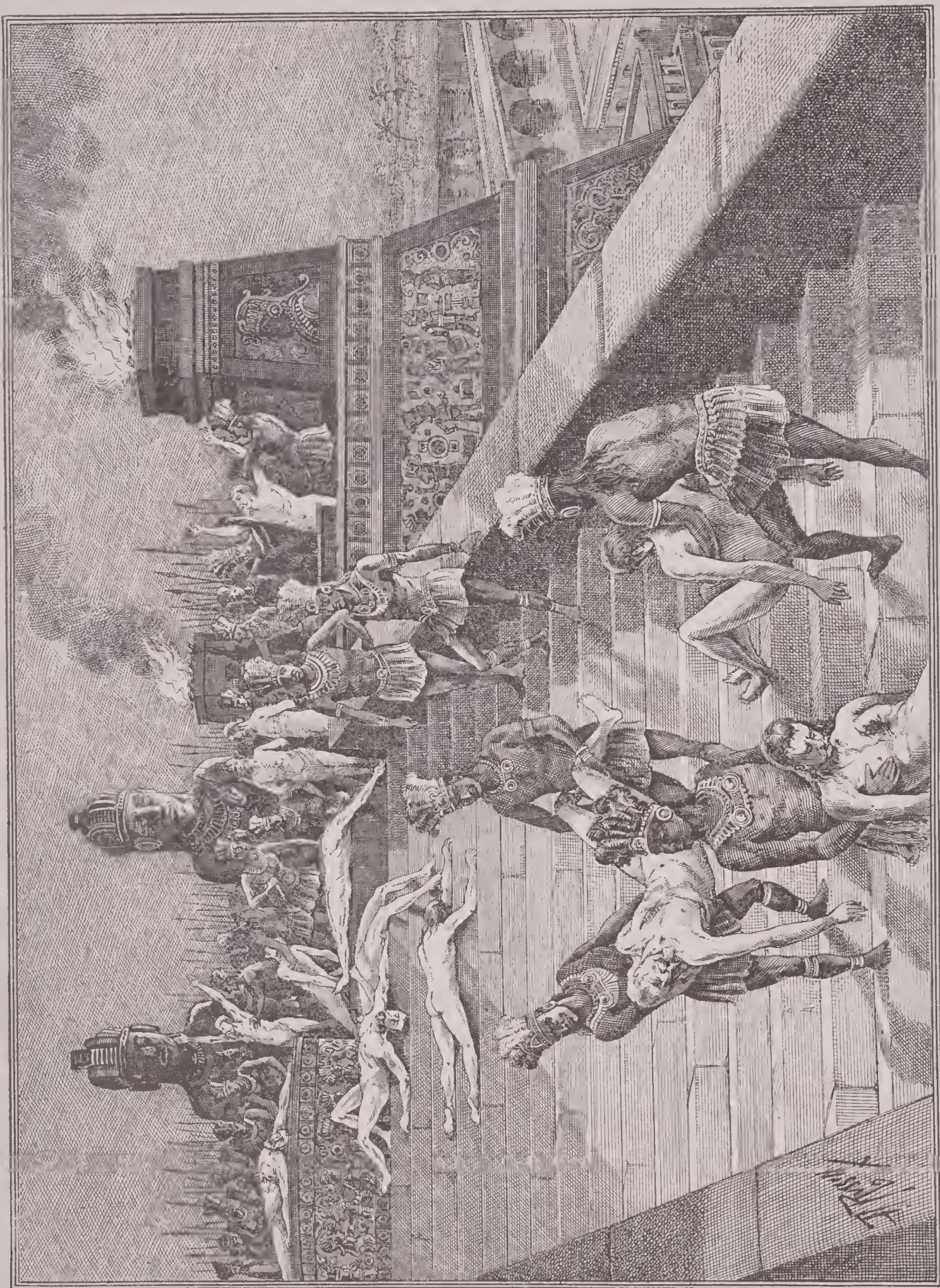
The horrified Spaniards watched their wretched comrades and saw each prisoner stretched upon the sacrificial stone, and heard the despairing shrieks that went up as the bodies were gashed with the obsidian knife of the priest, and the quivering hearts torn out and held aloft as offerings to their gods. Diaz, the historian of the expedition, and who was an eye-witness of this frightful scene, gives us the following soul-sickening description :

“On a sudden our ears were struck by the horrific sound of the great drum, the timbrels, horns, and trumpets of the temple. We all directed our eyes thither, and, shocking to relate, saw our unfortunate countrymen driven by blows to the place where they were to be sacrificed, which bloody ceremony was accompanied by the dismal sound of all the instruments of the temple. We perceived that when they had brought the wretched victims to the flat summit of the body of the temple, they put plumes upon their heads and made them dance before their accursed idols. When they had done this, they laid them upon their backs on the stone used for the purpose, when they cut out their hearts alive, and having presented them yet palpitating to their gods, they drew the bodies down the steps by the feet, where they were taken by others of their priests.”

#### **STARVATION COMPELS A RESORT TO CANNIBALISM.**

The elation of the Mexicans at the success of their onslaught was further manifested by cutting off the heads of the prisoners whom they had thus sacrificed, which they sent to neighboring provinces as a proof that their gods, now appeased by the offering of blood, had abandoned the Spaniards and concerted





MEXICANS SACRIFICING SPANISH PRISONERS TO THEIR GODS.



their destruction. The Pagan priests also predicted that in eight days the enemy would be entirely destroyed, and that Mexico would rise from her tribulations to greater glory than had ever before dawned upon the people. So great was the general confidence placed in this prophecy, that the native allies of Cortez began to waver in their allegiance, and to prevent their desertion in a body he was compelled to remain inactive until the period set for the calamity should have passed. When the eight days were ended, and the gods had not fulfilled the prediction which the priests boastfully declared would terminate the conflict, Cortez seized the occasion to taunt the Mexicans with their ignorant credulity and false reliance, and to claim the favor of Almighty God, who extended His protection and conferred power upon the Spaniards. So immediate was the effect of this declaration, which seemed to be proved by the circumstances, that the Tlascalans not only renewed their adherence, but other natives of the adjacent country came flocking to his standard, and thus increased his force by the addition of nearly 50,000 more active warriors.

So great now was his army while so obstinate continued to be the resistance of the Mexicans, who, for a while, effectually prevented his progress towards the citadel, that a famine broke out among the besiegers, as well as among the besieged, and, to the horrors which had been perpetrated by shot, and arrow, and lance, and javelin, were now added terrible feasts of cannibalism, a practice easily instituted by reason of the custom which had long prevailed among the natives of devouring the bodies of their victims at the sacrificial feasts.

But gradually, almost inch by inch, the Spaniards pushed forward, breaking down, but only after the most heroic measures, such barricades as were erected in their paths, until after the expiration of nearly two months' time the broad avenues of the city were gained. But here every house was a fortress, from the top of which stones were thrown down, while windows were used by the Mexicans from which to pour their hail of arrows upon the invaders. The firebrand was therefore again applied, being the only means of dislodging the enemy, until half the town was in flames. At the same time, the brigantines kept a careful patrol of the lake, to prevent the escape by canoes of any of the inhabitants, and continued a desultory fire from the cannons upon buildings where bodies of the Mexicans had taken refuge.

#### CAPTURE OF THE EMPEROR.

Though Cortez was gradually and surely reaching the heart of the Mexican capital, he was touched with the frightful misery being inflicted alike upon his own army and the Mexicans, and time and again sent messages to Guatemozin, demanding in the name of humanity the capitulation of the city. But to each an indignant and defiant reply was returned, and the unequal fight went on. The three divisions had accomplished a passage of the causeways, and had concentrated in the great square of the city, from which avenues radiated in all directions. Here cannons were planted, and the streets were kept clear of mov-



ing bodies, since to appear in such exposed places meant certain death. In this desperate situation, the Mexicans at length adopted an expedient for securing the safety of their beloved monarch. Soliciting a truce, upon the ground that it was necessary to remove the great piles of corpses that were polluting the streets, they utilized the time which was thus granted in preparing for a secret removal of their Emperor to the main shores. Accordingly, he embarked in a beautiful canoe, with several of the nobles of the capital, and was rowed swiftly across the lake. But anticipating a ruse of this character, Cortez sent one of his brigantines in pursuit, which intercepted the canoe before it had gone a mile upon its way. Cross-bowmen crowded the prow of the vessel ready to discharge a volley of arrows at the occupants of the canoe, when, seeing the peril in which their Emperor was now placed, the nobles arose and anxiously besought them not to fire, confessing that the Emperor was in the boat with them who desired to sur-



CAPTURE OF GUATEMZOIN.

render. The canoe was brought alongside, and Guatemozin, at the command of Cortez, was taken on board the brigantine and conveyed to the shore, with the hope that in an interview he might be persuaded to surrender the city and prevent further carnage. Imagine the surprise of the Spanish commander when the Emperor, instead of

humbling himself, as he might have been supposed to do, wore a proud and imperious air, and grasping the dagger which Cortez wore by his side, in the most tragic manner presented it again, and besought him to plunge it into his bosom and thus end a miserable life. Cortez endeavored to console him by assurances that he should not be treated as a captive, but rather as a dependent upon the clemency of the greatest monarch of Europe, who would soon restore him not only to liberty but place him again upon the throne which he had so valiantly defended. But the Mexicans had been too often deceived by the specious words of the Spaniards to place any confidence in present assurances, and understanding the perfidy and treachery which had marked every act thus far of the invaders, Guatemozin asked no clemency for himself, but begged that Cortez would be merciful to his suffering people and treat with proper respect the noble ladies who were with him.



**HORRORS WHICH FOLLOWED THE SIEGE.**

The capture of the Emperor and the deplorable straits to which the Mexicans were now subjected so completely discouraged them, that they abandoned all further defence and permitted the victorious Spaniards to have full and complete possession of the destroyed city.

A period of seventy-five days had been spent in almost incessant conflict, during which time scarcely an hour passed that had not been characterized by some furious battle. During this unexampled siege, it is estimated that not less than 140,000 Mexicans perished, while nearly 400 Spaniards and not less than 25,000 of their allies met a like fate. The streets were so choked with the dead and dying that, to the miseries of famine, a plague of disease quickly followed. Singular to relate, the epidemic of small-pox seems to have suddenly abated, but greater horrors took its place, and but for prompt measures in disposing of the dead, it is probable that scarcely a Spaniard would have been left to tell the story of this unexampled siege. For three whole days, all the surviving Mexicans and the allies of Cortez were engaged conveying the dead to the hills for interment, and this gruesome employment did not stop either night or day until it was completed. The streets were then purified by the building of large bonfires and the consumption of such debris as lay scattered about, after which Cortez began a search for the large treasures which he had confidently expected to secure.

It was on the 13th of August, 1521, that the city was surrendered into his hands, on which date it may be said that the great empire of Mexico perished, and became thereafter a colony of Spain.

**THE TORTURE OF GUATEMOZIN.**

For a week, his search through buildings, and cellars, and channels of every description continued, but Cortez was only able to collect of all kinds of treasure a sum not exceeding in value \$100,000. This small amount of spoils was such a disappointment to the Spaniards that they became clamorous for the adoption of means that would compel Guatemozin to disclose where his riches were secreted. To their enquiries, he responded that nearly the whole had been conveyed to the centre of the lake in boats, and there sunk to such depths that recovery was impossible. But, not satisfied with this answer, and believing that torture might wring from him a confession that much of the treasure was yet recoverable from some readily accessible place of the city, the more turbulent of the Spaniards became importunate in their demands that such disclosure be forced from him. To this proposition Cortez at first opposed a vigorous refusal, but as the disaffection of his troops and their clamor became greater, he was at length reluctantly compelled to accede to their horrible demands. Accordingly, the unhappy monarch, and the cacique of Tacuba, who was the highest officer of the Emperor, were brought to the market place, and their feet being first drenched with oil, were exposed to the burning coals of a hot fire until the soles were entirely roasted. The Emperor bore his sufferings with such fortitude as to add lustre to a name which had already been ennobled



by his heroism in conducting the defence of his capital. Not once did he give voice to the excruciating agony which he must have suffered, which conduct so affected Cortez that with his own hands he rescued the imperial sufferer, and declared that, whatever might be the sacrifice to himself, the horror should not be continued in his presence.

**THE MEXICANS ARE REDUCED TO SLAVERY.**

Cortez now set about restoring the capital, and in making some amends for the inexcusable ruin that he had wrought. Though beset by perplexities,



TORTURE OF GUATEMOZIN AND THE CHIEF OF TACUBA.

through information and threatenings which had reached him that Velasquez was concerting measures to bring him to punishment for the power which he had without

authority assumed, he nevertheless set his men to work, with the aid of their allies, to rebuild the fallen capital. The labor went on without interruption, and so speedily that in a few months there arose out of the ashes of Mexico new buildings, in many points equalling in grandeur those which they replaced; at the same time Cortez constructed for himself a palace which has rarely been exceeded for splendor. But while engaging in this restoration



of the capital, he reduced the natives to a condition of servitude which presently developed into the most abject slavery, from which the Tlascalans and Totonacs alone escaped. The poor natives were compelled to do their work under the lash, to labor in the mines, to till the fields, and to engage in all the arts under the hand of the most cruel and exacting taskmasters. For this audacious and cruel abuse of a sudden power Cortez has never been excused, and in the eyes of civilization never can be excused, and it will remain, along with the other dark blots upon his character, the one supreme blemish which beclouds all the glory which might otherwise brighten his name.

Occasionally, the natives in remote districts rebelled under the harsh treatment to which they were subjected, and in one instance, in the province of Paluco, the number of rebellious subjects exceeded 70,000 warriors, who arose with the intention of massacring their masters, and who had ambitious hopes even of uniting the natives of the entire territory for an expulsion of the Spaniards. So formidable did the insurrection become, that Cortez placed himself at the head of an army of 130 horsemen, 250 infantry, and 10,000 Mexicans, with which he made a forced march, and engaged the rebellious subjects in such a hot contest that the greater part of them were slaughtered, and such a signal victory secured that no subsequent efforts of any considerable character were made by the Mexicans to regain their freedom.

For more than four years Cortez devoted all his energies to a rebuilding of the Mexican capital, and to a zealous effort for the conversion of the natives to Catholicism, and so successful was this attempt that Mexico became, under his rule, more magnificent than ever before; and the natives gradually abandoned the bloody rites of their ancient worship, and under the influence of the Spanish priests became amenable to the church. Numbers of priests were brought over from Spain, and twenty-five churches erected within the city, while others were instituted in the surrounding country. These had such influence that the natives ultimately adopted Catholicism as their religion, to which they have continued to adhere to the present time.

#### SUSPICIOUS DEATH OF CORTEZ'S WIFE.

During the quiet life which Cortez lived during these years in Mexico, his amiable native wife, Marina, had borne him a son, whose instruction had been his constant care, in the hope that his mantle might in time descend upon him. In the midst of these pleasant anticipations, he was surprised by the sudden appearance of Donna Catalina, the Spanish lady whom he had married in Cuba, who had come over, accompanied by her brother, seeking her recreant and long-absent husband. Cortez, affecting a pious regard for the tenets of the religion which he professed, could not discard his lawful wife, and made pretensions of great joy at having been thus reunited to her. But at the expiration of three months she died suddenly, some say from a natural cause, but more suspicious minds entertain the belief that her life was cut short by the agency of poison.



Peace had spread her white wings over the fair territory of Mexico, and Cortez was permitted for a while to enjoy her benefactions. But to one of his restless spirit, designs and ambitions would not allow a long continuance of this peaceful and happy state. Charges he knew had been prepared against him by Velasquez, and industrious enemies were at work at the Spanish court to divest him of the glory and honors which he had acquired. To secure the favor of the Spanish sovereign, he therefore not only sent emissaries to the court at Madrid, but prepared elaborate reports of all the adventures, discoveries, and events that had befallen him from the time of his departure from Cuba until his subjugation of the Mexican Empire, in which he did not omit to show the great advantages which had accrued to Spain through his efforts, and the inestimable riches which he had obtained in his conquests, and which, under proper convoy, he promised would be sent as an offering to his sovereign.

#### THE FATAL REBELLION OF OLID.

These reports placated whatever hostile feeling might have been directed towards Cortez at the Spanish Court, and reposing again in the confidence which he had inspired on every side, but still ambitious to acquire greater honors, he projected an expedition against Honduras by which he hoped to add new lands to the Spanish Crown. He accordingly sent Christoval de Olid to found a colony in that country. But this man, while he had been an effective commander in the siege of Mexico, was little qualified to undertake such an enterprise; for, flattered by the little power which had thus been placed in his hands, no sooner had he formed the nucleus of a colony than he threw off his dependence upon Cortez, as the latter had upon Velasquez, and asserted his independence of all authority save that of the Spanish Crown. Report of this assumption of authority reached Cortez, who immediately sent another expedition, under Las Casas, with five ships and a hundred Spanish soldiers, to arrest the disobedient officer. This expedition sailed away over a distance of 2000 miles to the Bay of Honduras, and arrived suddenly before the town which Olid had founded, and which, in a spirit of religious fervor, he had named Triumph of the Cross. Olid was taken unawares, and after a very short engagement sent a humble message to Las Casas, begging for a truce that would enable them to confer upon the terms of surrender. Consent to this request proved disastrous to the expedition, for on the same night a tempest arose, which wrecked all the ships, and in which thirty of the crew perished. Las Casas managed to escape with the others of his party, but, disregarding the truce, Olid, who had now gathered his forces together, seized them and gave them the alternative of death or taking an oath of allegiance to his service. Las Casas chose the latter, but, feeling justified in any perfidy as an offset to that which Olid had practised, he finally succeeded in forming a conspiracy, and seizing Olid, without even the preliminaries of a court-martial ordered him beheaded.



**A MARCH CHARACTERIZED BY INCREDIBLE SUFFERINGS.**

Information of the wreck of the vessels by some means reached Cortez, but he was not apprized of any of the subsequent proceedings, and so incensed was he at the conduct of Olid in violating his truce that he resolved to lead an expedition himself and bring a dreadful punishment upon the violator of his authority. At the head of 100 Spanish horsemen, fifty infantry, and 3000 Mexican soldiers, Cortez left Mexico on the 12th of October, 1524, for Honduras, which would necessitate a land march of 1500 miles. With the fear that in his absence Guatemozin and the cacique of Tacuba, whom he had so tortured, might instigate a rebellion, he decided to take those two as captives with him. Several Catholic priests also accompanied the expedition with the purpose of spreading the teachings of the church among the heathen tribes of Central America. Marina, his native wife, also bore him company, as her services were indispensable as interpreter. But Cortez, looking forward to an alliance with some noble family of Spain, to relieve himself from the embarrassment of a native wife, delivered her in marriage to a Castilian knight named Don Juan Xamarillo, and as some amends for his conduct, he assigned to the newly married couple the most valuable estate in the province of Marina, through which the route to Honduras lay. History makes no further mention of Marina, but her son, known as Don Martin Cortez, through the patronage of his father, became one of the most prominent grandees of Spain, filling many posts of opulence and honor; but he was at last suspected of treason against the Home Government, and shamefully put to the torture in the Mexican capital some time after the death of his father.

This march of 1500 miles by Cortez was one of the most terrible ever undertaken by any commander. The hardships, perils, and starvation which beset them were almost incredible, as we read them in the reports made by Diaz, who was an enforced member of the expedition. Nor was it free from the outrages which characterized the conduct of Cortez from the first moment that he landed on Mexican soil. Among his other crimes, during this march he seized a pretext for ridding himself of Guatemozin and the Tacuban cacique. Pretending that he had received authentic information of efforts being made by these two unhappy captives to incite the natives along the way to revolt, he required no further proofs than his belief in the truth of such report, and in the most hurried manner hung them upon a tree by the wayside, where they were left suspended, to become the prey of carrion birds.

**TROUBLES BEGIN TO VEX CORTEZ.**

Cortez was absent nearly three years upon this expedition, and when at last he contrived to reach the colony planted at the village known as Triumph of the Cross, he found only a few stragglers, and these at peace and ready to render him a faithful obedience, while nearly half of those who started with him had perished on the way. Cortez then embarked for Cuba, where he was received with great demonstrations of respect, but he remained there only a



short while, returning again to the Mexican capital, where the people hailed him as one come back from the dead, and offered him the most obsequious honors, to which he was not wholly unentitled.

The last days of Cortez were naturally his most unhappy ones. He brooded over the crimes which he had perpetrated, over his indefensible subjection to slavery of the people whom he had invaded and despoiled; and, as evil is its own avenger, we are not surprised that Cortez should be overwhelmed with troubles in his last days. He had now an ample fortune, but his enemies were still active in their efforts to bring him to the justice which had long been delayed. So serious were these charges, that Cortez finally decided to go to Spain in person and answer before Charles V., which he did with such address and cunning that he not only succeeded in relieving himself from the odium that had been heaped upon him by many of the most influential members of the Spanish Court, but for a while he seems to have thoroughly ingratiated himself into the favor of the Spanish sovereign, who not only knighted him, but made him Governor-General of Mexico for life. During his visit to Spain he also formed an alliance, through the niece of the Duke de Bejar, with one of the most distinguished families in Spain, and the marriage ceremony was honored by the presence of Charles V. and his Queen.

#### **CORTEZ REDUCED TO POVERTY AND OBSCURITY.**

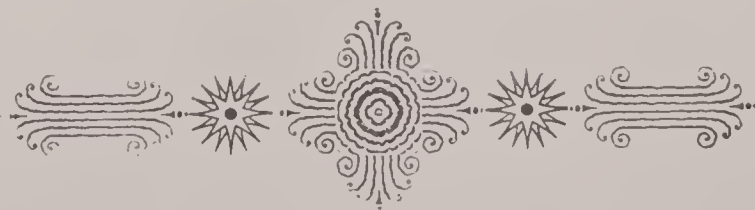
With his new bride in 1530 Cortez returned to Mexico and occupied the magnificent palace which he had built some few years before. But scarcely had he departed, when his enemies, again obtaining the ear of the Spanish sovereign, at length made such representations, and presented such proofs, that they persuaded him to recall the commission issued to Cortez, and to not only appoint a new Governor-General, but bring him to the bar of public judgment and trial upon several of the old charges which had been preferred, and additional ones that had been framed after his departure. Ignorant of the proceedings which had thus been instituted against him, Cortez squandered nearly the whole of his wealth in fruitless expeditions, sent out for further discoveries and the founding of new colonies; and when the ambassadors of the court of Charles V. at last reached the Mexican capital, they found Cortez absent on one of his ambitious enterprises, and had to wait a period of nearly one year for his return. By then he was now divested of his honors, and thrown upon the world a poor and prematurely old man, with whose misfortunes very few sympathized, while many seized the occasion to wreak a vengeance which had long rankled in their bosoms; for Cortez by his vigorous, and not always humane actions, had made many enemies, not only at the Spanish Court, but in Cuba and the Mexican capital as well. Having spent his fortune in what he declared were efforts to advance the interests of his sovereign, in his poverty he was induced to return again to his native land in 1540 and make a personal appeal to Charles V. for a reimbursement of moneys which he had expended in



his service. But though he was graciously received, his petition met with little consideration, though every word of promise he took as an encouragement, and with lingering hopes he remained in Spain nearly two years. He was at last a pitiable spectacle, moneyless, and friendless, with nothing but the glamour of earlier heroic days to keep him from the most complete obscurity.

#### THE LAST HOURS OF CORTEZ.

Crushed in spirit, all hope at last disappeared, and Cortez resolved to return again to Mexico, where it were better for him to die in the remembrance of the people he had conquered than to perish in neglect in the land of his birth. He had proceeded as far as Seville, when he was overcome by his melancholy, which took a fatal turn, and he was unable to continue his journey any further. Realizing that death was near at hand, he made and executed his will in a manner that manifested the continued vigor of his iron will. He left nine children, five of whom were born out of wedlock, among whom he equally divided the small property which he possessed on the outskirts of Mexico. Not being content with the poor accommodations provided for him at Seville, at the entreaty of his son, who accompanied him, he was removed to the neighboring village of Castilleja. There, on the 2d day of December, 1547, he died in the sixty-third year of his age, so completely neglected that only his faithful son was present during the last hour. Immediately upon his death there was a reaction among the public in his favor, and he seemed suddenly to have been magnified in the eyes of everyone in Spain. A vast concourse of people attended his obsequies, and he was buried in great pomp in the tomb of the Duke of Madina Sidonia, at Seville. Five years later his remains were disinterred and removed to Mexico by his son Martin, who deposited them in the family vault in the monastery at Tezcucó, where they remained for sixty-seven years and until disturbed again in 1629 and deposited beneath the Church of St. Francis; here they reposed in peace until they were for the third time resurrected, in 1794, and transferred to the Hospital of Our Lady of the Conception, which Cortez had founded and endowed. The remains when last disinterred were deposited in a glass coffin, bound with bars of iron, and over them a splendid monument was reared in commemoration alike of his fidelity to the church, his extension of Christianity among the pagans of the New World, and of the unexampled military skill and spirit which he exhibited.





## CHAPTER XXI.

### MAGELLAN'S VOYAGE TO THE SOUTH SEA.



GR<sup>EAT</sup> and glorious was the day in Seville. Cannon thundered from the Alcazar, and were answered by carronades on the walls and by salvoes of artillery from the ships in the river. The city was clothed in its holiday garb. Streamers of all colors fluttered from the quaint old Moorish houses, garlands were hung from the windows and arches of evergreens gave the narrow crooked streets the semblance of fairy bowers. Despite the torrid heat of a summer sun, the entire population appeared in the open air. Men of rank and fashion, attired in gaudy silks and costly velvets, glittering with jewels, were jostled by peasants from the neighboring villages, by beggars who had flocked from every part of Southern Spain to profit by the gathering of so many strangers. Spanish beauties, peeping coquettishly from under the heavy lace mantillas which half covered, half revealed the charm of their coal black eyes, were pushed to and fro by bronzed country-women, by the sailors of the fleet, by the soldiers of the garrison. Flower girls struggled through the crowd, in soft musical tones offering for sale the vegetable gems from the gardens which surrounded the city; here and there the venders of tortillas roared forth the excellence of their wares. On stands in the corners of the squares, fruit dealers displayed their luscious goods and solicited the attention of the passers by; in tents set in more secluded spots, old gypsy hags waited for customers, and for a piece of silver were ready to promise a fortune and a princely husband. Soldiers in glittering armor and with shining weapons passed along with martial tread, the admiration of the fair sex and the envy of civilians. Portuguese sailors with red caps and bare legs hurried to and fro; priests with sober pace and downcast visage mingled with the throng, and here and there the dark face of a Moor appeared, scowling at the hated Christians and being frowned on in return. He was a stranger in a land he had learned to call his own, for his people had built the walls and the towers of the Alcazar; the houses and the churches, the Giralda and the great Mosque, which the Christians had just turned into a cathedral, and in which they had placed the tomb of Ferdinand III, who took the city from the Moors. Everywhere were



crowds and noise, and shouting and rejoicing, and curiosity, for the great Admiral Magellan, or Maghælaus, as they called him, was to sail on that day to discover and conquer new worlds for the mighty Charles, King of Spain and Emperor of Germany.

#### A GRAND PROCESSION.

And now glad shouts cleave the air, for mass in the great cathedral is ended and the Admiral and his men are coming out. Everybody screams as loud as he can, the Portuguese sailors loudest of all, for the Admiral is of their nation, though the Spanish have adopted him; cloaks and streamers are waved in the air as the trumpets announce the approach of the procession. First comes a consecrated banner, to fly from the mast of the Admiral's ship; then, in order, march the sailors and soldiers of the *Victoria*, with their priest following in the rear; then a sacred relic is borne along by two ecclesiastics escorted by the crew of the *Concepcion*. The men of the *Santiago* come next, bearing in their midst, as a very precious possession, a bit of St. Peter's coat in a little silver shrine, and after them the crew of the *San Antonio*, with a blessed crucifix which they were to place at the bow of their vessel. A band of trumpeters varies the procession and introduces the crew of the *Trinidad*, the flag-ship of the squadron, and before him on a cushion the treasurer of the expedition bears the letters-royal, empowering "our faithful servant, Fernando Magallanes, to take possession in our name of all countries he might discover."



FERDINAND MAGELLAN.

#### A SIGHT OF BEWILDERING SPLENDOR.

And now the crowds press closer together and heads are raised with eager expectancy, as the commanders of the expedition pass by on horseback, richly attired and proudly conscious of their importance. Every one is a soldier and sailor of experience and renown, and as they ride by fingers are pointed and knowing ones explain to their neighbors that the one in the red cloak is Rodriguez Serrano, captain of the *Santiago*, that the one with tall plumes is Gaspar de Quesada, commander of the *Concepcion*, that the man with the surly,



evil look, and long black hair is Luis de Mendoza, of the *Victoria*, that the tall man with pointed beard and golden armor is the great noble, Don Juan de Cartagena, who has left his castle to seek renown in foreign countries, and on account of his influence at court has been assigned to the command of the *San Antonio*; that the sharp-nosed, inquisitive looking man, who seems to be desirous of seeing everything that is to be seen, is one Anthony Pigapheta, a Knight of Rhodes, who dabbled in letters, has written a little poetry at times, and is consequently looked on as rather a suspicious character; while the broad-shouldered, black-bearded man with a velvet cap and robe trimmed with fur is the Admiral himself, who is already not too well liked by his captains, from the fact that he is a Portuguese, who managed in some unaccountable way to inspire both the Emperor Charles and the great Cardinal Ximenes with a high opinion of his ability and so to secure the command of the squadron. The knowing ones predict trouble for the Admiral from the pride of Don Juan de Cartagena and the machinations of the scheming little priest who is always near him, as well as from the well-known surliness and insubordination of Mendoza, and the wily craft of Quesada. But the broad-shouldered man in the fur-trimmed gown has a resolute look, a big nose and a firmly set mouth, and appears able to take care of himself; and those who know something of his history opine that Cartagena and the others will do well to take heed how they rouse his wrath.

So on, mid the shoutings of the people, the procession moves to the mole of Seville, and the captains and men go on board, and the bishop blesses the fleet and crews, and the Admiral goes to the Alcazar, for his preparations are not quite complete, but the anchors are lifted, and the ships drop gently down the beautiful Guadalquivir to its mouth and there cast anchor at San Lucar to wait for final arrangements to be made.

#### THE DEPARTURE FROM SEVILLE.

It was on Monday, August 10, 1519, the feast of St. Lawrence, that the fleet left Seville, and a few days later the Admiral came down the river in his own barge and hurried the preparations to put to sea. One delay after another occurred, however, and not until Tuesday, September 20, did the vessels lift anchor and stand out to sea. The interval had been well employed, however, for in addition to the regular duties of the day, every seaman who could be spared from the service of the vessel was required to go on shore and hear mass at the church of Our Lady of Barrameda, near San Lucar, and the Admiral commanded that before a final start was made every one should confess, receive absolution, and partake of the communion.

On the morning of September 20th, a boat went from the flag-ship bearing to the vessels of the squadron the final orders of the Admiral. These written documents are still extant, and convey the most minute directions for keeping the squadron together. At night a beacon burned from the stern of the Admiral's ship; all manœuvres were telegraphed to the other vessels by means of the



number, or color, or situation of the lamps displayed from the leading ship. The orders received, the yawl returned to the flag-ship; the anchors were raised; with a rousing cheer the sails went up, and amid salvoes of artillery the fleet put to sea, receiving as it passed the blessing of a monk hermit, who lifted his hands on the heights of San Lucar and implored the favor of heaven for the expedition starting on its way to conquer new lands for the Christian King.

**A VOYAGE TO THE GREAT UNKNOWN.**

"Where are they going?" Nobody knew. A general idea prevailed that the discovery of new countries, the conquest of new lands, were the objects before the hardy voyageurs, but to what part of the world their prows were to be directed no one, not even the captains, could tell. The Admiral had orders from the Emperor and Cardinal to sail west to the Moluccas, but he kept his orders secret for fear his crew might desert, and he had good reason to do so for no one had ever been to the Moluccas by sailing west, and it was to the west Magellan proposed to go. More than one ship had been cast away on the unknown sands of America; more than one vessel had sailed to the west and returned no more.



PARASELENE SEEN AT SEA.

The sailors did not know all the terrors of the great seas, so imagined them far worse than they were. The Parhelia and Paraselene, or mock suns and moons, seen over eastern seas were to sailors the reflection of Satanic fires that spread in a measureless lake beyond the horizon. The western oceans were peopled by demons; somewhere in the west was located Satan's special dominion, and when a ship approached his watery kingdom a giant black hand appeared on the surface of the sea and grasped the vessel, drawing it with all its crew beneath the waves. So it was not without reason that the Admiral kept his orders to himself, for not a man, even of the rough adventurers gathered from all civilized nations, would have shipped with him had the full extent of his purpose been known.



So the hearts of the sailors were light; others had sailed to the New World and brought back wealth; why not they? Their expedition was the largest which had ever left Spain on a western voyage of discovery and conquest. They were two hundred and thirty-seven in number, had eighty cannon, the best that in that age could be made, abundant provision, ammunition far more than they could possibly need, and a reckless spirit of adventure which would carry them through any danger. They were all on fire with enthusiasm, and their Admiral the most enthusiastic of all, but not the most interested. To their historian, Pigapheta, everything was new; he was a landsman, and no sooner was he out of sight of land than he at once began voluminous notes and memoranda of everything he saw. The sailors laughed to see him running to record in his journal things which to them were of every-day occurrence, but Pigapheta was not to be discouraged by the laughter and ridicule of the sailors. He persevered, and to him we owe the best account of the voyage ever written, for from beginning to end he was a part, and a not unimportant part, of the expedition.

#### A MARVELLOUS WATER-YIELDING TREE.

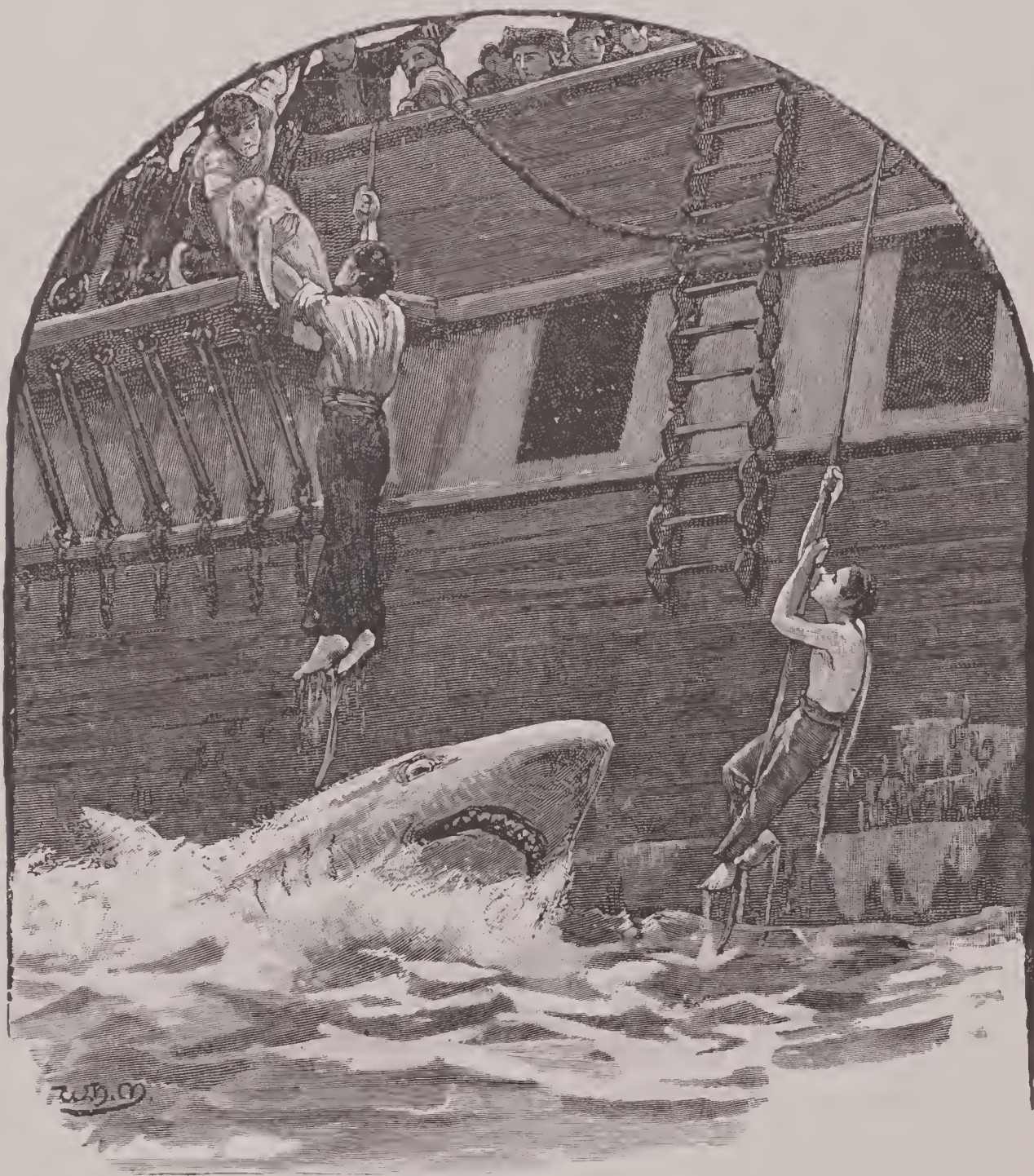
Six days after leaving San Lucar the Canary Islands were sighted and the fleet dropped anchor in the harbor of Teneriffe, where provisions were taken in and the already large stores in the holds of the ships were augmented by such a quantity as to render starvation an exceedingly improbable result of any voyage however long. Then leaving Teneriffe after three busy days of loading, they put into the port of Monterose where a large quantity of pitch for the use of the vessels was taken on board, and Pigapheta embraced the opportunity of this comparatively lengthy stay at the Canary Islands to go on shore and listen to a tale told him of a very great marvel: In one of these islands, he says, no rain ever falls, nor dew, and the inhabitants would perish for want of water were it not for a certain tree which collects the moisture and gives it forth in buckets-full at its base. The worthy historian questions whether the tree might not be cultivated in such a way as to be made available for a long voyage, and he even hints at the propriety of taking a tree on board, but his suggestions on this point seem to have been scouted by the commanding officers and poor Pigapheta discovered that in naval service it is the part of subordinates to know as little as possible. On Monday, the third day of October, the voyage really began, when the cliffs of Teneriffe faded from view and the little squadron was alone on the deep.

#### MAN-EATERS OF THE DEEP.

The course of the fleet lay to the south, and for several days they coasted along in sight of Africa, then turned their prows to the west and in sixty days sighted the coast of Brazil. For a wonder, to Magellan at least, they had rain all the way, but as this was the rainy season in that part of the world the marvel has been considerably diminished by more accurate knowledge of the meteorological phenomena of the Equator. To Pigapheta everything was novel; he watched the sharks which followed the ships and listened to the stories of



the sailors who assured him that the sharks knew when one of their number was about to die, and followed the vessel for the purpose of devouring the corpse when it should be committed to the waves. He watched the birds and noted in particular one of the kind known as Mother Carey's Chickens, the female of which is superstitiously believed to lay her eggs on the back of the male who flies about with them until they are hatched; he watched



PERILS OF THE DEEP.

the phosphorescence in the water and believed the assurances of the sailors that every sparkle was the soul of a dead seaman waiting for the time when his dreary season of penance should be concluded. He piously returned thanks after the storm for the appearance of the body of St. Anselm which came in a light on the foremast and assured the mariners of safety; he noted what to him was a great wonder, the flying fishes, and watched the larger fish chase the schools



of flyers, waiting until they should return to the water and then preying upon them. Coasting down the shore line of Brazil the fleet put into the ample bay of Rio de Janeiro where they traded with the natives, the Spaniards being greatly amused at the immense value the Indians seemed to place upon articles which to the Europeans were of very trifling consequence. For a comb as much fish could be bought as a boat's crew could devour in a day; for a few brass beads a boat-load of bananas could be purchased, and one sailor was much surprised by a trade he made, exchanging a playing card for five fowls, both he and the Indians conceiving that each had cheated the other.

#### GIANTS OF BRAZIL.

The members of the expedition had an exceedingly dim idea of the size of the countries they were dealing with and more than one of Magellan's men thought he had made a liberal estimate in the statement that Verzin, or Brazil, in size exceeded all France. They did not seem to entertain the dimmest idea of the extent of the country, and probably would not have believed the fact that in extent Brazil is equal to Europe. The population of the country excited their lively interest and not a few stories were picked up by the sailors as to the lives and domestic habits of the people. Extravagant enough were these tales to the men of that or any other time, and yet they were readily believed. The natives of the coast told wonderful yarns of the people of the interior and no story was too incredible to be recorded by the historian. The Upland Indians were 400 feet high and lived to be two hundred years old; they never slept because when they once lay down their joints were too stiff to rise again, so that when they rested they leaned against trees or placed their elbows on mountains. They adored a god which appeared to them once a year; they had houses the lowest of which was taller than the loftiest mountain; there was gold in such abundance that it was a thing of no regard; the streets were paved with it; the king of that country had it sprinkled before him in yellow showers whenever he walked abroad.

#### SEEKING A PASSAGE.

Greedily the eyes of the Spaniards distended when these monstrous fabrications were commended to their attention, and some were in favor of ending the marine expedition then and there and instituting a land march to this marvelous country of gold and giants; but Magellan said no, he had not started to hunt giants nor to find gold, but to seek a western passage to the Moluccas and the Moluccas he was determined to find. So, leaving the bay of Rio de Janeiro the expedition sailed south, and entered the wide estuary of La Plata which they deemed the passage of which they were in search. Sailing up the bay they continued some distance before they discovered it was not a strait, and even the limited geographical knowledge of that time taught Magellan that by sailing up a fresh-water river he must sooner or later come to the end of it, and back the ships turned, sailed out of the LaPlata and continued to the south.



## ORIGIN OF CANNIBALISM AMONG THE PATAGONIANS.

Their next landing was among the Patagonians, and when the huge black forms of these people appeared on the coast, the sailors readily believed that they had in reality arrived in the land of giants. But so far from being savage, the Patagonians received them kindly, brought them food, guided them to water, and in every way possible supplied the wants of these strangers whom they regarded as having come down from heaven. The kind welcome, however, was ill-requited, for several of the Patagonians were kidnapped by the Spaniards, and some of them put in irons in order to detain them on the vessels. In this land, too, they found cannibals and accounted for the origin of cannibalism by a story that was told to them in sign language by one of the Patagonians, who explained that once upon a time there was an old wo-



TYPES OF PATAGONIANS.

man who had an only son. Her boy was killed by a man of the neighboring tribe, and the murderer being taken, was brought into the presence of the bereaved mother. In her fury she ran at him and bit a piece out of his shoulder which so affrighted the captive that despite the strength and vigilance of his jailors he broke from them, escaped to his own people, and told them that he came near being eaten. In retaliation they really ate the next prisoner they made, and so step by step the regular practice of devouring prisoners was introduced among the South Americans. But as the Spanish historian explains, "they do not eat him all, but cut the best of him into little bits, and hang them in the chimney to dry, so that he will not spoil."

The strange appearance and facial disfigurements of the Patagonians at once attracted the European eye. These natives cut holes in their lips and



suspended stones from them, of such size and weight as to draw the lower lip down below the level of the chin; they slit their noses, and wore rings pendent from those organs. The lobes of their ears were so elongated by the pieces of wood placed in them that in one or two cases the lower tips, or lobes, extended to the shoulders. Their clothing was of skins, and in warm weather these were thrown aside from the upper portion of the body and fastened at the waist with a cord. But there were other marvels no less wonderful: Pigs with five legs, birds which could not fly; animals, the like of which had never been seen by Europeans. The boats of the Patagonians were as curious as their ears; hollowed out of a single tree, they would hold forty or fifty men, while the war canoes, formed of two trunks placed end to end, held a hundred. The people were imitative. When mass was said a number of them at-

tended to see the Christians worship; when the sailors rose, the natives stood upright; the sailors knelt, so did the natives. Every motion, every sign performed by the sailors in their worship was repeated by the Patagonians, to the admiration of the Christians, who said it was pitiful to see these poor heathens thus mocking the worship of the true God.



THE PATAGONIAN SHORE.

**WONDERS INCREASE.**

The priests accompanying the expedition took one of the natives in hand for education; baptized him by the name of John, taught him to pronounce the words Jesus and Maria, and had great hopes of his conversion, until he stole a bag of nails and vanished. The Patagonians were a source of amusement too, for they thought the boats were the ships' children, and conceived that the larger vessels were suckling their young when the yawls were placed alongside the ships. Nor did the wonders cease here. Every island was full of sea-lions and sea-calves. There were birds so fat that they could not be plucked, but were skinned instead. There were animals with the head and ears of a mule, the neck of a camel, the body of a deer, the tail of a horse—the guanaco. The capture of several of the giants by the Spaniards made the natives cautious and unfriendly, and ultimately provoked hostilities between



them and the visitors, and in a fight which resulted, one Spaniard was killed by a poisoned arrow. In revenge Magellan burned the village and sailed away. But Pigafetta improved the occasion to learn from the giant prisoner something of the medical practice of his people, and informs us that when the Patagonians had the stomach-ache they put an arrow down their throats the distance of two or three feet, which made them vomit at least a bucketful of green stuff, whereupon, as might readily be supposed, they got better. When their heads ached they made a cut on the forehead, and so for any portion of the body which was afflicted. When one died, ten devils appeared and danced round the body, and of the ten, one was always much larger than any of the rest, and was thereby supposed to be the prince of the devils come to claim his own. The giants were expensive passengers, for any one of them at a meal ate a half bushel basket full of biscuits and drank a bucketful of water, so they were not sorry later on in the voyage when the last one of their prisoners, unaccustomed to ship-fare and to the restraints of a vessel, gave up the ghost.





## CHAPTER XXII.

### A MUTINY AMONG THE CREWS.



PORT St. Julian was the headquarters of the fleet during the stay of Magellan in the country of the giants, and the five months which were spent there would have proved a pleasant relief for officers and men had not an untoward circumstance occurred which, for the time, threatened to frustrate the aim of the expedition and bring the voyage to an ignominious conclusion. For some time, the watchful Admiral had noticed symptoms of disaffection among the officers, in a disinclination to comply with the spirit of the orders given, but he was reluctant to believe that Spanish gentlemen would condescend to plot against their commander, so he refused to listen to the warnings of his friends or to credit the tales of conspiracy which, on more than one occasion, were brought to his cabin. At last, the evidence became too strong to be discredited, and he was unwillingly forced to the conclusion that the captains of the fleet were bent on his ruin. Inspired, not so much by fear of the length of the voyage or the hardships they might be compelled to undergo, as by hatred and jealousy of the commander because he was of a different nationality from themselves, the four captains formed a conspiracy to desert the Admiral, sail back to Spain, and there report that the discovery of a western passage to Asia was an impossibility, that they found Magellan was leading them to certain destruction and so returned and left him to his fate. The particulars of the plot were speedily borne to the Admiral by a trusted friend, but Magellan chose to wait before resorting to extreme measures. Developments soon came. A few days after the information had been given him, a commotion was visible on the decks of the ships commanded by the conspirators. Men were hastening to and fro; preparations were apparently on foot to set sail and stand out to sea. The plot had been well laid. The noble Don Juan Cartagena, whose anger at the failure of the Emperor to designate himself as the admiral had been smouldering during the whole voyage, incited Mendoza, the treasurer of the fleet, to take on himself the responsibility of organizing an open mutiny. The vanity of Mendoza was pleased at the attention shown him by the nobleman, and he readily consented to assume the dangerous task of braving the



wrath of the Admiral by assuming command of the three ships which were thus to be taken back. When Magellan sent to inquire the meaning of the movements on the ships, Mendoza answered boldly that the officers and crews were determined no longer to obey the orders of a foreigner, that if Magellan would resign and consent to the appointment of Don Juan as Admiral, the voyage would continue, but otherwise, they were resolved to return. At the same time they invited Magellan to a conference on board Cartagena's ship.

#### ASSASSINATION OF MENDOZA.

The stern Admiral did not for a moment hesitate as to the course to pursue. He was satisfied of two things: first, that the action of the mutinous



ASSASSINATION OF MENDOZA.

captains was caused by personal jealousy; second, that the sailors, most of whom were Portuguese or Italians, were warmly devoted to himself and would show the fact were an opportunity given. He went into his cabin, assembled a few trusted friends and stated his plan. It was warmly endorsed; then he called for volunteers for desperate service. The Spaniards hung back, but the Portuguese and Italian sailors came forward with alacrity and volunteered for any duty he might require.



It was a perilous task he desired them to undertake, nothing less than the suppression of a mutiny involving three-fourths of the men of his fleet, but not a man faltered when the work was explained, and all vowed to do or die. With arms concealed beneath their garments, they crowded into the large boat, twenty-two in number, each with the heart of a hero. "Give away," and the yawl was pushed from the side of the *Trinidad*, the oars rose and fell in the water, and with anxious eyes Magellan looked after the boat and its gallant crew as they went forth, perhaps to die for him. In a few moments they were alongside the *Victoria*, and the volunteer leader, one Carvalho, called out that



PORT ST. JULIAN.—From an old copper print.

he had a message from the Admiral. He was bidden to come on board; the yawl was made fast, and his companions followed him, carelessly exchanging greetings with the sailors of the *Victoria*.

Carvalho was slow of speech. He began the delivery of the Admiral's message to Mendoza in a low tone, and from what he said it was supposed that Magellan was ready and willing to resign in favor of Cartagena. The rebel captains looked at each other in triumph. "But," said Carvalho, "his Excellency bade me whisper this in your ear," and at this moment, glancing rapidly around, and seeing that his companions were all in place, he approached Mendoza as though to whisper in his ear. Mendoza inclined his head to listen, and Car-



valho, drawing close to his side, stabbed him to the heart with a stiletto he had up to this time concealed in his sleeve. At the same moment Magellan's men threw themselves on the rebel officers, and in five minutes the mutiny was at an end; Quesada and Cartagena were in irons, the second officers of their ships were appointed to command until further orders from the Admiral, and the two ringleaders were in the Admiral's yawl and on their way to the flag-ship.

#### EXECUTION OF THE CONSPIRATORS.

On the same day a court-martial was called to try the mutineers, and without a dissenting voice the punishment was death. Quesada was at once decapitated, and, according to the barbarous practice of the time, his body was quartered, and the severed limbs hung on the vessel he had commanded. The case of Cartagena presented more difficulty. Mendoza and Quesada had been appointed by Magellan himself, but Cartagena was selected by the Emperor, and could not, therefore, be dealt with as unceremoniously as they had been. Reluctant to put to death one whom the Emperor had honored, and still more indisposed to take with him a man who had proven unworthy of confidence, Magellan solved the difficulty by ordering Cartagena and the little priest whose advice and suggestions had done much to forward the mischief, to be set on shore, and at once the squadron set sail from a spot of so evil omen.

But misfortunes seldom come singly, and the revolt which was near being the ruin of the expedition was speedily followed by the loss of the *Santiago*, which was wrecked on the iron-bound coast. Unfortunate as this was it might have been worse, for the crew were all saved, as well as much material and a large share of the stores. The men were distributed among other vessels, most of the Spaniards going on the *San Antonio*, and the squadron crept cautiously from headland to headland, carefully searching every inlet and bay for the long expected passage. Many days were passed in this apparently profitless undertaking, and again complaints began to arise among the men, but finally, on St. Ursula's Day, October 21, 1520, a bold headland appeared in view to the south-west, and in honor of the feast was named the Cape of Eleven Thousand Virgins. Off to the south was another cape, and between the two a narrow passage with walls of almost perpendicular rock. A most forbidding prospect it was, and calculated to daunt the heart of the stoutest navigator, but Magellan did not quail. This must be the strait of which he was in search. Carefully he passed from one point to another. Days went by, yet there were but the precipices above and on either hand; below, water so deep that the longest cables would not enable an anchor to catch the rocks on the bottom. Would the passage never cease? A hundred and fifty miles had he traversed with the perpendicular walls on either hand. At last came a bay with two openings. Which was the right strait? No one could tell. To settle the question the *San Antonio* was directed to explore one, while the Admiral with the other vessels awaited her return and report. Away went the *San Antonio*, and day after day eyes were turned in the direction she had taken, looking for her return,





MAGELLAN EXPLORING THE STRAIT THAT BEARS HIS NAME.



but she came not, and after lingering what seemed to be an unreasonable time, the Admiral reluctantly ordered sail to be lifted and ventured into the other passage. Chance rightly directed his course, and on November 28, over a month from the time he had sailed under the Cape of the Virgins, the lookout announced an open sea ahead, and with tears of joy, Magellan ordered a *Te Deum* to be sung in thankfulness for the discovery.

#### **HURRAH! AFLOAT ON THE GREAT SOUTH SEA.**

Now surely his troubles were at an end, the Moluccas could not be far away. A few days sail over a sea so beautifully placid that he called it the Pacific, and the tropical isles would be seen rising in the offing, he would let fall the anchor in some well-known port of the East Indies and his fame would be secure as the first man who had reached the east by way of the west. The wrinkles of care were smoothed out of his brow, he could afford to make merry with his men, for the end of the long uncertain voyage seemed at hand. Merrily the songs of the light-hearted sailors rang out over a sea as blue as their own Mediterranean; cheerfully the petty officers joked with each other and with the men as the necessary duties of the squadron were performed. On their mirth there was but one cloud, the uncertain fate of the *San Antonio*. Had she been dashed to pieces on the coast as had the *Santiago*? Were her crew now captives among the cannibal giants? Or had she, by fatal chance, got into the Sea of Demons and been drawn beneath the waves by the hand of Satan? But it was useless to bemoan her fate till her loss was certainly known, and after all, she may have returned to the bay in the strait too late to sail with the squadron; may there have found the Admiral's orders in the cairn built before sailing and might rejoin the fleet in a few days. So on to the Moluccas, and let the *San Antonio* take care of herself. The prows cleft the waters as the vessels sped west before a steady breeze, and every eye was strained ahead to be the first to catch sight of the coveted islands.

#### **STARVATION STALKS THE DECKS.**

A week passes. The Moluccas are further than we thought. A month. How great the world is, but we must by this time be almost at the end. To-morrow we shall see the green islands just ahead. Five weeks. Will the voyage never cease? Has this ocean no end? Six weeks. The provisions are getting low. The cooks report the stock alarmingly short. Seven weeks. All hands are put on famine rations, a handful of bread and mouthful of water. Eight weeks. The biscuits are all gone. Even the crumbs are now precious; the barrels are swept and the dirty leavings at the bottoms are weighed and doled out with stingy hand. And still the ocean is as boundless as before. Nine weeks. Starvation fastens its skeleton fingers on the crews, and daily the captains report to the Admiral the number of those who died of hunger and thirst. Nine weeks and a half. The cry is raised, "land ahead," and the sick are lifted by their stronger companions to see the welcome sight, and the dying revive, only to sink back and perish when the islands are explored and found



to be uninhabited and desert, having neither food nor drink. Ten weeks. The barren islands long ago disappeared on the horizon, and no others have been seen since. The rats, which at first swarmed on the ships, have been caught and eaten for food. The ox-hides, which covered the deck, dry and hard from long exposure to sun and wind, have been dragged in the sea until soft, then eaten. The little water that remains is yellow and foul. Nineteen men have died of hunger; thirty-seven are sick and can do no work. There are not enough to care for the ships. Scurvy has broken out among the crews. Great ulcers appear on their bodies, their gums shrink, their teeth fall out; some have empty hollows where they once had eyes. All hope is gone, and yet they do not blame the Admiral, for he shares alike with them; his fare is no better than their own. They see how famished he looks, how anxiously he watches; they know



STARVATION CONFRONTS THE CREW.

he paces the deck in the night and looks ahead for signs of the land. The eleventh week is almost ended, when once again the cry of land is heard, and this time there is neither mistake nor deception, for there sure enough are the green islands, and under the lee of a shore covered with tropical verdure the ships come to anchor, and living skeletons man the boats and go on shore to seek food. And they find it, and hope springs anew among the starving men, as after a voyage of three months and twenty days, they once more look on the welcome earth and see its fruitfulness in luscious productions, and pure sparkling water running down the hillside into the sea.

#### AMONG THE SOUTH-SEA ISLANDERS.

Strange people they find on the cluster of islands to which their course had been directed; tall, athletic men, with long hair and beards, Albanian caps,



papyrus cloth about their loins, and armed with spears and arrows tipped with the teeth of sharks. Very friendly the islanders proved to the famine-stricken Spaniards; brought food in abundance, and helped them set up on shore the tents and booths for the sick. With an abundance of good food, the scurvy-stricken were soon well again, deriving more strength from the palm-wine than from the fish, yams, cocoanuts, bananas and other dainties which they purchased from the islanders. For it should be understood that to the natives of most Pacific islands the palm is their chief reliance, both for food, drink and clothing. Of its wood and leaves they construct their houses, its fibre constitutes their clothing, the shell of the cocoanut gives them a drinking vessel, the milk is pleasant when fresh, and when fermented a strong and nourishing intoxicant, while the meat of the nut is their staple article of food. All these uses they taught to the Spaniards, who ascertaining the value of the nuts took a large quantity aboard as provision during the remainder of the voyage, purchasing also fowls, pigs, goats and dried fish to provide against a recurrence of the famine.

#### A FIGHT WITH THE ISLANDERS.

But in this hospitable land trouble broke out again. The Indians had entertained hopes that the Spaniards intended to remain among them, but ascertaining that they were soon to leave, determined to profit as far as possible by them, and began a systematic course of thieving. Nothing was safe, for the natives swarmed about the ships and tents, and laid hands on every article, large or small, that was for a moment left unguarded. They were cunning thieves, and their toes were as light as their fingers, for when a knife, for instance, was left lying on the ground, an Indian would stand on it, covering it with his foot; waiting till he was unobserved, he would lift the knife, grasping it with his toes, until within reach of his hand, when by a quick movement, he would conceal it under his arm, in his cap, or under his waist-clout. Precautions against the natives were useless; they would hide their stealings in their mouths, in their beards and hair, often make off with half a dozen articles of value about their person. They were finally forbidden to enter the camp or come into the ships, whereupon they became angry, and on more than one occasion stoned the sailors. The Admiral gave them notice that repetitions of such acts would be punished, but they laughed at his warning, and on the following day a couple of clever rogues swam out to the flag-ship and in broad daylight stole the ship's skiff. This was too much. Arming a number of men, Magellan went on shore, proceeded to the nearest village and demanded the return of the boat. The villagers came out, but instead of complying with his request laughed at the demand and began an attack on the Spanish force. It was easily repulsed, the village was stormed and burned, seven of the islanders were killed and others were wounded, the boat was recovered, and in disgust with such incorrigible rogues Magellan sailed away and called the islands the *Ladrones*, or the 'Thieves' Islands.



All was now comparatively plain sailing, for the ocean was left behind, and Magellan's squadron was in the midst of the Eastern Archipelago. Islands were on every hand; sandy islands, mere strips of beach saved from the fury of the waves, volcanic islands lifting mountainous heads hundreds of feet above the sea, atolls, or circular islands, the rims of volcanoes, which the coral insects had built up as the surface of the earth slowly sank, and thus had reared a mighty structure, a circular tower of stone, twelve or fifteen hundred feet from the bottom of the

sea, still carefully preserving the lagoon in the centre—he could not sail in any direction without finding an island.

#### HOSPITALITIES OF THE KING AND QUEEN.

Still to the west he steered, and on March 16, 1521, reached Samar, among the Philippines. He was now directly north of the Moluccas, though unaware of their proximity, but nevertheless he knew that he had accomplished the end proposed, that his fame was secure as the first navigator who had reached the east by way of the west. Aware, therefore, that his work was practically done, he addressed himself to the task of making conquests for his master. Thenceforth he took possession of every island he visited in the name of the King of Spain, and planted the cross as a symbol of its conquest and annexation. After thus formally establishing the control of Spain over several of the Philippines, he arrived, on April 7, at the island of Sebu. Here he at once



THE ISLAND QUEEN PRESENTED WITH A LOOKING-GLASS.

opened negotiations with the King, showed him the benefits that would accrue from a Spanish protectorate, and so cleverly were his arguments stated that the King not only consented to become a Spanish vassal, but also to receive baptism and become a Christian. This was a piece of unexpected good fortune, for to make converts was as much a part of Magellan's duty as to complete conquests. A large tent formed of the sails of the ships was set upon the shore, the King was baptized and named King Charles, and twenty-three hundred of his people were in one



day added to the number of believers. Great was the rejoicing. All the labors, all the sufferings of the past were forgotten, even the loss of the San Antonio was remembered but for a moment in the glory of this splendid triumph. Imposing were the ceremonials. All the guns of the fleet were loaded and fired again and again in honor of the occasion; all the flags were displayed; all the crews paraded in their finest uniforms. The sermon of the officiating priest compared the day to that of Pentecost. Valuable presents were given by Magellan and the captains to the King, who in return sent them whole cargoes of fruits, besides spices, wine, oil, and what more than all excited the cupidity of the Spaniards, several bags of gold dust. Visits of ceremony were exchanged between the King and the Admiral; Pigapheta went to visit the queen, and delighted her beyond expression with the gift of a looking-glass. She insisted that she too must be baptized, and a day was appointed for the public ceremony. Clad in costly garments and attended by forty of her ladies, she submitted to the rite, and another great festival was held. Never had the like been known, for besides adding this wealthy island to the crown of Spain, Magellan had converted its entire population to the faith.

Emboldened by his splendid success, he determined that this should be but the beginning of his conquests; that as Columbus had added a world to Spain, so would he; nor would he stop till all the islands which surrounded him on every hand should admit his authority. A man of resolute purpose and prompt action, to conceive was to carry into execution. He persuaded the King of Sebu that as he was now a Christian all the neighboring islands ought to be subject to him, and offered to help him conquer them. The proposition was favorably considered by the King, who, although conversion to Christianity had not induced him to dispense with his idols in spite of the remonstrances of Magellan, evidently thought himself enough of a Christian to govern the neighboring islands if they could be conquered. The Admiral had little confidence in the religious professions of the dusky monarch, but thinking he might be used as a convenient tool, determined to undertake the task of subjugating the surrounding islands and conciliating them under one rule.

#### A BATTLE WITH THE NATIVES.

Messengers were therefore sent to the island of Matan, which was in sight, requiring its king to submit and pay tribute to Magellan and the King of Sebu, who had formerly been his vassal. He refused, whereupon Magellan entered at once upon an intended career of conquest by arming sixty of his men, and with a large force of friendly Indians proceeded to Matan to make an attack. Confident of the superiority of his men and arms, he requested his savage allies to remain in their canoes and witness with what ease the Spaniards could overcome an enemy. The water was shallow, and the boats were compelled to remain two bow shots from the shore. Magellan with forty-two Spaniards landed about three hours before daylight, and sent messengers to the people of Matan, desiring that they reconsider their refusal to submit, otherwise they should learn how Spanish lances and bullets could wound. A fierce reply



came back, and as soon as day broke the Spaniards beheld a strange spectacle. As far as the eye could reach up the beach, from the seashore to the jungle of the interior, a solid mass of footmen presented itself to their gaze. A forest of lances waved as the savage warriors danced and shouted, and ere the battle began the air was filled with flying arrows and javelins.

#### HORRIBLE BUT HEROIC DEATH OF MAGELLAN.

Singing, dancing and shouting, waving their shields and feathery banners in the air, the savages advanced to the attack, two thousand five hundred strong. Like a wave of the sea they rolled upon and around the little group of Spaniards on the beach. Bravely the whites resisted; they fired again and again, but their powder was bad, and the balls did not penetrate the shields of dry hide. Finding themselves unhurt even after repeated discharges of the Spanish firearms, the Indians, grown bolder, fell on the Spaniards with lance, arrow and club. Armor was no protection, for the Indians perceiving they could not wound the bodies of their foes struck at their legs and arms. With heroic valor the Spaniards resisted, but by sheer force of numbers were slowly pressed into the water. Back to back, the Spanish kept up the battle, no longer for conquest, but for life. In the front rank stood the Admiral in his white armor and gilded helmet blazing in the sun, a conspicuous mark for hostile missiles. A hundred lances were levelled at him; but he withstood them all, until at last an Indian from behind struck a javelin deep into his sword-arm, while another in front wounded him in the face with a lance. Magellan's arm fell helpless and at the same time a tall savage with a coronet of feathers struck a terrific blow on the Admiral's leg. The brave Magellan sank down, still fighting; a dozen savages threw themselves on him, and yet they could not overcome him before he had killed several of his foes. Deserted by his men, overwhelmed by the foes, he kept up the hopeless struggle; but the end came when a savage, with face painted red, struck the old soldier on the head with a huge club, crushing helmet and skull, and the gallant captain met a hero's death.

#### TREACHERY OF THE ISLANDERS.

Magellan's panic-stricken companions fled to their boats, leaving eight of their number and four friendly Indians dead in the water. Escaping to their ships, they at once suspended all intercourse with the shore, fearing lest the influence of the battle on the people of Sebu should be unfavorable. They had good reason for this precaution. Twenty-four hours had not elapsed before Magellan's slave, an East Indian whom he had brought with him from a previous voyage to the east, a man who had acted as his interpreter, deserting to Sebu informed the King that the Spaniards meant to subjugate his people. The natives of Sebu took the alarm, made peace with the Matan islanders, and both joined their forces against the Spaniards. The latter, without a leader, without a plan, were greatly at a loss, but understanding the necessity of discipline and leadership, they elected Duarte Barbosa admiral in place of Magellan, and Juan Serrano as captain of the flag-ship. The incompetence of the new commanders



HEROIC DEATH OF MAGELLAN.





was the next day made apparent. Invited by the King of Sebu to a banquet, they went with twenty-four men to attend the festivities. Less than an hour after they had landed, the people on the ships heard a great commotion, followed by sounds of lamentation on the beach. Apprehending that their companions were in danger, they drew the ships closely to the shore and fired with carro-mades at the village; but scarcely had the bombardment begun when they beheld Serrano distracted and led to the shore a prisoner in the hands of the Indians. Loudly he begged them to discontinue firing, assuring them that further hostilities would result in his own destruction. The men on the ships called to know what had become of his companions and Serrano answered that, save the interpreter, they were all dead. Loudly he prayed to be ransomed, for the Indians had detained him in the hope that with a vast sum the surviving Spaniards would reward his captors; but in vain. The sailors were afraid to go themselves on shore, and declined to trust the Indians to approach the ship, and although Serrano prayed God to witness that his blood was on their heads, they made sail at once, stood out to sea, and left the unfortunate man to his fate. Thus thirty-two men were lost in two days, and there being not enough left to man the three ships, it was decided to burn the Concepcion after placing her stores and men in the Trinidad and Victoria, and thus the flotilla was reduced to two.

#### STORIES OF INCONCEIVABLE WEALTH.

Away sailed the fleet again, from island to island, everywhere finding something new. Believing all they heard, and hearing far more than they saw, the Spaniards found that part of the world full of wonders. In the pages of their narratives they recorded stories of clove-trees fed on dead bodies, of cinnamon produced by magic from human bones; of nutmegs dug up from caves of the sea; of savages with ears so large that they slept on one and used the other for a coverlet; of cities, the houses of which were of gold; of islands where diamonds were so common that they were in nowise esteemed; of nations, the men of which grew young again every century; of kings so terrible that their subjects could not stand the sight of their eyes, but fell dead at the glance of majesty; of islands where turtles were larger than ships, of others where there were talking birds. They visited Borneo, where they were well received, great honor being shown them by the King, and finally, after twenty-six months and twenty-eight days, arrived at the Moluccas, where they heard the unwelcome intelligence that a Portuguese fleet of seven war-ships had sailed from Europe a year before for the purpose of apprehending them. The Portuguese considered this part of the earth their own peculiar possessions, on account of the explorations of Vasco da Gama more than twenty years before. Directly they learned that Magellan had sailed west for the purpose of reaching the East Indies, they fitted out a fleet of men-of-war, and started it the other way, expecting that if he should escape the dangers of the unknown seas, they would be able to capture him and his vessels immediately on their arrival in the east.



















## FEAR AND FAMINE DO DREADFUL EXECUTION.

The unhappy men of Magellan's fleet were panic-stricken on learning this intelligence and hastened to depart, not knowing when the Portuguese fleet might arrive. As it proved, there was no reason for their apprehension, for the hostile squadron was detained at Aden; but the Spaniards in ignorance of this



MURDER OF SERRANO

fact made all possible haste to depart. To add to their embarrassment, the *Trinidad* sprung a leak which in spite of every effort made by the crew and by native assistants whose skill in diving was brought into requisition to discover the cause, could not be stopped. Afraid to remain until the ship could be put in complete order, they decided to abandon the *Trinidad* and return in



the Victoria. But not all were willing to attempt the home voyage. Some dreaded the perils of the main, others feared the prowling Portuguese fleet, and preferred to take up a residence in the Moluccas rather than risk the possibility of starvation, or a violent death from the Portuguese. With sixty men, however, Christians and Indians, the Victoria started on her home voyage. But dangers loomed up directly, and the adverse monsoon prevented their progress; for nine weeks they beat up and down the sea in an effort to double the Cape of Good Hope; for two months longer they made slow progress up the Atlantic; famine again stared them in the face; twenty of them died and were committed to the deep. On the Cape Verde Islands, where they called to get food and water, thirteen were captured by the Portuguese; when a boat was sent on shore for assistance, and seeing galleys put off evidently with hostile intentions, the remainder on board set sail at once. News was speedily sent from the Cape Verde Islands to Portugal that the last surviving vessel of Magellan's squadron was coming home, and must, if possible, be captured before its arrival. Scores of ships put out from the ports and prowled up and down the sea, sentinels of the waters, to apprehend the famine-stricken ship, but by good fortune it escaped them all.

**THE SURVIVORS ARE WELCOMED BACK TO SPAIN.**

Monday, September 8, 1522, was another great day in Seville, for in the morning a storm-battered ship came to anchor near the mole, and eighteen ragged, famished wretches, so strange that their own friends did not know them, staggered from its deck into waiting boats and were received by friendly hands. One shattered, leaky vessel was all that remained of the magnificent fleet which three years before sailed from Seville to compass the earth. But they had done it and all honor was their due. Again the cannon thundered from the Alcazar; again the bells rang in the steeples; the astounding groups filled the streets; evergreen arches were reared in the squares; organs pealed in the churches, choirs sang *Te Deums* for those who had come back from the dead. But in the groups there was one who did not cheer as the procession of haggard sailors marched up the street from the wharf to the cathedral. This was the elegant Don Juan Cartagena, and at sight of him the sailors for the first time learned what had become of the *San Antonio*. It was explained to them that after leaving Magellan in the strait, the *San Antonio* had deserted the expedition, returned to Port St. Julian, taken up Don Juan and his priest, gone back to Spain and reported Magellan lost. But when the true story of the desertion got abroad, Don Juan, to escape the anger of his compatriots, left the country and the only gloomy face was withdrawn from the astounding multitudes, and all Spain went wild over the eighteen heroes who had sailed around the world.

Since his time thousands have followed in Magellan's track, but high on the historical roll of honor will ever stand the name of the gallant admiral who perished in his undertaking, and of the eighteen who lived to tell of his triumph and bring back news of his death.



## CHAPTER XXIII.

### HISTORY OF THE BUCCANEERS.



SOMEWHERE in one of his books, Darwin advances a curious idea as to the connection between the number of old maids in a neighborhood and the abundance of the clover crop. He argues that where old maids are numerous cats are also plentiful; where there are cats the field-mice are kept in subjection, and the humble-bees, whose nests are destroyed by the rodents, are allowed to increase; and humble-bees alone, from the extreme length of their probosces, can fertilize the clover blossoms. It is going a long way to look for a reason for abundant clover, but no further than to go to the reli-

gious wars of the sixteenth century to find the origin of the Buccaneers. It is nevertheless true that the religious wars created throughout Europe an intense hatred of Spain and of everything Spanish; only occasion was necessary to develop this hatred in a practical manner on the other side of the world, and the occasion was not long lacking.

A hundred years more were sufficient for the Spaniards to exhaust the gold mines of Central America and the islands, so far as in their wasteful way they cared to work them. No chapter of history is so black as that of the conquest of America; no page so dark as that of the Spanish treatment of the natives in the gold mines. The Indians were plundered so long as they had anything worth taking, and when no more was to be found were tortured to compel them to disclose the whereabouts of additional treasure. Chiefs of honor and dignity were treated with shameless brutality; a great native king of Mexico had live coals applied to his feet to make him divulge the hiding places of treasures of which he knew nothing. Priests were put to the rack that the hidden wealth of their temples might be discovered, and many of the wise and great of America thus miserably perished. When the nobles were so treated, no consideration could be expected for the common people who were carried off by thousands and compelled to work in the mines, where, unaccustomed to the labor or to the severity of the treatment, they died in multitudes.

In several of the Caribbean Islands Indian laborers at length became so scarce that the merciless Spaniards were compelled to look elsewhere for slaves.



Hunting parties accordingly were organized to search through the dense jungles of a tropical climate, among the crags and along the mountain ranges, and numbers of trembling wretches were thus apprehended and brought in. But the alarm was taken by the timorous natives; they fled still further and dogs were employed to hunt them down. Many were torn to pieces by the savage brutes that were engaged not only to hunt the hapless captives, but to guard them when in chain gangs they went to and from their labor in the mines.

As the Indians of Hispaniola became almost extinct, resort was had to the neighboring islands. Spanish agents in Spanish ships went to a large number of



DRIVING WILD CATTLE IN HAYTI.

the little islands in the south, and gave the Indians to understand that by visiting Hispaniola and receiving baptism and instruction in the doctrine of Christianity, they would be allowed to become Christians, whereupon the Spaniards would receive them as brethren. Thousands of them were thus induced to come, only to find they had been cruelly tricked. This device not bearing repetition, numbers were thereafter kidnapped and brought by force. In less than one hundred years, Hayti, from a hundred thousand population was reduced to a few thousand, who skulked in the mountains like hunted wild beasts.

The place of human beings was taken by vast herds of cattle, the descendants of a few animals first brought by the Spaniards and allowed to run wild on the



interior plains of the island. Obligated to make the most of their scanty resources, the natives had become skillful in preserving the flesh of cattle, and by drying it with artificial heat had made what was called *boucan*, or jerked beef, an article of food which was highly esteemed as food for sailors, since its peculiar preservation gave it great value on a long sea-voyage. The term "Buccaneer" is derived from the Carib word *boucan*, signifying barbacued meat. The Carribbean Indians, who were great flesh-eaters, dried their meats, whether of cattle, fish, or humans (for they were cannibals), by laying it on a wooden grate over a slow fire of coals, a process by which the meat became cured without salt. This method was so effective that the early Portuguese and Spanish settlers soon applied it for the curing of great quantities which they sold for ships' stores. Hunters, especially in Hispaniola, directly began the killing of wild cattle for this purpose and soon came to be called by the Caribs *boucans*, which was presently changed to the softer term *Buccaneer*.

The word "Filibuster" had its origin in a mispronunciation by the French of the term "Freebooter" and was applied long before that of *Buccaneer*, just as cruising on piratical undertakings preceded the hunting and curing of meats, as described. An occasional English, French or Dutch vessel came along the coast, and to these straggling callers the boucan was sold for food, and the opportunity was seized to smuggle out of the country vast quantities of hides, for which the strangers were willing to pay far higher prices than could be extracted from the monopolizing Spaniards. A regular trade thus sprang up, which was extremely lucrative, and finally ships bound to the south called regularly for boucan, hides and water. The possible profits of such commerce were quickly appreciated by the French, English and Dutch settlers in Hayti, who established themselves in the trade of curing beef and selling hides. The Spaniards having secured a monopoly of trade and commerce from Mexico to Cape Horn and from Cape Horn to California, every seaman of the other countries seeking profitable relations with the natives of this vast region entertained a natural hatred for everything Spanish. The times then became much rougher through the rivalry that succeeded than ever they have been since; every sailor was also a soldier, a fighting man almost by occupation, and as ready with his weapons as with his ropes.

#### SAILORS TURNED SOLDIERS.

Finding large gains in the illicit butcher trade of Hayti, sailors from several countries took to it as a pleasant relief from the monotony of shipboard life, and thus, while their ships waited, large bands were formed, equally ready either to hunt the wild cattle or to fight the Spanish who attempted to interfere with the chase. These hunters, soldiers, sailors, with no family ties, bound to their brethren by a common hatred of the Spanish, developed into Buccaneer bands, which for one hundred years were at once the inspiration and terror of the Spanish seas. While the men were of every nationality, the majority were English, French and Dutch, who in the wars of the continent had learned to regard the Spanish as the deadly foe of all.

In 1625, hardy adventurers in the Spanish main received a semi-official recog-



dition from both the English and the French governments. The naval power of Spain had been on the decline ever since the defeat of the Invincible Armada in 1588, and both the English and French deemed the season propitious to curtail the power of Spain in the New World. A joint expedition was sent out, composed of equal numbers of English and French colonists, and the Island of St. Christopher was fixed upon as suitable for a new settlement. At first the methods of the colonists differed little from those of the Spaniards, for finding the island inhabited by Caribs the colonists set upon the unlucky savages, killed some and expelled the rest. A colony was thus auspiciously begun, but no sooner had buildings been erected and commerce fairly established than the settlers fell out among themselves. The English and French could not agree any better in the New than in the Old World, and in four years the ill-assorted colonists were almost at open war. In the meantime the Spanish were not idle, but indignant at the presumption of other nations in trying to effect a settlement in territory which they had been accustomed to regard as their own, a fleet of thirty-nine large vessels was fitted out and sent from Spain to drive away the Dutch from the towns which they had built in Brazil and other parts of South America, and incidentally to clear away the English and French from the West Indies. Intelligence of the intentions of the Spanish reached France, and with a powerful fleet the famous de Cusac sailed to protect St. Christopher. He arrived in the spring of 1629, and finding the English and French colonists embroiled, took the part of his countrymen, sunk several English vessels which lay in the roads, and then "having reduced the English to reason," and hearing nothing of the Spanish fleet, supposing that it had gone on to Brazil, he departed to cruise in the Gulf of Mexico and to attack any Spanish settlements that seemed to be unarmed and helpless.

#### **CAPTURE OF THE COLONISTS, WHO SOON AFTER RE-ESTABLISH THEMSELVES.**

His vessels had scarcely disappeared when sails were seen in the offing and the stately Spanish fleet dropped anchor before the island. The colonists were in despair. It was already known that war had been declared against Spain by England, France and Holland, and the settlers expected no mercy. Had they been united they might have arrayed twelve hundred men against the fleet and made a stout resistance, but divided they had no hope. The French crowded into their vessels and escaped, but there were not enough ships for all, since the destruction of the crafts by de Cusac; not even all the French could go, and those who were compelled to remain surrendered to the Spanish Admiral, Don Frederick de Toledo.

Don Frederick was embarrassed by the situation. He would willingly have massacred them to the last man, but could scarcely afford to do so since they were a colony under regular government authority. He could not leave a garrison, for he needed every man to operate against the Dutch in Brazil; nor could he tell when he might meet de Cusac's fleet which he knew to be in American waters. So he ordered all the vessels that could be found to be



loaded with the colonists; some, particularly the more able bodied of the English, he took on board his own fleet, and the remainder were paroled on their promise to leave the island at the earliest possible moment. This done, he directed the ships of the colonists to put off to sea, after which he himself started for the Brazilian coast. But no sooner had the Spanish fleet left the



THE CAPTURE OF TORTUGA.

the bay, loaded vessels with stone and placed them in such a position that on a few hours' notice the bay could be blocked up by sinking a stone-laden ship at the entrance to the harbor. Here they deemed themselves safe, and as the ships of all nations called at Tortuga for stores and hides, the colonists began to grow rich.

West Indies than back came the colonists, and joined by others from Hayti took up their old quarters, and resolving not again to be so easily driven out they began to look around for a permanent habitation. To the north-east of Hispaniola is the small island of Tortugas which the Spanish had fortified and where they had placed a garrison. Considering this place favorable for their purpose, and from its isolation tolerably secure against sudden attack, the colonists summoned all their forces, and being joined by all the cattle hunters of Hayti, surprised the Spanish post at Tortuga, massacred the garrison and occupied the island.

#### FORMATION OF A COMMUNISTIC SETTLEMENT.

In haste they threw up rude fortifications, and made ready in case the Spanish fleet returned that way, to give it a warm reception. They were poorly provided with cannon, but had fire-arms in plenty. They erected a mole in



While these things were going on the English and French, under different leaders and at different times, made settlements in many other islands bordering the Caribbean Sea. One by one these colonies grew in size and of importance, and as they did so were taken under home protection. Governors were sent out from London and Paris, and as they came they brought with them favorites, and grants dispossessing the original colonists, many of whom not obtaining the justice for which they asked, went to Tortuga. Here an ideal government of freebooters prevailed. The theory of their society was in several points communistic; meats, vegetables, fruits, in fact all necessities were held in common. Money and other valuables were separate possessions, but so honest were the Tortuga people in reference to each other that there was no lock, bar or bolt to be found in the whole island, while a man who stole from his fellows was judged worthy of the severest punishment.

#### MASSACRE OF THE COLONISTS BY SPANIARDS.

So the colony grew and prospered, and might have been known in history as the beginning of a peaceful conquest by the English and French of the West Indies, had it not been for the jealousy of the Spanish. They could not tolerate the idea of a foreign settlement under their noses, and after long

watching for an opportunity, at last, in 1638, during a great hunting season, when most of the Tortuga men were absent chasing cattle on the mainland, the Spanish of San Domingo fitted out an expedition against the island colonists. As they expected, few men were found on the island, and these unprepared to receive them. The garrison was therefore captured, but not without



DEFENCE OF THE COLONISTS.



resistance, and cruelly put to the sword; a number of Englishmen who surrendered on the promise that they would be allowed to return to England, were hung to the nearest trees; the factories and drying-houses of the settlement were burned, and, confident that no more colonization would be attempted in that quarter, the victorious Spaniards not thinking it necessary even to leave a garrison at Tortuga, sailed back to San Domingo.

Scarcely had they gone, however, than the survivors of the colonists came out of their hiding places in Tortuga, the hunting parties returned from Hayti, and three hundred strong they assembled, determined to renew their settlement. For the first time, they elected a commander and began a large system of defensive works to protect themselves against future inroads of the Spanish. In revenge for what they and their companions had suffered, they also began to assume the offensive, and even to make attacks on such Spanish vessels as came near or passed close by their island. No solitary Spanish ship was safe. In their open boats the freebooters would chase a vessel for days, would clamber up the sides, and take the ship in spite of the heartiest resistance. They even extended their operations to the Spanish settlements in the neighboring islands, and carried on with them a warfare that was as unceasing as it was savage.

#### THE COLONISTS TURN PIRATES.

By a curious national movement, sometimes observable in history, a division was made apparent between the English and the French, who constituted the majority of the Tortuga freebooters. The power of France was steadily growing in the West Indies, and the French governors supported the Buccaneers of their own nation in claims to land and islands where they had settled. The English governors of the West Indies, while willing, were not able to do the same for the people of their own nationality, because of the disputes between Charles and his parliament, a dissension soon to be followed by civil war in England. This difference in circumstances led to a division in business, if such an expression is allowable, between the English and the French. The Englishmen not being supported in their claims to land, took to sea and became cruisers; the French, on the other hand, remained cattle hunters; the former were proud to apply to themselves the name Buccaneers; the latter called themselves, and were called by others, Filibusters. Marvellously their numbers increased; scarcely a ship touched at Tortuga or in its neighborhood without contributing to the warlike society one or more discontented sailors; deserters from the European armies found security among the Buccaneers; a previous course of crime was no objection to the reception of a fresh accession to their ranks, for no certificate of moral character was required. Adventurers from every country came in swarms, and oddly enough, a curious commentary on the morals of the time is found in the fact that one of their leaders originally joined the band because he was in debt, and desired to raise the funds to liquidate his obligations. The three hundred adventurers soon became as many thousands, and all were inspired by a common

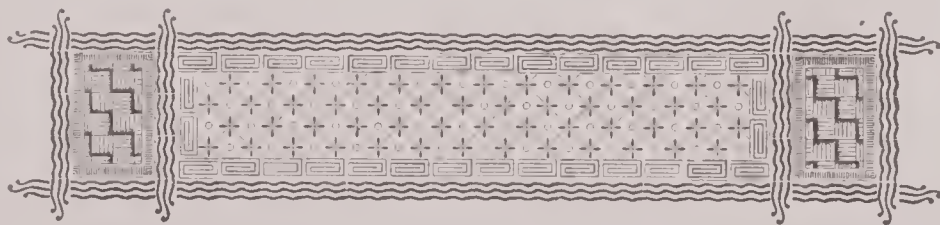


hatred of the Spanish. More than one ship was fitted out in England and France by private means, for the purpose of preying on Spanish commerce in the American seas, and in a few years after the destruction of the settlement by the Spanish, a powerful fleet had its headquarters at Tortuga, and was ready at a day's notice to sail in any direction in quest of booty.

**BUCCANEERS ALWAYS READY FOR A FIGHT.**

It was at this time in the power of either the English or the French government to make a regular community of the Buccaneers, but neither saw fit to do so, for both found it a decided advantage to encourage these bands of freebooters since they could be employed to do any desperate service that might be required, and at any time their acts could be disavowed should it become necessary or politic to do so. They constituted a body of ill-trained, but brave and reliable auxiliaries, whose value as soldiers was enhanced by the possession of a large fleet of vessels, small in size indeed, but well armed and managed with a degree of skill in seamanship that at times seemed almost miraculous. Both fleet and men were ready to be hired by any nation that chanced at the moment to be at war with Spain, though the Buccaneers would fight anybody, if victory promised a good booty. Their organization was self-sustaining and the nation that employed them was not compelled in time of peace to keep up a large force for which there was no employment, for as soon as the temporary engagement was ended, the Buccaneers were as much at home as before and resumed with no less alacrity the business of fighting Spaniards on their own account. They were thus employed at different times by the English, the French, the Dutch and the Portuguese, to all of whom they rendered good service in every part of the Spanish main.

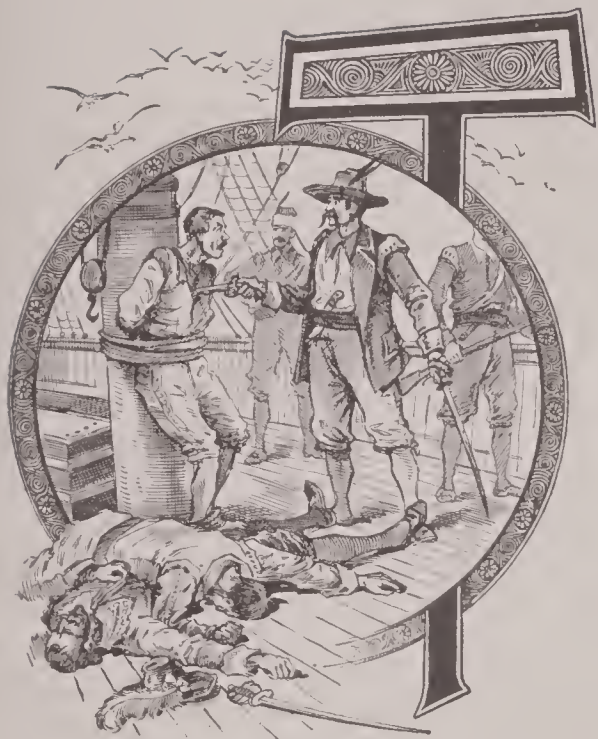
As soon as an engagement had been concluded with any power, the flag of that nation was at once hoisted by all the Buccaneer ships. Commissions were issued to their commanders, and to all intents and purposes they were in the service of the hostile power, and if taken were entitled to all the privileges and immunities of prisoners of war. But Buccaneers were seldom taken, for rarely did they give, and still more rarely did they ask, quarters; their war with Spain was to the death.





## CHAPTER XXIV.

### FORTIFICATION OF THE ROBBER'S NEST.



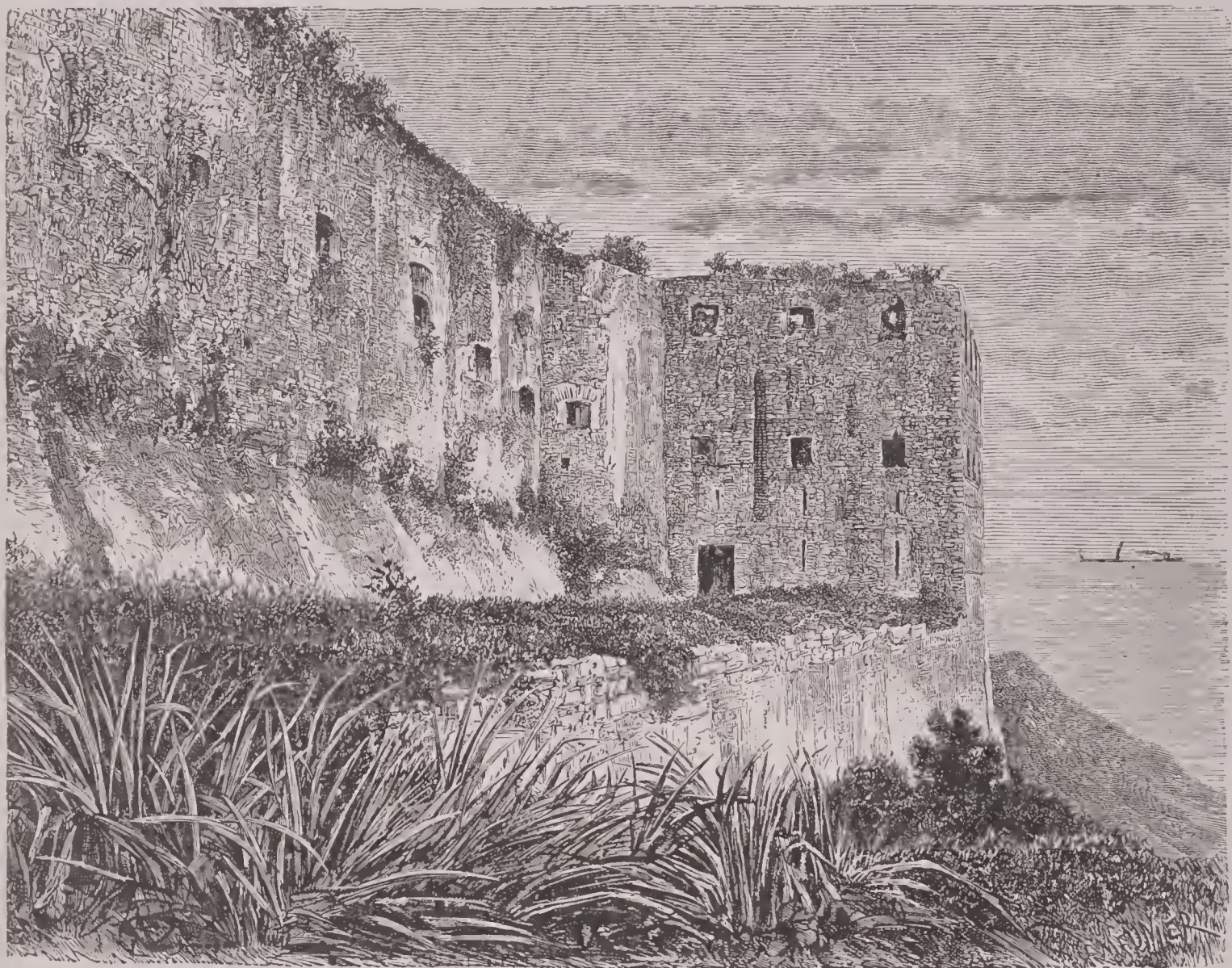
THE Buccaneers having developed into a regular organization, one of their first cares was to provide a home-station that should be impregnable to any force that could be brought against it. To this end they set to work to fortify their rocky isle, so as to make it absolutely impregnable to attack. Among their numbers were now many professional soldiers, men who had fought for and against Cromwell, who had followed Turenne to victory, and had studied the fortresses planned by Vaughan. The assistance of engineers was therefore called in and Tortuga was put in a condition of defense with a professional skill and completeness that made all previous attempts at fortification trifles by comparison, and

bid fair to set at defiance all efforts of any hostile force, however strong, to effect a capture.

The island lent itself with ease to the plan of defence. About twenty-five miles long by six in breadth, it is naturally defended on two sides by precipices high enough to prevent any attempt at scaling, and so abrupt in their descent, that for many miles not even the smallest wherry can find a shelf jutting into the sea where a landing can be effected. Any hostile efforts on these sides would be futile since a straggling party that might escape the giant breakers of the iron-bound coast and by herculean efforts climb the cliffs, would be unable to effect anything against the organized force of a body of freebooters. On the third side, Tortuga is naturally defended by a maze of reefs, shoals and quicksands, which the boldest navigator would not dare attempt to pass, and in which skill in seamanship would count for nothing. On the fourth is a large harbor, the only one in the island where a land-locked bay presents a beach so gradual, so sloping, that ships even of light draught must anchor at some distance from the land, and their crews can approach only in boats. The thousand isles of the Caribbean present no other spot so favorable as a home for outlaws, and here the robbers of the deep made their nest. Skilled engineers ran parallels, redoubts were thrown up on the enclosing points of land, heavy guns, captured from Spanish ships, were placed in position to command the entrance to the harbor, water batteries were erected



to prevent landing by boats, large magazines were constructed and filled with stores, a garrison was trained to perform the work of defence quickly and well, and a French admiral, who had sailed around the world and examined the fortresses of every land, pronounced the position impregnable. Now were the sea rovers no longer homeless, but with a great fleet, a strong fortress and constantly increasing numbers, they were absolute masters of the sea, and woe befel every merchant vessel that by incautiousness or accident came into the waters over which the Buccaneers kept such careful watch.



RUINS OF TORTUGA.

**DESPERATE PROWLERS OF THE DEEP.**

The fleets of the pirates finally issued from the harbor of Tortuga, and being well provided with stores, set sail for the great water highways by which the Spanish galleons returned to Europe, laden with the spoils of the New World. The heavy Spanish vessels, unable to run away from the light ships of the freebooters, were captured by wholesale. Incredible were the spoils. From one vessel it is recorded that over three million dollars' worth of gold and gems were taken to say nothing of silver, which the Buccaneers did not value, as being a thing of little worth and too common to be carried away. Alarmed at



the success of the Buccaneers, the Spanish armed their vessels with artillery and provided fire-arms and cutlasses for the crews, but to no purpose, since resistance only exasperated the freebooters, and where it was sufficiently desperate to be fatal to any of their number, they took a terrible revenge by making all their captives "walk the plank." Growing more bitter as the years passed on, and the enmity between themselves and the Spaniards always increasing, the pirates became more savage in the treatment of their prisoners. When a galleon was taken and the booty found on board was sufficient to provide a handsome sum for each of the captors, the crew of the vessel was sometimes allowed to depart, but woe to the captives when the treasure was deemed



CUTTING THE HEADS OFF HIS CAPTIVES.

inadequate for their ransom; they were sometimes stood in line on the deck of their vessel and shot, but more frequently were hanged in batches, the last survivors being compelled to be the executioners of their fellows. One noted Buccaneer, having taken a ship in which he found only a few thousand dollars, a miserable spoil for a man of his aspirations, ordered the crew below. They went, and after he had taken his station by the main hatchway, armed with a huge cutlass, they were ordered to come up, one at a time. The order was obeyed, and as each head appeared above the floor, the Buccaneer cut it off. Nor was any secret made of these atrocities; on the contrary they were paraded before the world, the Buccaneers boasting that they themselves were



the chosen instruments of Heaven to visit divine vengeance on the Spaniard in return for the horrible cruelties the latter had practised on the Indians. They seemed to be inspired by a wild desire to inflict on their enemies every conceivable kind of torture, and the records of their doings read like a chapter from the chronicles of so many demons.

The Spanish Government finding it impossible for its ships to escape, adopted the policy of sending a fleet of men-of-war twice a year to protect the merchantmen, but even this plan was far from successful, since the Buccaneers were grown so bold that they feared a man-of-war no more than a merchant vessel, and the Spaniards were become so timid that from terror of the Buccaneers' name, it not infrequently happened the men-of-war would set sail and flee away, providing for their own safety and leaving the merchantmen they were sent to convoy a helpless prey to the dauntless pirates.

#### RECKLESS BRAVERY OF THE BUCCANEERS.

Nor was this timidity unjustified, for even during their early history the Buccaneers were absolutely without fear. While they were yet hunters, two of their number, a Frenchman and an Englishman, were surprised on the plains of Hayti by a party of fifty Spanish lancers all well mounted. The latter had sabres and lances, but no guns, while the two Buccaneers were armed with the best fire-arms that could then be bought for money. Taking their stand back to back, the two plucky men prepared for a desperate resistance. Summoned by the Spaniards to surrender, they answered that the first men who approached them would die. In vain the lancers argued the futility of resistance, the hunters had always but one answer, that they would kill the man who approached them. The cowardly Spaniards hesitated. Brave enough when dealing with timid and unarmed Indians, they were powerless before these two undaunted men. Not one among their number was willing to take the risk, for they were morally certain, that even should they make a rush, however quickly it was done, two of their number would bite the dust. Having exhausted their powers of persuasion to no purpose, they began to move off, when suddenly both the Buccaneers raised their pieces to their shoulders at which the lancers became seized by a sudden panic, and putting spurs to their horses they galloped off at full speed frightened half to death at the fearless bearing of these two men.

#### CROMWELL'S DEFEAT OF CHARLES I.

While the affairs of the sea rovers were thus favorably progressing, events took place in Europe which brought the Buccaneers into yet greater national importance. The dissensions between Charles I and his Parliament had become too violent to be settled by amicable means, and after long negotiation, conducted on both sides with apparent sincerity but real duplicity, an appeal was had to arms. The civil war, inauspiciously begun at Edge Hill Moor, was ended at Naseby by the total defeat of the King, and Cromwell came into power as Lord Protector. No sooner was he established as the absolute ruler

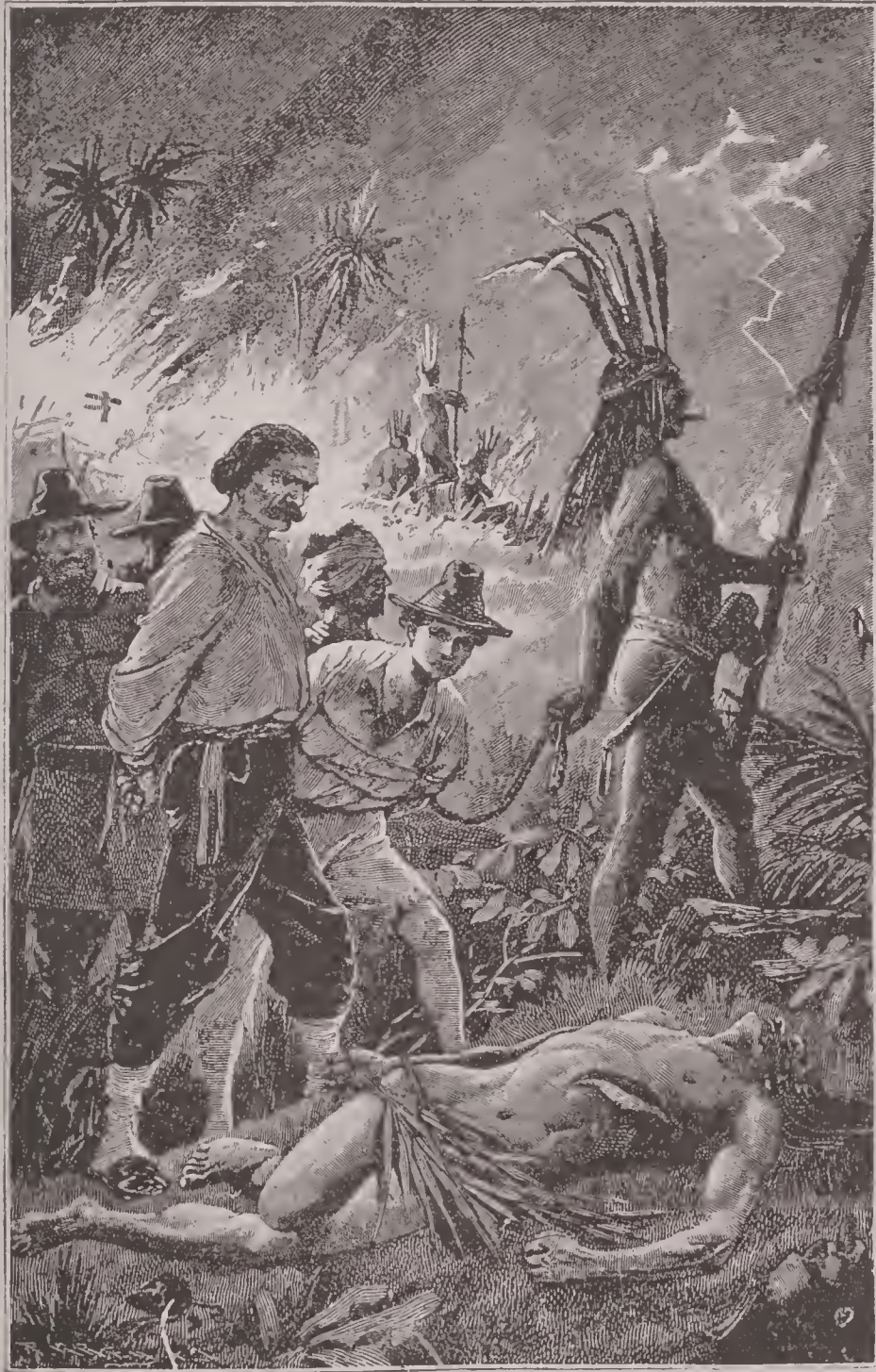


of Great Britain than he began an aggressive foreign policy to divert the attention of his people from the internal affairs of the country. While England was governed by the sword, her soldiers and sailors were winning glorious victories abroad. Blake carried the terror of the English name to regions where the power of England had before been scouted; and on land, the Ironsides startled Turenne by the stern shout of exultation with which they advanced to

the combat. It was the fixed purpose of Cromwell to humble the power of Spain everywhere, and to this end a large fleet under Admiral Penn was despatched to the waters of the New World, with instructions to harass the Spaniards in every quarter and if possible to conquer some island or country that might afterwards be used as a basis of future operations.

#### THE ENGLISH DRIVEN FROM THEIR DESIGNS ON HAYTI.

Arrived in the West Indies, Penn formed the bold design of conquering and annexing to the British dominions the large and valuable island of Hayti and operations looking to this end were at once begun. The fleet proceeded along the coast, bombarded St. Domingo and other principal towns, and meeting with small resistance the English landed a large body of men and instituted an effort to make a permanent conquest. But though victorious on the sea, the attempts of the English on



ENGLISH PRISONERS IN THE HANDS OF THE HAYTIANS.

land were not to meet with such glorious success. The Spaniards, beaten from their towns, took refuge in the forests, and being pursued to their retreats, they formed ambuscades in which many of the English were destroyed; they resorted to every means known to annoy the invaders and were aided by the Haytians, whose cruel customs rival those of the most savage In-



dians; they placed poisoned thorns in the line of march; into the wells, springs and streams they threw leaves of a shrub so deadly in its effect that the English who drank never spoke again. Many thus miserably perished, while others died of the torrid heat, others of the fevers which in that quarter of the globe prevail all the year round. Discouraged by the difficulties of the undertaking, Penn finally recalled his men from a task which seemed almost hopeless and resolved to look elsewhere for laurels.

Directing his fleet to rendezvous at Tortuga, he made careful enquiries of the Buccaneer leader as to the Spanish settlements in the Antilles, and determined to make his next effort on Jamaica. Being assured, however, that the strength of the fortifications and numbers of the garrison were more than a match for his own force, he engaged the Buccaneer fleet and force to co-operate with his own, and together the two fleets sailed from Tortuga on a voyage of conquest. It was the largest fleet that had ever manœvered in that part of the world against the Spaniards, consisting as it did of twenty-two English ships of the line and nearly thirty Buccaneer crafts, large and small.

#### A CONQUEST WITHOUT SPOILS.

All displayed the English flag, for during the expedition at least they were in the service of the British government. The effort was a signal success. Jamaica was taken, but to the rovers the result was a sore disappointment, for although they did most of the fighting and to their able assistance was due the credit of the conquest, they were not permitted to plunder, the Admiral commanding that private property should be respected. While this was strictly in accordance with the laws of civilized warfare, it was so signally in contradiction with all Buccaneer usage and tradition that it caused the most intense dissatisfaction. The rovers regarded Spaniards as beyond the bonds of civilization, and mindful of what their enemies had done to them, considered themselves quite justified not only in robbing a Spaniard of his money, but also in torturing him to make him tell where it was should he have taken the precaution to hide it. Not to be allowed to carry out their favorite practices was an unexpected hardship, but Penn was inflexible, the plundering propensities of his roguish assistants were restrained and he gave them to understand that he had employed them to fight, not to rob, and furthermore, hinted in plain language that any of them caught stealing would be summarily shot. This was not to be borne. In disgust and indignation the freebooters took their pay and sailed off, resolving to have nothing more to do with an English Admiral, but thenceforth to carry on business strictly on their own account.

The Jamaica conquest therefore formed an important epoch in the history of the Buccaneers, since it taught them their strength and the value of unity as an organization. From the year 1665, that of the Jamaica expedition, may be dated the rise of the leaders who carried the terror of the Buccaneer arms over every part of Central America and made the Spaniards tremble at the very mention of their name.



## PETER THE GREAT.

There were many men among them whose names are noted in history, but in Buccaneer literature the chief qualification for prominence was to be more of a desperado than the worst of the band. Such was the doubtful distinction of a French pirate called, after the great Russian Czar, Peter the Great, who, originally a common sailor, acquired among these hardy cutthroats a reputation



BUCCANEERS CAPTURING A GALLEON.

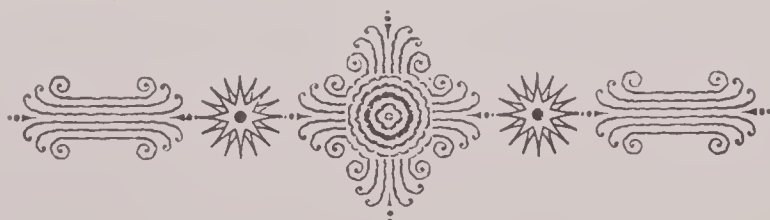
such as was enjoyed by but few of their number. It was Peter the Great who after cruising in vain for weeks without so much as a sign of a Spanish sail, suddenly found both provisions and water exhausted and himself and companions in the utmost straits. At this moment the sails of a great ship appeared on the horizon and in her direction Peter the Great turned his prow. It was a Spanish galleon of the largest size, with over 300 men on



board. Peter could not muster twenty on his little schooner, but he held a council of war and laid the case before his men in a brief speech. "If we try to take this ship we may succeed and then again we may all be killed. If we do not take the ship we shall all perish of thirst, and I, for one, would rather die fighting than by inches under a burning sun." "So would we," shouted his crew, and the little schooner in which he sailed was soon rapidly approaching the great galleon. In astonishment the Spaniards on board contemplated the tiny craft which was approaching them, and the captain, in derision, ordered the mate to "get out the crane and hoist the prize on board."

#### SCUTTling HIS SHIP AND CAPTURING A GALLEON.

But the pirates needed no such assistance. Coming alongside, they sprang, cutlass in hand, up the side and fell like demons on the Spanish crew. In five minutes they were masters of the ship, the Spaniards had escaped destruction by surrender, and the galleon was headed for Tortuga. Looking round for the vessel in which the pirates had come, the captain of the captured ship was dumfounded when nothing was to be seen. "Where's your boat?" he asked of Peter. "She had gone down. We had no further use for her and scuttled her before we came on board." But Peter the Great did not remain many years with the rovers. Growing tired of his life, he one day, while most of the Buccaneers were absent on an expedition, loaded a ship with booty obtained in several years of pillage, communicated his purpose to some other Frenchmen as tired of buccaneering as himself, took them on board and started for France. The Buccaneer fleet returned a few days after his departure, and angry at his desertion and the more so because it was believed he had not been particular as to whose booty he had taken when loading, but had indiscriminately piled on board all he could lay his hands on, the swindled pirates put off to sea in a hurry to overtake and make an example of him. They chased him half across the Atlantic, and came in sight of his sails one day, but the Great Peter having no mind to associate longer with such rogues, crowded on all the canvas he could carry, and with a brisk breeze soon left them far in the rear. He got safely to France, which was more than he deserved, and there he invested his money, bought a title, founded a noble family, several members of which a hundred years later were guillotined during the French Revolution, while the money that had come to him by robbery was speedily dissipated, and Peter's descendants were left as poor as Peter himself was when he ran away from Dieppe to become a pirate.





## CHAPTER XXV.

### BARTHOLOMEW THE EXTERMINATOR.



MORE desperate than any of his predecessors was the ocean scourge known as Bartholomew the Exterminator. Who he was, or where he came from, nobody knew, for he pops up all of a sudden in pirate history as the captain of a Buccaneer ship with four three-pounder guns and about thirty men, prowling about over the seas ready to prey on anything Spanish.

Bartholomew's most desperate undertaking as a pirate was the attacking of a big galleon that had a crew of seventy sailors, all well armed, besides many passengers, equally well provided to resist any effort at capture. Coming alongside the galleon, the order to board was given, but the captain was ready to receive them, and his men recognizing the nature of their adversary, deter-

mined to fight for their lives. And they did fight, so lustily too, that Bartholomew and his desperadoes were driven back to their own ship which some of them were only able to reach by swimming, for several were forced into the water.

Thus discomfitted, the Buccaneer hauled off, and instead of again trying to board, contented himself with keeping up a fire of musketry and cannon on the doomed vessel. The Spaniard had twenty guns, but every man that attempted to work them was shot through the head. The captain of the Spanish ship at last tried to hoist sail and get away, but the sailors who climbed the ropes were shot and fell on the deck. For five long hours the battle was kept up at long range, and until the Buccaneers again came to close quarters, when they found that their fire had been so deadly that there were not enough men left alive on the Spaniard to make resistance.

But his triumph was short lived. Proud of his capture, he deserted his own ship and took his crew on the galleon, and then paraded up and down the coast of Cuba to display his prize. It was a piece of ill-timed braggadocio, for running into a Cuban port for water, three Spanish men-of-war suddenly appeared at the mouth of the harbor. The Buccaneers made a stout fight, but their ship was beaten to pieces and most of the crew killed. Bartholomew was taken, after his ammunition was all gone and his cutlass broken, and as the



Spaniards did not know him, he hoped for a chance to escape. But the fleet ran into Campeachy, where Bartholomew had been once or twice in the exercise of his profession, and he was at once recognized by scores of people who were indebted to him for the loss of their valuables and were delighted beyond expression at the unexpected opportunity of quickly paying off old scores.

#### A HAIR-BREADTH ESCAPE.

His capture was an event of national importance; the day appointed for his execution was proclaimed a holiday. Fearing their captive, even in his chains, the Spaniards gave him no notice of his approaching fate, but one day his jailer dropped a hint of the truth, by pointing with his finger out of the cabin window to a neighboring hill on the shore where, most clearly defined against the sky, Bartholomew saw a newly-erected gibbet. "A word to the wise is sufficient," and, in some matters, Bartholomew was one of the wisest. That night, by a desperate effort the pirate chief got one hand free from his shackles, called the sentinel, and as soon as the man incautiously approached within his reach, struck him so



A FIGHT FOR LIFE.

terrible a blow on the temple that he fell dead. Seizing a couple of small wine-casks, he took one under each arm, and letting himself quietly out of the cabin window swam to shore, a distance of more than a mile.

But with his escape from the ship and the sharks of the harbor his troubles were only begun. He knew that with the first dawn the Spaniards and their bloodhounds would be on his track. How to elude them he knew not, but remembering that these animals were sometimes thrown off the scent



by running water, he found his way to the nearest stream, waded up it for several miles, then concealed himself at a point where the overhanging and moss-grown roots of a great tree presented a canopy above a pool of water not quite three feet deep. Here he took up his station, and for four days remained in this hiding place, half submerged in the water, while each day he could hear in the forest around his covert the baying of the hounds and encouraging shouts of the Spaniards eager for his life. Once the searching party passed within a hundred yards of his tree and he gave himself up for lost, but the hounds failed to take the scent; on another occasion two Spaniards and a negro sat on the roots above his head and discussed what they would do with the reward should they be so fortunate as to capture the fugitive. At last, however, the sounds of pursuit died away and he ventured forth from his place of concealment.

#### FOREST DANGERS ENCOUNTERED.

His condition was desperate. He was unarmed, half naked, and starving; in the midst of a hostile country, he dared not venture to ask for aid, not even to allow himself to be seen by a human being, for the irons, which he had not been able to get off his wrist or ankle, proclaimed his condition as an escaped fugitive, and he had learned from the conversation he overheard that the reward on his head was a princely fortune, which men would risk their lives to win. To add to the difficulties of his position, in every stream alligators abounded, every thicket was infested with ferocious animals, venomous reptiles and insects, while the ground was covered with thorns and he was without shoes.

For several days after his escape he could journey only by night, and his sufferings from hunger were frightful. He ate such roots or herbs as he could dig from the ground with his fingers; and to such an extremity of hunger was he reduced that a half putrid shell-fish he found on the shore seemed, as he afterward said, "to be the most delicious morsel I had ever tasted." He tore away a portion of his clothing and made a protection for his feet, which did not, however, prevent their becoming so swollen and cut with the thorns that with great difficulty could he take a step. When he came to a stream he endeavored to frighten away the alligators by making a noisy splashing in the water and then swam quickly across, trusting to good fortune to escape their all-devouring jaws. He had no knife, the Spaniards having been afraid to trust him with one, but finding a few embers, where a party of hunters had left a fire, he kindled them to a blaze, and utilized the flames to prepare, by burning and charring, a branch to answer as a club. It proved his salvation that night, for on climbing into a tree, his usual resting place, he was attacked by a jaguar which he had the good fortune to kill with a single blow of his weapon. With his teeth he tore the skin from the carcass, in which he encased his feet, thus providing a much more substantial protection than the rags which he had been wearing. The flesh of the animal made a



repast such as he had not enjoyed since his escape, and refreshed by animal food he said, "Once more I felt like I could fight a dozen Spaniards."

**BARTHOLOMEW FINDS SAFETY AT LAST.**

Fourteen days of incredible dangers and privations were passed by Bartholomew in his unparalleled journey through a tropical wilderness, when about noon of the fifteenth day as, almost overpowered by the heat and his sufferings, he was making his way through a bit of thorny jungle he heard the sound of hammers some distance ahead. Cautiously he approached the edge of the thicket and peeped out. Before him lay a stretch of level beach, on



A BATTLE WITH A JAGUAR.

which one or two tents had been set up; on a knoll some distance away stood a sentinel, scanning the forest for any sign of approaching enemies; a boat, pulled by a half dozen men with red shirts, was approaching the shore, and half a mile from the land was a Buccaneer ship, careened over on her side. The carpenters were caulking her timbers, and it was the sound of their busy hammers which first caught his ear.

The nearest pirates stood aghast at the figure which came out of the bushes and limped across the sand. Save a piece of cloth around the waist, and some torn pieces of jaguar skin on his feet, the man was naked; on one wrist and on the opposite ankle were the irons which he had borne from



Campeachy; his frame was gaunt with hunger, and covered with cuts and scars from the thorns, while his hair and beard were matted with dirt and grease, giving him a truly fearful appearance. In one hand Bartholomew bore his great black club, and in the other, as a last protection against starvation, a leg of the jaguar which he had killed. Almost delirious with suffering, Bartholomew could scarcely tell who he was, and the pirates had equal difficulty in believing that this was their former leader, whom they believed dead, but who had made his way alone and without arms through a hundred miles of the worst jungle in Central America.

**BARTHOLOMEW CAPTURES THE SHIP FROM WHICH HE ESCAPED.**

Joyfully received, he soon recuperated from his privations and proposed to his companions no less a project than the capture of the ship from which he had so narrowly escaped. A hundred volunteers accompanied him, and leaving their vessel some miles from Campeachy and out of sight, the freebooters proceeded, at dead of night, in open boats into the harbor. The vessel from which Bartholomew had fled was lying at anchor in the bay. Silently the boats came along side, but not so quietly but that they were espied and challenged by the watchman. In a low voice the Buccaneers explained in Spanish that they were bringing smuggled goods on board, and that the sentinel should have a fair share.

His cupidity overcoming his caution, the sailor on watch bade the strangers approach, and a dozen Buccaneers, with bundles and bales began to climb the side. In a moment the sentinel was stabbed, the ropes were manned, and the crew awoke to find the main deck held by five-score of cutthroats armed to the teeth, and the ship on her way out of the harbor, while Bartholomew pleasantly introduced himself to them in a little speech before throwing them overboard, and sent his quondam jailer back in a small boat to give his compliments to the people of the town, and to suggest that the reward for his capture be paid to the widows and orphans of the sailors of the captured ship.

**OTHER CRUEL AND DESPERATE PIRATES.**

And there were many like Bartholomew; Dumont, who with one companion captured a Spanish ship, and compelled the crew to sail it for him to Tortuga; and L'Olonnais, who used in his pleasant moments to hang up captured Spaniards by their beards to make them tell where their money was; and Smith, who, single-handed, chased the population of a Cuban town into the woods; and Davis, who made a specialty of tying down his captives so they could not stir hand or foot, and then tickling them to death; and Otto the Dutchman, who, with one stroke of his ten-pound cutlass, cut a Spaniard exactly in half; and Pierson, a Norwegian, who, with a sabre, would shave off the ears of his prisoners close to the head and made a boast that he had cut off over seven hundred pairs of ears without once touching the victims' shoulders; and Matt, the Italian, who made a collection of nearly a thousand great toes, of which he had deprived his captives, and always became angry if the suspicion





RAID OF THE BUCCANEERS.



was expressed that any one captive contributed more than one great toe. "They are none of them mates," he would roar, laying his hand on the cutlass that always swung at his side, and all argument ceased at this point. And there was Monbars, also called an Exterminator, who when a boy contracted so intense a hatred of the Spaniards from reading of their conquests in the New World, that in a school-play he fell foul of a companion who personated a Spaniard and tried to kill him, and was only prevented from doing so by a bailiff who chanced to be a witness of the boy's ferocity. Such a beginning boded ill for the Spaniards, and Monbars deserved his nickname as much as did Bartholomew. Nor must "Cross-Eyed John" be forgotten, who could shoot as well as if both eyes were good, and who, when his ship was boarded and taken by an overwhelming force of the enemy, went below and blew up the magazine rather than surrender.

Brave captains make men brave, and it was under the leadership of such men that the Buccaneers learned their trade; it was the reputation of such men that attracted adventurers and outlaws from every land; people saw only the brilliant courage and forgot the brutal ferocity which underlay the characters of the bandit chief; over the life of a Buccaneer, to the youth of that day, the rosy light of romance was shed; men did not remember that every coin gained by the outlaws was the price of blood. It was under such leaders, too, that the Buccaneers learned their own strength and the value of united action, and from scattered bands they united themselves into great armies, and concentrated the prowling pirate ships into fleets of irresistible might and prowess.





## CHAPTER XXVI.

### THE BUCCANEERS SEEK TO ACQUIRE LANDED POSSESSIONS.



BEHOLD them now, these Buccaneers, with a great fleet of upwards of fifty sail, with several thousand men, desperadoes all, each bearded like a pard and armed to the teeth, with carbine slung across his back, two brace of pistols in his belt, and heavy cutlass swinging at his side, cutting loose from all governments and determined to conquer for themselves. No longer are they satisfied with the plunder of Spanish ships. They are resolved to carry their exploits still further. At Jamaica they have learned that they can fight on land as well as on sea, and are not slow to improve by the knowledge thus gained.

Shortly after the Jamaica expedition, there was a grand rendezvous at Tortuga, a mass meeting of cut-throats and leading Buccaneers to set forth the necessity of unity, the need of discipline and of a commander. Ballots were taken, and one Mansvelt, a Dutchman, was almost unanimously elected their commander-in-chief. At once he prepared for a considerable exploit; nothing less than an attempt to found colonies and establish fortifications on the mainland. Before this time, L'Olonnais and Michel Le Basque had taken Maracaibo and Gibraltar in the Gulf of Venezuela, with a plunder of four hundred thousand crowns. But their expeditions were simple raids, designed merely to gratify the passing needs of the moment. The purpose of Mansvelt looked much further into the future, being a design for conquest and permanent occupancy.

#### AMBITIONS OF MANSVELT THE BOLD.

All the forces of the Buccaneers were summoned, and with fifteen vessels and nine hundred men Mansvelt left Tortuga on his conquering expedition. He started for the mainland, designing first to subject to Buccaneer control what territory he could on the continent, and then to found permanent colonies or settlements. There was much deliberation as to the proper point to attack, for it was desirable that some region should be chosen where the booty was likely to be abundant, and in the second place that the country should have natural advantages that would commend it to permanent occupation. The choice



of the majority fell on Costa Rica, which was therefore selected as the objective point.

It being important to have a base of operations, for the invasion was to be conducted in true military style, the Island of St. Catherine near the coast was attacked in order that it might be used as a rendezvous, and as it was at no great distance from Costa Rica it could be made a convenient place from which operations against the Spanish might be conducted. The Spanish garrison of the place made a defense, but the overwhelming numbers of the Buccaneers prevailed and soon drove the Spaniards to the mainland. Leaving a party of men at St. Catherine's to guard the island against Spanish attack, Mansvelt sailed up the coast seeking for a proper point on which to make a descent, but everywhere the inhabitants were on their guard and presented so formidable a front that at no place did the Buccaneer commander venture to land his men. Unable to accomplish anything he returned to St. Catherine's and was agreeably surprised to find that his deputy during his absence had erected strong fortifications, so strong in fact as to render the place practically impregnable, since a hostile fleet, owing to the nature of the harbor, was compelled to lie beyond cannon-shot and could only attack the island with boats.

Resolved to hold so favorable a station, Mansvelt went to Jamaica for assistance for his projected raid on the mainland, hoping to secure enough English troops and vessels to enable him to land at any point he pleased in Costa Rica. But the governor, while willing enough to keep the Buccaneers in Jamaica, was not favorable to their scheme of independence. A Buccaneer state in or near the Caribbean Sea might in time prove a formidable menace to English power; so he refused assistance and carried his opposition to the extent of declining to allow Mansvelt to recruit his forces from British volunteers for the proposed raid on the Spanish territory. Sorely disappointed the pirate chief returned to Tortuga to summon all the Buccaneers to assist in his expedition, but on the way to the robber stronghold he died of a fever contracted on the coast of Costa Rica and was succeeded in the command by one of the most remarkable men of that or any other age.

#### A SKETCH OF HENRY MORGAN THE SEA BANDIT.

Henry Morgan, in some respects the greatest of robber chiefs, when a boy, inspired by tales he heard and read of the doings of the Buccaneers, ran away from home to seek his fortune on the seas. When a youth of fourteen he joined the Buccaneers at Tortuga in the capacity of an engagé. This at that time was the best recognized method of obtaining a standing among the freebooters. A youth seeking to join their bands must first act as the servant of a Buccaneer in good standing. The applicant was enlisted as a servant, and did a servant's work. The hardest labor fell to his lot, for the Buccaneer believed in severe training. The work of the engagé was incessant, and his treatment brutal. On one occasion an engagé remonstrated with his master at being required to do Sunday labor, and recited for that worthy the command-



ment: "Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy." "Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work." With a fierce oath and a blow, the outlaw turned upon his servant, "but I say unto you six days shalt thou labor and skin steers, and on the seventh shalt thou carry the skins to the shore."

#### A MAN OF DESTINY.

The engagé served three years as a prentice pirate, and the only hope he had of earlier emancipation was by becoming a good shot. In the pirate crews a marksman was always valuable, and an apprentice pirate by proving his skill with rifle or pistol was soon freed from his bondage and admitted to the Buccaneer band with a servant of his own. Morgan was not long a servant, for so great was his dexterity with all kinds of arms that in a few months he emancipated himself and soon demonstrated his ability for leadership. When a Spanish ship was to be boarded, Morgan was the first to mount, with a cutlass between his teeth; when a cannon was to be fired, Morgan stood at the breech and took aim; when any service, however, desperate was to be performed, Morgan was the first to volunteer. He seemed to bear a charmed life. Time and again had he been struck by musket balls, but never more than slightly wounded, while he passed unscathed through a thousand perils. Before he was twenty years old, he was a petty officer in one of the best ships owned by the Buccaneers; at twenty-five he had a ship of his own; at thirty he was second in command to Mansvelt, and at the death of that leader became the supreme head of the pirate organization. He was a natural leader of men, and the desperadoes under his command looked up to him, in spite of his youth, for advice and counsel in all desperate straits. A man of great projects, he at once began to put into execution the schemes of conquest already commenced by his predecessor.

#### ACTIVE PREPARATIONS FOR WAR.

For some weeks after the death of Mansvelt, the headquarters at Tortuga presented a busy scene. Councils of war were continually held as the chiefs discussed various points along the Spanish coast; maps were consulted, slaves and captives were questioned as to the wealth, trade, population, fortifications and available strength of the different towns under consideration. At first, the general opinion was favorable to a continuation of Mansvelt's policy against Costa Rica, but to this Morgan was opposed, for he wished to do something that should bear the stamp of individuality and in a different line from what had before been attempted; so he was not sorry to learn by the arrival of a ship with a few half starved men, that the Spanish had cut off the retreat of the most of the Buccaneer force at St. Catherine's, and had retaken the island, only a few escaping in a small vessel. Further attempts in this direction were therefore useless, and Morgan turned his attention to Cuba. He formed the bold design of attacking Havana and sent spies to examine the forts, but these were found too strong for any force the freebooters could bring against them, and the Spaniards being on the alert—for in some way intelligence had got



abroad that a great design was under consideration—the projected attack on the Cuban capital was abandoned. Other points were then discussed, and after obtaining the fullest possible information, Puerto del Principe, an inland city midway the island of Cuba, was selected for the raid.

Collecting all his forces, Morgan sailed from Tortuga, and one Saturday afternoon in August, 1667, the Buccaneer fleet arrived off Nuevitas, the port of Puerto del Principe. All the population were enjoying a holiday, but at sight of the twelve pirate ships in the harbor, the merriment was suspended. An hour later Nuevitas was deserted, its inhabitants had fled. Before night seven hundred pirates embarked on the beach and camped in the abandoned houses, but before their fires had begun to blaze, pale riders on horses weary with forty-five miles of mountain road, hurried through the gates of Puerto, bearing intelligence of the landing of the pirate forces. The rich and populous city was in a panic. "The pirates are coming," was the dread intelligence that passed from mouth to mouth. There was no rest that night; the men hurried to and fro preparing weapons and ammunition. Women packed their valuables on the backs of horses and mules for transportation to the mountains. All night long the exodus continued; by morning the city was deserted. Women, children and slaves had dispersed in every direction except those of Nuevitas; the men were marching toward the coast to repel the intruders, for Puerto was not to be won without a struggle.

The Spanish forces marched twenty miles toward the coast, and in a narrow defile in the mountains they halted, cut down trees, formed an abattis, threw up entrenchments, and waited for the pirates. Towards evening the head of the invading force appeared in the defile and was received with a lively fusillade. The Buccaneers halted; Morgan reconnoitred the situation of the defending force and found it too strong to be taken by direct attack. There was not a moment to be lost. As soon as night fell the pirate army left the road, made a long detour, and under the guidance of Indians who knew the country, crossed the mountains to the north of the Spaniards, climbing up and down the rocks, stumbling through the ravines, running against trees in the darkness, but still pressing onward, the whole body of the invaders left their enemies in the rear, and by dawn appeared on the plain before Puerto.

#### PUERTO DEL PRINCIPE TAKEN.

The Spaniards missed them, and sent out scouts, who returned with intelligence of their whereabouts, and the Spanish force was put in motion, cavalry going first with movements slow and cautious, but still advancing so rapidly that the infantry were left in the rear. Scarcely had the Spanish horsemen emerged from the forest into the open ground when they were confronted by the Buccaneer army drawn up in the shape of a crescent, on the edge of a jungle impenetrable by cavalry. The Spanish commander did not hesitate; the trumpets sounded a charge, and the cavalry threw themselves on the serried ranks of the Buccaneers. The latter stood firm; there was not a word nor a





REPULSE OF THE CAVALRY CHARGE.



shot till the Spanish horsemen advanced within fifty feet; then came a thunderous report, and a hundred horsemen reeled and fell. The remainder turned and galloped away. At a distance beyond gunshot they rallied and again charged, and then again, but to no purpose, for that deadly fire was not to be resisted, and after an hour of fruitless effort the remaining Spaniards sought safety in flight. By this time the infantry had come up, but finding the cavalry defeated, they retired within the city leaving the Buccaneers masters of the plain.

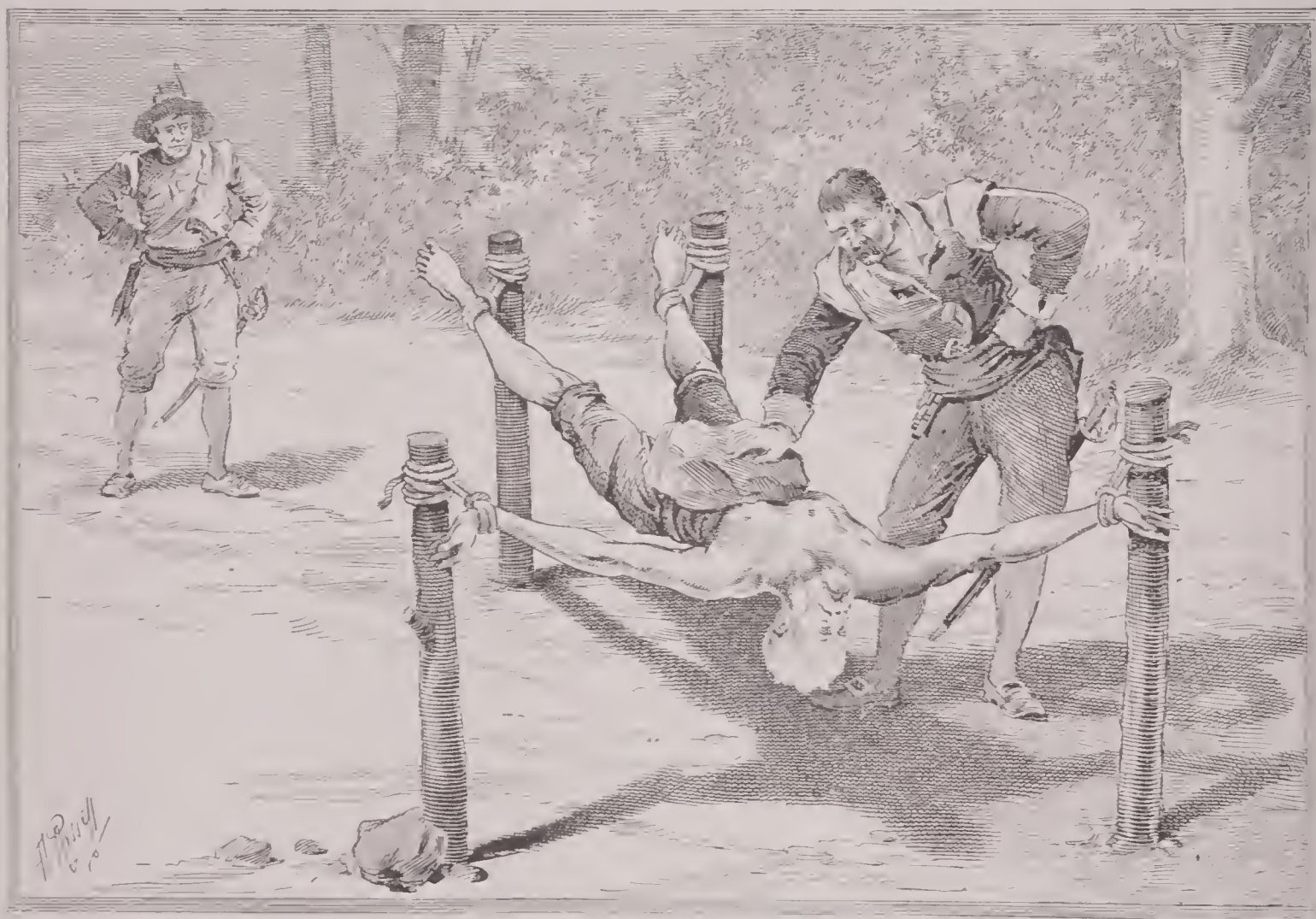
Puerto was not well fortified, for the city lay so far inland that there was no expectation of hostile attack. The Spaniards, however, made the best of the situation, and with extemporized fortifications fought so bravely that the freebooters began to despair. Night came on; the city was not taken, and every moment diminished the chances of Morgan and increased the hope of the Spaniards, for from their camp on the plain the freebooters could see signal fires blazing from every mountain top and the sentinels reported that re-enforcements were constantly arriving for the Spaniards in the beleaguered city. Something must be done, so in the darkness of night some barrels of gunpowder were rolled to one of the gates. A fuse was attached, the gate blown down by the explosion, the Buccaneers made a rush, and at last entrance was effected into the city. But the Spaniards were not beaten. They fought from house to house and contested every foot of ground. Every roof was a barricade, every corner concealed a foe, every window sent forth a bullet, and many Buccaneers perished in the street fight. Success was still doubtful, but Morgan set the city on fire, and the defenders driven out by the flames, finally retired leaving the ruins of Puerto to the pirates.

#### TORTURING THE PRISONERS.

Many prisoners having been taken, the process of forcing money from them now began, and all manner of torture was resorted to in order to accomplish the desired result. Some of the miserable captives were hung by the feet, others strung up by their hands; some were roasted to compel them to divulge their hidden treasures. Some of them exhibited marvellous powers of endurance before giving up their money, for one old Hidalgo after declaring that he had no money, was tortured in the peculiar way known as "swimming on air." Four ropes were procured, and the wretched man was suspended by one attached to each member from four upright posts. A heavy weight was placed on his body, and a pirate stood by, keeping the suspended prisoner in constant motion. No conceivable torture could be worse than this, and yet the old Spaniard stood it for four hours before acknowledging that he had five hundred pieces hidden under the pavement of his house. The pirates were confident that he had a great deal more, so after this money was procured they singed his beard and burned off his hair in an effort to get the remainder. When he vowed he had no more, they began on his teeth, took them out one by one until all within easy reach were gone. Still he protested his poverty. By order of a pirate officer his ears were twisted off by hand, but all in vain, and when the freebooters



concluded him incorrigible they determined to beat him to death and very nearly succeeded before he admitted the whereabouts of his funds, and being released, guided them to a spot where he had concealed fifty thousand dollars. Such scenes as this, and many far worse were witnessed in Puerto during the few days of Morgan's occupation. Finally, the ferocious bandit announced that unless a very large sum was paid for the ransom of all the captives, they would be taken to Jamaica and sold as slaves. The wretched prisoners agreed to get all they could, and sent four of their number to raise the funds. These special messengers soon returned with the intelligence that the ransom money would be forthcoming in two weeks. This length of time was granted, and the pirates gave



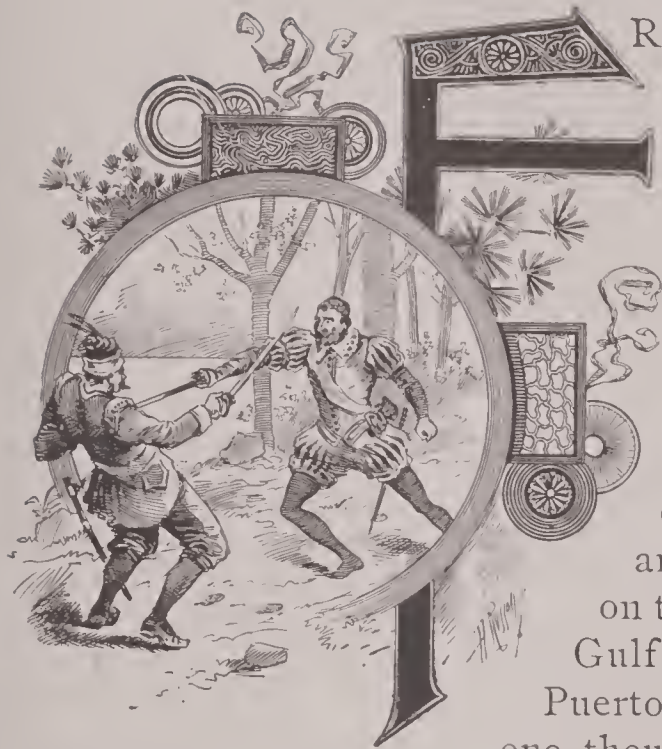
TORTURING PRISONERS.

themselves up to feasting, drunkenness and debauchery. Two days later a messenger was sent to the city authorities with letters: "Keep the pirates as long as you can," wrote the governor, "I am coming with large forces." At this alarming intelligence Morgan collected all his men and plunder, ordered the inhabitants to furnish five hundred beeves in lieu of the promised money, and these being delivered, marched back to Nuevitas, where he embarked and sailed to Tortuga to divide the spoils with his men, but a dispute occurred over an unfair division of the spoils, which led to a withdrawal of the French, who thereafter operated on their own account.



## CHAPTER XXVII.

### ATTACK ON PUERTO BELLO.



FROM this time the Buccaneers of the Spanish main were in two bands, the English and Dutch constituting one and the French the other. The exploits of the latter were sufficiently notable to justify a chapter to themselves. It is enough for the present to follow the steps of Morgan.

Not discouraged by the defection of the French, Morgan at once began preparations for a new foray. Remembering the easy success of his brethren at Maracaibo and Gibraltar, he determined to make a venture on the mainland. About forty-two miles from the Gulf of Darien stood the then rich little city of Puerto Bello. It was not large, having less than one thousand population, for the coast was unhealthy, and the merchants and factors who there transacted their business seldom remained more than a few weeks at a time.

But considering its numbers, no city of its size on the continent contained greater wealth, for almost every inhabitant was a man of large means. Being the seat of a considerable commerce, it was strongly fortified by two defences, each of which was half castle and half fort, built in the curious transition style prevalent at the time when cross-bows were going out and artillery had not fairly come in. For that age, the fortifications were strong, and a garrison of three hundred Spanish soldiers was always on duty. This place Morgan determined to attack, and overcame the hesitation of his associates by the prospect of an abundant booty. Setting sail from Tortuga, the Buccaneer fleet arrived at the mouth of a river some miles away from Puerto Bello, late one afternoon.

The force was disembarked, and skirmishers were thrown out to capture all persons whom they saw, in order that the coming of the expedition might be secret. This duty was well done. The ships passed up the river a few miles, where they were left with a strong guard, while Morgan made his way across the country in the direction of the city. The movement was well planned and executed; by daybreak the Spanish pickets were in the hands of the pirates and the whole force was waiting the coming of dawn to attack the city. With daylight there came to the astonished garrison of the smaller fort



a summons to surrender. Upon their refusal the castle was taken by storm, the soldiers massacred, and the officers placed in a room over the magazine which was then blown up. The city was now at the mercy of the invaders, but the garrison and population had taken refuge in the main fort, having strong hopes that the Buccaneers would give themselves up to pillage; and might be attacked and routed by a sortie when they were dispersed in search of plunder.

**A THRILLING EPISODE.**

Contrary to the expectation of the Spanish, not a storehouse nor residence was molested, but instead, the Buccaneers rushed to the convents, churches



HEROIC DEFENCE BY THE GOVERNOR.

and monasteries, from which they dragged out the monks, priests, and nuns who had remained, trusting that the sanctity of their profession would preserve them from insult, and the astonished garrison beheld long lines of monks and nuns marched away under guard. What did it mean? Nobody could conjecture. They found out, however, the next day, when the second summons to surrender had been refused, for they saw long files of nuns and priests, bearing ladders on their shoulders, come across the grassy slope in front of the castle





MORGAN ORDERING HIS PRISONERS TO SCALE THE WALLS OF PUERTO BELLO.



walls, followed by the serried ranks of the Buccaneers. Some of these unhappy persons, thus forced against their will to perform a service so distasteful, besought the governor to spare their lives and not fire, but one heroic old priest, even while bearing a ladder on his shoulder, shouted, "Do your duty, governor," and the firing at once began.

Many of those who wore the religious habit were killed at the first discharge from the fort, but the rest, knowing that it was certain death to return and having been promised their lives in case of obedience, rushed forward and placed the ladders against the walls, and after a severe hand-to-hand fight, the Spaniards in the castle surrendered, only to be taken out and shot. But the governor refused to yield, and died like a soldier after killing three Buccaneers with his own hand. In the security brought by the capture of the citadel, the Buccaneers gave themselves up to three weeks of horrible riot and debauchery.

#### AN EXCHANGE OF COURTESIES.

In the meantime, the governor of Panama had heard the news, and hastily gathering a force rushed to the rescue. But the Buccaneers received notice of his approach in time to lay an ambuscade for his advance guard, which they cut in pieces, and when the survivors fell back on the main body the Spanish army was seized by a panic and ran away pell-mell to a safe position among the hills. Astonished that so few men should be able to accomplish such results, the Panama governor sent a polite message to Morgan, requesting to know what arms his followers carried. The bandit returned him a pistol and a handful of bullets, intimating that the governor might keep them until he should call for them. His Excellency returned the compliment by presenting the pirate with an emerald ring and intimating that he need not call. Morgan took the ring, gathered together his booty, consisting of more than three hundred thousand dollars in coin and goods of incredible value and went back to Tortuga where a division was effected, the leader as usual getting the lion's share, and then set off for Jamaica to revel in the spoils.

It seems amazing that the English government should tolerate the presence of these outlaws in Jamaica, but not only did they tolerate but even encouraged them. They brought money to the colonies, and business was very brisk for some time after a shipload of pirates came in from a successful cruise. Besides money, they brought goods, frequently of immense value, which, obtained by robbery, were sold at merely a nominal price. The profit on a cargo of merchandise purchased in this way was sometimes as much as one thousand per cent., and the merchants and dealers were glad to see a fleet of pirates come into Kingston Harbor after a successful razzia. But English assistance went further than this, for the government gave indirect aid financially to these piratical enterprises, and received a hundred-fold in return for such advances, therefore, after the money from the Puerto Bello expedition was all gone Morgan planned another raid, and an English man-of-war in the harbor was ordered to co-operate with him.



**DESTRUCTIVE EXPLOSION OF A MAN-OF-WAR.**

It is to the credit of the English name that the order was not carried out and that the vessel was sent on another service, but the loss of the expected assistance determined Morgan to seize a French man-of-war which was then off Kingston. A plausible pretext was found in the fact that some time before the Frenchmen on a cruise had taken a quantity of provisions from an English vessel without paying for them. An invitation was extended to the French officers to dine with Morgan on board his ship. The Frenchmen came, were politely received, but while at dinner were greatly shocked to observe a number of sturdy pirates, armed to the teeth, come in, and to be informed by



BLOWING UP THE SHIP.

Morgan that they might no longer consider themselves as his guests, but as his prisoners. The French were speedily set on shore, and a Buccaneer crew placed on board the man-of-war thus captured, which added a thirty-six gun vessel to the pirate fleet. But not for long, for during that night, while the crew on board the newly captured vessel were celebrating their victory with a grand carousal, the magazine blew up, and of three hundred and fifty Buccaneers on the ship at the time, scarcely twenty escaped.

**AN ACT OF INCREDIBLE BRAVERY.**

Even with his force weakened by this loss, Morgan started for the continent with eight ships and five hundred men, and disembarked his troops on



the shores of Maracaibo Bay under a heavy fire from the Spanish fort. Moving up to attack the fortress, the Buccaneers found it deserted. The shouting pirates crowded into the fort, exulted over their capture and jeering at the cowardice of the Spaniards, when suddenly Morgan discovered a lighted fuse leading to the magazine. In another moment the entire band would have been blown in the air, but at great personal peril to himself the leader snatched the fuse from the barrel of powder in which it ended, and stamped out the fire with his heel. Moving from the fort up to the town, they found it deserted, for after the failure of the magazine to explode the townspeople and soldiers ran away to the woods. Scouting parties were at once organized to bring in the fugitives; every day new captives were taken and led in chains together like felons. Many ingenious modes of torture were devised to compel the miserable wretches to tell where they had concealed their goods, and after all the money possible had in this way been extracted from the people of Maracaibo, Morgan proceeded to Gibraltar, not far away, where the same process was repeated with its populace.

All this took time; news of the Buccaneer raids spread rapidly up and down the coast, and upon Morgan's return to the bay, to his dismay he discovered that the fort had been re-captured by the Spaniards, and that a fleet of three large vessels stood off the mouth of the harbor. Twenty-five or thirty guns had been landed and placed in advantageous positions around the fort, which was thus rendered impregnable to attack. The Spanish fleet was too strong to be successfully met in open fight; the Spaniards considered the bandit trapped, and the Admiral sent word to him to surrender in two days, or expect the most direful consequences.

#### A MASTERLY PIECE OF STRATEGY.

With his weak force Morgan had no chances in open combat with the Spaniards, and dread necessity therefore forced him to resort to stratagem. Seizing a vessel, which he found in the harbor, he filled it with powder and all sorts of combustibles, cut port holes and placed therein the ends of logs painted black to represent guns, put a large number of coats and hats on sticks just inside the bulwarks to convey the impression that the ship was well manned, set her sails, and with only a pilot and one sailor sent her in advance against the Spanish fleet, he with his other vessels following at some distance. The Spaniards were deceived by the trick, and attacked the leading vessel with great fury. The pilot and the solitary sailor got into a skiff and pulled back to Morgan's fleet, while the Spanish ships closed round the deserted vessel. The combustibles on the fire-ship had been ignited before she was finally deserted, and the tricked Spaniards, approaching very close in their determination to board, were astounded by a series of tremendous explosions which threw burning brands far and wide, and set fire even to the rigging of their vessels. Confounded by this sudden and unexpected result and thrown into confusion by the cannonade which Morgan's vessels now began, they hastily retired, and left the Buccaneers master of the situation.



## ESCAPE OF THE FREEBOOTERS.

The Spanish vessels fell back behind the fort, and Morgan was apparently no better off than before, for to pass the fortress would, for his fleet, be almost certain destruction. His native shrewdness, however, was again called into play. Coming to anchor in plain sight of the fort, but beyond cannon-shot, he sent out boats from all his vessels, loaded with men who stood up so as to be plainly visible while being rowed to the shore. The boats put into a point of land where they were concealed by some bushes from the view of the Spaniards in the fort. Thus, out of sight, they all lay down in the boats and were taken back to the ships, rounding the vessels to the opposite side from that seen by the Spaniards. This manœuvre was repeated a dozen times in



DISASTROUS EXPLOSION OF THE MASKED VESSEL.

the course of the morning, and the Spaniards, as Morgan intended they should, gained the impression that the whole Buccaneer force was being put ashore to attack the fort from the land side. In that direction they were weak, and suddenly, cognizant of the fact, hurriedly moved a large part of their artillery over to the land side and prepared to resist an assault. The attack was made on land, however, for after the guns were removed from the sea-wall the Buccaneer ships weighed anchor and passed down within two hundred yards of the fort before the astonished Spaniards could bring back the guns to fire upon them, and a furious bombardment soon breached the walls, through which a force of Buccaneers directly poured in a resistless assault that forced a speedy capitulation.



The fame of these two exploits soon spread throughout the world and attracted sea-faring men and desperadoes from every quarter, and in a few months the pirate leader found himself the absolute master of forty vessels and over three thousand men. At this time there were prospects of a peace between England and Spain; the negotiations indeed were actually going on and Morgan determined to forestall the treaty by some exploit greater than any the Buccaneers had previously attempted.

#### THE PANAMA EXPEDITION.

At this time Panama was the largest, the greatest, the richest and most famous city on the continent. One of the first Spanish settlements, located on a spacious bay, with one of the finest harbors in the world, separated from the Caribbean by an isthmus which from its mountains, forests, thickets, rocks and deadly climate was almost impassable, the city had always been deemed safe from hostile attack. There was immense plunder to be gained and the fancied security of the city added to the expectations of the Buccaneers that more would be realized by an expedition to Panama than against any other city in the western world. Morgan's attention being turned in that direction there was no time to be lost, for he must sail quickly in order that his ships might have the protection of the English flag, a guardianship which they would not enjoy should peace be declared. So leaving three ships at Tortuga, he sailed with thirty-seven vessels, manned with twenty-two hundred men, to St. Catherine's which, as already narrated, had been retaken by the Spaniards. Seeing this overwhelming force in his front the Spanish governor came to terms; he and Morgan exchanged some shots with blank cartridges, the Spanish forces marched out and the Buccaneers took possession. No sooner was St. Catherine's occupied than four hundred men were sent to take the castle at the mouth of the Chagres river that it might serve as a base of operations on the mainland.

This fortress was situated on the top of a high hill with the river at its front and an almost impassable jungle and forest to the rear. The garrison deemed themselves so secure that when the pirates approached them they reviled the freebooters in the coarsest language and opening a heavy fire drove them back. But the Spaniards did not know the character of the men with whom they had to deal. The next morning the Buccaneers landed and began to make their way through the forest.

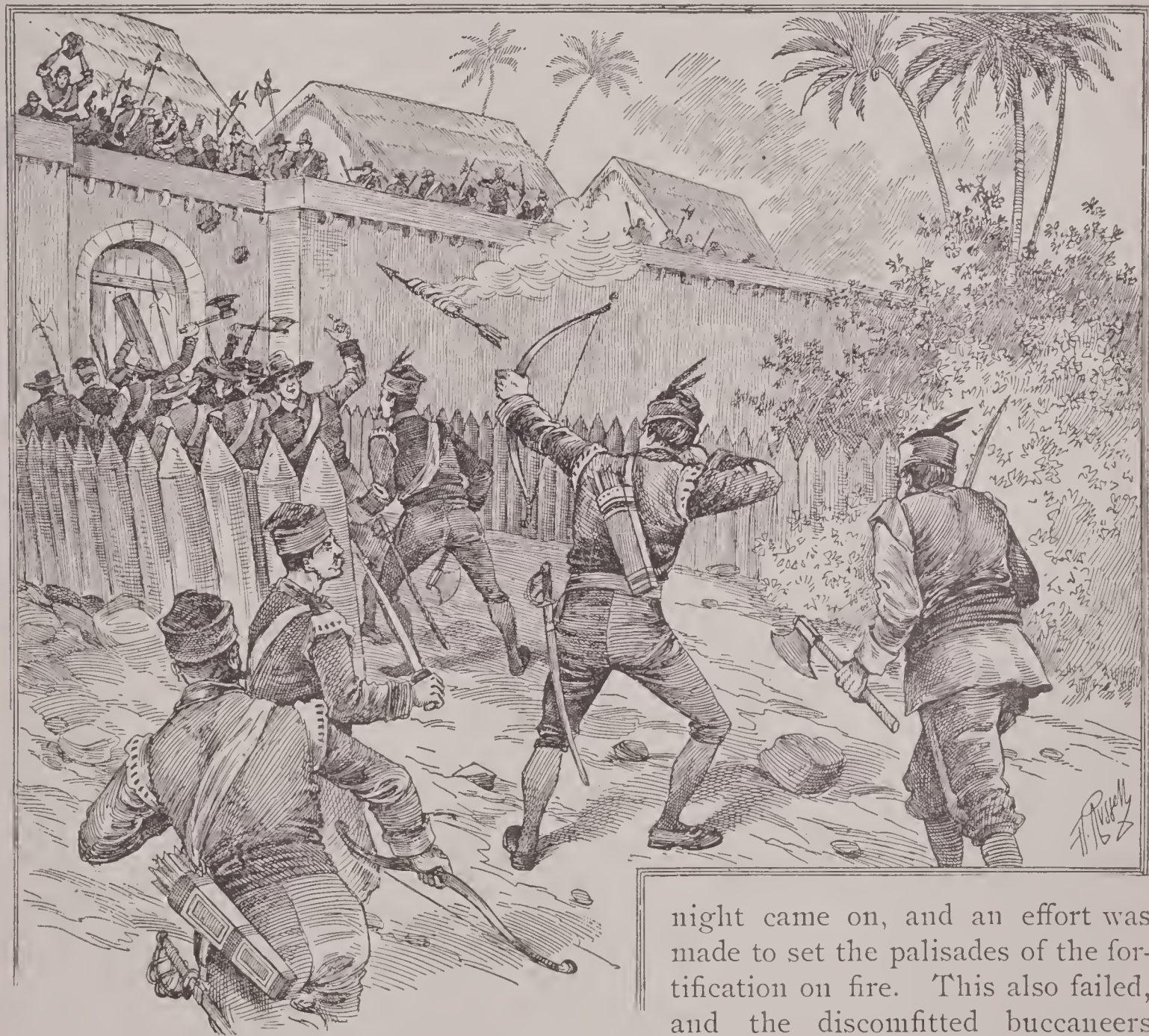
A tropical forest, to one who has never seen it, is a revelation. Overhead are the interlacing branches of giant trees whose foliage conceals vast numbers of monkeys and parrots, whose ceaseless chattering attends the traveller at every step; underfoot a dense growth of ferns and mosses makes a pitfall to betray the incautious foot. On every hand are bushes and shrubbery, thickets and undergrowth; from every branch depends a mass of vines, which, crossing, intertwining, interlacing, renders progress almost impossible. The machete is in constant use to clear a path, and even the road thus made in a few days fills up so as to be indistinguishable from the original forest.



Without skilled guides the traveller is certain to be lost, for men have been known to wander for days almost in sight of their own dwellings.

#### STORMING THE FORTRESS.

Into such a jungle the freebooters plunged. Starting at a point less than two miles from the castle, they were all day making their way to it, and when in sight the musketry and artillery of the Spanish force compelled them immediately again to seek its seclusion. Several assaults were in vain;



AN ACT OF EXTRAORDINARY HEROISM.

night came on, and an effort was made to set the palisades of the fortification on fire. This also failed, and the discomfited buccaneers would have been signally defeated

had it not been for an incident 'altogether unprecedented and unexpected. Among the besieged were several cross-bowmen, one of whom firing an arrow at a Buccaneer in the front rank, struck him in the side. The arrow penetrated deeply into his body, when with curses he drew it out, wrapped round it a handful of the cotton which was used by the pirates as lint, and shot it back into the fortress. In a moment the palm leaf roofs of the Spanish



houses were in a blaze, and while the distracted Spaniards rushed to put out the flames, the Buccaneers fired the palisades. An explosion aided the assailants, and although the garrison fought bravely they were all killed and the castle taken.

A base having been thus secured, the fleet came to anchor before the fort, the whole force of Buccaneers disembarked on the beach, and Morgan was carried in the arms of his men into the Spanish fortress. Preparations were at once made to put it in a perfect state of defence, guns were landed from the fleet and mounted on the walls, provisions were collected, the magazine was rebuilt and a garrison of five hundred men placed in the fort, now enlarged to more than double its former size, with orders at once explicit and positive, that, no matter at what cost, the place was to be defended. A guard numbering one hundred and twenty was left with the ships, which were brought to anchor under the guns of the fort, and the discontent of the Buccaneers who were thus left behind was allayed by the promise that whatever the booty, it should be shared equally by those who went to the front and by those who guarded the line of retreat.





## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### REWARDS FIXED FOR SERVICES AND FOR INJURIES.



AT the inception of the stupendous and no less hazardous scheme for the capture and sack of Panama details for a division of the plunder were carefully drawn up; the commander-in-chief was to receive one per cent of everything taken, including money, jewels, goods, cattle and slaves; subordinate officers were to have shares proportioned to the responsibility of their positions. Special rewards were fixed for special services; he who planted the standard on the enemy's wall was to have one hundred pieces of eight (\$100.00); he who brought information of the enemy's approach or numbers, was to have fifty pieces; he who captured a Spaniard or an Indian with important intelligence was entitled to twenty. Compensation on a fixed scale was to be made for wounds; he who lost the sight of both eyes was to receive a thousand pieces; of one eye, five hundred, and so on, down to the loss of a little finger or toe, which was considered amply repaid by ten pieces.

All being in readiness, the expedition, comprising over 1200 picked men, set forward up the Chagres river in canoes, eager for the conquest of the richest city in America. The undertaking was no child's play. Although in a direct line Panama was not seventy-five miles away, three times this distance must be traversed by the Buccaneer army, for during most of the way the line of march must follow the Chagres, a river which, in the tortuousness of its course, forms a parallel in the New World to the Meander of the Old. No stream has so many unaccountable bends. At many points so considerable are the windings that, although a stone may be cast across the peninsula which separates one bank from the other, a whole day's rowing is barely sufficient to bring the traveller to a point where he may camp a hundred yards from his resting place on the preceding night. During the dry season, the course of the stream is interrupted by sandbars, over and around which progress is tedious in the extreme; when the tropical rains descend, with a fury unknown in other parts of the world, the river becomes a flood, carrying on its bosom masses of drift which threaten the destruction of the stoutest vessel. Infested throughout its length by caymans (alligators), the upsetting of a canoe is almost equivalent to the death warrant of all that are thrown out, since so active are these ferocious creatures and so eager in the pursuit of prey, that the quickest



swimmer may resign hope when plunged into a stream in which they abound. In the ferns and mosses which cover the banks down to the water's edge poisonous insects lurk, while from the branches which overhang the water venomous serpents lift their heads, and, on a nearer approach of the exploring canoe, drop silently into the water. The river passed, a range of mountains presented difficulties almost as formidable, for the Indians of the isthmus had never been conquered, and from their fastnesses defied hostile invasion. More than one band of prying whites had perished in an effort to explore the isthmus, and after many vain attempts the Spaniards contented themselves with holding the seacoast and protecting, with strong escorts of cavalry and fusiliers, the mule trains which, by a more direct route, traversed the isthmus far to the south of Morgan's line of march.

#### A JOURNEY OF EXTRAORDINARY HARDSHIPS.

The artillery pieces of the Buccaneers were loaded into six large canoes; thirty-eight more were barely sufficient to contain the men. They had cannon, ammunition, arms of every kind in abundance, but little food, for as the canoes were already loaded to the water's edge, Morgan deemed it unwise to freight them still more heavily with provisions, since he calculated on obtaining abundant daily supplies along the line of march. In this he was disappointed. The Indians had not then learned, as later they did, the distinction between Spaniards and the mortal foes of their old enemies, and conceiving that all white men must speak the language of the Iberian Peninsula, fled before the freebooters, taking with them all that could be carried away and destroying all supplies which from any cause could not be removed.

At the end of the first days' journey, therefore, and less than eighteen miles from the fleet, the Buccaneers found themselves without supplies and suffering the pangs of hunger. In despair at the obstacles of the river route, Morgan deserted it, leaving his canoes, and attempted to proceed by land, only to find that difficult as the river might be, progress on its waters was a holiday voyage compared to the land journey, for after half a day's arduous labor the expedition was less than a mile from the point where the canoes had been abandoned. At this rate they would all perish of starvation before seeing the mountains which divided them from the Pacific slope, so back to the canoes they went and resumed their tedious journey up the river.

#### THE FAMINE.

Rowing for a time, then disembarking and dragging their boats over long stretches of sand, where the cannons mired and were with difficulty extracted; without food, the adventurers cursed the day on which they started into so ill-starred a country. For three days they were entirely without rations of any kind; they prowled along the banks searching for roots, they ate the grasses which grew beneath the trees, the ferns on the slopes, the mosses in the water. Time after time they came to plantations on the river, but the banana trees had been cut down and the fruit destroyed; time after time, rising smoke in



the distance inspired hopes of the proximity of human habitations, but the smoke arose from deserted villages, set on fire by their inhabitants who had fled to the pathless jungle, leaving only ashes and desolation behind.

On the morning of the fourth day there was a sudden alarm. Shots were heard from the advance guard and word was passed down the long straggling line that the Spaniards were in the front. The famished men rushed to the attack, thinking only of capturing the Spanish camp and obtaining supplies. In the former object they were successful, in the latter they were disappointed, for although they came to the spot where the Spanish party of observation had camped, nothing was left but some smouldering timbers and the hides of a few bullocks that had been killed for food.

The famished bandits quickly drove away the vultures that, having devoured the offal, were inclined to dispute the skins with the new arrivals, seized the hides as a precious treasure, scraped off the hair, pounded them with stones until somewhat softened, then greedily chewed the tough skin, and fortunate was he of their number who got as much as he wanted even of this repulsive food, for half a dozen hides were no great store of provision for twelve hundred men who had fasted for four days.

On the sixth and seventh days the famine became still more serious; so great was their necessity that many men ate the bark of trees, some filled their stomachs with the clay of the river bank, while others became too weak to walk and were placed in the canoes which were still wearily dragged on by the stronger; not a few were delirious, and scores fell fatally ill from improper nutriment and the poisonous plants which in their famishment they had devoured. The future of the expedition was intensely gloomy; from one end of the line to the other were no other words than curses, complaints and threats against the leader who had brought them to die in such a country.

#### A BURNING CORN-CRIB.

Late in the afternoon of the seventh day a burning village was reached, and while the Buccaneers, with famine-sharpened eyes, were prowling among the houses, they made the welcome discovery that one of the burning structures was a storehouse filled with Indian corn. A roar of delight went up at the announcement. With one accord a rush was made on the flaming building; men seized the blazing walls and roof in their bare hands and tore them away to save the corn. The fire was quickly extinguished, and no Spanish galleon laden with gold and jewels was more precious in the eyes of the starved bandits than that storehouse of half charred corn. They seized it by handfuls and crammed it, almost blazing, down their throats; they fought with each other for a portion; they stole from each other to provide a store against a recurrence of the famine.

They loaded their backs with corn only to throw it away the next day on a renewed alarm that the Spaniards were in front. Where there were Spaniards there must be something to eat better than corn, so away went the corn into the river only



to be regretted when a reconnoissance disclosed the fact that their opponents were not Spaniards but Indians. Four Buccaneers were killed by the sudden attack of a hidden foe, and twenty more fell before the defile which the savages defended was taken. Capture of the Indian village disclosed nothing to eat or drink but a few jars of wine, which was all swallowed before the Buccaneers discovered it had been poisoned. A terrible fright ensued, amounting to a panic, but the quantity of the wine was so small while the drinkers were so numerous that its only effect was to make them all deathly sick. But nobody died from the poison and the next morning, hungry as ever and cursing their stupidity for throwing away so much good corn, they continued their way, only to be confronted with a new and unexpected danger.

#### A TERRIBLE STORM.

The storms of the tropics are sudden and severe to a degree known in no other part of the world. The dweller in Central America may look from his window on an earth bathed in warm sunshine from a cloudless sky, and, ten minutes later a cloud so dark as to seem the precursor of nightfall may come down from the mountains and rain fall as though the windows of heaven had been opened to permit the water of an ocean to pour forth. Such a storm fell on the bandit army as the famine-stricken men were making their way up the passes of the mountains. The emergency was serious, for their powder was in danger of being rendered useless by the down-pouring torrents. Fortunately for them, a few vacant huts were discovered, into which all the ammunition was hurried and the wretched men sat down in the darkness, without lights or fire, to await the coming day. All night the rain continued but the morning brought sunshine, and though wet, hungry and dejected the Buccaneers resumed their march.

#### IN SIGHT OF PANAMA.

But their toilsome journey was almost ended. At noon of that day a sudden shout, a blast from the trumpets and the rolling of drums from the front alarmed the whole column. Hastily looking to their weapons, the main body and rear guard hurried up, prepared to resist an attack by the enemy, when, on gaining the summit of the pass, a wonderful prospect was presented to their view, and the nine days of famine, hardship and labor were forgotten as they gazed. From their feet the same forest and jungle with which they were already so familiar stretched away for four or five miles; in the horizon was the blue sea studded with islands like emeralds, and between the two and in the midst of this charming picture rose the gray walls, the white palaces and the glittering domes and steeples of the great city of Panama.

The battle-stained veterans of Xenophon never shouted more exultingly at sight of the sea than did the Buccaneer army when they beheld that picture from the mountain pass. Men fell on each other's necks and embraced like long-separated brothers, the trumpets sounded, the flags were displayed, the drums rolled as though Panama were already in their hands.



But the sharp eyes of some of the band soon detected a sight which for the moment was even more inspiring: a large pasture a mile away in which grazed a herd of cattle. There was a foot-race for the field, the cattle were instantly shot down, fires were built, and the beeves were hardly dead ere enormous pieces of their flesh were broiling in the flames. Then followed scenes which reminded the older pirates of the early days of buccaneering. The starving men snatching roasting flesh from the embers devoured it half raw, stalking about with blood-covered clothing and beards dripping with gore. Starved no longer they camped in an auspicious spot, and having placed their pickets lay down to sleep with the steeples of Panama in sight and Spanish scouts watching them through the bushes.

#### THE BATTLE FOR PANAMA.

Early in the morning they were aroused by the heavy booming of cannon and the falling of round shot in their midst, for the Spaniards had moved forward a battery during the night and soon succeeded in getting the distance and compelling a speedy evacuation of the ground. The Buccaneers advanced to meet them, but perceiving that the Spanish commander had concentrated his force and artillery on each side of the highway, they abandoned the road for a difficult detour around the hills to flank the Spanish position.

Understanding the purpose of their enemies the Spaniards hurriedly changed their base, drew up their force in the open plain within a mile of the city, and when the bandits came to the edge of the forest and peered out they were dismayed by the wondrous sight which they beheld.

Drawn up in a position of great natural strength, flanked on one side by a stream and morass, on the other by an almost precipitous hill, was a uniformed and disciplined force of nearly four thousand footmen, while about five hundred well appointed cavalry were placed on the wings of this imposing array, and in front a host of Indians held in leash hundreds of savage bulls, with which the Spaniards hoped to break the ranks of the bandits. To oppose this overwhelming force, Morgan had scarcely a thousand able-bodied men, for the famine and hardships of the nine days' march across the isthmus had rendered many of his best soldiers incapable of service.

#### A DESPERATE SITUATION.

Morgan was stupefied. He had expected to find Panama unaware of his coming and almost undefended; but Panama had evidently heard the news and soldiers had been hurried to the capital from all the neighboring towns. They were veterans, too; the robber chief knew it by their uniforms, by their discipline and their marching. The situation was desperate; to retreat over the route by which he had come was certain death by starvation; to advance in the presence of this host of enemies seemed no less certain destruction.

In this terrible strait he appealed to his followers in an impassioned speech, saying: "There is the road to Panama, will you take it?" "We will," was the answering shout. Morgan divided his available force into three



battalions, and deployed four companies, about two hundred men, to act as skirmishers to bring on the battle.

The conflict was opened by releasing the bulls, the Spanish cavalry, with their lances, goading them across the plain in the direction of the Buccaneers. But the sharp-shooters quickly laid most of these animals low by well directed shots, and the remainder, maddened by wounds and fright, charged back towards the Spanish army stampeding the horses and throwing the infantry into confusion by breaking their ranks in every direction.

While the enemy was thus beset by the savage cattle, Morgan ordered a general advance, and in three serried ranks the Buccaneer army moved across



WILD BULLS IN LINE OF BATTLE.

the plains. The Spanish cavalry charged gallantly, but every effort was in vain; ere they could approach near enough to use their lances, the deadly fire of the Buccaneers emptied their saddles; the riderless horses, rushing back on the ranks of the infantry still further disorganized the ranks broken by the infuriated bulls, and after a short conflict the entire Spanish force gave way, and horse and footmen, Indians and bulls, poured in a frightened mass through the gates into the city.

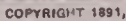
#### CAPTURE OF PANAMA.

Morgan did not attempt an immediate pursuit. His force was not strong enough to take the fortifications by storm and a hand-to-hand fight in the









## THE RAPE OF PANAMA—MORGAN FORCING





HISTORICAL PUB. CO., PHILA., PA., U. S. A.

PRISONERS TO PRODUCE THEIR VALUABLES.







streets, so he camped on the field, while his followers busied themselves in murdering the wounded and stripping the slain. Over six hundred Spaniards fell in the battle, while the bandits lost less than a hundred in both killed and wounded.

From the moment of the victory the city was practically in the power of the Buccaneers, for although the sea fortifications of Panama were extensive, no attack had been anticipated from the land side, which, save a few redoubts hastily thrown up on the rumors of Morgan's approach, was almost undefended. The next day, therefore, the leading earthwork which defended the high road was flanked and taken and the Alcalde surrendered the city into the hands of a set of the most arrant rogues that ever escaped the gallows.

#### A RIOT OF MURDER AND RAPINE.

Before marching into the place Morgan strictly commanded his men to drink no wine, declaring that it all had been poisoned, a statement which, remembering their recent experience, the bandits could readily credit. But vice is ingenious in its methods. The soldiers, finding wine in abundance, gave it in large quantities to the prisoners, and after waiting a suitable time and seeing no evil result other than intoxication, began to drink deeply and before morning Panama was held by an army of men infuriated with drink. Then ensued scenes of lust and blood such as are witnessed only when unlimited license is backed by absolute power. Women were dishonored then brutally murdered; men were coolly hacked to pieces in sport, children were carried about the streets on the points of pikes and lances and other equally revolting atrocities characterized the Buccaneers' mad revel.

The universal drunkenness of the Buccaneers lost them much booty, for when the condition of the city was seen to be hopeless, many persons embarked with all their portable property in vessels which had not left the bay when Morgan marched through the gates. By prompt action many of these might have been taken, but the leader could not at first find sober men enough to man a boat and many of the fugitives thus fortunately escaped. The most valuable prize which thus slipped from the greedy clutches of the freebooters was a great galleon loaded with the plate and wealth of the cathedral, and having as passengers the bishop, the leading priests and a large number of nuns, and women of the best families, for whose ransom an immense sum would have been demanded and paid. This vessel leaving the harbor on the day of the capture arrived in Spain six months later, but the Buccaneers, learning of her escape, made amends for their remissness by arming vessels and scouring the bay in every direction and few of the fugitives who concealed themselves in the island remained undetected.

#### INHUMAN CRUELITIES TO PRISONERS.

Every day the scouting parties thus sent out brought in hapless prisoners; and boatloads of fugitives were landed at the quay from the neighboring islands and the tortures of Maracaibo and Gibraltar were repeated on a far larger scale



at Panama. An immense plunder was secured. Although for weeks before the arrival of the bandits, notice of their coming had preceded them and timid persons had begun to remove their valuables, and notwithstanding in the two days that elapsed between the appearance of the Buccaneers and the surrender of the city a hundred ships had left the harbor, loaded with valuables, the gold, silver and gems taken were valued at \$8,000,000, while costly goods, fine stuffs and valuable merchandise of every description were estimated at as much more.

In a week the busy plunderers exhausted the city and surrounding country and clamored to start on their return, fearing that the government of Panama



MORGAN THREATENING THE UNHAPPY WOMAN.

might collect an overwhelming force and fall upon them, but with one excuse and then another Morgan delayed. For some days the men did not know what it meant but a roar of laughter went through the ranks when the truth at last came out, the Buccaneer leader was in love.

No coat of mail is impervious to Cupid's arrows and the little archer had, during the sacking of the city, launched a shaft which penetrated to the very centre of the Buccaneer's heart. Among the captives there was a beautiful Spanish lady who had been captured by the falling of her horse during the hasty retreat of the Spaniards from the city. Her husband was a merchant of Taboga, but at the time of the city's capitulation to the brigands was absent on business in Peru.



**MORGAN'S INFATUATION FOR A SPANISH LADY.**

That strange infatuation which is sometimes observed seized Morgan at first sight of the lady, but there was something about her that compelled the respect even of a pirate leader; he could not talk to her so freely as to other women; in her presence the lewd word and profane jest were hushed and the leader in vice stood abashed before the commanding figure of a virtuous lady. To the proposals of Morgan the beautiful Spaniard returned answer in terms so mild, so full of the spirit of genuine piety, that the arch-pirate was for a while in doubt how to urge his suit. Not satisfied, however, to relinquish his designs, but reluctant to use force, he ordered the lady to be imprisoned in the crypt of one of the churches until she should yield. Here, day after day, he visited her, on each occasion offering her rich gifts, only to receive as often a fresh rejection of his suit; he then threatened to stab her to death for her obstinate resistance, but flattery and intimidation were alike vain to gain or compel her acquiescence. Rumors of the affair got abroad; the place of the lady's imprisonment became known, and those who passed by the church would stop, remove their hats and listen to her voice engaged in almost continual prayer.

The rough men were touched with the pitiable plight of the unhappy woman and allusions to the incident, in no way complimentary to the bandit chief, were made even in his hearing. After two weeks of this discipline, the men meantime becoming daily more clamorous to march, Morgan determined to leave Panama and take the lady along. An unexpected discovery hastened the departure: One of the firmest friends of the chief brought him the intelligence that a party of mutinous Buccaneers had formed a design to seize a large vessel then in the harbor and sail away on an expedition of their own. Fearing lest some scheme of this kind might succeed and leave him with a force too small to withstand the Spaniards, who were collecting troops at no great distance from the city, he ordered all the ships in the harbor to be sunk and then gave directions for the retreat.

**THE BURNING OF PANAMA.**

Mules and pack animals, to the number of over 700, were laden with plunder, and with a train of 600 prisoners the Buccaneer band moved out of the city, in mere wantonness setting it on fire as they went. In a few hours the beautiful "Queen of the South Seas" was in ashes, the fire consuming the cathedral, four or five other churches, eight monasteries and convents, a great number of warehouses and stores, and more than 6000 private residences.

Even the hard hearted historian of the Buccaneers, himself one of their number, says, "it was pitiful to hear the lamentations of those whose houses we burned and to listen to the screams of the women we were carrying away, so that for a time I did wish myself away with the advance-guard."

The prisoners were such persons as had not been ransomed, their friends and relatives having been killed by the bandits, or those whose ransom had not arrived, but in either case they regarded themselves as going into hopeless



captivity and viewed with horror their approaching fate. Some of the women threw themselves on the ground and refused to walk. Of these a few were killed as an example, but this violent measure proving ineffectual the remainder were forcibly placed on the backs of mules and tied there, thus being carried forward in spite of tears and remonstrance. The Taboga lady was set upon a horse and guarded on each side by two bandits, but just at the time the march began a messenger arrived from her husband, asking what ransom was demanded for her. Carelessly saying he did not care to part with her, Morgan evaded the question, but on being pressed for a reply, named \$30,000, as the lowest sum he would consent to receive. The messenger replied that it should be paid and Morgan directed it to be sent to the river Chagres, where he intended to halt on his return.

#### THE SPANISH LADY RANSOMED.

When the river was reached a stop of several days was made for the purpose of waiting for the promised ransoms. Some came, others did not, and when the day arrived for the advance, among the unransomed was the lady of Taboga. In despair at the prospect of being carried into a hopeless captivity, she revealed to Morgan what, till then, she had kept concealed, that her ransom had been brought into camp the day before by a priest who had used it to release some of his clerical brethren.

Furious at the deception, Morgan sent a strong party post-haste after the priests, who left the camp some hours before. The brigands overtook them a few miles away and compelled them, much against their will, to return. On their arrival, the chief cross-examined them with great severity, and finding that the lady had told the truth, commanded the whole party to be shot, then performed one of the few creditable acts of his life, by ordering the lady to be at once released without further ransom, and thus ended the first and last love-scape of the great Buccaneer.



A MESSENGER OFFERS RANSOM FOR THE LADY.



On the arrival of the force in Chagres a few days later, Morgan excited a storm of excitement among the men by commanding every one in the expedition to be searched, beginning with himself, in order that no one might conceal any part of the plunder. Such a thing had never been done before among the Buccaneer bands, and there was at first a loudly expressed determination to resist by force; but as the leader was surrounded by a body of about a hundred determined men who seemed prepared to carry out the order, discretion was deemed the better part of valor and the general search was submitted to with a very bad grace. But the indignation at the searching of their persons and baggage was a trifle to the wrath expressed when the division of spoils was made, and to each man was allotted about \$200, as his share of the Panama prize.

#### TREACHERY OF THE COMMANDER.

Fierce were the threats and denunciations that were bandied about at this meagre result of so much hardship and fighting. "Was it for \$200 each they had famished on the Chagres?" "Was it for this, they had defeated a Spanish army six times their own strength?" "There was treachery in the camp and Morgan and the hundred men who were always at his heels and who seemed devoted to his interests, were at the bottom of it." "But they should not escape." The outraged Buccaneers would see to that, and preparations were instantly made among the angry and defrauded pirates to assert their claim by force of arms. But Morgan and his confederates, having been sharp enough to defraud the Buccaneer army of its plunder, were also sharp enough to keep their stealings, for on the next morning, when the malcontents roused themselves and went to headquarters to demand satisfaction or to shed blood, Morgan was no where to be found, and when search was made three of the best ships were gone too, and the remainder were in a sinking condition. The leader had departed and with him went not only the hundred men who were his confederates in the robbery, but even a large share of the plunder that by his own admission was to be divided among the men, so that those of their number who had failed at once to draw the \$200 which fell to their share found themselves with nothing.

The swindled pirates could not follow; they had no ships, for Morgan had taken pains to ruin all he did not carry off. Left penniless, almost without provisions, on a hostile shore, they realized to the full the truth expressed in a proverb quoted to them by one of their number, "Old Nick pays poor wages on a small contract." A few at a time, as they were taken off by passing vessels or in the crazy hulks left by their leader, they made their way back to Jamaica and Tortuga as poor as when they left, only to find that Morgan had tricked his confederates and after managing to get all the plunder into one vessel under pretense that the others were unseaworthy, had sailed off to England carrying with him over \$8,000,000 in money and goods, and leaving the hundred who had helped him to defraud the army no richer than those they had abandoned on the Darien coast.



## CHAPTER XXIX.

### DECLINE OF BUCCANEERING.



WAR of the Grand Alliance against France had done much to promote buccaneering in the West India Seas, and although the French and English freebooters had not co-operated for years, they refrained from hostilities with each other. So much indeed was thought of the freebooters that there was a special understanding between England and France that their hostilities were not to extend to the West Indies. There was then presented the anomalous spectacle of Englishmen and Frenchmen, whose nations were at war in Europe, preying on Spaniards who in

Europe were the allies of Great Britain. The peace of Ryswick, in 1697, which put an end to the wars of the Grand Alliance contained a clause which meant little to the millions of Europe, but which was the death warrant of buccaneering. It was, in brief, a provision that private war should cease and that the fleets of all the covenanting nations should unite in suppressing the irregular warfare which for two hundred years had disgraced the equatorial part of the New World. In accordance with the terms of the treaty the English government set to work with great vigor to break up the establishments of freebooters in the English islands. The Buccaneer cruisers were ordered away from Jamaica and forbidden to return; pirates, which they now began to be called, were no longer allowed to sell their booty or spend their money in the English settlements, and men-of-war were sent to see that the orders of the Government were carried out to the letter. Men familiar with West Indian customs and with Buccaneer resorts were sought for and placed in authority in the western colonies in order that stern justice might be meted out to all transgressors.

#### THE EX-BANDIT BECOMES JUDGE MORGAN.

Among the judicial officers who, by their severity, rendered themselves a terror to evil-doers, was no less a personage than Henry Morgan, the ex-Bandit Chief, now Sir Henry Morgan, if you please. Having succeeded in persuading twelve hundred other thieves to join him in plundering Pauama, and in robbing his confederates of almost all the booty taken, as already described, he escaped to England with the booty, and there, established in society as a man of vast wealth, he had been knighted by Charles II, and was consequently prepared to



frown down all lawless attempts on the part of reckless adventurers to interfere with the sacred rights of property. His burning zeal in the interests of law and order commended him to the government as a proper person to promote peace and quiet in the West Indies, and so

“With eyes severe and beard of formal cut  
Full of wise laws and modern instances,

he reappeared in his former scene of action with wig and gown, as an English judge. The Buccaneers laughed when his appointment was announced, but soon found it was no gleeful matter, for as soon as he entered on the duties of his office, they ascertained that although he knew nothing of law, his ideas of justice were very clearly defined.



MORGAN REBUKING HIS PARTNER IN CRIME.

In short, Sir Henry had come to the West Indies strongly imbued with the notion that he had been sent there for the purpose of hanging as many of his former associates as he could, and with no little zeal he set about the task. No one so loud in denunciation of lawlessness as he; no one so thoroughly convinced of the heinousness of all crime, and in particular the crime of buccaneering. “Plundering on the high seas,” declared this fugleman of judicial purity in one of his decisions, “is of hell. No good subject of our Lord the King could be guilty of it.”



**SAVAGE DESTRUCTION OF THE BUCCANEERS.**

With such an abhorrence of crime in general, and especially of piracy, English Buccaneers who had the misfortune to be taken stood little show for their lives before the reformed demon of the main, Sir Henry. He gave them the benefit of no doubt. If they were taken with arms in their hands, that fact was sufficient for their conviction. No mercy was shown. To a prisoner who ventured to suggest that he and his judge had served together at Panama, His Lordship roared "Thinkest thou, wretch, I ever had companionship with such as thou art. The Henry Morgan thou knewest is dead. Sir Henry, the judge, alone survives to mourn Henry the Buccaneer."

With no place to sell their plunder, with no home, for Tortuga had been taken and occupied by a French expedition, and with their former leader eager to efface the memory of his own crimes by hanging all his former associates he could lay his judicial hands on, the business of the English Buccaneers became a sorry one indeed. Many deserted the seas and took to the occupation of planting; others abandoned the West Indies for more favorable fields; others came to terms with the commanders of British vessels and regularly entered the service of the British navy, where, on account of their well-known bravery and excellent seamanship, they were very welcome; while others, loth to give up an occupation which, although fraught with danger, still possessed many charms for adventurous minds, relinquished their national prejudices and consorted with the filibusters, who still carried on business at the old stand, and who still at war with the English made so many descents on the coasts of Jamaica and carried off so much plunder and so many negroes that they called that island "Little Guinea."

There were several reasons why the filibusters were encouraged by the French for some years after the English had begun the suppression of the Buccaneers, but the principal one was found in the fact that France was so depleted, both of men and of money by the wars of La Grande Monarque, that troops could not be spared for the protection of the West Indian colonies, which were, therefore, forced to rely on the filibusters for security against the Spaniards. The same class, therefore, who were suppressed by the English as an international nuisance were encouraged by the French as a public benefit and the surest guarantee against Spanish invasion and conquest. In France, "Nos Filibustiers" were popular heroes, and the French historians record with pride any achievement done by these. "Knights of the Ocean Wave" as a matter of national congratulation.

While the peace of Ryswick was in negotiation an enterprise was undertaken by the French which proved to be the last important appearance of either Buccaneers or filibusters on the stage of history. The war with the Grand Alliance had gone against France to such an extent as greatly to shock the national pride and to close the war with a little plunder, as well as prestige, was necessary to recruit the finances and to maintain the profligate



Louis' reputation for greatness, a reputation, which by the way, was his chief stock in trade for carrying on the business of a reigning monarch with proper dignity and success: The object proposed was to fit out a French fleet which should make a descent on some port of Spain in the New World, secure a large booty and then let the curtain fall on a disastrous war with a blaze of red fire and a burst of triumphant music from the band.

#### THE CARTAGENA EXPEDITION.

There being little money, however, available for such a purpose, the treasury being empty by the long continued wars of Louis XIV., popular subscriptions were called for, and a considerable sum, quite enough to fit out the necessary naval force, was raised by leading capitalists, bankers and noblemen. On their part the matter was a speculation, the funds being furnished with the understanding that the booty was to be divided among them proportionately to the advances they made, while the possibility of loss was of course not contemplated.

The profitable nature of raids on the Spanish main being well known, the subscribers were liberal, and the result was one of the largest fleets which France had ever sent to the New World. The command was given to Monsieur de Pointis, an old sailor, a commander of experience and of high reputation, and by him a commission was sent to Monsieur de Casse, the governor of the French settlements in Hispaniola (Hayti), to raise at least twelve hundred men to co-operate in the undertaking. When the fleet arrived in the West Indies and the filibusters saw the man with whom they had to deal, their dissatisfaction with his haughtiness and lack of condescension was so great that they hesitated about joining the expedition. They were accustomed to the free and easy ways of their own leaders, who at best were only temporarily in command, and when off duty were of no higher rank than their fellows, and the lack of discipline among the freebooters very ill-prepared them for submitting to the stern exercise of authority by a martinet admiral.

But though they grumbled greatly at the airs which Monsieur de Pointis and his officers gave themselves, they finally concluded to co-operate with the French fleet, for such was its strength that they anticipated great booty as a result of its operations. So they did not relinquish what they deemed a permanent and solid advantage for the few haughty words of the French commander-in-chief. They did not know where they were going, but felt satisfied that on whatever point the attack was made, material advantage would result to themselves from the assistance of the French force.

#### AGREEMENT FOR DIVIDING THE PLUNDER.

But before definitely consenting to join the expedition, they insisted that an exact agreement should be entered into with reference to the division of the booty, desiring to know what share of it would fall to themselves. On this point there was much discussion, for as de Pointis considered himself the only person of authority in the whole command, he was strongly inclined to give



them no satisfaction, and to compel them to be content with whatever he should allot. To this, however, they would by no means agree, and after much discussion an understanding was finally reached, that filibusters and colonists should share equally man for man with the men of the French fleet. This matter was no sooner settled than another difficulty arose, this time between de Pointis and de Casse. The latter, since he had furnished so large a proportion of the force, decided that he himself would accompany his men as their commander, and wished to be informed what rank he would hold in the expedition. In his opinion, as the filibusters and colonists formed a large part of the available fighting force, their leader should rank equally with the admiral of the fleet, but to this de Pointis would by no means consent, and de Casse finally accompanied the expedition with the rank of captain of a ship, for discontented as he was, he was unwilling to be left behind, and hoping to share equally in the glory and in the plunder, accompanied his men.

It was settled that the filibusters should go in their own ships and should provide themselves with six weeks' rations, and before starting a grand review was held of all the available force in order that none but able-bodied men should be taken. During the course of this parade it was discovered that a considerable party of negroes desired to join the expedition, and a special clause was inserted in the plunder agreement for this part of the force. The free negroes were to be counted as sharing equally with the whites in the division of the spoils, while the portions of slaves were to go to their masters. Copies of the agreement were posted up in public places at Petit Goave, that all might be informed as to its particulars. Copies were also deposited with leading officials of the colony, the Admiral taking one, Monsieur de Casse another, and one was sent to France.

The point of attack had not yet been determined. The colonists and filibusters voted for San Domingo on account of its nearness and the benefit the colonies would derive from the expulsion of the Spaniards from Hispaniola, but San Domingo was not rich enough to suit the Admiral, and as plunder was the leading object, Cartagena, on the north coast of South America, in what is now Colombia, was finally selected.

#### A SERIOUS ROW PRECIPITATED BY A DRUNKEN MAN.

All was now in readiness, but on the point of departure the inopportune drunkenness of one of the filibusters precipitated a difficulty which nearly broke up the expedition. De Pointis, assuming that as he was commander-in-chief his authority extended over the land of the French colonies as well as over the sea, had taken possession of a fort in Petit Goave and had garrisoned it with his own men. The day before the fleet was to sail, a drunken filibuster staggering along the road leading into the fort was stopped by the sentinel. Angry at the interruption he sprang upon the man and attempted to take his gun. The sentinel resisted, and unwilling to shoot the freebooter, knocked him down with the butt of his musket, at the same time calling for the guard.



Responding to the sentinel's shouts, the petty officer turned out with three or four men and in a twinkling the drunken freebooter was dragged into the fort, put in irons and thrown into the guard-house. The affray was witnessed by several of the comrades of the drunken man, who at once ran to the camp and spread the report that de Pointis' dandies, as the filibusters called his men, were killing a colonist. In a moment the camp of the freebooters was in an uproar. Without waiting for orders, they seized their arms and ran to the fort to attack it and to secure the release of their comrade. Seeing so disorderly a mob, armed to the teeth, rushing up the hill, the soldiers of the garrison closed the gates, ran out two pieces of artillery, and set their arms ready to resist any attack that might be made. While the filibusters were on their way, word was brought to de Casse and de Pointis, who chanced to be very near the scene of the affray. Knowing the serious results that might follow a conflict of this kind, they both rushed in, one imploring the freebooters to desist, the other ordering the garrison not to fire. With much difficulty the enraged filibusters were finally dissuaded from their intention, and the matter was compromised, the drunken freebooter being released, and the officer who put him in irons was sent on board one of the ships under arrest.

On April 3d, 1697, the fleet sailed from Petit Goave for Cartagena. It was a formidable array. Seven men-of-war of the first class led the way, followed by eleven frigates and over forty smaller vessels, the force on board consisting of seven hundred filibusters, one hundred and seventy soldiers from the French garrisons, and three hundred and thirty volunteer colonists and negroes, altogether about twelve hundred men from the garrisons, which, with the crews of the ships, made the total force over five thousand, five hundred and fifty.

#### THE ATTACK ON CARTAGENA.

Cartagena was sighted on April 13th, but two days were spent in endeavoring to make a landing. The city was found to be approachable only by the lake, and the only entrance to this was by Bocca Chica, which was defended by a strong Spanish fort. A heavy cannonade was carried on for several hours, and under cover of the guns of the fleet a landing was finally effected by a corps of eighty negroes. After these had secured a strong position along a line of hills near the fort and had driven back the Spaniards from their outer works, a body of filibusters landed and took the water fort by storm.

To the east of the city of Cartagena, and commanding all the land approaches, there was a high hill crowned by the church of Nuestra Señora de la Poupá. In the church and the convent adjoining, the Spaniards had extemporized a fortification, the outer works of which extended a considerable distance down the hill, and presented a most formidable barrier to the progress of an enemy. Beneath the hill on the side furthest from the sea, the French from



their ships could observe the inhabitants of the city moving out in large numbers, and taking with them wagons and pack animals which no doubt bore away the property of the Spaniards beyond the reach of successful pursuit. In order to prevent this general exodus, which if continued promised to lose to the besiegers all the expected booty, the French admiral assigned the Buccaneers to the dangerous task of scaling the hill and capturing its fortifications. No regular troops either of the land or from the ships were sent along, and the impression at once gained ground, among both colonists and filibusters, that de Pointis was desirous of sparing his own men, and esteeming the lives of the freebooters of no consequence, did not care how many of them were killed. Though greatly dissatisfied, they entered gallantly upon the required service, carried the hill by an assault that awoke the admiration of the French, and thus completely invested the city both by sea and land.

Still the Spaniards were not without resources. Although their condition seemed almost hopeless, they kept up a desperate resistance, raised new barriers to take the place of the outer works captured by the filibusters, and fought so desperately that it was not until May 3d that the city capitulated. Even then they did not surrender without securing for themselves terms of capitulation, though these were only such as would be granted by robbers to their victims. All public effects were to be given up, and all moneys delivered over. The inhabitants were free to go or stay as they pleased, but those who went must, before leaving the city, deliver all their property of whatever nature to their conquerors, while those who remained were to declare what money and valuables they possessed, no matter of what nature, and upon giving up half were allowed to retain the remainder, but all churches and convents were to be respected.





## CHAPTER XXX.

### THE PLUNDER OF CARTAGENA.



PON taking possession of the city, de Pointis was careful to spread the rumor that Cartagena would be taken permanently from the Spaniards and made a French colony. For this rumor he had a reason. He argued that if the Spaniards believed they were to come back under the control of the French, they would be more anxious to make peace with their new masters, and thus the funds would be the more easily collected. His judgment in this matter was correct, for under no expedition was a larger amount of money secured with less trouble than in this. After conquering the city,

the French general with his staff and soldiers proceeded at once to the cathedral where the Spanish priests were compelled to sing a Te Deum in honor of the occasion, after which a proclamation was issued, recounting the manner in which the stealing was to be done. All priests in charge of churches, heads of monasteries, and all nunneries were admonished that although their houses were to be spared, yet they should understand that they must give up all money in their possession; "otherwise," added the pious Admiral, "it is in your power to collect within your domiciles all the money of the city, and thus deprive us of our just rights." Thus advised, the good fathers and sisters set an example to the people by hurriedly contributing all the funds of their respective establishments for the benefit of the pious de Pointis and his companions, and to carry out the plan of a permanent occupation, du Casse was made governor, and a civil administration was appointed and put in operation.

#### DESPOILING THE SPANIARDS.

The paroled soldiers were forbidden to enter the houses of the inhabitants until an officer of the fleet had made an inspection, catechised the inhabitants, and ascertained what available money and goods were in the dwelling. A reward was proclaimed for information of hidden wealth, and a tenth of all that was thus discovered was to be paid to the informer, while the punishment of death was denounced to all who should endeavor to conceal or carry off money or valuables, thus defrauding the victors of their spoils.



With these incitements the citizens of Cartagena exhibited great readiness to disclose the state of their affairs, having good reasons for the alacrity they displayed; for, although the methods of the French contrasted favorably with those of the filibusters and Buccaneers, there was a certain suggestive sharpness in the proclamations and warnings of Monsieur de Pointis, which made the Cartagena people rather careful as to how they undertook to deceive his inspectors. An office for the reception of property was opened, and in French fashion the people were formed *en queue*, to take their turn at delivering up their property. The scenes witnessed during this part of the exercises were both humorous and pathetic, for the French were not at all scrupulous in adhering to the published terms of the proclamation, and sometimes appropriated more than fell to their share. An old man of the line whose sole wealth consisted of one bar of silver of the value of ten dollars, brought it up to the inspector and declared it to be his all. "O, well," said this worthy personage, "it is hardly worth while to divide this," so he threw the bar, without further comment, into the French pile. An aged negro stood in the line loaded with six chickens, expecting to keep half, but to his intense disappointment, the whole were carried off by the greedy Frenchmen. A widow brought four crowns, something less than six dollars, and in a fit of generosity the officer let her keep the whole, but just round the corner waited a filibuster, who at once relieved her of her little store. So great were the deliveries that the officers could not weigh the money or store the merchandise fast enough.

In spite of the professions of regularity made by the Admiral, peculations were innumerable. The officers who were charged with the house-to-house inspection often compromised with the inhabitants, personally securing a part of the booty and allowing the Admiral to be defrauded. Years afterward it was noted as a curious fact that every one of de Pointis' inspectors became wealthy. Not a man of them made less than one hundred thousand crowns, about sixty thousand dollars, and some three or four times this much. Nor did the strict orders issued to the troops prevent innumerable little robberies which were perpetually taking place all over the city. The French sailors stole, the colonists stole; in fact it was a stealing expedition from the Admiral down to the humblest seaman. Everybody seemed to consider it the one most favorable opportunity of his life to become wealthy.

#### A QUARREL OVER THE SPOILS.

During the first few days of occupation, a difference arose between the Admiral and de Casse about the plunder. The latter having been appointed governor of the city, naturally considered himself as having some authority and entitled to some respect. While the plundering was going on much of the stolen property was brought to him, and of it he took charge; but the Admiral was in no way desirous that de Casse should trouble himself about this part of the business, and sent him word that all assessments must be paid to the King's officers, as appointed by himself, that the King's clerks would take



account of the moneys and merchandise collected, and that the colonists and filibusters should have their due share. But all the time, as fast as the money was weighed it was packed in boxes and carried into the King's ships, not even a single chest being allowed to go into the vessels of the colonists. De Casse suspecting that some roguery was in contemplation, insisted that the colonists should have officers to assist at the collection of the treasury, and that they should also be represented by clerks who would take account of the payments made by the Cartagena people. This proposition, however, was so far from satisfactory to the Admiral that he most emphatically declared it to be an infringement of his dignity in nowise to be permitted. Finding himself, therefore, deprived of all but the semblance of authority, de Casse replied with a protest against what he termed the illegality of the whole proceeding. De Pointis cared nothing for his protest, and the collection went on as before, the Admiral proving that although he professed great contempt for the filibusters, he had been able from their methods to learn much which proved of value to him in the emergency in which he found himself at Cartagena. In short, he was an adept in the filibuster principles, and needed but an opportunity to become a skilful leader of the brotherhood.

The regulated collection did not, as already stated, save the citizens from enterprising men both among the filibusters and the French who sought to do a little business on their own account. Complaints were made both to the Admiral and de Casse, and orders were issued to prevent irregular depredations. But the officers neglected to enforce these orders and the men refused to pay the slightest attention to them. In despair the citizens sought to protect themselves, and some hired filibusters to guard their houses from unlicensed thieving. It is said that some of the freebooters faithfully performed the work they covenanted to do and religiously kept all other rogues at a distance; but it is equally certain that others, after receiving the money paid them as guards, turned and robbed the houses they had agreed to protect. In this line of action the filibusters seemed to be the leaders, and the Admiral hearing rumors that they were getting more than their share of the plunder, determined no longer to be hampered by their presence but at the earliest possible moment to get them out of the city. By his connivance, if not at his suggestion, a report was spread abroad that an army of ten to fifteen thousand Indians and Spanish were approaching to attack the invaders and the filibusters and colonists were ordered out to meet them, while the soldiers and sailors of the French were to constitute a reserve line. Suspecting nothing, the colonists and freebooters marshalled their companies, marched out of the city in good order, took the road to the neighboring hills where they made a stand in a mountain pass and waited for some days, in the meantime prowling through the woods in search of the expected foe. After several days of waiting for an enemy that failed to come, they returned to the city and were almost paralyzed with astonishment at finding the gates shut, artillery mounted and a formidable guard of



French holding the city against them. Asking what this meant, they received a polite message from the Admiral to the effect that he thought it better they should remain without the walls until the fleet was ready to sail.

**A WILY AND AVARICIOUS ADMIRAL.**

Their rage at this treatment was extreme. All sorts of measures were suggested, and they even proposed to attack the city, but as the French display of force was great, and the freebooters had no artillery, an assault was hopeless and their leaders dissuaded them from so vain a purpose. They were kept without the walls for fifteen days, during which time the whole of the plunder had been collected and sent on board the French fleet, and not until the last dollar was safe in the coffers of the Admiral were the gates opened and the freebooters readmitted.

Naturally they expected that a division of the plunder would at once take place, and besieged the Admiral's quarters with inquiries as to when they should get their share. To all questions, whether from the freebooters or the colonists, the clever de Pointis had but one answer, that the clerks had not yet cast up the accounts, and until the whole of the treasure had been counted, no settlement was possible, for he could not tell what would be his or their amount until the whole was known. This seemed reasonable, so with no little impatience the freebooters waited a few days longer, and again making application, received precisely the same answer. Perceiving, however, their impatience, and hearing of the threats which they were beginning to make, the Admiral issued a proclamation assigning large rewards to the captains of the filibusters, declaring what amounts should be allowed, each man being specified by name. No money, however, was paid, and although all the plunder was on the French fleet, the fair promises of the Admiral and his apparent sincerity in speaking of the affair made the filibusters so hopeful of receiving justice at his hands that they permitted themselves to be dissuaded by their leaders from making any disturbance and peacefully awaited the anticipated division. The wildest estimates were afloat as to the value of the plunder. Cartagena was known to be the wealthiest city on the American continent, and although much valuable property had been carried away at the first approach of the fleet to the city, so much remained for the French invaders that the estimates of the French collections make the amount to have been about forty million livres (about eight million dollars), a fact which shows what a fat plum for the freebooters was a Spanish city of the olden time.

Whatever the amount, however, after it was all (including even the plate and decorations of the churches, which in spite of his smooth words had been taken by the Admiral) safely on board the French fleet, de Pointis announced his intention of leaving, making as an excuse for his change of purpose that the country was so unhealthy his men were dying by the wholesale. So he went on board, forgetting his manners to that extent that he gave neither de Cassa nor the filibusters notice of his embarkation, took all his troops,



and on May 25th evacuated the city. Still trusting almost against hope, the filibusters embarked and followed him, hoping to receive their share. The two fleets dropped down the harbor to its mouth, and then the open sea was in sight. De Pointis then announced that the accounts were complete, that calculations had been made, and from the best estimates the share of all the filibusters, colonists and negroes would be about forty thousand crowns, equivalent to twenty-four thousand dollars. This decision was graciously communicated to de Casse, and by him given to the captains of the irregular troops.

#### THE FILIBUSTERS CHEATED.

To say that the filibusters broke into a savage rage at the announcement, inadequately expresses their feelings. They were not yet out of the bay, and between them and the open sea lay the Admiral's fleet. So enraged were they that a proposition to attack the flag-ship, a great French man-of-war mounting eighty-four guns, was seriously discussed, and would have been attempted had not its hopelessness been apparent even to the most desperate. They broke out into imprecations against de Pointis; he was a thief, he was no better than a common swindler. The filibusters had borne the burden and heat of the day; they had done all the fighting, and now were defrauded of their share of the plunder.

De Casse explained and remonstrated in vain. He promised to secure for them redress in France, but they doubted his ability to do so. "If he cannot keep de Pointis from cheating us here, how can he prevent our being cheated in France?" was a question to which there was no answer. But their rage soon found an expression in action. Somebody proposed that as de Pointis had secured everything and they could not take the booty from him, they should go back to Cartagena and help themselves. The idea spread like wildfire. "Let the villain go; he has left our share at Cartagena, we will go back and get it." With one accord the filibuster ship set sail and started back up the bay. De Casse ordered them to return; they laughed at him. He sent word to the Admiral of the intention of the filibusters, but de Pointis was eager to get away, for he knew what they did not, that an English fleet was daily expected in the West Indies, and he was extremely desirous of getting his plunder to a place of safety. Besides he did not want to fight the enraged filibusters. He had seen with what desperation they could carry on a conflict, so he contented himself with saying to de Casse, "Your men are great rogues, and ought all to be hanged," and with this as the last word he, on June 1st, started for France with his plunder, leaving his recent assistants to do what they pleased. On the same day, de Casse set sail to return to San Domingo, and thus Cartagena was abandoned to twelve hundred men without officers, with no control, and deserted by all the persons whose duty it should have been to remain and restrain their lawlessness. The unfortunate inhabitants of Cartagena had assembled in the churches to return thanks for the departure



of the robber fleets; they now crowded the wharfs and quays in a state of the utmost panic, on seeing the filibuster ships coming back, and remained in painful anxiety to ascertain the cause. It seems, their money having been taken, they anticipated nothing less than a general massacre, but the filibusters acted with more moderation than was usually their custom. As soon as they occupied the city, they seized all the male population and locked them up in the churches, then issued a proclamation to the effect that as they had been robbed by the French, so in turn they must equalize matters by robbing the Spanish, and concluded this interesting state paper by demanding five millions of livres, or one million dollars as the ransom of the city. If this were paid at once, they promised "on the honor of gentlemen" to leave without disorder; if it were not, they promised with equal faithfulness that the town should be burned, every man should be shot, and every woman and child carried off to Hispaniola in slavery.

#### **A SECOND PLUNDER OF CARTAGENA.**

It seems incredible that after the rigid demand for money which had been made by the French, the freebooters could have expected to get so much more, and still more incredible that they actually got it. They tortured some, and terrified others; they plundered the graves, ransacked the churches; probed every garden, explored every hiding place, and such was their diligence and success that in five days most of the sum mentioned had been accumulated, and the robbers were ready to depart. On the eve of their doing so, the usual quarrel broke out among themselves. The regular filibusters claimed that the colonists and negroes were but amateurs at the business of robbery, and therefore not entitled to the same amount of plunder that was due men of large experience and great ability. On the other hand, the colonists and blacks asserted that their fighting had been as valiant as that done by the filibusters, and that in every respect they were the equals of the freebooters and entitled to the same share of plunder. How far the controversy might have gone can never be conjectured, had it not been cut short by the arrival of a swift boat from Martinico, which had been sent expressly for the purpose of giving them notice that the English and Dutch fleet had arrived, and not finding the French and filibusters at Hispaniola, was then on its way to Cartagena.

#### **ESCAPE OF DE PONTIS, AND CAPTURE OF THE DISAFFECTED ROBBERS.**

This piece of alarming intelligence at once reconciled the difficulties between the freebooters and the colonists. The plunder was hastily divided; each man received about twelve hundred dollars, while the captured negroes and merchandise were placed in the ships for a future division, and the expedition prepared to leave. By this time the allied fleet was very close at hand, and less than one hundred miles from the entrance to the bay sighted de Pointis, who was then on his way to Europe. But the French admiral had no mind to fight; the allied force was too large, he had too much at stake, and



had no desire to risk the enormous booty which was now in the holds of his ships. So he ran away, and with a favorable wind in his quarter, outsailed the allies and escaped into the Atlantic.

The French having thus eluded the English vessels, the allies directed their course to Cartagena, and arrived there just in time to sight the filibusters coming out of the harbor. The latter had destroyed all their smaller ships, and loaded themselves, their slaves and their plunder into nine of the largest, but scarcely had they sailed out of the bay, and were not yet out of sight of land, when they caught sight of the sails of the allied fleet on the horizon. The filibuster vessels scattered in nine different directions; it was "every man for himself and the English take the hindmost." Their two large ships were taken; two others, in the effort to escape, went aground near Cartagena, and their crews fell into the hands of the Spaniards, who at once made slaves of them; one was blown up by a shot from an English gun, one was never heard of afterwards, and but three returned safely to Hispaniola.

#### A SINGULAR APPEAL TO THE LAW.

Of course the booty captured by the English and Dutch fleet was completely lost, and in despair at realizing nothing from so important and dangerous an expedition the filibusters who returned from the Cartagena raid determined as a last hope to institute legal proceedings in France against De Pointis and the subscribers who furnished the funds with which the fleet was equipped. Everyone knew that the plunder had been enormous, and everyone also knew that the colonists and filibusters who aided in the expedition had received nothing, for in their rage at the manifest swindle practised on them by the French admiral they had not waited to take even the petty allowance he announced as their portion.

De Casse declared himself warmly in favor of the scheme for obtaining redress, indeed had committed himself to it as a means of pacifying the filibusters when they were about to return to Cartagena. So an assessment for the necessary legal expenses was made among the parties interested, who were not only the filibusters and colonists who actually went to Cartagena, but planters who sent able-bodied slaves as soldiers, capitalists who supplied money for arms, uniforms, ammunition and provision, merchants who had extended credit to those who went, ship-owners who had hired their vessels for the transport of troops and had seen their property destroyed by the enemy's fleet; in short, in the whole colony there was scarcely a man or a family but was in some way interested in the Cartagena spoils.

It was a strange sight to see men whose lives had been spent in outraging the law appealing to legal forms to secure what they had been accustomed to take by force, and nothing more strikingly illustrates the degeneracy of buccaneering than the spectacle of Buccaneers going to law. However, they carried their claims to court, De Casse returning to France to manage the case, and the best lawyers at the French bar were retained to advocate the cause of the freebooters



and colonists. The claims were presented in a manner which appeared to establish their justice, but nevertheless decision was delayed many years and until most of those originally interested were dead, but was finally given, awarding the filibusters and colonists 1,400,000 livres (\$28,000) as their share of the Cartagena plunder. On a final settlement being made, however, it was discovered that costs, fees and lawyers' charges exceeded this sum, as the brethren of the long robe did not then, any more than since, work for love of their fellow men, and instead of a division the plaintiffs were presented with a bill. It is not recorded that they paid it, but with its presentation perished the last hope of the colonists getting anything from the capitalists who had helped De Pointis to sail.

#### AMBITIONS OF A DYING MONARCH.

The Cartagena affair closed the history of both filibusters and Buccaneers in the West Indies, and to this consummation the condition of affairs in Europe materially contributed. The peace of Ryswick, while it did not long continue, nevertheless lasted long enough to enable all parties to see the bad state of affairs in the West Indies, and to desire a cessation of the private wars which had been going on there for two hundred years.

There was another consideration no less powerful. During the reign of Charles II of Spain, the last prince of the House of Hapsburg, wars with France had been almost incessant, but this King was now near the end of his days and both France and Austria were eager to conciliate the Spanish people; the former, that the throne might be secured for a grandson of Louis XIV; the latter, that Leopold I might place thereon an Austrian prince. The dying King had, it is said, made a will in favor of the latter, but the French Minister, by means best known to himself, procured a change to the grandson of Louis, a fact which made that monarch more than ever desirous of pleasing the people who were in future to be the allies of the French. In order to carry out his plan of conciliation, he went so far as to take from de Pointis the gold and silver vessels and ornaments which the latter had abstracted from the Cartagena churches and to send them back, with his compliments, as a special favor to his good friends of that city. The Spaniards were delighted and this happy act, perhaps more than anything else, contributed to the success of the French candidate, who, under the name of Philip V, ascended the Spanish throne. The will of Charles, however, was disputed by Germany, England and Holland, and the result was the War of the Spanish Succession, which desolated Europe for thirteen years, gave Marlboro a reputation, and finally established a Bourbon prince on the Spanish throne.

#### DANGERS THAT THREATENED THE BUCCANEERS.

But the war which ruined Europe brought peace to America, for the Spanish and the French were now allies, and the English Buccaneers being already suppressed, the French followed suit by abolishing the occupation of the filibusters. They were no longer allowed to fit out ships to prey on the Spaniard



and although some of them, for a time, kept themselves in practice by plundering the English and Dutch, there was not much profit and no end of danger in the business, for both nations kept strong fleets in that part of the world and the Dutch and English captains had a habit of hanging filibusters as soon as caught, a little peculiarity which divested the calling of much of its old-time charm.

Every inducement was offered by the French authorities to the filibusters to give up their roving ways and to settle down as quiet, useful citizens, and many of them did so. Some became planters; some established themselves on the isthmus among the Darien Indians with whom they intermarried; others were persuaded to become merchantmen in the seas through which they formerly swaggered as freebooters. But, as Owen Meredith says:

"Use and habit are powers

Far stronger than passion in this world of ours,"

and many of the filibusters finding work hard to get and harder to perform, disliking the monotony of steady employment, and retaining ships suitable for



HOME OF THE REFORMED BUCCANEER.

cruising, kept on their old courses. But the West Indies were now too hot to hold them and they scattered to other parts of the world as pirates—men more desperate than the Buccaneers, since their profession was more hazardous. Acknowledged outlaws, they preyed on ships of every country and were sought for with diligence by men-of-war flying every flag.

But the pirates, the legitimate successors of the filibusters, were few in number, and, in comparison with their predecessors, did little damage. Some names among them attained a prominence in no way justified by their achievements and several, like Lafitte, by making themselves of use in a time of need succeeded in winning a pardon from the government that availed itself of their services, but most of them were hunted down and exterminated before the beginning of the present century.

#### THE LAST OF THE BUCCANEERS.

The fall of the Buccaneer power in the West Indies not only closes one of the most remarkable movements recorded in history but also furnishes the most



striking example of a lost opportunity. It was in the power of these men to establish a great independent state, but they let the time slip by; their leaders chose to be plunderers rather than founders. Under wise administration the bands of robber-hunters might have grown to an empire, comprising Central America and the West Indian islands, but the family element was lacking; neither Buccaneer nor filibuster had family ties to bind him to one place and the proverb about the lack of ability of the rolling stone to gather moss is as true of a community as of an individual.

The days of the Buccaneers are gone forever. Save on the smallest scale and for a very limited time, neither buccaneering nor piracy is possible in any quarter of the world. The strength of men-of-war, the progress of geographical knowledge which has explored every nook and corner of the globe where a pirate could find a hiding place, the commercial spirit which renders the gains of trade larger than the rewards of robbery, the interlacing of lands together by means of cables and telegraphs by which intelligence can be flashed around the world in a few hours, the use of steam by vessels designed for war, the employment of long range guns, the understanding among nations that hostile operations, whether by land or sea, shall be carried on in a manner as humane as the nature of things will permit, have all combined to render buccaneering and piracy impossible and thus the tale of the Buccaneer exploits is one chapter of history which can never be repeated.





## CHAPTER XXXI.

### VOYAGE OF TASMAN.



ISTORY has not definitely decided to whom is due the honor of discovering New Guinea, Java, Sumatra, the Celebes, or the Continent of Australia. The Chinese certainly had knowledge of all these lands long before the time of modern discovery, and Marco Polo makes mention of two great islands to the south-west of Java, which could hardly be any other than New Guinea and Australia. De Torres sailed along the south shore of New Guinea in 1606, and passed through the strait which separates that island from Australia and which bears his name. But at that time he gained no important knowledge concerning the size of New Guinea, and believed Australia, as he viewed it, to be a cluster of islands. In October, 1616, a Dutch navigator named Theodoric Hertoge, on the way from Holland to the East Indies on a commercial cruise, fell in with land which proved to be the west coast of Australia, and in honor of the name of the ship in which Hertoge sailed, he called it "The Land of Eendrecht." But the discovery thus made was considered of such small importance that, although Holland was active in pushing her commercial and territorial conquests in and about the East Indies, no effort was made to extend the knowledge thus accidentally acquired by Hertoge until 1642, when the governor and council at Batavia fitted out two ships to prosecute discovery, and incidentally to ascertain the extent of the South Land. The command of this expedition was given to the great Dutch navigator, Abel Jansen Tasman, whose voyage proved to be the most important to geography, excepting those of Columbus and Cabot, that had been undertaken up to that time.

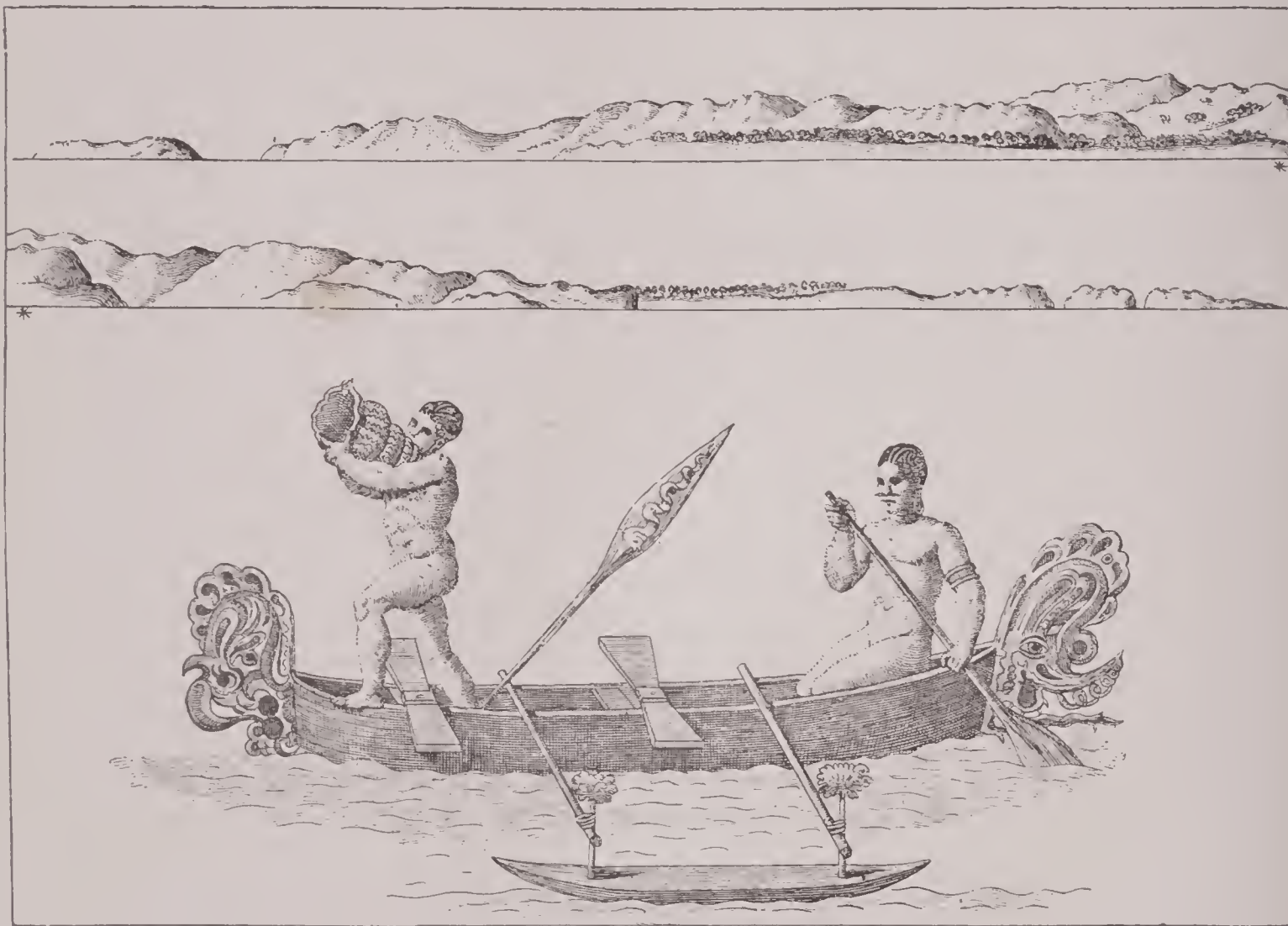
In pursuance of his instructions, Tasman sailed from Batavia on the 14th of August, in the yacht *Heemskirk*, accompanied by the fly-boat *Zeehaan*. Proceeding first south-west by west, on the 5th of September he landed at the island of Mauritius for a store of wood and provisions. This land was discovered by the Portuguese in the year 1507 and named Isle of Cerna, but as it was not considered of much importance, being destitute of inhabitants and all animal life excepting a species of fruit-eating bats, they abandoned it, after which the Dutch claimed it as a possession in 1598 and named the island Mauritius. But though the Dutch built a fort on the bay shore they made no



effort at its permanent settlement and in turn abandoned it in 1710. Five years later the French took possession and changed its name to that of Island of France; but though they have retained it ever since, the Dutch designation, Mauritius, is the name by which it is still generally known.

**DISCOVERY OF VAN DIEMAN'S LAND, OR TASMANIA.**

Tasman remained at Mauritius until the 8th of October when, having taken on board a sufficient quantity of supplies, including several head of goats and hogs, he set sail in a south-easterly direction and on the 24th of November discovered a bluff shore of a considerable island which in honor of the



NEW ZEALANDERS FIRST SEEN BY TASMAN.  
(From an old copper plate print.)

Governor-general of Batavia, Tasman named Anthony Van Dieman's Land; but owing to the foul weather the ships were not able to find good anchorage until December 1st, when they put into a fair harbor which Tasman named Frederik Hendrik's Bay. Here the expedition remained three days taking a view of the country and making some excursions inland, but though evidences of human habitations were discerned not a single native could be seen. Departure from Van Dieman's Land was made on the 5th, and after a sail of eight days directly eastward other land was sighted to which Tasman gave the name Staaten Land, but which was re-christened by the Dutch New Zealand. A11x-



ious to determine the size and importance of this discovery, Tasman coasted the shore for two days without making an effort to effect a landing, no doubt having some fears of the natives, the smoke from whose numerous fires was seen rising above the trees.

On the 18th of December, Tasman came before the entrance of a promising harbor into which he sailed, but sent ahead of him two boats with twelve men to look for a safe anchorage and good watering place. Shortly after sunset, while the ships were riding at anchor, four boats were seen approaching the ships two of which were the returning crew, but the other two were canoes of great size containing nearly three scores of natives. These continued paddling towards the ships until they were within a stone's throw when they stopped and could not be persuaded to come any nearer. After an exchange of words which neither could understand, the natives began blowing conch-shells and were answered by blasts from a trumpet by Tasman's men, and this strange trumpeting continued until some time after dark, when the New Zealanders retired. On the following morning a canoe with thirteen men put out towards the ship, but these could not be induced to approach nearer than the others had done, though many things such as clothing, trinkets, hatchets and fish were held up to tempt them. As the natives appeared pacific and a supply of fresh water was needed, Tasman decided to move his vessels closer in shore, where there was still a good depth. Just as this move was about to be made, seven canoes were seen to make out towards the ships, one of which, containing thirteen men approached to within a dozen yards, when they hauled to and remained stolidly, still refusing to accept the presents that were offered to them.

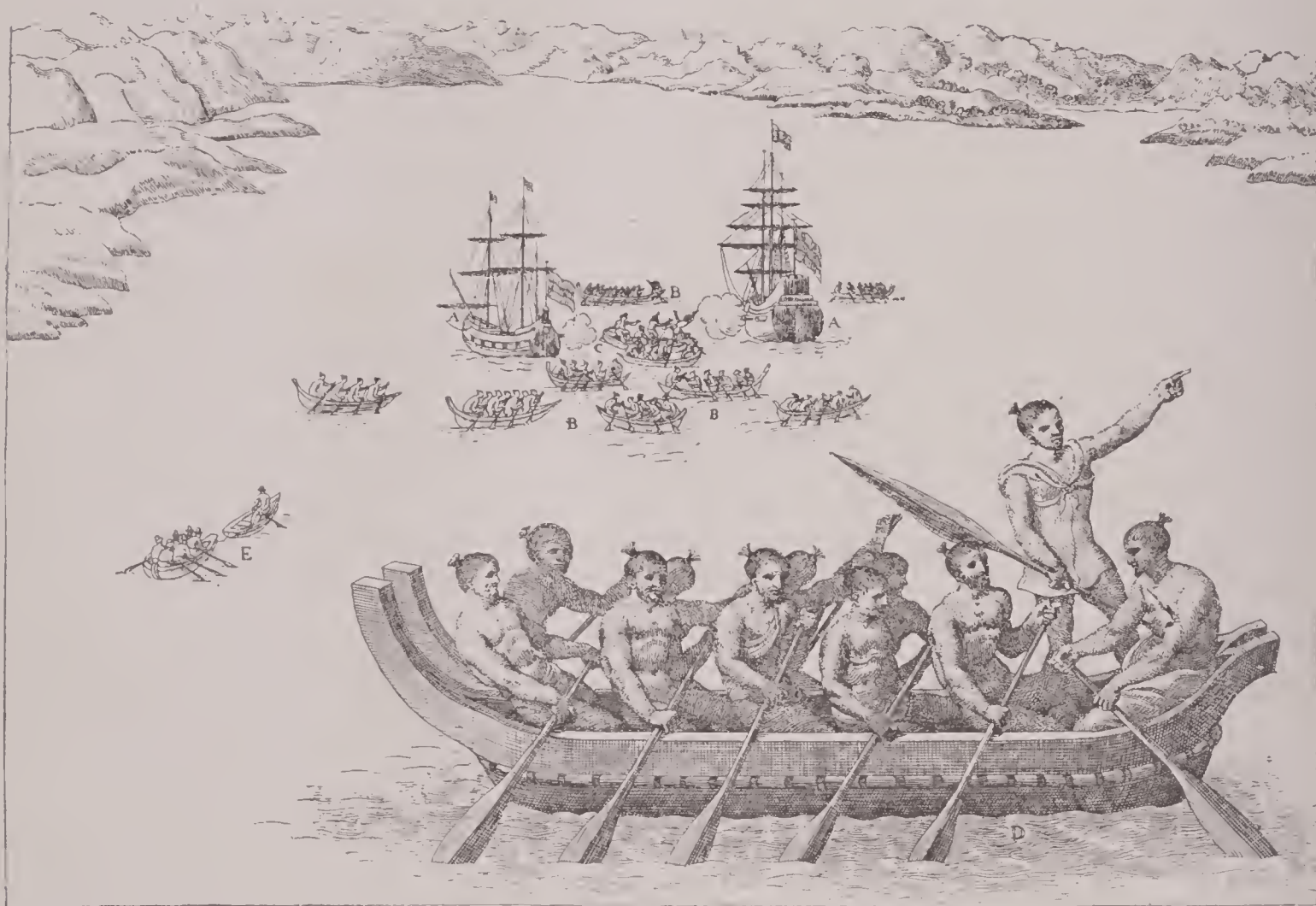
#### MURDERED BY NATIVES.

Gerard Janszoon, master of the *Zeehaan*, who at the time was on the *Heemskirk* with Tasman, ordered his boat with a quarter-master and six seamen to return to his vessel with instruction to his mates to keep on their guard, and to repel any attempt which might be made by the natives to board the *Zeehaan*. Scarcely had the small boat put off, when there was a lively signaling between the natives by means of paddles, which the Dutch were unable to understand, but which they did not connect with any hostile demonstration, and, therefore, continued on their way. The distance between the ships was scarcely two hundred yards, but when midway the natives made a rush at the boat and ran into it with such force that she heeled and took in water. At this moment a prowman in one of the canoes struck the quartermaster, Cornelius Joppe, such a violent blow on the neck with a pike that he was knocked overboard. This was the beginning of hostilities, in which the natives fought with paddles and short clubs, and being in great number, quickly overpowered the crew and killed four seamen. The guns of both ships were turned on the natives, who fled back to the shore, though none were wounded, and the quartermaster and his two men, who had been disabled by blows, but were still able to support themselves in the water, were picked up and saved.



So vicious and unexpected had been this attack, while the natives appeared in almost incredible numbers on the shore, that Tasman weighed anchor and sailed out of the harbor, but he was pursued by thirty-two canoes until two lucky shots from his big gun raked one of the foremost, killing one man and letting the others into the water, where, however, they were picked up by their companions, and then all retired again to the shore. The place where this treacherous and fatal encounter with the natives occurred was named Murderer's Bay, by Tasman, which name it still retains.

After getting out of the harbor, Tasman proceeded along the west coast north-



TASMAN PURSUED BY THE NEW ZEALANDERS.

(From an old copper print.)

ward, unable to find any suitable anchorage, or being deterred by the gathering of armed bodies of natives on the shore, until the 5th of January, 1643, when he found a small island some distance off the New Zealand coast to which he steered. After coming to anchor, a boat was sent ashore where a good supply of fresh water might have been obtained, but the sight of a party of thirty-five natives, armed with long lances and big clubs, deterred the boat's crew from landing, and they retreated back to the ship.

The island thus found was called the Three Kings Island, because it was discovered on the day of the Epiphany. Having now sailed to the north point of

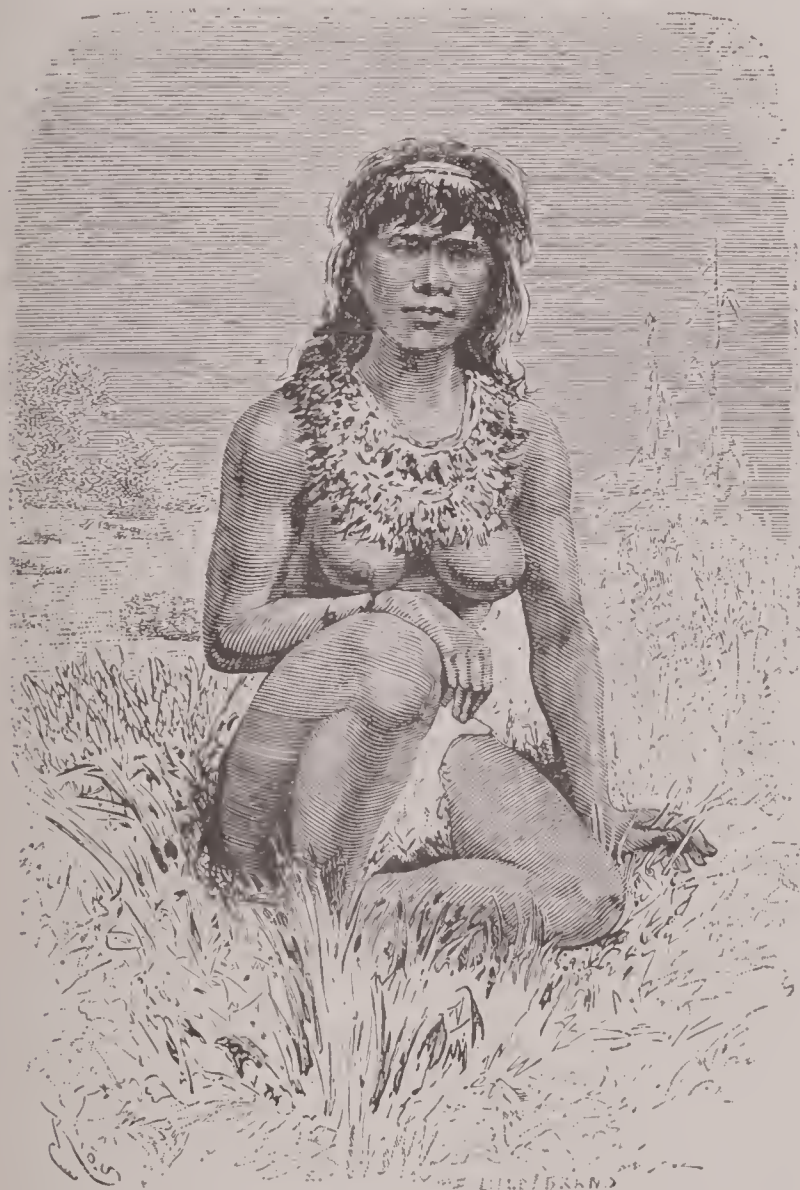


New Zealand, the vessels were directed in a north-easterly course, passing several islands, but making no landing until the 21st, when good anchorage was found at an island to which Tasman gave the name of Amsterdam, while within sight towards the south was another island which he named Middleburg, both being members of the group afterwards named by Cook the Friendly Islands. No sooner had the ships come to anchor off Amsterdam than three natives in a small boat approached near the vessels and saluted them with a vociferous shouting, which Tasman was unable to interpret, though at first he was

inclined to the belief that it was a bold challenge; but as no other canoes followed this first one, an effort was made to conciliate these three bold adventurers, and quantities of white linen were thrown towards them. This induced the canoe to approach closer, and as one of the bolts was rapidly sinking, a native jumped overboard and dived with great dexterity, reappearing at length with the bolt in his hand. After he had recovered the linen, the native regained the canoe and expressed his thankfulness for the offering by raising it several times above his head.

#### HOSPITABLE, BUT THIEVISH.

Perceiving that their white visitors had no intention of harming them, the islanders now came up to the side of the ship and readily took such small articles as beads, fish-hooks, fishing lines, spikes, nails, and looking-glasses which were thrown to them. By this means an amicable exchange was established, which resulted most favorably to Tasman; for



AN AMSTERDAM GIRL.

he was soon able to secure hogs and fresh water in exchange for such things as he had to give the natives. Several canoes directly after put out to the ships, two of which carried white flags which were evidently intended as signs of peace, and their amiable manner induced Tasman to go on shore with a party of his men, where they spent considerable time with the natives and were presented to a grave old man whose position was that of king or chief of the country. Familiarity with the natives, however, soon made them too free in their conduct toward the whites, and presently several things of value



were found to be missing and investigation discovered the fact that the natives had stolen them, and that, though at all times peaceably inclined, they were most consummate thieves; so expert, indeed, that Tasman declares it would require a hundred eyes to prevent the rogues from bearing away anything which might be for a moment deposited upon the ground. The Dutch did not remain long on shore, but returning to the ships were followed by twenty canoes loaded with natives, some of whom went on board the vessels at Tasman's invitation, and nearly a dozen spent the night on the ships, trusting themselves confidently to their white visitors.

In the course of a three days' visit at Amsterdam, Tasman received in exchange for spike-nails, sail-cloth, beads, etc., as much as forty hogs and seventy fowls, besides which, the natives assisted him in filling all his casks with fresh water, and gave him other attentions which were both grateful and important to men who had been so long at sea, living off the frugal fare which they had before been unable to replenish. These people possessed no arms of any kind, so far as Tasman was able to perceive, nor did they have any idea of tobacco either for chewing or smoking. The women wore a covering of mat-work reaching from the middle to the knees, but the men wore nothing beyond that which nature had provided.



ABEL JANSEN TASMAN.

A long stay would probably have been made at Amsterdam, but for the effects of a heavy storm which drove the Heemskirk from her anchorage and so far out to sea that the Zeehaan had to go to her aid. There being nothing to detain them longer at this island Tasman proceeded on the voyage, sailing in a northerly direction, and probably touching at the Navigator or Samoan Group. He mentions discovering a large number of islands, to a few of which only he gave names, so that it is with extreme difficulty, if at all possible, to follow the exact course that he took.

#### AN UTOPIAN REPUBLIC.

On the 25th of January a landing was made at Anamocka, or Rotterdam Island, which was an extremely fertile spot, but upon which was discovered a total population of only sixty or seventy men, none of whom had arms, but their condition seemed to be an extremely happy one. It was evident from



the gardens which they cultivated and the peaceful manner in which they lived that they had no enemies to contend with; and here in this Utopian republic this little party of savages manifestly lived more happily than people in what are considered happier climes and under more civilized conditions. In common, however, with all the Pacific Islanders, these people had the one besetting fault of being thieves, and that they knew the evil of their acts was shown by the fact that they made a public exhibition of placating the white people for an article that had been appropriated by beating the offender upon the back with

a cocoanut until he fell in a faint from the administration. The people had no religion, nor did they practise any kind of divine worship, for there were no idols, relics, or priests to be seen on the island. But that they entertained some superstitions was evidenced by perceiving one of the natives take up a water snake, which he found near his boat, and which he respectfully put upon his head and then returned it again uninjured to the water. They appeared also to have some reverence for flies, which existed in such great numbers as to be a veritable plague. The steersman of the *Heemskirk* accidentally killed a fly in the presence of one of the principal natives, who showed extreme anger at the act.

After leaving Rotterdam the course of the vessels was changed westward through a group of islands in which coral reefs extended almost from shore to shore, so that the ships were in constant danger of being wrecked. Fortune and skilful steering, however, served to carry them through in safety,



A ROTTERDAM ISLANDER.

and on March 24 landing was made on another island in longitude 175 degrees and thirty minutes. As some natives were seen approaching from the shore an anchor was cast to give them opportunity to approach the vessel. A canoe with seven men, without any signs of fear, came alongside of one of the ships and offered Tasman a quantity of cocoanuts of a wild kind in exchange for which they were given three strings of coral and several nails. The people were naked except a piece of cloth, apparently of cotton but probably of cocoanut-fibre, which was wound around the waist. They are represented by Tasman as



being blacker than the inhabitants of the islands which he had before visited; nor were they so civil or friendly in their behavior. A few had their hair cut short, while on others it was long, but bound up in a knot on the crown of the head like the New Zealanders with whom he had come in contact at Murderer's Bay. One man had two feathers on the crown of his head, which projected in fanciful imitation of horns. Another had rings through his nose, but what they were made of Tasman was unable to determine. They were also armed with bows and arrows, and one carried a long lance. They seemed to be anxious for the Dutch to visit their island, but their general hostile attitude decided Tasman to bear away without extending the acquaintance any further. Continuing westward the next land noted was Green Islands, a name which, however, was given them by Captain Carteret more than a hundred years later; for, though the record which Tasman has left reports the discovery of hundreds of islands, he was so neglectful of his duty as a navigator as to frequently omit to give their location or bestow upon them any names, so that it is to the later voyagers that we are indebted for nearly all the information that we possess of the islands of the Malay Archipelago.

#### AMONG THE NEW GUINEANS.

On the 2nd of April, Tasman came in sight of an island to which he gave the name of Anthony Kaan's, which is supposed to have been a part of the coast of New Guinea. He stood off the shore until the following day, when some of the natives approached near enough for him to obtain a pretty accurate view of their appearance, and it is upon the description which he gives of these native visitors that leads to the conclusion that it was New Guinea, instead of a small island which he intimates the land was. It was his duty to land and make an investigation of the shores which he was coasting, but Tasman seems to have been actuated by constant fear of the natives, even when they appeared in inconsiderable numbers.

On the 6th of April, he tells us, eight small canoes approached within a few hundred yards of the ship, but could not be induced to draw nearer until the quartermaster took off his girdle and held it up in an enticing way, at which, one of the canoes came to the ship. These first adventurers were rewarded by several presents, at which the others became bolder, and were finally induced to exchange cocoanuts, yams and pork for such things as Tasman had to barter. The natives were as black as Hottentots, and their hair was of different colors, produced by powdering it with lime and ochre. The lower part of their faces was also painted red, while a few had a bone as large as a little finger thrust through the septum of their noses. For covering, they wore nothing more substantial than a few green leaves bound around the middle; nor did any of those approaching in the canoes bear arms. Yet Tasman was suspicious of them, and refused to accept their invitation to land and visit their chief.

The voyage continued without further interruption until the 20th of April,



when the ships passed along the shore of Vulcan Island, which he so named because of the fires which he reports to have seen burning on the sea sides of a mountain, which indicated to him that the island was thickly inhabited, and would have been an inducement for him to land but for a very strong current that set in from the westward, so as to make anchorage extremely hazardous.

#### A FIGHT WITH THE NATIVES.

On the 25th following, the ships drew near shore again and were approached by a great many small canoes, in all of which there was a quantity of cocoanuts, which the natives proffered in exchange for any articles which Tasman might have. A considerable barter was carried on to the mutual satisfaction of both parties, but Tasman was still determined not to trust himself in the hands of the natives, and therefore, instead of going on shore, as a more courageous explorer certainly would have done, he remained by his ships, occasionally casting anchor, but generally proceeding under slow sails.



THE SHORES OF NEW GUINEA.

On the 27th, several large canoes carrying about twenty men each, armed with pikes, bows and arrows, and harpoons, approached the ship with great confidence, and upon invitation the natives came on board with a large number of cocoanuts. The people were black and naked, but apparently hospitably inclined, and showed great anxiety to have their visitors come on shore and see their chief. But Tasman continued to betray his lack of courage, and this seems to have ultimately angered the natives; for on the 3d of March a number of them being on board, and others about the ships in small canoes, they betrayed considerable uneasiness, and at length one of the natives fired an arrow at a seaman, striking him in the thigh, producing a very painful wound. At this, the seamen beat hastily to quarters, and a volley of musketry was turned loose among the natives, with no other damage, however, than the wounding of one in the arm. The others fled precipitately, those on board leaping into the water, where they were picked up by their companions. The firing of the guns so alarmed the islanders that their actions were thereafter extremely conciliatory,



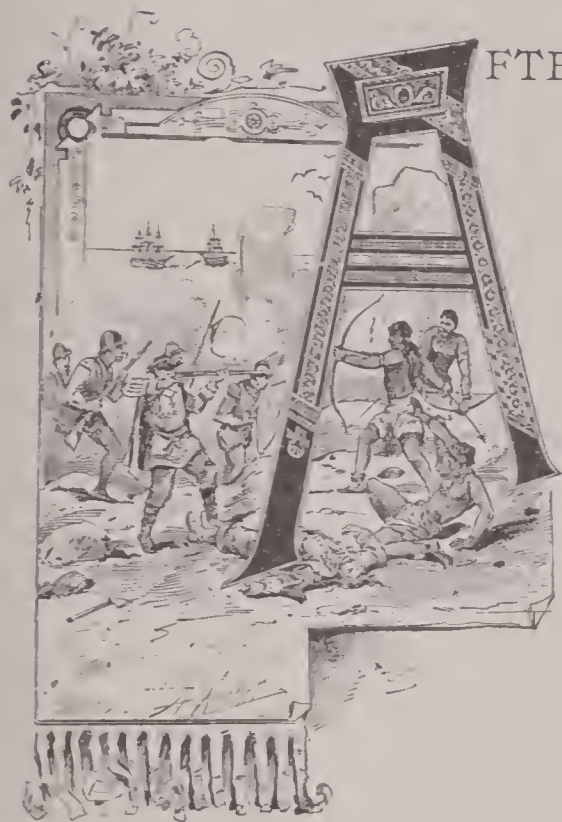
and they offered to surrender up the man who had fired the first arrow. But Tasman was more anxious to escape what he considered to be a dangerous situation than to punish the native offender, and raising sail he left the place with all possible speed. The rest of Tasman's journal gives no more than a bare mention of the several islands which he passed on his return trip to Batavia, where he arrived on June the 15th, having been absent less than one year. Three years later, he undertook another voyage, but his records were so imperfect and his accounts so meagre that nothing has been preserved by which we can follow him accurately or determine what lands he visited, or the results of his expedition. His first voyage was important for the discoveries which he made of Van Diemen's Land, New Zealand, and several islands of the Pacific. But had he fully improved his opportunity and kept a journal descriptive of all the lands that he saw, and made a visit among the peoples, who no doubt would have hospitably received him, the results would have been very much more beneficial, and he would have been correctly estimated as the first voyager of the century.





## CHAPTER XXXII.

### EXPEDITION OF SIR FRANCIS DRAKE.



AFTER the return of the few survivors of Magellan's expedition, with such sorry report of their sufferings, and death of their brave commander, for a long while little was done towards establishing direct trade with the East Indies except some feeble efforts put forth by the Portuguese in that direction, and for fifty years the route opened up by the daring Magellan was of small advantage to any nation. In the meantime New Spain, or South and Central America, monopolized the attention of the Spaniards who, after Balboa's discovery, and the passage of Magellan's Strait, established many settlements along the Pacific coast, chiefly in Chili. Gold and silver were found in great quantities, not in mines, but already in bars and ornaments wrought by the natives, and from their owners

forcibly appropriated. The precious metals therefore became an object of prime contention in New Spain and lured thither bold adventurers who fell little short of being pirates and highwaymen, for what could not be found on the seas was sought for in the interior, and thus robbery went on until security there was none except for more powerful bodies.

Portugal and Spain, though ostensibly friendly governments, were nevertheless involved through rivalry, while England exhibited no small animosity over the apportionment made by the Pope of the new lands discovered, as already described, and her disregard of the papal bull and desire for acquisition of new territory at length led to open conflict with Spain, as will be presently described.

Queen Elizabeth had been for some time jealous of the power and riches acquired by Spain in the New World, but was anxious to avoid open conflict with her rival, and hoped to gain by adroitness what a more impulsive ruler would have attempted to obtain by open force. An opportunity presented itself when Sir Francis Drake made a tender of his services to the Queen, with a declaration of his purpose to make a voyage of discovery in the South Sea, even in violation of the assumed exclusive rights of Spain and Portugal under grants of donation by Pope Alexander VI.



## THE INTREPIDITY OF DRAKE.

Drake was, of all men of his time, best qualified for the enterprise which he had proposed, combining as he did the intrepidity of his prototype of later years, Paul Jones, and with no less courteous instincts and unconquerable determination. Drake's proposition to enter the South Sea could not be publicly countenanced by Elizabeth, as such a course would have precipitated a conflict with Spain, but as she foresaw the advantages which must arise from a successful expedition such as proposed, she gave a secret approval of the plans, and commended their expediency. It has been said, though without the best of proof, that the Queen gave Drake a royal commission, but she was certainly too subtle to place herself in such an equivocal position, and therefore her approbation was most likely the only sign of the royal favor. But even her approval of the enterprise was a long step towards war with Spain, because Drake could scarcely have avoided the charge of proposing a freebooting expedition. His appearance in the sea over which Spain and Portugal claimed exclusive jurisdiction must be the signal for attack, for that he would be opposed was certain, and in this assurance Drake prepared himself accordingly. More than this, knowing that the Spaniards were wresting booty from the natives of New Spain, he was resolved to profit by every advantage which offered, and to acquire treasure wherever he might find it, even to the taking of it from Spaniards themselves. The expedition was therefore either a piratical one, or else undertaken under the Queen's letters of Marque to make reprisals from any Spanish vessels found upon the high seas.



QUEEN ELIZABETH.



**SECRECY OBSERVED BY DRAKE.**

Drake wisely refrained from revealing his destination, for otherwise the Spanish government might enter protest, while the terrible sufferings of Hawkins's crew, the death of Magellan, and more recent disasters, would make it difficult to secure seamen for such a voyage as he really intended. He accordingly publicly announced it as his purpose to make a voyage to Alexandria, and to give greater plausibility to his declaration, he fitted out a squadron of five vessels whose size was so small that they were hardly suitable for lake service. These, which were provided by Drake's friends, were as follows: The Pelican, of 100 tons, was the flag-ship of the squadron; The Elizabeth, a bark of 80 tons, Captain John Winter; The Swan, a bark of 50 tons, Captain John Chester; The Marigold, a bark of 30 tons, Captain John Thomas; and The Christopher, a pinnace of 15 tons, Captain Thomas Moone. On these vessels was a crew of 164 men.

Some surprise was expressed at the vast quantity of provisions and ammunition which was taken on board, and that the frame-work of four pinnaces, ready to be put together, should also be provided for such a short voyage. But against these suspicious precautions were the diminutive vessels, and a complement of men none too great to properly man them.

**DANGERS IN THE SOUTH SEA.**

The boldness required to undertake a passage of Magellan's Strait, even after it had been once successfully traversed, was probably greater than that originally exhibited, because of the disasters that had attended later attempts. De Solis had been murdered by the natives at the mouth of the La Plata while en-route for the strait. Magellan fell a victim to extraordinary courage, while De Lope who, from the top-mast of a ship in Magellan's fleet, first discovered the strait, met with a yet more terrible fate, in the opinion of all good Catholics, for he renounced his religion and became a Mohammedan. In addition to these disasters, nearly all of the commanders and the greater part of the crews that had sailed on the South Sea had either met death at the hands of natives or perished from disaster, hardship and anxieties which attended them on their voyage. These real and imaginary dangers were greatly increased by superstitions which represented the strait as having been closed by God to prevent further adventuring into the South Sea, where every horrible thing in man's imagination was believed to exist to destroy those making bold to sail its dangerous waters. But Drake, in addition to being an uncommonly bold man, whose spirit was most active in desperate undertakings, was all the more anxious to enter upon the exploration of the South Sea because of the dangers which were said to confront those sailing upon it. In addition to providing himself with a cargo of provisions which would likely last his crews for at least two years, he appreciated the value of shows and pageants, by which he hoped not only to impress the crews that accompanied him, but also the natives whom he would come in contact with. The furniture and equipage of his ships were therefore splendid,



while the cooking utensils which he carried were generally of silver, and the tableware of gold or curious workmanship. Besides these, he took with him a band of musicians, appreciating the effect which music would produce upon the natives, and its exhilarating influence upon men when depressed by any anxieties. Thus while his fleet consisted of very small crafts, their equipment in large measure compensated for the otherwise sorry condition which they would have presented.

#### THE DEPARTURE ON A PIRATING CRUISE.

Having completed his arrangements Drake set sail from Plymouth on the 15th of November, 1577, but almost immediately encountering a gale he was compelled to put back to Falmouth to make some repairs to the Pelican and Marigold, both of which had received considerable injuries by being driven on shore. It was not until the 13th of the following month that they were able to depart again, but meeting with no further mishap they reached the coast of Barbary on the 27th, where a halt was made to fit up one of the pinnaces for service. Here the fleet, encountering difficulty with the Barbary Moors, put to sea again on the 31st, and on the 17th of January, 1578, reached Cape Blanco, where Drake brought into port two Spanish caravels which he had captured on the way. Here a halt of five days was made in order to drill the crews in the manual of arms and to otherwise prepare them for battle both on sea and on land, as Drake manifested a determination to capture every Spanish merchantman that he might find upon the high seas, thus giving color of piracy to his expedition at the outset.



SIR FRANCIS DRAKE.



From Cape Blanco the squadron sailed to Mayo, where they fell in with a Portuguese ship bound to Brazil laden with wine, cloth and general merchandise. This vessel Drake also captured and gave the command to a Mr Thomas Doughty, another equally bold spirit, whose fate however was most deplorable as will be afterwards described. Only one other stop was made after the departure from Mayo until the fleet came in sight off a point of the Brazilian coast called Cape Joy. Here they put into harbor on the 5th of April, and on the morning following they discovered large fires on the shore around which were gathered a number of natives who were observed going through various incantations and the offering of sacrifices. These ceremonies, as was afterwards ascertained, were performed with the hope that their gods might avert the dan-



SCENE ON THE LA PLATA RIVER.

ger which the ships seemed to threaten. The natives had never before seen any ships and supposed them to be terrible monsters risen from the sea in the night for the purpose of devouring or otherwise destroying them. Before the day expired a violent storm, accompanied by vivid lightning and deafening thunder, on the other hand, led the superstitious sailors to believe that it was owing to the diabolical arts of the natives that the storm had been raised. On account of the fear thus entertained for each other the sailors had no intercourse with the natives, nor did the fleet remain long about Cape Joy though the climate was represented as mild and salubrious and the soil rich and fertile. Troops of wild deer of gigantic size were seen on this part of the coast and footprints of men of giant stature were traced on the ground. But on the following day,



the 7th, the ships proceeded southward and on the 14th anchored within the entrance of the La Plata river. The fleet then sailed up the river a distance of probably a hundred miles, but finding it growing constantly fresher, they discovered the fact that they were in a river instead of a strait, and retracing their course continued their journey southward again. On the 27th the Swan was separated from the fleet and ten days later the Portuguese prize was also lost and not discovered again for more than a week afterwards.

#### IN CONTACT WITH THE INDIANS.

On the 12th of May Drake entered a safe harbor at forty-seven degrees south, and the next morning put off in a boat to explore the bay. Directly after his departure a thick fog settled down which completely hid him from the vessels and for a considerable time there appeared great danger of his destruction. But by good fortune he managed to reach the shore where he discovered Indians, headed by a chief who was dancing and shaking a rattle, with the evident intention of inviting the strangers to visit his village which lay a short distance off. Not being prepared, however, to encounter a hostile force, which Drake feared this party might prove, he lay by till morning, and the fog in the meantime drifting, he returned to the vessels, and procuring a white flag sent it to the Indians as a token of amity and a desire to have them approach. By gradual advances an intercourse was directly established which resulted in great benefit to Drake, for the Indians proved very hospitable and provided the strangers with great store of dried ostrich flesh, and in return were sent several presents such as were calculated to attract the curiosity of the natives. After the ships had remained in the harbor a few days the party of Indians first seen was augmented by the arrival of a very large number of others, all of whom, however, exhibited great hospitality and desire to show their friendship for their white visitors. These natives are represented by Drake as being very handsome, strong, agile and alert. Their only covering was the skin of an animal which was wrapped about the middle when walking, and thrown carelessly around the shoulders while they were squatting or lying on the ground. Their bodies too were painted in a variety of colors and after a grotesque fashion. But this decoration was not so much due to vanity as to the service which the paint rendered in protecting their bodies from the cold. In addition to such presents as bells, cutlery and similar bright and attractive wares which were given to the natives, Drake also sent the chief a bottle of wine which pleased him very much, though at the first smell of the contents it apparently intoxicated him. After that, as long as the fleet remained in the harbor, the natives were incessant in their importunities for more wine.

#### A BATTLE WITH THE PATAGONIANS.

On the 3d of June the fleet sailed out of the harbor, which has been named Seal Bay, and on the 12th they put into another bay, where they remained for two days, taking their stores from the prizes which they had made, and then sent the Portuguese vessel adrift. This anchorage was in the vicinity of



Cape Horn, where after remaining for nearly three days they proceeded on to Port St. Julian where several of the crew going on shore they found the gibbet still standing upon which Magellan had executed some of the rebellious and mutinous members of his crew fifty years before. On the following day the ships having been safely moored, Drake and some of his officers went off in a boat to examine the coast and on landing were met by two men of immense stature who gave them, by signs, a friendly welcome. These two were of the



PATAGONIANS CHALLENGING DRAKE.

Patagonian tribes described by Magellan, and having been presented by Drake with a few trifles they set off, but directly returned again with several others of their people. The most hospitable feeling was constantly exhibited by the Patagonians, and very soon the natives and the members of the crew were on the most amicable terms. The English were armed principally with bows, a weapon which the Patagonian was also familiar with, and a trial of skill was made at which the Englishmen so far excelled that one of the Patagonians became jealous and with menacing gestures told the crew to leave the island. A Mr. Winter (not the captain of the *Elizabeth*), who accompanied the expedition, showed displeasure at this interruption, and partly in jest, but also to exhibit earnestness, he drew his bow with the intention of discharging an arrow to show the power of his weapon; but the strain was so great that the bow-

string broke, and while he was in the act of repairing it, the natives discharged a shower of arrows, two of which wounded him severely, one in the shoulder, the other in the side. At this Mr. Oliver, who carried a gun, aimed his weapon at the attacking party but it missed fire, and he in turn was pierced through with an arrow, and fell mortally wounded. At this critical moment Drake ordered his men to protect themselves by means of the shields which they carried and to advance upon the Indians, at the same time to break every arrow that was discharged at



them lest they might be recovered and used a second time. As the English advanced Drake seized a gun, and taking aim at the man who had killed Oliver, used it with such precision that he shot the native in the stomach, giving him a very painful wound and causing him to cry out in such agony that the rest of the natives taking alarm fled precipitately. Mr. Winter was borne off at once to the ships, but the body of Oliver was left until the following day when a company was sent to recover it. They found that the body had not been molested during their absence except that an arrow had been thrust into the left eye and the clothes had been partly stripped off, which had been placed under the head of the corpse. Mr. Winter seemed to recover the second day after his wounds, but again grew worse, and five days later died.

#### TRIAL AND EXECUTION OF CAPT. DOUGHTY.

This unfortunate affray, which appears rather the consequence of misunderstanding than design, was soon afterwards followed by a second even more deplorable incident. While the fleet lay in the Port of St. Julian, charges were brought against Captain John Doughty, who had been placed in command of the Portuguese prize, and he was brought to answer, before a court-martial, on a charge of conspiracy and mutiny. Specifically, the charge was that of conspiring to massacre Drake and his principal officers, and after thus enfeebling the expedition, to take possession of the ships, and enter either upon a voyage of discovery or piracy. The details of the charge and inquiry are both scanty and entirely insufficient to base an opinion respecting the guilt or innocence of Mr. Doughty. Accounts have appeared both apologetic and condemnatory of Drake, while others have sought to show that Mr. Doughty was a gentleman incapable of harboring such designs as had been charged against him. But whatever may have been the merit of his fate, Mr. Doughty was adjudged guilty by a jury of his countrymen, and condemned to death, leaving the man-



SAVAGE ATTACK OF THE NATIVES.



ner of his execution within the discretion of the commandant. Drake very magnanimously permitted the condemned man to select either of three judgments: to be abandoned on the coast, taken back to England to answer the lords of the Queen's council, or to be executed on the island. Mr. Doughty choose the latter, only asking that he might before his death receive the holy communion with the captain-general, and that he might die the death of a gentleman. In accordance with these desires, Drake received the sacrament with the condemned man, and afterwards dined with him, the dinner being characterized by great sobriety, and at its conclusion they took their leaves by drinking to each other as if some great jollity was about to be begun. Being now prepared for his fate, Doughty walked forth with brave step, and a countenance which bespoke submission to his fate, and only requesting the bystanders to pray for him he submitted his neck to the executioner's axe. The body of Mr. Doughty was buried with those of Mr. Winter and of Mr. Oliver upon the island in the harbor, above which was erected a stone on which the chaplain cut the names of the unfortunate Englishmen and the date of their burial.

#### INCIDENTS IN THE PASSAGE OF THE STRAIT.

By the breaking up of the Portuguese prize, and the loss in the storm of two of the pinnaces the fleet was now reduced to three, and being supplied with wood and water and other necessities they sailed from Port St. Julian on the 17th of August, and on the 20th they entered the Strait of Magellan, thus having passed around the greater portion of Terra del Fuego before discovering the entrance. At the entrance on the east side the strait was found to be about three miles broad, and on either side the land lay bare and flat. No natives appeared on the south side, but several Indians were observed making great fires along the northern land, but they offered no opposition, nor did they give intimation of any desire to come into close relation with the voyagers. The fleet proceeded carefully through the strait, making occasional stops, at which times the crews would go on shore and kill penguins, the flesh of which is said to have been as savory as that of English goose. Three thousand of these birds were slaughtered in a few days, the bodies of which were dried, and these provided food for the expedition for several months. After passing some miles within the strait the land on both sides rose up in perpendicular walls to a vast height until their peaks were white with the snows that never melted. The weather, too, was very cold, from which the crews suffered considerably, but it did not interfere with their progress, and in two weeks' time the passage through the strait was accomplished. Near the western exit the fleet was brought to an anchorage near an island, while Drake went into a boat to explore the opening of the South Sea. Here Drake claims to have met with a pigmy race of Indians (now known to have been Terra del Fuegians, a race small of stature, though by no means pignies, unless they be compared with the Patagonians), who were discovered in a canoe close at hand evidently fishing. After going on shore he came in contact



with a considerable village of these people, whose huts, like their canoes, were constructed of the bark of trees, which they also ingeniously used in forming vessels for domestic use. The tools of these pigmies were made of mussel shells which were very plentiful in the waters along the straits. But what was most surprising the natives had means of tempering these shells and making them sufficiently hard to cut bone or any substance short of iron.

On the 6th of September Drake attained the long desired happiness of entering the South Sea, fortune having favored him incessantly from the time he left Falmouth and which had enabled him to make a passage of the strait in less than a fourth of the time required for Magellan to traverse it.

**DRIVEN OUT TO SEA  
AND LOSS OF THE  
MARIGOLD.**

After entering the ocean he directed his fleet in a north-west course, where, having proceeded 70 leagues, he was overtaken by a violent and steady gale, which drove his vessels over 200 leagues to the west of the strait.



TERRE DEL FUEGANS FISHING.

On the 24th the weather moderated, and the wind shifting they were enabled to partly retrace their course, and after seven days standing to the north-east, they discovered land, but were not able to come to an anchorage. While beating about, endeavoring to find a harborage, the wind rose violently again from the same quarter, and drove them out to sea again, where the fleet became separated; the Elizabeth and the Pelican (the name of which latter was changed to Golden Hind after the ship had passed the strait, in honor of Sir Christopher Hatton, who was one of Drake's patrons) were united a day later, but the Marigold was blown out to sea, and was never again heard of. On the 7th of



October, the Golden Hind and the Elizabeth entered a bay near the western entrance of Magellan's Strait, which Drake named The Bay of Parting Friends ; and here it was the intention to lie by until the weather improved. But on the same night the violence of the wind was so great that the cable of the Hind



LOSS OF THE MARIGOLD.

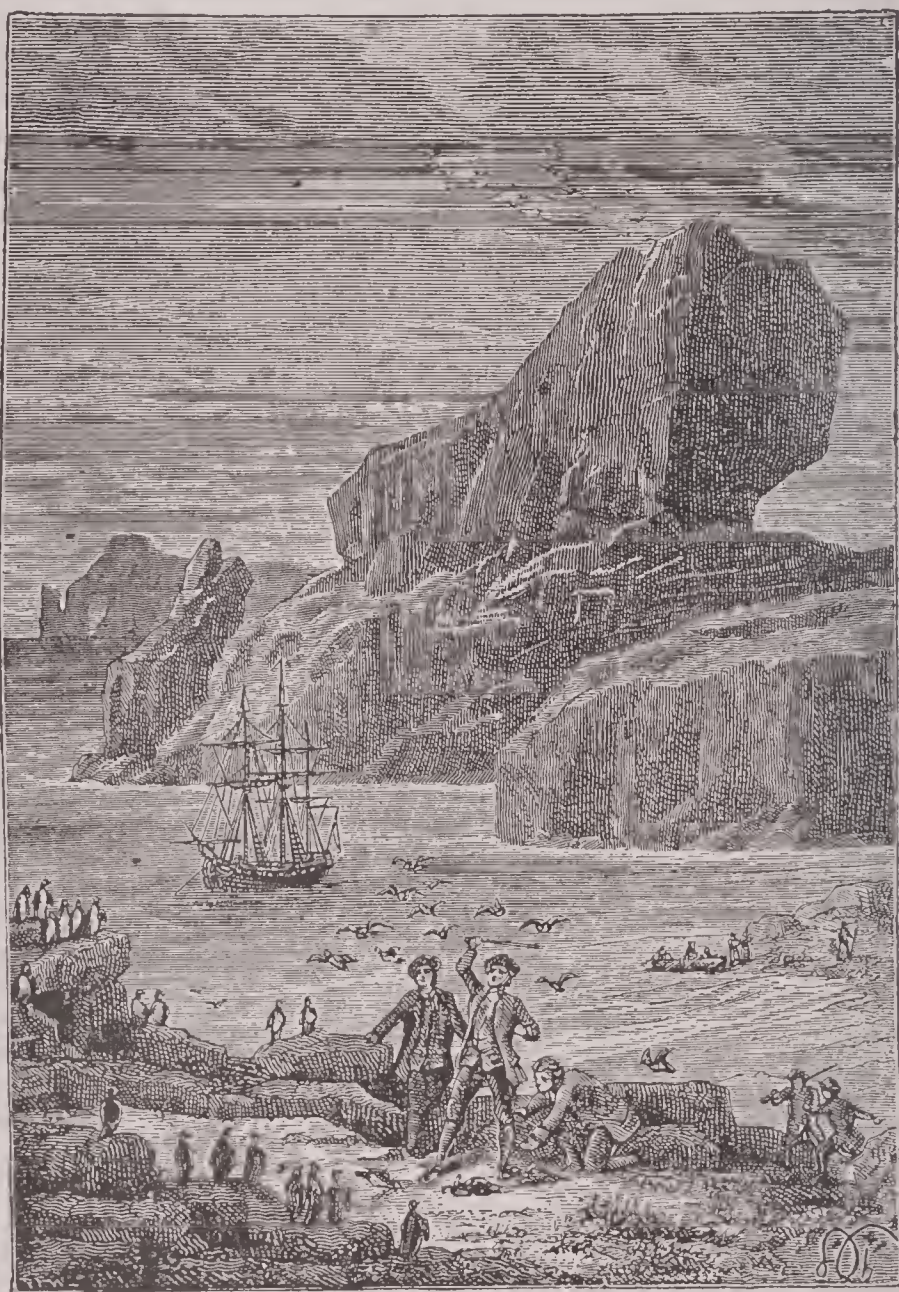
parted, and she was for a third time driven to sea, while it was impossible for the Elizabeth to give her any assistance. Captain Winter was so disheartened by these misfortunes that he sailed back, with the intention of entering the straits, and thence secretly returning home. But many of the crew, objecting to such



heartless abandonment of Drake, the captain was finally induced to put into Port Health, so called by reason of the rapid recovery of the crew which had been enfeebled by its hardships and the disease which in consequence had spread among them.

**A MASSACRE, AND HORRIBLE SUFFERINGS OF THE SURVIVORS.**

Drake in the meantime was carried back to 55 degrees south, and expediency admonished him to run in among the islands along the coast of Terra del Fuego, where he remained during the severe season and replenished his provisions by the capture of a large number of seals. Here a pinnace was set up and made ready for sea; but another violent gale coming on, she was driven into the open ocean with eight men that composed her crew. This little vessel, fortunately, weathered the gale, but being unable to return to the coast of Terra del Fuego, proceeded northward to the region of the La Plata, and there, the crew being nearly famished, they made for the shore, and six of the number were sent in quest of food. Upon landing they were, however, almost instantly attacked by a party of Indians, and all were wounded with arrows. Four of them were made prisoners by the natives, but two escaped and contrived to join their two comrades who had been left in charge of the pinnace. These the Indians pursued, but they were beaten back, and the vessel was able to put to sea again, leaving their four wounded companions in the hands of the Indians, who probably directly massacred them. The Englishmen now made for a small island about nine miles from the mainland, where the two who had contrived to escape from the native assailants died of their wounds, there being now left only two, destitute of food, in a wild land, and with a boat which they were incapable of managing on the sea. While they had been



DRAKE'S MEN KILLING PENGUINS.

These the Indians pursued, but they were beaten back, and the vessel was able to put to sea again, leaving their four wounded companions in the hands of the Indians, who probably directly massacred them. The Englishmen now made for a small island about nine miles from the mainland, where the two who had contrived to escape from the native assailants died of their wounds, there being now left only two, destitute of food, in a wild land, and with a boat which they were incapable of managing on the sea. While they had been



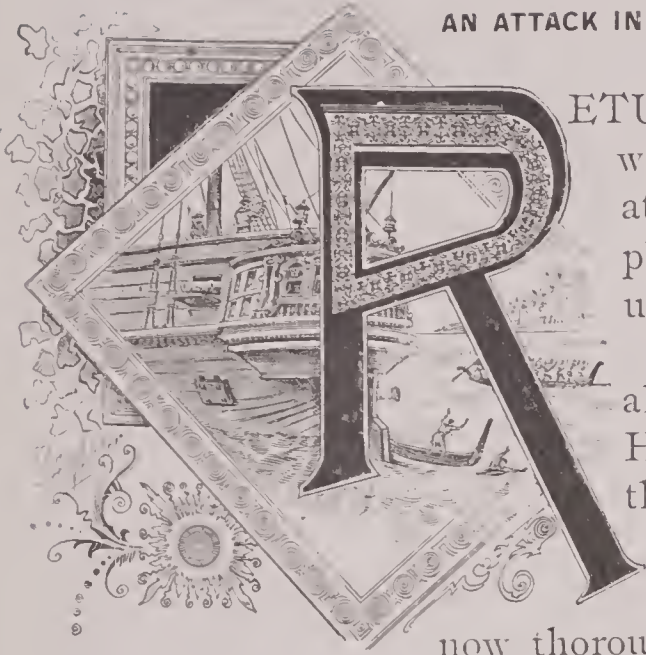
exposed to great calamities from the time of their separation from the Elizabeth, the hardships which they were now to endure very greatly exceeded those which they had previously suffered. A storm came up and dashed to pieces the little pinnace which they had anchored on the shore, thus leaving them on a desolate island, destitute of nearly everything calculated to render life supportable. They obtained food from eels and small crabs which they were occasionally able to capture, and they found a considerable quantity of a fruit resembling an orange; but they were unable to find fresh water, and their sufferings from thirst were so dreadful that they were reduced to an extremity too painful and revolting to be here described. After a two months' existence on this island, the two men discovered a plank ten feet long which had drifted from the Rio de la Plata, which served as the nucleus for a raft upon which they embarked, and after three days of incessant paddling, they contrived at last to reach the mainland. Peter Carder, one of these survivors, thus relates his experience upon reaching the shore: "At our first coming on land we found a little river of sweet and pleasant water, where William Pitcher, my only comfort and companion, although I dissuaded him to the contrary, over-drunk himself, being perished before with extreme thirst; and, to my unspeakable grief and discomfort, died half an hour after in my presence, whom I buried as well as I could in the sand." The sole survivor roamed about in the woods for a few days until taken by savages whose life he adopted, and lived with them in comfort until he was captured by the Portuguese. His sojourn in South America was for a period of nine years, after which he was permitted to return to England, where he had the honor of relating his adventures before Queen Elizabeth, who suitably rewarded him for the hardships which he had experienced.





## CHAPTER XXXIII.

### AN ATTACK IN WHICH DRAKE IS WOUNDED.



RETURNING to Drake, his ship, the Golden Hind, was again driven from her moorings, and kept at sea for a considerable while until he had completely doubled the cape and discovered the union of the Atlantic and Pacific oceans.

On the 28th of October the Elizabeth also came to harbor near the point of Cape Horn, thus having beaten around in almost the same course as that over which the Golden Hind had been driven. And being unable to come up with Drake the Captain,

now thoroughly discouraged and thinking his companion lost, sailed up the coast of Brazil and in the following year returned to England with report that Drake had probably been lost, which report seemed substantiated by his prolonged absence. The severe season having ended, and the weather become somewhat calm, Drake turned the course of his vessel again westward, and doubling the cape, set sail a second time northward, following as closely as was advisable the main coast.

On the 25th of November the expedition anchored at the island of Mocha, which is along the coast of Chili, where Drake landed and was pleased to discover large numbers of cattle and sheep, and to see promising crops of maize and potatoes. The Indians whom he met on this shore appeared pacific in their demeanor until two of the seamen were sent in quest of water, when they were set upon and killed, and others going to their assistance were fiercely assailed with arrows and stones, and the whole more or less severely wounded, among the number being Drake himself, who was struck with a stone in the face and on the head. Being unable to carry on satisfactory intercourse with the natives, who were too strong in number to be successfully opposed, Drake set sail again on the 30th of November, and anchored in a bay about 30 degrees south, where he sent out a boat to examine the shores, and finding a lone Indian fishing in a canoe, captured him and brought him on board. By very kind treatment, and the presentation to him of many trinkets, his confidence was gained, and being sent on shore, he induced many of his people to enter into



exchanges with the crew, by which Drake was enabled to secure poultry, hogs, and a quantity of fruits. While lying in this harbor Drake learned through one of the Indians that at the port of Valparaiso, which was only six leagues distant, there lay at anchor a Spanish vessel which was believed to contain a quantity of gold and silver. Upon receipt of this information he at once determined to make an effort to overhaul the Spanish galleon and putting on a spread of canvass, succeeded in coming up and capturing her without difficulty, and in examining her cargo was pleased to discover 60,000 pesos (\$60,000) of gold, besides jewels, merchandise, and 1770 jars of Chili wine. Having taken the vessel and appropriated her contents, the crew of Drake's ship entered the town, which consisted of only nine families, and there engaged in a general pillage of wine, bread, bacon, and such other things as they could find to refresh themselves, or as they thought sufficiently valuable to carry on board. Some of the crew entered a small chapel of Valparaiso, which they plundered of a silver chalice, two cruets, and an altar-cloth, which were presented to Mr. Fletcher, the chaplain of the fleet.

On the 8th Drake set sail again with his prize, but taking only one of the crew, named Griego, who was capable of piloting them to Lima. Up to this time Drake had been on the lookout for the *Marigold* and the *Elizabeth*, for the *Hind* being too large a vessel to run near the coast, put in at Coquimbo, with the intention to set up another pinnace to conduct the search more thoroughly in the smaller bays into which it was possible one of the missing vessels had taken refuge from the frequent storms that visit that region. But scarcely had the English landed and sent a watering party of fourteen a little distance from the shore when they were surprised by a body of Spanish, consisting of 300 horse and 200 foot. All but one of the English succeeded in making their escape by a precipitate retreat; one seaman, however, fell a victim to his braggadocio and foolhardiness. .

#### THE CAPTURE OF A WONDERFULLY RICH TREASURE.

Leaving Coquimbo, Drake proceeded a few miles further, and entering a safe harbor he set up a pinnace in which he himself embarked to make a search for the lost ships; but the wind soon becoming adverse, he was compelled to return to his own vessel. They continued thence northward until accidentally landing at a port called Tarapaza they found a Spaniard lying on the shore asleep and beside him thirteen bars of silver. These latter the English quickly appropriated, and without waking the sleeping treasurer they proceeded further north to secure water, where they fell in with a Spaniard and an Indian, both driving eight llamas, each of which was laden with leather bags containing fifty pounds of silver. These animals, sometimes called Peruvian sheep, were used among the Indians as beasts of burden, as the Arabs use the camel to-day. But though well adapted as carriers in that rough country, yet in later years they have been discarded and mules substituted. These two remarkable finds led the crew to suppose that the coast of Peru was literally strewn with gold, while pure silver, they



believed, was found so richly mixed with the soil that every hundred-weight of common earth yielded, on a moderate calculation, five ounces; and it must be confessed that they had some good reasons for entertaining such a belief, remarkable as it was.

#### AN EXCITING CHASE.

After the precious prizes that had been secured from the eight llamas had been brought on board, the *Golden Hind* entered the port of Arica, where three small barks lay, which were easily rifled, as the crews were on shore, in no wise apprehensive of danger. Having spoiled the barks, the *Golden Hind* put to sea again in pursuit of a vessel which was said to be richly laden, and concerning which Drake had obtained intelligence from an Indian where they had last landed. The ship which he now started to pursue had in some manner obtained notice of the proximity of Drake, and set out with great expedition with its precious freight of 800 bars of silver, the property of the King of Spain. In order to expedite his purpose Drake now prepared for active measures by ridding himself of every incumbrance, turning loose the small sails which he had captured, as described, to drift whithersoever the winds might carry them. Now spreading all the canvas that he could crowd on the *Golden Hind*, he pushed on towards Lima, for which port the treasure-ship was bound.

The Spanish galleon, however, had time to land her freight of silver and to despatch overland to the governor of Lima tidings of the appearance of English ships on the coast. Notwithstanding these precautions Drake was able to surprise the Spanish ships lying at Callao, the port of Lima, on the 13th of September. But on none of these did he find any considerable treasure, and his only compensation for such a prolonged and expensive pursuit was the receipt of information that three days before, the Spanish ship *Cacafuego*, laden with treasure, had sailed for Panama, the point from which all goods were carried across the Isthmus. Without any delay Drake set out in pursuit of this vessel and as a measure of precaution the mainmasts of the two largest prizes found in the port were cut away; the cables of the smaller ones were severed and the goods and people being previously removed, the whole were abandoned to the mercy of the winds and waves so that pursuit from these would not be feared.

#### CAPTURE OF ANOTHER RICH GALLEON.

Having thus crippled the Spanish ships at the port of Callao, Drake bore northward under full sail, so intent on overtaking the treasure-ship that when the wind lulled his vessel was towed by boats which his crew rowed with a will. But notwithstanding his despatch and determination, there was so little wind that the *Golden Hind* still remained in sight of the port of Callao nearly two days. This interval enabled the Viceroy at Lima to prepare a force of two thousand horse and foot, and two vessels were put in sailing order as expeditiously as possible, in which two hundred fighting men were embarked. These now set out in all haste, intent on the capture of Drake, who was at this time



evidently believed to be a Spanish pirate. But scarcely had they gotten under way when a fresh gale sprung up which enabled the English ship to easily outstrip her pursuers, especially when the crews of the latter had not used the precaution to provide themselves with provisions that would enable them to make a sail of more than one or two days. Upon their return three other ships were equipped and despatched, but they arrived too late, and being unable to overtake the *Hind* put into a bay and there waited a period of nearly two weeks the return of Drake, which was confidently expected. But in this



CAPTURE OF A RICH GALLEON.

they were deceived. The pursuit continued and on the 24th of February the *Golden Hind* crossed the Equator with the *Cacafuego* still so far ahead as to be unseen. But to quicken the hopes of his crew Drake offered as a reward to whoever should first descry the prize, the gold chain which he wore, which prize was gained by Mr. John Drake, who at three o'clock in the afternoon of the 1st of March, from the mast-head discerned the prize ship less than a league distant. The capture was easily made owing to the fact that the captain, a



Biscayan named Anton, seeing a vessel approaching him under pressure of sail concluded that the Viceroy had sent him some important message, to deliver which a ship had been sent to overhaul him. Anton therefore struck his sails and awaited the approach of the Golden Hind. When aware, from closer inspection, of his mistake, he made an effort to escape, but his discovery was not made until he was within reach of Drake's guns. Not possessing any defensive weapons he was at the mercy of the pursuer, which shot away his mizzenmast and wounded Anton, and thus compelled his surrender. The prize-ship gained was of extraordinary value, the ship having a cargo of thirty-six tons of silver, thirteen chests of ryals of plate, and eighty pounds of gold, besides diamonds and inferior gems, the value of the whole being estimated at \$720,000.

#### DRAKE CONCEIVES A NEW AMBITION.

The capture of this prize might have induced a less ambitious man than Drake to abandon his original project of making discoveries in the South Sea, and caused him to return home where he might have enjoyed, the remainder of his days, the rich gains thus acquired. But Drake was more ambitious than he was covetous, and though he had thus gained a fortune, he was more desirous of earning a lasting reputation by discovering a north-west passage, which had been the ambition of so many distinguished voyagers before him. Having thus formed his plans, he unfolded them to his company in such an eloquent manner that he inspired them with an enthusiasm similar to that which he felt himself. In fact, Drake possessed the unbounded confidence of his company to such a degree that they were ready to blindly follow him in any undertaking which he might propose. Having unfolded his purpose, he said to his men, "our next object shall be to seek out some convenient place to trim the ship, and store it with wood, water, and such provisions as can be found, and thence forward to hasten our intended journey for the discovery of the said passage, through which we may with joy return to our longed homes."

Having thus resolved upon a new enterprise, Drake set sail for Nicaragua, and on the 16th of March he came to anchor in a small bay on the west side of the island of Canno. Here the Golden Hind remained for eight days, replenishing her stores while Drake examined papers which had been captured from the last ship taken, among which was discovered a letter from the King of Spain to the governor of the Philippines, and also sea-charts which afterwards proved of considerable use to the English. Having repaired his ship and taken on an abundant supply of water and provisions, Drake continued his course northward. He overhauled another Spanish vessel on the 6th of April, from which was captured a considerable quantity of silk, linen, porcelain, and the image of a falcon wrought of gold, in the breast of which was a large emerald. This latter valuable Drake retained for himself, but divided the other things captured fairly with his crew. Ten days later, the expedition put into the coast and sacked a small village, from which, however, a very small quantity of spoils was obtained. Here also the Portuguese pilot, Nuna



Silva, who had been taken with one of the prizes, as already described, was set at liberty, and afterwards made his way back to Spain where he wrote an account of his unfortunate adventure with Drake.

#### AMONG THE NATIVES OF CALIFORNIA.

On the 16th of April the fleet moved northward again, and on the 3d of June had gone 1400 leagues, beating about in different courses, without discovering any land. Having reached a latitude of 43 degrees, the cold was becoming so severe that meat froze almost upon the instant that it was removed from the fire. They now sought a bay which they fortunately discovered on the 5th, and there took shelter until the weather had somewhat moderated. But proceeding again, they made another landing on the 17th of June on the western coast of California, entering a bay, which is supposed to have been the harbor of San Francisco. When the *Hind* approached the shore several natives were seen coming down, headed by an ambassador, who put off in a canoe, and by gesticulations appeared to offer a hearty welcome to the ship. He finally approached the vessel, and after delivering himself of an oration, returned again to the shore, and receiving some articles, consisting of a bunch of feathers and a basket of rushes, he brought these back and offered them as tributes to Sir Francis Drake. The crowd on the shore continually augmented until quite a thousand had collected. The men were entirely naked, but the females wore a sort of petticoat composed of rushes and the inner bark of trees, which they had hackled until it had the appearance of hemp. Upon opening the basket which had been brought by the ambassador Drake discovered that it contained an herb which the Indians called *tabah*, but which has since been ascertained to have been tobacco, Europeans not being familiar with the product at that time. From this fact, it is maintained that Drake was the first to introduce the use of tobacco among Europeans.

#### THE CAMP ON SHORE.

The weather continuing cold, and the ship having sprung a leak, Drake decided to take advantage of the excellent harbor which was now afforded, and to go into camp on shore until the warm season advanced, utilizing the time also to repair his vessel. When the Indians observed the English preparing to spread their tents on the shore, they gave exhibition of suspicion and dissatisfaction, but they laid aside their bows and arrows when requested to do so. Finding the English peaceably disposed, a further exchange of presents was made, and friendship was soon established. When they retired again in the evening, the Indians seeking a high elevation on which their huts were built, they set up a great howling and lamentation which lasted throughout the night. The voices of the females rose high above those of the men, proving plainly that they were suspicious of some appalling calamity befalling them through the instrumentality of the white visitors. Drake seems to have had some fears also of hostility from the natives, and to provide for his security, he be-



gan an intrenchment of the tents, and threw up some fortifications which would enable him to resist an attack of the natives, if they decided to make one.

On the following day, however, no Indians were to be seen, but two days later they reappeared in greater numbers, when it was observed that an orator opened the ceremonies which were about to take place by making a long harangue or proclamation to his people. As he spoke, frequent exclamations of approval were heard, and at the conclusion, a deputation struck their bows into the earth, and bearing gifts of feathers and rush-baskets of tobacco, descended towards the fort. As the deputation approached the English, the women, who had remained behind on the elevation, set up anew their shrieks and howls, and began to tear their flesh with their nails, and to dash themselves on the ground with such violence that their bodies were soon bruised or bleeding from the cuts they had thus received. This ceremony was afterwards understood to be the orgies of their idol or demon worship, performed for the purpose of insuring the favor of the spirits which the Indians believed to preside over them. Seeing the women thus violently mistreating themselves, and the deputation approaching, Drake ordered his company to sing psalms, or some simple chants of the Old Church, which had a remarkable effect upon the simple Indians. They seemed to be deeply affected and so charmed that they afterwards repeatedly requested their visitors to sing to them.

#### DRAKE RECEIVES THE INDIAN KING.

After another exchange of presents, the Indians a second time withdrew, and did not show themselves again until the 26th, when two heralds or couriers arrived at the camp of the English, asking an audience with Captain Drake to convey to him a message which they were sent to deliver by their *hioh*, or King. One of the couriers with great exhibition of majesty delivered himself of a long harangue before Drake, and in concluding requested tokens of friendship and assurance of safe-conduct for the King who had a desire to visit the white men. These were, of course, given, and directly after the native King approached in all the glory of his native majesty. Immediately preceding him was the club-bearer, who was a tall and handsome man of noble presence. His club, the mace of office, was quite five feet in length and made of a wood resembling ebony; the larger end was ornamented with a net-work of a thin, bony substance, curiously and delicately wrought. He had also with him a basket of *tabah*, or tobacco. The King followed immediately behind his club-bearer or chief minister, and was in turn succeeded by a man of giant stature, who exhibited a majesty of appearance which struck the English visitors with amazement. Next came the royal guard, consisting of a hundred picked men, all of them tall and martial looking, though clothed in skins. A few wore head-dresses made of feathers, and others of a soft substance which they gathered from a plant peculiar to the country. The King was distinguished from his officers by wearing over his shoulders a robe made of skins of a species of marmot, or possibly prairie dog. Behind the royal guard were the common



people, all painted in a variety of patterns, and feathers generally sticking out of their hair. The women and children, who brought up the rear, each carried a propitiatory gift of a basket containing either tobacco, broiled fish, or a sweet root which the natives ate with a great relish.

#### SINGULAR CEREMONIES, AND KINGLY INVESTITURE.

The royal cavalcade was such a large one that, to provide against possible surprise, Drake assembled his men under arms, within his fortification and in a block-house which he had erected. When the procession had approached within a few paces of the fortification, it stopped, and after a deep silence of a few moments, the minister or club-bearer began a harangue which lasted fully



CROWNING OF DRAKE BY THE KING OF CALIFORNIA.

half an hour, after which he commenced to chant, keeping time in a slow, solemn dance, but performed with a stately air, in which at intervals the King and the warriors joined. Seeing that their intentions were peaceful, and that the Indians had a real desire to establish friendly relations with their visitors, Drake at length admitted the crowd into the fort, their approach being made by singing and dancing. After these ceremonies were concluded the King took off a crown of feathers which he wore, and placed it upon the head of Drake, by which ceremony he meant to invest him with the insignia of royalty,—at which all the natives hailed him as King. Songs of triumph were then raised, as if in confirmation of this solemn cession of sov-



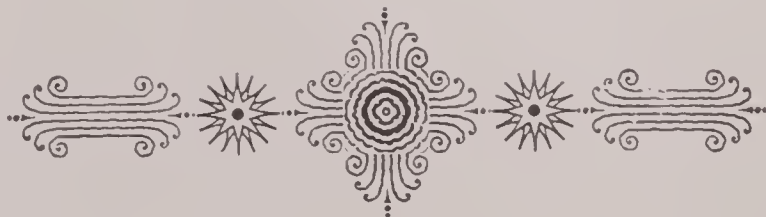
ereignty. The probability is that the real intention of the King was, by such investment of authority, to show his desire to honor the whites by making Drake equal to himself while the company was visiting him. Drake evidently accepted it in this spirit, and he took possession of the country in the name of his sovereign, thereafter claiming that it had been ceded to him by the original or lawful owners.

The ceremony having been completed, the natives distributed themselves about the fort, showing great admiration for every unusual thing which their eyes beheld, and rendered idolatrous homage to their visitors by frequently throwing themselves at their feet and embracing their legs. After some time thus spent in camp the Indians formed a circle about the whites, and while gazing intently upon them, began to howl and tear their flesh till bloody streams covered their bodies, this being their method of demonstrating the strength of their affection for their visitors.

#### DESCRIPTION OF THE INDIANS AND THEIR VILLAGES.

Afterwards Drake visited some of the villages of these natives, where he was hospitably received and royally entertained. The men were robust and powerful, and their strength was equal to that of two ordinary seamen. For weapons they used bows and arrows, but they were of little use and practical only in hunting very small game which permitted of a close approach. Their dwellings were of a circular form, built of rushes and generally roofed with pieces of wood joined together at a common centre and sometimes terminating in a spire. But in every case fully one-half of the house was under ground, while the fire was placed in the middle and beds of rushes spread on the floor, by which means the natives were able to make themselves comfortable in the most inclement weather. The country abounded in vast herds of deer and a small species of cony, which Drake declares had heads and faces like rabbits in England, while their paws were like those of the mole, and their tails were like those of rats; under their chin on each side was a pouch, which served as a store-house for meat to feed their young with, or to serve themselves in times of scarcity. The natives ate the flesh of these little animals and greatly prized the skins, which they converted into state robes such as were worn by the King in his interview with Drake.

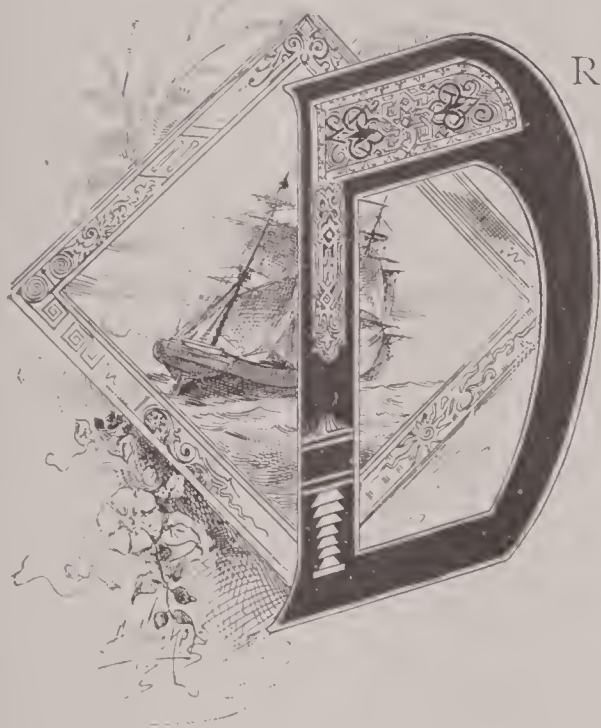
The Admiral named this fertile country New Albion, and erected a monument of his discovery to which a brass plate was nailed bearing the name, effigy and arms of her majesty, Queen Elizabeth, and asserting her territorial rights and the date of possession.





## CHAPTER XXXIV.

### A VOYAGE TO THE EAST INDIES.



DRAKE spent thirty-six days on the coast of California in the most agreeable manner, but having at length completed his repairs, on the 24th of July he sailed away from the harbor, which he named Fort Drake, taking with him the good wishes and many kind expressions from the natives, who were deeply moved by his departure. While the ship remained in sight the natives kept fires burning on the heights as a farewell offering or sacrifice for the prosperity of the journey.

Drake set sail northward again, but finding the weather increasing in severity he abandoned the idea of reaching a higher latitude and turned his ship westward with

the unanimous consent of his company, having abandoned his resolution to seek for a north-west passage for the new intention of returning home by way of India and Cape of Good Hope. For sixty-eight days he continued without once catching a glimpse of land. At length, when his crew were beginning to despair, he fell in with some islands on the 13th of September in about eight degrees north latitude. These lands proved to be occupied, and as the *Golden Hind* came to anchor many natives came off in canoes, containing fourteen men each, bringing with them cocoanuts, fish and fruits to barter with their white visitors. Their canoes were ingeniously formed, and hollowed out of a single tree, and were so high in the stern and prow as to be nearly semicircular, while the exposed parts were prettily ornamented in curious designs and various colors. The islanders showed not the least fear of the English, and when they were permitted to come on board the ship they did not hesitate to purloin any article which they were able to conceal. But instead of punishing them for their thieving propensities, as Magellan did, Drake merely refused to hold further traffic with them. This so excited their displeasure that several of the natives surrounded the vessel and the men began a vigorous attack with stones. With the hope of frightening them off Drake caused a cannon to be fired over their heads, which had the desired effect for a time. But perceiving that it did no injury the islanders returned to the attack, and to protect himself from serious injury Drake was at length compelled to send several charges of shot



among them. This retaliation caused the survivors to beat a precipitate retreat, and during the few days that Drake remained off the coast they did not again show themselves.

On account of the thieving propensity of these natives, Drake called the land thus discovered the Islands of Thieves, a very appropriate term not only because of their habits, but because of their forbidding appearance as well. The ears of the natives were terribly disfigured by the insertion of stones or pieces of round wood into the lobes, the weight being increased until at length the tip of the ear would rest upon the shoulder. Their teeth were also as black as jet, from the coloring matter in a powder used for that purpose. The nails of their fingers were also allowed to grow more than an inch in length, so that altogether the islanders were most ferocious in their appearance, and little less so in their conduct. These islands have since been named the Pelew, by which they are known in modern geographies. On the 16th of October following, the *Golden Hind* reached the Philippines, first anchoring off the shore of four islands that were thickly populated. But it was not deemed prudent to venture on shore, as the appearance of the natives was by no means inviting.

#### RECEPTION TO THE KING OF TERNATE.

Setting sail again, on the 3d of November the Moluccas were seen, and the *Golden Hind* steered for Tidore; but before reaching that island, Drake learned, through a messenger who came off to him in a boat, that the Portuguese had fixed their headquarters at that place, and to avoid conflict with these, Drake accepted the invitation of the King to visit his capital. Here he was most cordially received by a messenger bearing kind expressions from the King, and to whom Drake sent as a present a fine velvet cloak. As

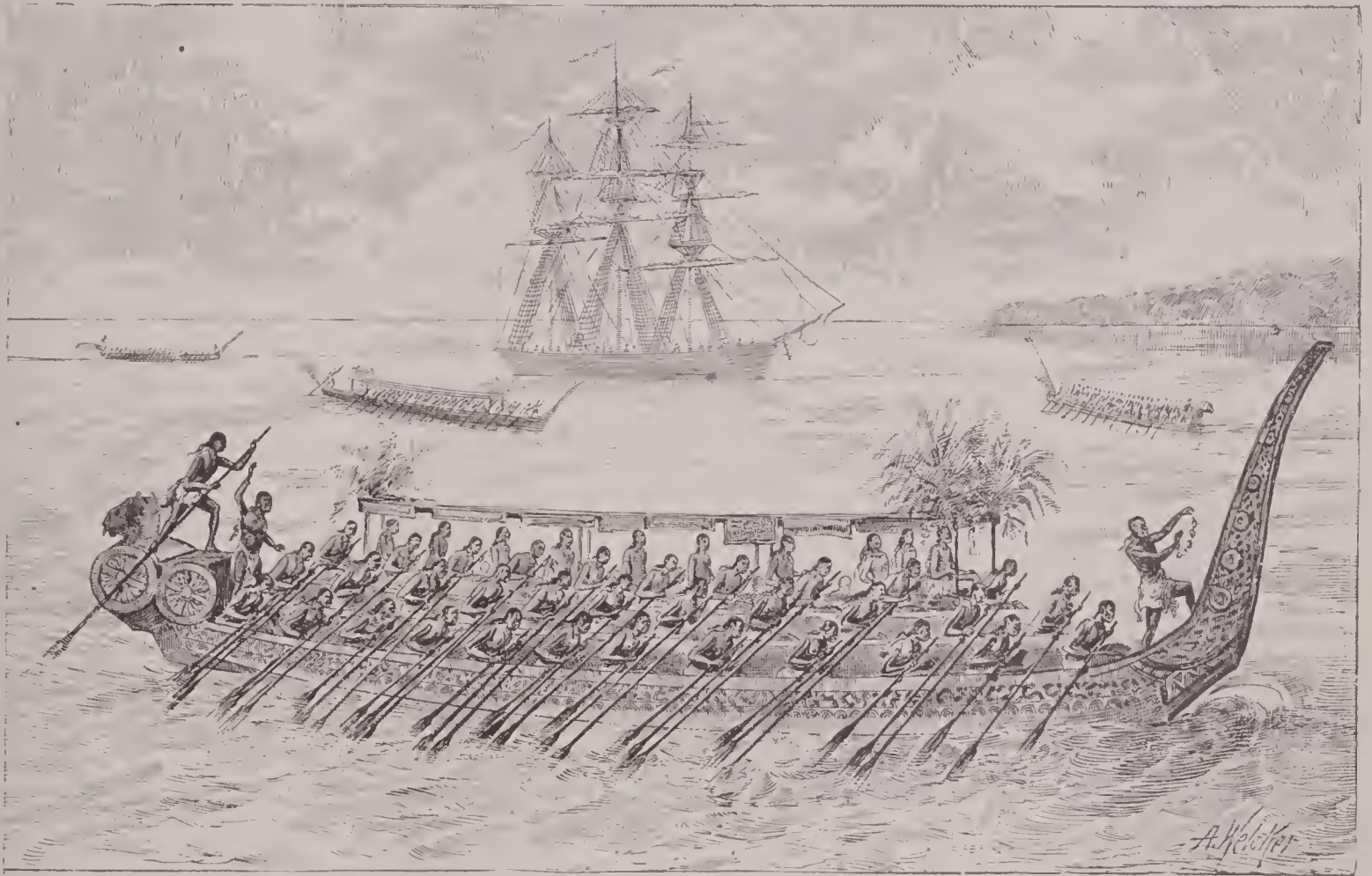


CANOES OF THE PELEW ISLANDERS.

(From an old copper print.)



the ship was at anchor, the King also put off to pay it a visit, and to assure Drake of his desire to have him remain a considerable while on the island. The King was no doubt actuated less by the spirit of friendship than by policy of expediency; for he was in constant dread of the Portuguese, and he thought that Drake might afford him some protection against the possibility of an attack from that quarter; for which reason, he received the Englishman with manifestations of the greatest cordiality, and presented him with a signet which would provide for his safe conduct in any of the islands over which his authority extended. The King's visit was made in a royal barge of magnificent equipment, accompanied as he was by three smaller barges occupied by distinguished persons of his retinue. The natives were



ROYAL BARGE OF THE KING OF TERNATE.

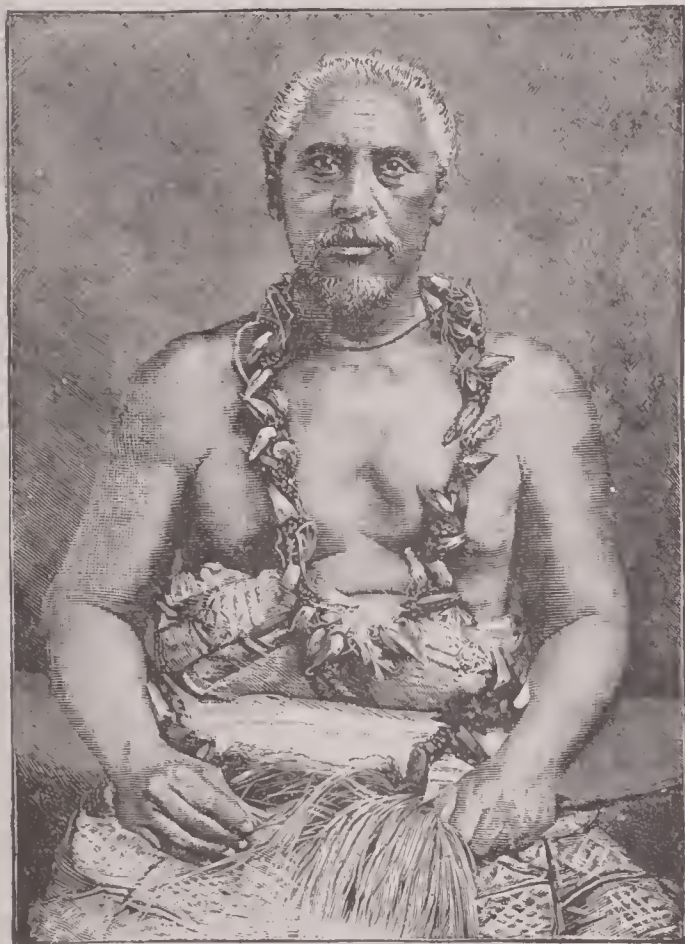
all dressed in flowing robes of white muslin, while as they sat in the seats of the barges they were protected from the sun by a canopy or awning of perfumed mats, which were supported on a frame-work of reeds. Next to the personal attendants of the King were several ranks of warriors, armed with dirks and daggers, and these were again encircled by the rowers, of which there were eighty to each barge, placed in galleries raised above the other seats, three on each side. The motion of the rowers was accompanied by the clashing of cymbals, which produced a martial sound and imposing show. As the King advanced, the guns of the Golden Hind thundered a salute, while Drake assembled the band of musicians that embarked with him from Plymouth, and



received his majesty with martial music. Instead of coming directly on board the ship, the King caused his canoes to be paddled round and round the vessel, evidently gratified by the signs of power and magnificence exhibited by the English, and especially pleased with the music, the first which had, perhaps, ever greeted his royal ears.

#### PUNCTILIOUS ETIQUETTE OF THE KING'S COURT.

At the time of Drake's visit, this native king had expelled the Portuguese from the island of Ternate, and had also subjugated the people of seventy other islands in a group over which he now held sway. He had also been converted to the faith of Mohammedanism, which he made the established



THE KING OF TERNATE.

religion of his dominions. The court maintained by this sable ruler was a punctilious one, and might have been patterned after those of European monarchs. His courtiers and attendants never approached his presence without an exhibition of most profound respect, no one being permitted even to speak to him except from a kneeling posture. After the King had been received, and made a hasty inspection of the ship, he returned to the shore; but on the following day came again, bearing as presents for the English crew fowls, rice, sugar, cloves, and sago.

The third day the King did not visit the ship, but sent his brother to make excuses for his failure to appear, and to convey a royal request that Drake should visit his Majesty in his royal quarters, the brother offering to remain as a hostage for the safe return of the captain-general.

While the invitation was a cordial one, and every manifestation thus far made indicated friendly intentions, Drake yet had fears of some treacherous purpose and refused to accept it. But several of his crew went on shore, and upon landing were received with a pomp which had been intended to grace the entrance of Drake into the capital. Another brother of the King and a party of nobles conducted them to the royal residence, which stood near a dismantled fort from which the Portuguese had been expelled two years previously. When the English sailors reached the capital, they found there an assemblage of at least a thousand persons, sixty of whom were said to be privy councillors. There were also four Turkish envoys, dressed in robes of scarlet, who were then at the court of Ternate concluding a treaty of commerce. The King was guarded by twelve lancers, while over his head was carried a splendid canopy



embroidered with gold. His raiment was also a robe of gold cloth, hanging loosely about his person. His legs were bare, but his feet were covered with slippers made of Cordovan leather. Around his neck hung a heavy chain of gold, while his hair was ingeniously decorated with fillets of the same metal, and his hands sparkled with many bright jewels. At his side stood a page, mechanically wielding a fan two feet in length and one in breadth, which was embroidered and adorned with sapphires, and fastened to a staff three feet long. When the King understood that Drake was not among the party who had thus visited him, he exhibited some impatience and irritability, and treated the sailors who had thus ventured into his presence with considerable disdain.

#### ANIMAL LIFE ON CRAB ISLAND.

The King paid no further visit to Drake or attention to the ship while it lay in the harbor, and, fearing that hostility might develop from the disregard with which the King's invitation had been treated, after procuring a supply of provisions and a considerable quantity of gold, the *Golden Hind* left the Moluccas on the 9th of November, and five days later anchored at Crab Island, which is one of the Celebes. This island was found to be uninhabited, but afforded abundance of water, and here the crew went into camp on shore and repaired their ship for the homeward voyage. The sojourn at Crab Island proved to be an extremely pleasant one, as it afforded every means of enjoyment outside of the delights of civilization. The island was small in size, but marvellously fertile, producing all kinds of tropical fruits, and while there were no natives, their absence was compensated by the great abundance of other animal life. Drake says that about the trees flitted innumerable bats that were as large as hens, while the night was fairly aflame with shining flies which swarmed about the trees in such great numbers that frequently the whole forest appeared to be on fire. There were also great numbers of land-crabs, so large that the body of one was sufficient for a meal for four persons. They were described as a sort of cray-fish, living in holes dug in the earth, from which we know that they must have been of the robber or cocoa-nut species frequently met with in all the East India islands. The bats spoken of by Drake were the flying foxes, not quite so large as a hen, but which had a formidable appearance when on the wing, their size being equal to that of a squirrel.

#### AN ACCIDENT TO THE SHIP.

On the 12th day of December the *Hind* departed from Crab Island, and sailing westward soon got among some islets and shoals, on one of which the vessel struck with great violence, running upon a coral reef with such force that the vessel was lifted half out of the water and there left suspended for three days. Fortunately, no leak was sprung, and a heavy wind prevailing from the lee side kept the vessel from turning over. Their condition was now so alarming that the crew were summoned to prayer, after which solemn duty a united effort was made to float the vessel. She was loaded with rich treasure, some of which must now be sacrificed to lighten her. Accordingly a quantity of



meal, eight of the guns, and three tons of cloves were cast into the sea. But this produced no visible effect, as the ship continued fast as before. When hope seemed to have been entirely abandoned, on the fourth day the wind slackened, and when the tide was at the lowest ebb it veered to the opposite point, when the vessel suddenly reeled to her side in such a manner that she floated off the rock without damage, an incident so remarkable that Drake considered it to have been a miracle. It was some weeks afterwards before the vessel emerged from the great number of small islets and dangerous reefs where it had become entangled, and on the 8th of February they came to anchor before an island called Booton, a pleasant and fruitful place, in which was found gold, silver, copper, and sulphur. It also produced great quantities of such fruits and vegetable products as ginger, long-pepper, cocoas, nutmegs, sago, etc. The island was also occupied by natives whose disposition and manners were both mild and friendly, and in their dealings and behavior they excited the admiration of the English. The men were naked, save a kind of turban which they wore on the head, and a piece of cloth about the waist. But the women wore a light coverlet about the middle, extending to the ankles, while their arms were loaded with such ornaments as they were able to fashion out of bone, horn, and brass.

#### AMONG THE PEOPLE OF JAVA.

Leaving Booton, Drake sailed for Java, which he reached on the 12th of March, where he remained for twelve days, enjoying the hospitalities extended to him. At this time the island was divided into five dependencies, governed by as many chiefs or rajahs, who, instead of showing any jealousy, lived in perfect amity, and vied with each other in their courtesies to the English visitors. The Javans were found to be people of good size and other physical perfections, and while they were extremely hospitable, they were also bold and warlike upon occasion. They had for weapons swords, bucklers, and daggers of their own manufacture, the blades highly tempered, and the handles richly ornamented. They also wore armor sufficient to protect them against arrows, and this was also a great protection in case of hand-to-hand conflicts. The upper part of the bodies of the men was left uncovered, but from the waist downward they wore garments of silk of many pleasing colors. In each village there was a public hall where the people used to meet twice a day to partake of a common meal and enjoy the pleasures of conversation. Refreshments of many kinds were there served, each person partaking providing a part of the food that was thus set on a common table.



A WOMAN OF BOOTON.



While the crew of the *Hind* enjoyed themselves greatly during their stay at Java, yet the desire to reach home increased until, however generous was the treatment they received, their home-sickness increased; and they left this favored climate on this account much earlier than they otherwise would have done. On the 15th of June, they doubled the Cape of Good Hope without meeting any difficulties, though around this cape all the dread of the sailors had centred, owing to the exaggerated stories told of the storms and perils which were always to be encountered in making a voyage about that point.

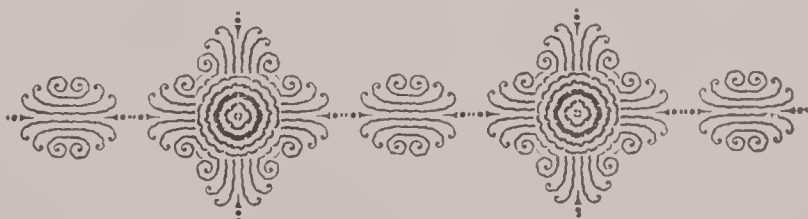


JAVANESE CANOES.

These stories were evidently told for the purpose of deterring adventurers from entering into these waters, in which, up to the time of Drake's voyage, Portugal had retained a monopoly.

Not deeming it expedient to halt at the cape

Drake continued on around and up the coast until on the 22d of July he arrived at Sierra Leone. Here he came to anchor, and obtained a supply of water and refreshment, of such fruits as the country afforded. It was here also that he found great quantities of oysters which, he declares, were discovered hanging and spawning on the trees and increasing wonderfully. But remaining here scarcely two days, the vessel again departed, and on the 25th of September, 1580, Drake returned to Plymouth after an absence of two years and ten months.





## CHAPTER XXXV.

HONORED AS A HERO YET CONDEMNED AS A CORSAIR.



THE safe return of Drake from an expedition that had been attended with such glorious results was hailed throughout England as an event of supreme national importance, for, although more than one-half of his crew had perished, and only two of the ships originally sent out had survived the disasters of the long voyage, yet Drake brought back with him a large amount of treasure and opened a highway for English commerce with islands and South American territory whose trade had previously been exclusively in the hands of the Portuguese and Spanish. Queen Elizabeth, while for political reasons refusing to give open recognition to the enterprise which Drake had so successfully accomplished, nevertheless privately received him with the greatest favor.

The English people everywhere, understanding the real feelings which Elizabeth entertained for Drake, made him the hero of a hundred epics, and fawned and flattered him as far as the power of speech and action could go. There were others, however, whose commercial relations with Spain made it to their interest to deprecate his actions, who complained bitterly of the manner in which he had destroyed Spanish shipping and appropriated by force all the treasures that fell into his hands. They contended (and not without reason) that as England and Spain were at peace, such action branded Drake as a corsair, and demand was made for restitution of the property which he had acquired on his expedition. These objectors had such influence that at length Elizabeth, to avoid open rupture with Spain, caused the sequestration of the spoils which Drake had made, and after a year's litigation restored a considerable portion of the booty to Spanish claimants. But this small action in no wise conciliated Spain, who now prepared to make reprisals from the English, which soon afterwards led to the equipment of the Spanish Armada for the invasion of England, the final results of which are so well known to all readers of history.

### A BANQUET ATTENDED BY THE QUEEN.

An open recognition and public reception were not accorded to Drake by Elizabeth until the 4th of April, 1581, nearly one year after his return, when



she went on board the *Golden Hind*, which had been lying at the port of Deptford meanwhile, and partook of a magnificent banquet which Drake had prepared for his royal guest. At the conclusion of the dinner, the Queen manifested her supreme delight in the success of Drake's expedition, and manifested her royal favor for him as a valuable subject by conferring upon him the honor of knighthood, and embracing the occasion to say that his actions did him more honor than the title which she had bestowed. As a further evidence of her great favor she gave orders that the ship should be preserved as a monument of the



QUEEN ELIZABETH BEING CONVEYED TO THE GOLDEN HIND.

glory of the nation and of the victorious commander whom she had been pleased to honor. This was accordingly done, and the *Golden Hind* was carefully kept out of service until she fell to pieces through natural decay; after which a chair was made out of one of the planks of the vessel, and presented as a relic to the University of Oxford. Sir Walter Scott declares that the grace of her majesty extended to a great personal liking for Drake, which inspired in him the ambition to become consort to the Queen. Sir Walter Raleigh

was also an applicant for a like favor. But for some reason, which history fails to record, the Queen accepted neither, and remained throughout her life unmarried.

#### ATTACK ON ST. DOMINGO.

Hostilities with Spain began directly afterwards, and Drake, in connection with Sir Philip Sydney, was placed in command of an expedition sent out against the Spaniards in the West Indies. The armament consisted of twenty-five sail, of which two vessels were the Queen's own ships, while the force of seamen numbered 2,300. On the 24th of November, 1585, an attack was made on a



village at St. Domingo, twelve miles in the interior, which was easily captured and the town burned. Several other towns shortly afterwards capitulated to the victorious English. But further hostilities were temporarily checked by the appearance of malignant fever, which quickly carried off between two and three hundred of Drake's men. After three months of inactivity, the fever having abated, the fleet sailed for another part of St. Domingo where an attack was made upon its chief city, and after a vigorous bombardment from the ships and an impetuous attack from the rear by a large force which had been landed for the purpose, the city capitulated, and as the citizens were unable to pay the large ransom exacted by Drake, a great portion of the place was burned. Many of the buildings, however, were so substantially constructed that their demolition was such a fatiguing duty that Drake at last accepted a ransom of twenty-five thousand ducats (\$60,000) for the safety of what remained of the place.

A month later an attack was directed against the city of Carthagena, which, though bravely defended, was gallantly carried, and the governor, Alonzo Bravo, made prisoner. After the city had been held for a period of six weeks, during which time many of the houses were destroyed, a ransom of 11,000 ducats was accepted, and the English sailed away, glad to escape from the fearful pest of bilious fever which had made its appearance among the crew, and from which seven hundred men afterwards perished. The fatal ravages of this disease so discouraged Drake that after sailing along the coast of Florida and burning St. Helena and San Augustine, he returned to England, bringing 200 brass and 40 iron cannons and about \$300,000 in prize money, \$100,000 of which was divided among the men.

#### DESTRUCTION OF THE SPANISH ARMADA.

Drake's arrival in England was most fortuitous; for the Spanish Armada, of 134 ships, had just been fitted out for the purpose of invading England, and Elizabeth was in sore need of such an intrepid commander as Drake to resist the Spaniards. The merchants of London had fitted out twenty-six vessels of different sizes, to which the Queen added four ships of the royal squadron. and with this considerable fleet Drake sailed for the harbor of Cadiz, where he had the good fortune to burn and destroy a very large amount of shipping which was to have been used for the threatened invasion. In addition to the injury which he thus did to the enemy, he destroyed a fleet sailing for the Azores, and brought back to England the richest prize that he had ever made, being several ships laden with provisions and treasure for Spain; in addition to this he burnt several other vessels, his depredations being such a serious blow to the Spaniards that they were forced to delay the threatened invasion by the Armada for one year.

On the 19th of July, 1586, the Armada came in sight of the English shores, when Drake and Fleming, the latter being lord high admiral, sailed out boldly and disputed with the Spanish fleet. A dreadful storm coming up, however, prevented the battle which would have followed, and while the English fleet was



able to put back into port, the Spanish Armada was blown out to sea; and of the 134 ships which left the coast of Spain, all were destroyed but 53 which managed to return in a dismantled condition. This disaster practically ended the war between England and Spain, though it continued in a desultory manner for a considerable while, but was confined to reprisals on the high sea.

#### DEATH OF SIR JOHN HAWKINS.

In 1595 Sir John Hawkins accepted the services of Drake in an expedition to the West Indies. It was undertaken on a scale of magnitude and magnificence, which, it was thought, would at once crush the Spanish power in that quarter. The fleet consisted of six of the Queen's ships and twenty-one private vessels, with a crew of 2500 men and boys. The fleet, however, had scarcely put

to sea when a dispute occurred between Hawkins and Drake, which occasioned great delay, and enabled the Spaniards to make preparations to receive the English, whose coming had been announced. This expedition was a failure from the beginning, for the Spaniards, having information of the approach of the enemy, set their forts in order, and so protected their galleons



QUEEN ELIZABETH KNIGHTING DRAKE.

laden with treasure for Spain that the prime object of the English was in every case defeated. Sir John Hawkins was so chagrined by the several disappointments thus met with that he fell sick, and died on the 12th of November, while the fleet was before Porto Rico. He was succeeded by Sir Thomas Baskerville, who, in conjunction with Drake, opened the attack on Porto Rico; but on the very night of Hawkin's death a shot from the fort penetrated the cabin of the flag-ship, and drove the stool on which Drake sat from under him, while it killed Sir Nicolas Clifford, and mortally wounded Mr. Brute Brown and several other officers. The ships now drew off, but resumed the attack on the following day, but with no better success; for though the English assaulted with great impetuosity and determination, the Spaniards inflicted such damage upon the assailants that they



withdrew with a barren victory, and the enterprise of capturing Porto Rico was abandoned.

#### DEATH OF DRAKE.

Being defeated in every effort and unable to give the enemy more than a trifling annoyance, and his health being greatly impaired, Drake advised the abandonment of the expedition and a return to England. Sir Thomas Baskerville, who was in charge of the expedition, would not immediately consent to such withdrawal from Spanish territory, and undertook a passage of the Isthmus of Darien, with the intention of capturing Panama. But his force was harassed at every step by desultory firing from the Spaniards that lined the way, and suffering great privation and fatigue, as well as from a lack of provision, he returned to the ships entirely disheartened. But scarcely had they reached the ships when Drake, whose health had been failing for several months, was attacked by a flux under which he lingered for a period of three weeks, and expired on the 28th of January, 1596, just as the fleet had returned and lay off Porto Rico. His remains were placed in a leaden coffin and committed to the deep with all the pomp attending naval obsequies.

Unsuccessful as his latest enterprises had been, Drake's death was universally lamented by the nation. The tenderness of pity was now mingled with admiration for the genius and valor of this truly great man, whose memory will survive as long as the world lasts; for the value of his services to England is beyond computation.





## CHAPTER XXXVI.

### CAVENDISH'S VOYAGES AROUND THE WORLD



LIZABETHAN age was a period distinguished for the geniuses who made England the greatest nation of the earth. It was the age in which Shakespeare dramatized, and Bacon philosophized, and Johnson wrote, and Goldsmith sang, and such heroes as Raleigh, Drake, and Cavendish explored. It was a period of immense mental energy in a wise direction, during which the great Elizabeth, by sagacious selection and direction of her courtiers, as well as by her influence and example, aroused public spirit to its utmost and inspired a thirst for glory that redounded to the national advantage in every channel. Learning was apotheosized, adventure, discovery, and colonization encouraged, until true greatness was measured by performance, and accident of birth or fortune was

in such small esteem that the purse of the rich was open to those who proposed enterprises that might reflect honor upon the promoter.

It was this thirst for glory that led many men of wealth and position into foreign fields to endure the perils as well as hardships inseparable from a search for unknown lands. It was this patriotic impulse that sent Raleigh to the little known land of America to plant a colony, that induced Drake to prey upon Spanish commerce, and sweep around from coast of continent to shore of island, to battle with galleons on the high sea, and to brave the hostility of savages. And it was the glory to be thus acquired that prompted Thomas Cavendish to seek fame by emulating their deeds, if not by surpassing them.

Like Drake, Cavendish was the son of a gentleman of considerable fortune, whose estates lay in England near Ipswich, which, in the time of his youth was a maritime town of no small importance. Unfortunately, his father died when Thomas was in his teens, and being the eldest son, he came directly into possession of a large patrimony, a greater part of which he speedily squandered by riotous living and in imitating the gallantries and dissipations of the Court. Being presently reduced to the necessity of earning a living by nobler pursuits than destiny seemed at first to have marked him for, and having an early passion for the sea, with what means were still left him he



equipped a vessel at his own expense, and in 1585 accompanied Sir Richard Greenville on an expedition to Virginia, with the intention of planting a colony; but the venture was profitless and a decided failure.

#### EQUIPMENT OF THE EXPEDITION.

But though Mr. Cavendish had been unsuccessful in his first adventure at sea, he had made a considerable tour among the West Indies, which increased his desire for further enterprises among the unknown regions of the earth; and in six months after his return from Virginia, with the part of his fortune which still remained to him he equipped a small squadron and projected a voyage into the South Sea, in emulation of the services that had been performed by his immediate predecessor, Sir Francis Drake. It was through the recommendation of Lord Hunsdon that he procured the Queen's commission, and sailed from Plymouth on the 21st of July, 1586. His fleet consisted of the *Desire*, a vessel of 120 tons, the *Content* of 60 tons, and the *Huge Gallant*, a light bark of 40 tons, scarcely any one of which was suitable to perform a voyage across the ocean. He had a crew of 123 soldiers and seamen, the most of whom had seen service in previous expeditions, and all were enthusiastic, chiefly under the prospect of acquiring fortune by wresting it from Spanish merchantmen. England being still at war with Spain, his course lay directly for Sierra Leone, where he first touched, in expectation of meeting with a Portuguese vessel, which was said to be in the Guinea waters, laden with considerable treasure. But on his arrival there he found that the ship had departed several days previously, and his disappointment so angered him that he landed with 70 of his marines and made an unprovoked attack upon the town, plundering and burning 150 houses. The negro occupants fled without making any defence, until being pursued to the woods they shot poisoned arrows from the shelter of trees and succeeded in killing one of the soldiers and wounding several others. Departure was made from the African coast on the 6th of September, and on the 16th of December following the squadron landed on the coast of Patagonia and discovered Port Desire, which is a harbor at the mouth of Desire river, named in honor of the ship in which Cavendish sailed as admiral. A stay of several days was made here, to give opportunity for a large slaughter of seals and a great number of sea-birds, which from the description given by Cavendish, must have been penguins.

#### DISCOVERY OF THE SKELETONS OF GIANTS.

While lying in this harbor a boy belonging to the crew of the *Content* was suddenly surrounded by about fifty Patagonians intent upon his capture. But several of Cavendish's men hastened to his rescue and drove the natives into the country for three or four miles; but no casualty is reported to have occurred. They discovered here footprints which Cavendish alleged were eighteen inches in length, and also skeleton remains of a most extraordinary size; the dimensions, however, Cavendish neglects to mention. Le Maire and Schouten visited Port Desire in December, 1615, with a fleet of two vessels, and finding an



old cemetery opened several of the graves and removed therefrom many skeletons, which they declared were ten to eleven feet in length, the skulls being large enough to cover the Dutchmen's heads as helmets, being more than twice the size of the skulls of Europeans. From this fact, more than from recent investigations, has arisen the claim that the Patagonians were a race of giants; for the people, as they have since been met with by such scientists as Darwin, are found to be but little more than the height of the ordinary European, their

average stature being about six feet. If Le Maire and Schouten really discovered skeletons of the size which they report, they must have been of a pre-historic race, and it is therefore the more to be deplored that none of these human relics were taken to Europe and brought under scientific examination.

#### INCREDIBLE SUFFERINGS OF A SPANISH COLONY.

Leaving Port Desire, Cavenish sailed directly towards Magellan Straits which they entered on the 6th of January, anchoring a few miles within the western entrance. At night, signal lights were observed to the north side of the strait and a boat was sent off in the morning to discover the cause. To their profound amazement they found three men who were the surviving representatives of a wretched Spanish colony that had passed through misfortunes and sufferings of the most melancholy character. This colony had been



DISCOVERY OF REMAINS OF GIANTS AT PORT DESIRE.

planted some years before by Sarmiento, an enthusiastic Spaniard who set out with a powerful armament of twenty-three ships and 3500 men, destined for different parts of South America, with the ambition of planting the people at various points, which would enable Spain to monopolize the trade of that region. But on the outset five of the ships were wrecked in a violent gale and 800 men perished. This sad disaster caused the fleet to put back to Spain. But they embarked a second time, in which, however, misfortune continued to follow



them until their arrival at Rio Janeiro, where the remnant wintered. In the following spring sickness broke out among the colonists which carried away several hundred more, while the bottoms of their ships were attacked by worms, and in sailing to a point of Patagonia the largest and best vessel of the fleet went down at sea carrying 330 men with her. From this time on one disaster after another followed every effort of Sarmiento until the last wreck of the unfortunate expedition was met on the bleak shore of Magellan Strait, as just described. As these few survivors of the expedition refused to embark with Cavendish on account of their distrust of all English heretics, as the Spaniards persisted in calling them, he continued through the strait, meeting with none of the natives until the 22d, when a considerable party was seen on shore and an effort was made to communicate with them. But they appeared hostile and Cavendish, without sufficient provocation, discharged a volley of muskets at the natives by which a dozen or more were killed, and the others took hasty flight.

**A BLOODY FIGHT WITH SPANIARDS.**

After a very tedious passage of nearly a month, the fleet of Cavendish accomplished a passage of the straits, and entered



CAVENDISH SURPRISED BY SPANIARDS.

the South Sea under a favorable wind. Thence he proceeded along the coast northward for nearly a month, until he was compelled to put into the Bay of Quintero, twenty miles north of Valparaiso, and to go on shore for a supply of fresh water. While a party was engaged filling the casks, they were surprised by a body of 200 Spanish horsemen, who came down upon them with such fury that twelve of the party were cut off, half of which number were killed, and the rest made prisoners. In an effort to rescue their companions the English made an assault, in which twenty-four of the Spaniards were slain, and the rest driven off. It was afterwards ascertained that, instead of making slaves of those thus captured, as was almost invariably done, the Spanish, in revenge for the loss of their companions, carried their prisoners to Santiago, and there executed them as pirates, notwithstanding the fact that they had sailed under the Queen's commission.



Leaving Quintero, Cavendish proceeded to another point on the coast called the Brown Mountain, where, on landing, he met with a number of Indians who were slaves of the Spaniards, and who were employed at small recompense to carry a supply of water and wood on board the vessels. These slaves are represented to have been a very degraded race, almost as low in the scale of civilization as the Terra del Fuegians. Their dwellings were of the simplest character, made of a few sticks placed across two posts sunk in the ground, on which a few boughs were carelessly laid, serving little or no protection against rain or inclement weather. Skins, however, were spread on the floor, which gave some appearance of comfort, though their food consisted of raw and generally putrid fish. Their fishing canoes, on the other hand, were constructed with great ingenuity of skins sewn up and inflated like bladders. Each canoe was composed of two of these skins, and in addition to being water-tight, was so buoyant as to carry a considerable weight. But they were illy qualified for propulsion through the water.

On the 23d of February, 1587, Cavendish fell in with a small Spanish vessel having a cargo of wine, which he captured and temporarily added to his squadron. Directly after, he captured another large ship, but it had already been abandoned by the crew, and proved to be a worthless prize. A third and a fourth vessel were likewise captured in the same bay, but being of little or no service they were burned, and on the 26th the fleet bore away from Arica.

#### TORTURE OF PRISONERS.

On the following day a small vessel, which had been despatched from Santiago with intelligence to the Viceroy that an English squadron (probably Drake himself) was upon the coast, was captured. Believing that the officers had dispatches of great importance, Cavendish resorted to every expedient to compel the bearers to deliver them up, but instead they threw them overboard while the English were in chase; nor could any torture, to which Cavendish afterwards subjected them, compel a surrender of their secrets. An old Fleming, whom he threatend to hang and actually caused to be hoisted up, gave not the least sign of betrayal, declaring that he preferred death to perjuring himself or in any wise compromising his country. The mode of torture employed by Cavendish was most revolting, and is the one great shame that attaches to his name. One of the crew that accompanied him declares that he tormented the prisoners with their thumbs in a winch, and continued this at several times until the agony threw the poor wretches into unconsciousness.

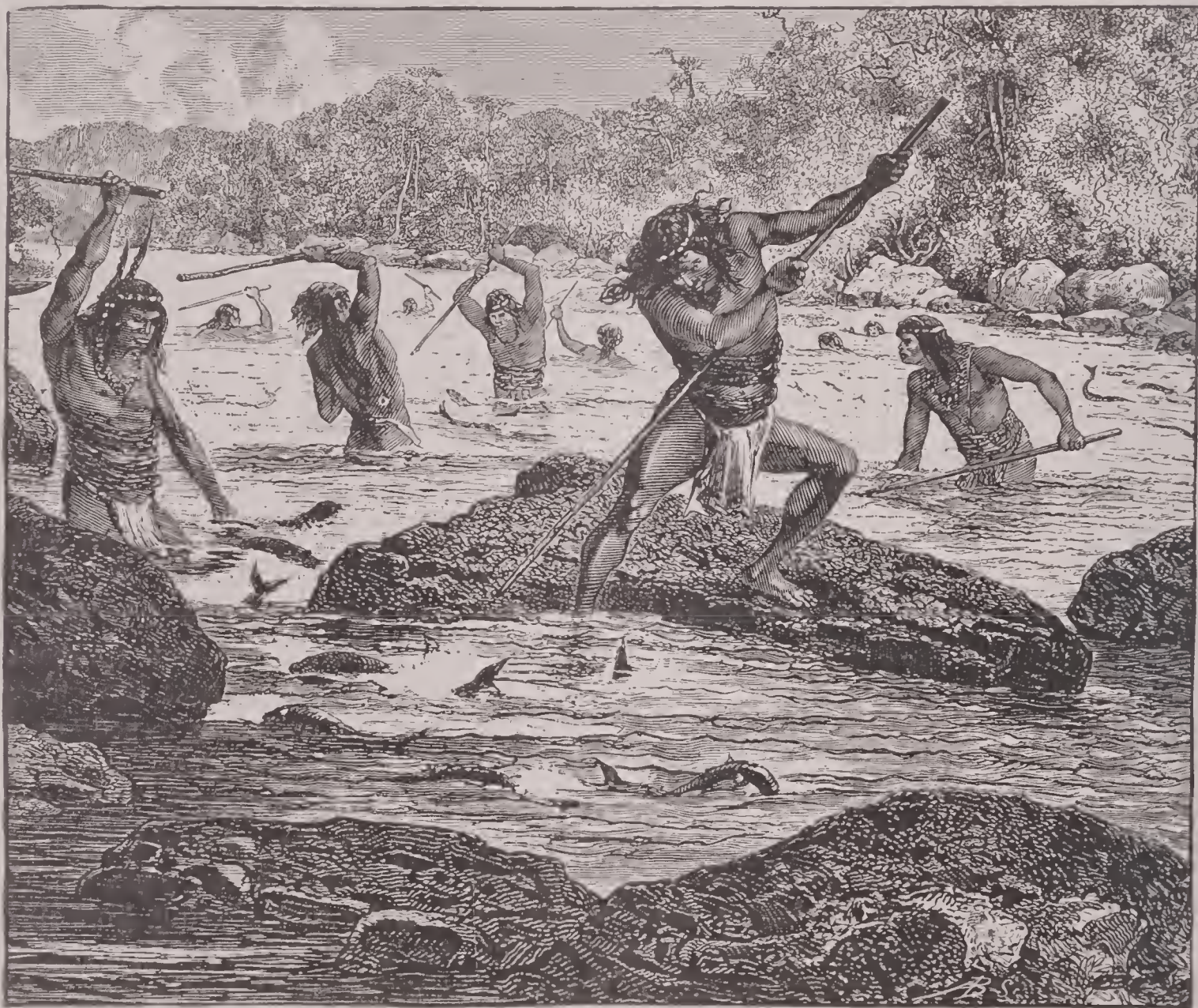
Thereafter a number of other small Spanish prizes were taken, but not one of them contained any considerable wealth, which disappointment so angered Cavendish that when on the 20th of March he landed at Païta with seventy of his men he assaulted the town, drove out the inhabitants and pursued them to a considerable distance and until he found where they had stored their principal goods. But his booty consisted of only twenty-five pounds of silver, with a few other costly commodities. He then set fire to the two hundred houses of the



place, which were burned to the ground with their contents, all of which was valued at about \$30,000. He also burned a ship lying in the harbor and sunk a Spanish sloop of 250 tons.

#### A SPANISH QUEEN.

After committing these depredations Cavendish continued northward and next anchored at the Island of Puna, which was in a splendid harbor, but which



PATAGONIANS FISHING.

the historian of the expedition neglects to definitely locate. Upon landing, Cavendish went directly to the palace of the cacique, or chief, who was found living in a style of great magnificence. His house was on the outskirts of the town by the water's edge, and contained many handsome apartments, while it was surrounded by porches commanding fine prospects both towards the sea and land. The chief had married a beautiful Spanish woman, who now occupied the position of queen of the island, and in many respects was regarded as superior to her husband. She never set foot upon the ground, considering it too low a thing for royalty to do, but was carried everywhere she desired to go in a



palanquin on the shoulders of slaves, and was attended by native ladies and principal men of the island. The cacique did not remain to receive Cavendish, for having already some intimation of the rapacity of his visitors, he and his queen fled on the first approach of the English, carrying with them valuables estimated at \$50,000. The palace, however, was dismantled, and a considerable quantity of valuable hangings of Cordovan leather, richly painted and gilded, and a variety of small valuables were taken by the English, not for their value, but as curiosities. Though Cavendish burnt a great part of the houses and rifled the churches, he found many things about the place which invited him to make his stay several days in this pleasant harbor; for the country abounded

with cattle and poultry, on which his crew feasted in the greatest extravagance. He also improved the time to beach his principal ship and overhaul her bottom.

#### ANOTHER BATTLE WITH SPANIARDS.

But after being again prepared for sea, on the day preceding his intended departure a party of seamen returned to the town to make another forage for provisions. Report, however, had gone through the country of the presence of the English, and a hundred armed Spaniards reached the place while the scattered seamen were chasing pigs and poultry, least anticipating any peril. In a moment they found themselves the object of attack, and having no time or opportunity for defence, seven were killed outright, three were made prisoners, and two were drowned who had leaped into the sea in a vain effort to escape

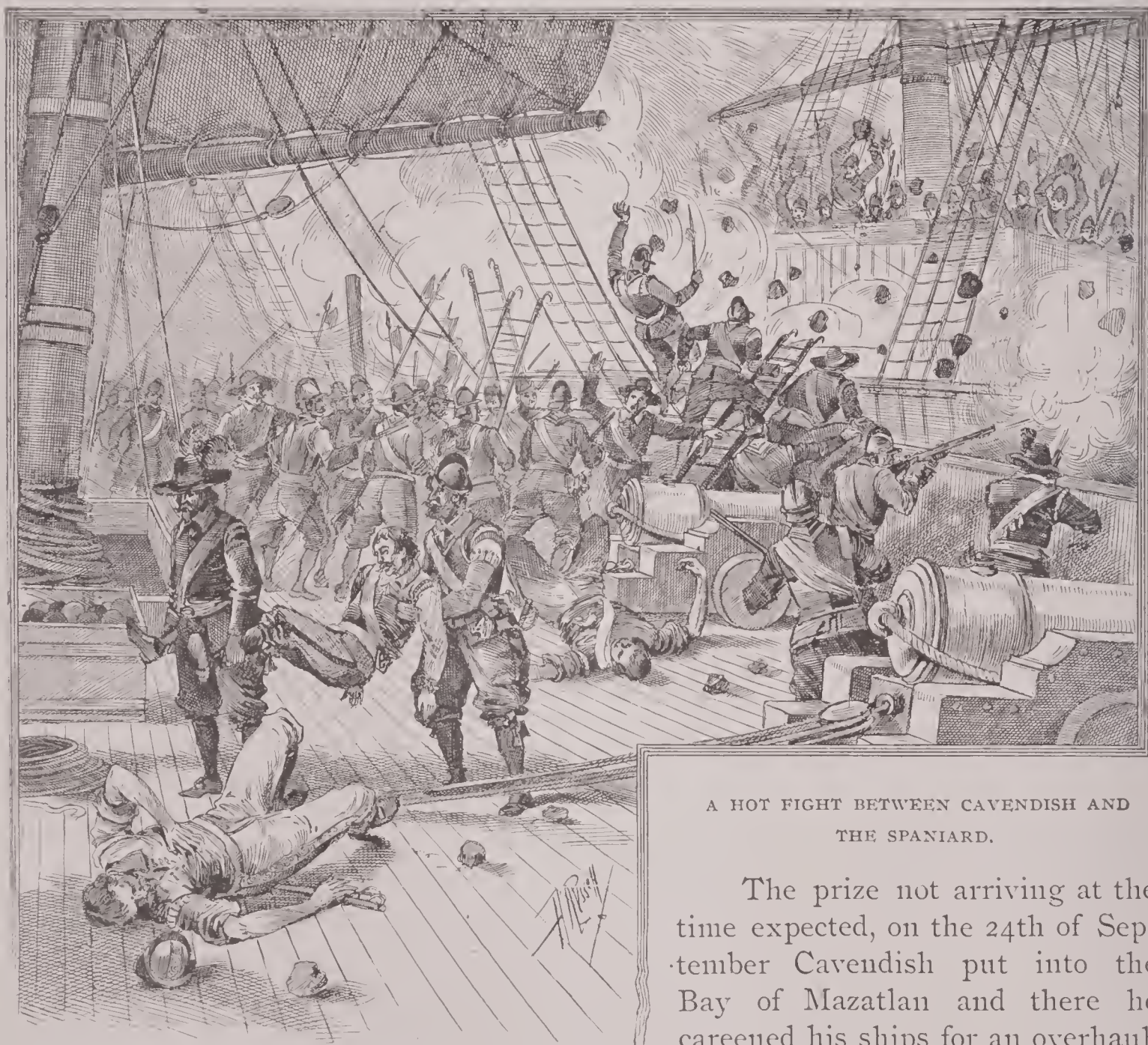


CAPTURING THE DESPATCH VESSEL.

their pursuers. Cavendish as quickly as possible landed the remainder of his force and attacked the Spaniards and Indians, forty-six of whom fell before the well-directed aim of his trained marines. Having driven the remainder out of the place, he set fire to every house in the town, destroyed four ships which were then building, and committed every possible depredation upon the plantations and orchards thereabout. He then set sail on the 5th of June, but put in again fifty miles to the north at Rio Dolce. Here he sunk the *Hugh Gallant*, his crews not being large enough to man all the vessels, while the *Gallant* was scarcely longer sea-worthy, and was very small and a poor sailer at best. On the 9th of July they captured another ship of 120 tons, which, after appropriating her ropes and tackles, they burnt. In this vessel was taken a Frenchman



who gave Cavendish information of a ship from Manilla which was then expected. This was a prize worth contending for, and Cavendish was so fortunate as to intercept a small bark which had been sent out to give warning to the approaching vessel. But while awaiting the arrival of this anticipated prize, Cavendish set about inflicting as much injury upon the Spaniards of the coast as was possible. He burnt two ships at Puerto de Navidad, and took from the people such provisions as he had need of.



A HOT FIGHT BETWEEN CAVENDISH AND  
THE SPANIARD.

The prize not arriving at the time expected, on the 24th of September Cavendish put into the Bay of Mazatlan and there he careened his ships for an overhaul-

ing, rebuilt the pinnace and took on another supply of water. From this place he sailed to Cape St. Lucas, where he lay in wait, cruising about the headland until the 4th of November, on the morning of which date the lookout from the mast-head described a sail bearing towards the Cape. Chase was immediately given, and continued for several hours, when Cavendish came up with the Santa Anna, a Spanish galleon, who, refusing to strike her flag was treated to



a broadside and a volley of musketry. The ships were now brought together, and the English made an attempt to board, but were repulsed by the gallant Spaniards who killed two and wounded five of the boarding party, although their most formidable weapons were stones, which, from behind protecting barricades, they hurled upon the English. Cavendish now thought proper to separate the ships and to stand off and rake the Spaniard with his ordnance, while keeping up a fire of small shot by which several of the Spaniards were killed. But they still held out resolutely, refusing to yield on any terms. This unequal combat continued for more than an hour, and until the Spanish ship was upon the point of sinking, having been pierced in several places below the water-line, so that, in the last extremity, the captain sent a flag of truce with a plea for mercy, offering to surrender up the cargo of his ship if the lives of himself and men were spared. The ship was then brought into shore to prevent it from sinking, and rifled of her valuable cargo of 700 tons, the property of the King of Spain. This cargo was composed chiefly of silks, satins, damasks, wine, preserved fruits, musk, etc., to the value of \$100,000. The crew of the Spaniard consisted of 190 persons, among whom were several females who were courteously cared for by Cavendish. But being unable to take them on his voyage, he left them on shore, where there was a great abundance of water, fish, fowl, and game, and presenting them with a part of the ship's store and wine, he assisted them in dismantling the *Santa Anna*, which furnished wood to erect comfortable shelter for the unfortunates.

Cavendish having thus provided for the captives whom he was about to abandon, after a day of general gayety and festivity the *Desire* and the *Content* bore away for England. But directly after their departure the *Content* lagged astern and, strange enough, was never again seen by her consort. The commentator on this voyage of Cavendish makes the following observation with regard to the singular disappearance of the *Content*: "No trace of this ship remains in any contemporary relation, so far as we have seen. It is imagined that the company, who were dissatisfied with Cavendish, might have resolved to desert him and return by the straits, and that they might have perished in the attempt. Another, and equally probable conjecture, was, that they had attempted the north-west passage. This last, as we afterwards incidentally learned, seems to have been the opinion of the Spanish pilot, who was compelled to return to the Indies in the *Desire*."

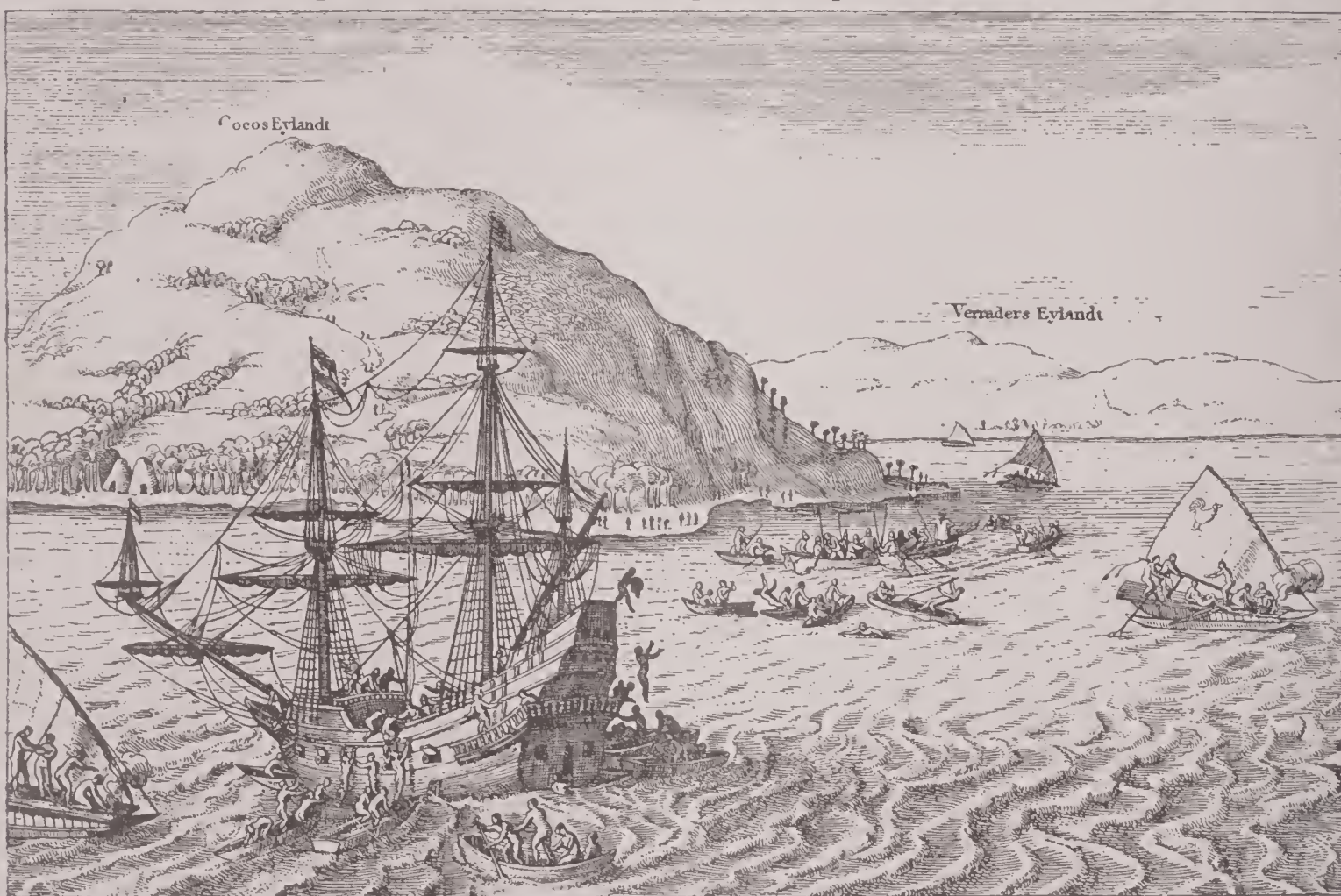
Cavendish's party, having thus been reduced to a single ship, as the *Golden Hind* had done before her in Drake's expedition, started across the Pacific, and on the 3d of January, 1588, came in sight of the Ladrone Islands. This voyage had been an unusually pleasant one, since for forty-five days they had enjoyed fair winds, and made a distance of nearly six thousand miles. As they came in sight of Gnahan, one of the principal islands of the Ladrone Group, fifty or more canoes filled with natives came off to meet the ship, bringing such articles as they had been in the habit of supplying to the Spaniards, such as fish, potatoes,



plantains, and cocoas, which they were glad to exchange for pieces of iron. But the traffic was plied so eagerly that the natives became unbearably familiar, and as Cavendish was easily irritated, he unwisely ordered a party of his marines to fire upon some of the too persistent natives. But it is not reported how many of the number were injured by this hasty action. The *Desire* finally came to anchor in a strait known as St. Bernardino, in a bay of the Island of Capul, one of the Ladrões.

**AN EXECUTION GROWING OUT OF AN EFFORT TO SUPPLANT THE SPANISH.**

Manilla had by this time become a flourishing Spanish settlement, and a place of great wealth and commercial importance, though it had been established by the Spanish only a few years before. The place was zealously guarded, and Cavendish was compelled to exercise the greatest prudence to avoid conflict with



A LIVELY TRADE WITH THE NATIVES.—(From an old copper print.)

the Spanish authorities, who naturally looked with jealous eye towards every action of the English, with whom Spain was at that time at war, Cavendish was therefore careful to take every means to prevent a knowledge of the arrival of his ship at the Ladrões from reaching Manilla, and fortune came singularly to his aid to keep his presence at the islands a secret from his enemies. This fortune consisted in a revelation made to him by a Portuguese, who had been suffered to accompany Cavendish after the capture of the *Santa Anna*, that the Spanish pilot, who was employed on the *Desire*, had prepared a letter, which he had intended to secretly convey to the governor at Manilla, giving informa-



tion of the presence of the English ship and assurances that it would not be difficult to surprise and capture her. The letter also contained the admonition that if the English vessel was permitted to escape, the English might in the following year take possession of the rich city of Manilla, which they had the audacity to approach so near with a small force. This crime, in the eyes of Cavendish, or active patriotism as it would be regarded by the Spaniards, was proved against the pilot, who, indeed, could not and did not deny having written the letter. So, on the following morning, upon the order of Cavendish, he was hanged at the yard-arm.

#### AN INTERVIEW WITH THE DEVIL.

Cavendish remained in the Bay of Capul for nine days, during which time his ship's company received a large store of refreshments, and amused themselves with the natives who never tired of showing them every possible courtesy and generosity. Cavendish visited several of their villages, and was surprised to find that all the natives practised circumcision, esteeming it of an importance as great as that which the Jews attach to the ceremony. Instead of worshipping gods, they paid their devotions to the devil, and declared that they oftentimes had conversed with him, when he always appeared to them in the most ugly and monstrous shape.

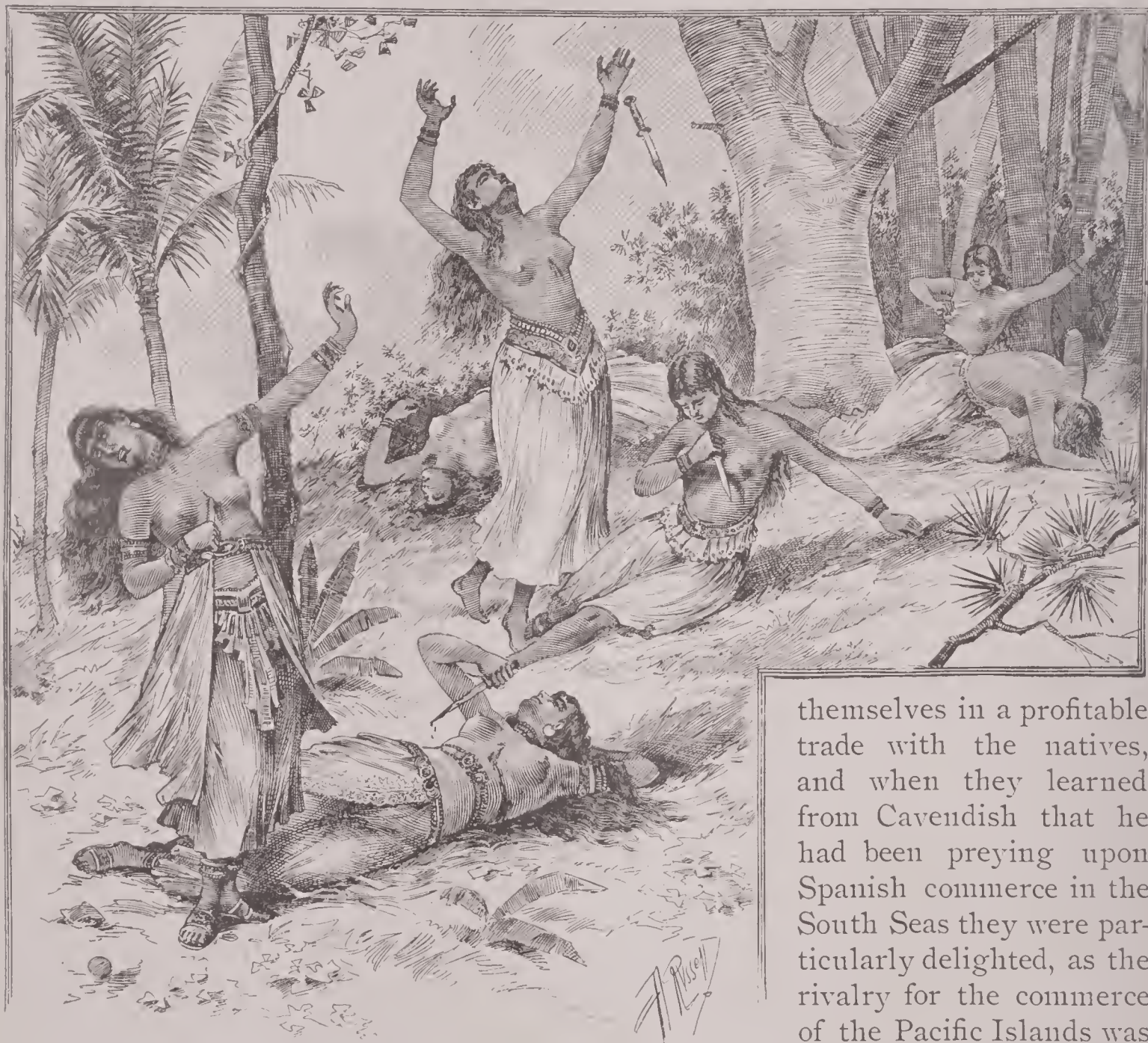
On the day preceding his departure, or the 23d of January, 1589, Cavendish ordered the seven chiefs of the island, and, as he declares, a hundred islands more, to appear before him, and from them he exacted a tribute in hogs, poultry, and other productions of the islands, and thereupon, with much ceremony, he informed them of the greatness of the country from which he had sailed, and raised the banner of England to the mast-head and caused the drums and trumpets to be sounded, so as to produce an effect upon the islanders which must redound to the advantage of any other Englishmen who might appear in those waters. This having been done, and possession of the islands taken in the name of England, the natives acknowledged their submission to the new representative of that government, whereupon, Cavendish returned to the chiefs the value of the tributes which he had exacted.

#### KING OF A HUNDRED WIVES.

Cavendish now weighed anchor, and ran along the coast of Manilla, meeting with no resistance, and by the middle of February passed the Moluccas, but for some reason he did not call at those islands. On the 1st of March, continuing on the way towards home, the *Desire* passed through the straits between Java and Sumatra, and on the 5th came to anchor in a bay at the west end of Java. A negro who accompanied Cavendish, and could speak Arabic, was found to be able to converse with some natives who were seen fishing near the shore, and through his communication with the chief of a considerable town near by, a large quantity of provisions, consisting of fowl, eggs, fish, oranges, and limes was obtained. Directly after, the King's secretary visited Cavendish, and brought as a present a wine which was represented



to be as strong as *aqua-vitæ*. The secretary was received on board, and was treated in the most hospitable manner, with purpose of impressing him with the magnificence of the English. Wines and preserves taken from the prizes were produced at a banquet which was tendered the secretary, and a band of English musicians exerted their skill to give him entertainment. Some Portuguese merchants were also found on the island, who had established



SELF-EXECUTION OF THE RAJAH'S WIVES.

themselves in a profitable trade with the natives, and when they learned from Cavendish that he had been preying upon Spanish commerce in the South Seas they were particularly delighted, as the rivalry for the commerce of the Pacific Islands was chiefly between Spain and Portugal.

Cavendish banqueted the Portuguese merchants, and related to them the most recent political intelligences that he had, and in turn they described to him the riches of Java and the remarkable customs observed by the natives. From them Cavendish learned that the reigning king, or rajah, was named Bolamboam, and was reputed to be 150 years of age. He was held in the greatest veneration



by his people, none of whom would dare to trade with any nation without his license, on pain of death. Old as he was said to be, the King still maintained a hundred wives, while his son had half that number. So great was the obedience of the Javanese to their rajah, that whenever he commanded, however dangerous or desperate the undertaking, no one would dare shrink from executing it, since their heads would be the forfeit of their disobedience. But they were distinguished as being the bravest race in the south-eastern parts of the globe, at times seeming to court death, in order to please their king. The men were of a dark color, and were generally naked, but the women were invariably clothed, and of complexion very much fairer. According to the customs of the Javanese, when their king died his body was burnt, and the ashes preserved. "Five days afterwards, his principal wife threw from her a ball which was provided and kept in the royal palace, and wherever it ran, thither all the wives repaired. Each turned her face eastward, when, with a dagger as sharp as a razor, she stabbed herself to the heart, and, bathed in her own blood, fell upon her face and thus died." Fortunately such shocking tragedies were not often enacted, as the government was not only stable, but the kings appeared to be favored with exceedingly long life, if assertions of the Javanese are to be credited.

#### RETURN OF CAVENDISH.

The Portuguese entertained the wild ambition of setting up an empire in the archipelago which should include the Moluccas and the Philippines, and argued that Ceylon and China might be easily added, if Don Antonio, king of Portugal, could be induced to enter upon the proposed conquest, which they solicited Cavendish to use his influence to bring about. But, without promising to undertake such commission, or giving them to believe that he would refuse, lest in either event he might compromise English interest, on the 16th of March Cavendish bade adieu to the Portuguese merchants, and after a tempestuous voyage of nine weeks passed Good Hope, and on the 9th of June anchored in a harbor at St. Helena. This island, which had now been held by the Portuguese for a period of eighty years, had been well stocked with partridges, pheasants, ducks, goats, and wild hogs, and had become a stopping place for all vessels sailing between Europe and the Spanish Main for the South Seas. The greatest abundance of refreshments of nearly every kind were procurable, and, though it was a rock-infested shore and appeared unfavorable for the raising of any kind of vegetation, had nevertheless grown to be the most important island in either the Atlantic or Pacific. Cavendish, therefore, remained at St. Helena until the 20th, and, having refreshed himself and overhauled his vessel, departed again for England. While enroute, on the 3d of September he met a Flemish hulk from Lisbon, which informed him of the defeat of the Spanish Armada. But the same terrible storm which destroyed the Spanish fleet came near proving fatal to Cavendish, for his vessel was storm-driven for a period of several days, and until the crew had despaired of ever reach land again. Fortunately, the wind abated at a time when the vessel was leaking badly and would have un-



doubtedly gone to the bottom had she been compelled to endure the storm a few hours longer. He had the good fortune, therefore, to return to Plymouth on the 9th of September, 1588, after an absence of two years and fifty days in which time he had made a complete circuit of the globe.

#### WEALTH AMASSED BY THE EXPEDITION.

Cavendish's voyage had been attended throughout with unexampled success, for having sailed under the Queen's commission at a time when England and Spain were at war, he had letters of marque, which permitted him to prey upon Spanish commerce, and thus he was so successful that he brought back with him wealth great enough, as was said, to buy an earldom. It is recorded by historians, that when he returned to Plymouth the sails of his vessel were of silk, and that his cargo consisted of vast quantities of gold, silver, and rich fabrics. But an exaggerated idea of the vast wealth which he thus accumulated may have been obtained from the fact that, his old sails having become no longer serviceable, he was compelled to use some of the damask which he had captured to supply their places, and, seeing a vessel riding into the harbor with silken sails after an expedition which in the outset seemed to promise great riches, it was the most natural thing, for the times, to believe that he had acquired really fabulous riches. It has also been stated (though without reliable authority) that upon his return Queen Elizabeth knighted him, as she had Drake, a report, however, which probably obtained some credence from the letter which he wrote to his principal patron, Lord Hunsdon, extracts from which are most excellent reading, as follows: "It hath pleased Almighty God to suffer me to circumpass the whole globe of the world, entering in at the Strait of Magellan, and returning by the Cape de Buena Esperanca; in which voyage I have either discovered or brought certain intelligence of all the rich places of the world, which were ever discovered by any Christian. I navigated along the coast of Chili, Peru, and New Spain, where I made great spoils. I burnt and sunk nineteen sails of ships small and great. All the villages and towns that ever I landed at I burned and spoiled. And had I not been discovered upon the coast, I had taken great quantity of treasure. The matter of most profit unto me was a great ship of the king which I took at California; which ship came from the Philippines, being one of the richest of merchandise that ever passed the seas. From the Cape of California, being the uttermost part of all New Spain, I navigated to the islands of the Philippines, hard upon the coast of China, of which country I have brought such intelligence as hath not been heard of in these parts: the stateliness and riches of which I fear to make report of, lest I should not be credited. I found out by the way homeward the island of Santa Helena, where the Portuguese used to relieve themselves; and from that island God hath suffered me to return to England. All which services with myself, I humbly prostrate at her majesty's feet, desiring the Almighty long to continue her reign among us; for at this day she is the most famous and victorious princess that liveth in the world."



## CHAPTER XXXVII.

### CAVENDISH'S SECOND VOYAGE.



THE success which attended Cavendish's first expedition, as already narrated, was such that all England was excited, and ambition for further discovery in the South Sea was immensely increased. Cavendish himself, though having thus acquired a very large fortune, was desirous of extending his fame, if not enlarging his wealth, by conducting a second and, as he hoped, more thorough expedition into the waters whence he had just returned. But in the two years which he spent in providing vessels and means for his second undertaking, several expeditions were fitted out from England; not one, however,

proved successful, but on the other hand nearly all ended in fatal disaster. By some it is maintained that in three years after his return, Cavendish had lived so riotously that the greater part of the riches which he accumulated in the South Sea was expended, and he was left with no other alternative for replenishing his exhausted treasury than by a second expedition. Others, however, maintain that his wealth was exhausted in equipping the new squadron with which he put to sea on the 26th of August, 1591. The fleet with which he thus sailed consisted of "three tall ships," as they are described, and two barks. As admiral of the fleet, Cavendish sailed in the Leicester galleon, and his old ship, the Desire, was commanded by the celebrated pilot, navigator, and fortunate explorer, Captain John Davis, whose fame rests upon his voyages into the Arctic Seas. The Roebuck, another of the fleet, was commanded by a Mr. Cook, while the Black pinnace, and a small bark named the Dainty, which were owned by a Mr. Gilbert who had been among the promoters of the discovery of a north-west passage, completed the fleet. These five vessels, well provisioned, and all rating as A 1, sailed under a favoring wind until they reached the Equinoctial line, where they were becalmed for a space of twenty-seven days, and, being exposed to a burning sun and deadly night vapors, many of the seamen were attacked with scurvy, from which not a few died. Out of this sorry condition the vessels finally emerged, and on the 2d of December, while off the coast of Brazil, they captured a Portuguese bark laden with sugar, small wares, and slaves.



**MISFORTUNES OF CAVENDISH BEGIN.**

While England was not engaged in active war with Portugal, commerce with South American ports was in dispute, and the vessels of one nation became a legitimate prey of the stronger ones of others, so that we have the shameful spectacle of Spain, Portugal, and England preying indiscriminately upon one another, with no other motive than unlawful acquisition of wealth. Three days after the capture of the Portuguese vessel, Cavendish landed at a settlement called Placenzia, which they pillaged, and on the 16th surprised the town of Santos at a time when the inhabitants were nearly all at mass. It happened, however, through some mismanagement of the commander of the Roebuck, that the Indians obtained knowledge of the approach of the English in time to make way with a part of their possessions, principally through the first attack being made upon the houses instead of the church, where much of the wealth of the people was stored. The misfortunes of the expedition really began here, for the people having abandoned the place, Cavendish was unable to obtain a store of provisions which he stood very greatly in need of, and, wasting five weeks in a futile effort to replenish his ships, found himself in the beginning of winter, and only a little ways from Magellan Strait, with scarcely anything for his crews to subsist on.

**CAVENDISH'S SAD STORY.**

On the 23d of January, 1592, after having burnt St. Vincent, Cavendish put into Port Desire, which had been appointed as a rendezvous in case of a separation of the vessels. But on the 7th of February, the fleet was overtaken by a violent gale, and the following day the ships were so scattered that it was not until the 6th of March that the Roebuck and Desire reached the place appointed, and not until ten days afterwards that the Black pinnace put in her appearance. In the meantime the Dainty, which was a volunteer bark, having stored herself with sugar at Santos, put back to England. The sufferings which the crew now endured, by reason of the storm and lack of provisions, caused an uneasiness among the men, which came near breaking out into active mutiny. Their anger was chiefly directed against Cavendish, who, in order to secure his safety, left the Leicester, and took refuge on the Desire with Captain Davis. But he was little better off, for, according to his charges, Davis also turned against him, nor stopped short of open abuse and threatenings. He seems to have become the butt of every reproach and charge that could be preferred by any and all of his officers and men. An account is given of this most disastrous voyage, as drawn up by Cavendish himself in his last illness. It was addressed to Sir Tristram Gorges, whom the unfortunate navigator appointed his executor, and is one of the most affecting narratives that was ever written—a confession, wrung in bitterness of heart, from a high-spirited, proud, and headstrong man, who, having set his all upon a cast, and finding himself undone, endured the deeper mortification of believing he had been the dupe of those whom he implicitly trusted. Whatever may be our opinion of his culpability,



we cannot withhold our sympathy, when we read the report of his extreme distress. He thus writes: "We had been almost four months between the coast of Brazil and the straits, being in distance not above 600 leagues, which is commonly run in twenty or thirty days; but such was the adverseness of our fortune, that in coming thither we spent the summer, and found the straits, in the beginning of a most extreme winter, not durable for Christians.

"After the month of May was come in, nothing but such flights of snow, and extremity of frosts, as in all my life I never saw any to be compared with them. This extremity caused the weak men (in my ship only) to decay; for, in seven or eight days in this extremity, there died forty men and sickened seventy, so that there were not fifteen men able to stand upon the hatches." Another relation of the voyage written by Mr. John Jane, a friend of Captain Davis, even deepens this picture of distress. The squadron, beating for above a week against the wind into the straits, and in all that time advancing only fifty leagues, now lay in a sheltered cove on the south side of the passage, and nearly opposite Cape Froward, where they remained till the 15th of May, a period of extreme suffering. "In this time," says Jane, "we endured extreme storms with perpetual snow, where many of our men died of cursed famine and miserable cold, not having wherewith to cover their bodies, nor to fill their bellies, but living by mussels, water, and weeds of the sea, with a small relief from the ship's stores of meal sometimes." Nor was this the worst, "All the sick men in the galleon were most uncharitably put on shore into the woods, in the snow, wind, and cold, when men of good health could scarcely endure it, where they ended their lives in the highest degree of misery."

#### ASTOUNDING STORIES TOLD BY A VOYAGER.

But the hardships precipitated by insufficient food, continuous storms and severely cold weather were increased by superstitious fears, which latter Cavendish does not mention, but which we find recorded in a book written by Purchas Pilgrim relating to "the admirable and strange adventures of Master Anthony Knyvet, who went with Master Cavendish in his second voyage," and was among the number forcibly put on shore and then abandoned. Knyvet's story, for marvels, if not for invention and imagination, rivals the adventures of Sinbad the Sailor. He wandered for a long while about Patagonia, and after gaining the coast of Brazil, was for many years among the "Cannibals." Many are the wonderful escapes from death which Knyvet is declared to have made. In the straits, pulling off his stockings one night, all his toes came with them; but this is not so bad as the fortune of one Harris, who, blowing his nose with his fingers, throws it into the fire, and never recovers it again, as Knyvet seems to have done his toes by the good offices of a surgeon whom Cavendish employed, and who performed a cure by the mere muttering of words. In the straits, he saw both giants and pigmies. The foot-marks of the giants at Port Desire were four times the length of an Englishman's foot. In the straits their stature was fifteen and sixteen spans long; at Port Famine, or San Felipe, the desolate station



of the Spanish colony, four or five thousand pigmies with mouths reaching from ear to ear were seen at one time, whose height was from four to five spans. Some of Kuyvet's marvels relate to the singular subject of demoniac possession, and satanic influence among the tribes with whom he sojourned. These accounts and others of the elder voyagers, are not materially different from those which we received of the South-Sea Islanders up to within a few years of the present time, and which we are assured by Ellis some of the early missionaries were disposed to believe. On his return to England, Master Kuyvet told Purchas that he once heard an Indian conferring with the Spirit that possessed him, and



KUYVET AMONG THE CANNIBALS.

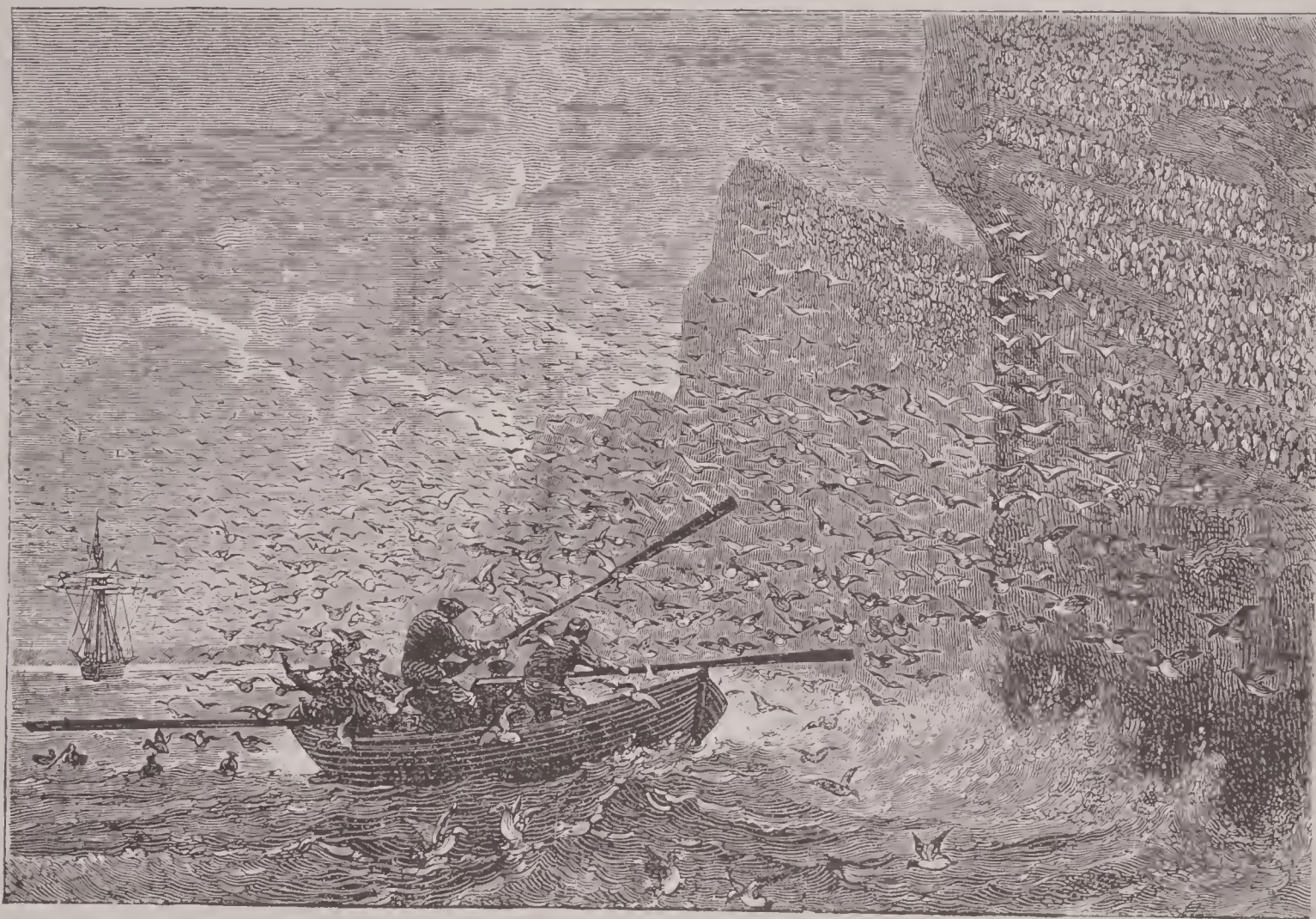
threatening that, if it did not use him better, he would turn Christian; the Spirit took the hint and left him.

#### CONCERNING THE BASE TREACHERY OF DAVIS.

Subsequently, it appears that confidence in Cavendish was partially restored, or else, having no further reliance in Davis, he considered himself more secure on his own vessel, and returned to the Leicester, and at length, on a petition signed by the whole company, he returned to the coast of Brazil for supplies, which, having been obtained, he made a second attempt to pass the Strait of Magellan. On the 15th of May they set sail again, but on the 20th, the Desire and Black



pinnace were separated from the galleon, or admiral's ship. How this separation occurred we are not able to decide, but to the day of his death, Cavendish always maintained that Davis wilfully abandoned him to his fate. The friends of Davis, on the other hand, maintain that he proceeded to Port Desire, as instructed, and afterwards would have sought the *Leicester*, but for the violent opposition of his company who would not permit his departure, and that upon an effort to do so a mutiny arose, which was only quelled by acquiescence in their demands. The weight of evidence, however, goes far to establish the claim that Davis was ambitious to conduct an expedition of his own, and that to this end he designedly separated from Cavendish and continued on towards the straits.



SAVED FROM STARVATION BY A MILLION OF BIRDS.

#### HARDSHIPS OF DAVIS AFTER SEPARATING FROM CAVENDISH.

Being driven out to sea by a storm, he discovered and named the Falkland Islands, though history has denied to him the honor of this discovery, and has accorded it to Sir Richard Hawkins, who gave to them the name of Hawkins' Maiden Land, "for that it was discovered in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, my sovereign lady, and maiden queen." They have since been called Davis' Southern Islands, but in later years the first designation given them by Davis is maintained. After leaving Falkland Islands, the misfortunes which drove Davis there did not abate, for in steering westward again another



storm arose of much greater severity, and which resulted in the loss of the pinnace, and a tearing away of all the sails and main-mast of the *Desire*. In addition to this disaster, the ships lost their course, and the sky being continually overcast Davis was unable to ascertain his position. In this extremity, therefore, he had recourse to prayer, in which he continued for a considerable time, believing that his end must soon come; but singular to relate, while thus engaged, Providence seemed to have interposed in his favor, for the sun burst through the clouds, and the wind almost immediately began to lull; at which Davis arose from his knees, and, first returning thanks to God, took an observation which showed that he was not a great distance from Magellan Strait, and taking new courage, he repaired his shattered sails, set up a new mast, and on the 11th of October entered the mouth of the strait. But in reaching this harbor the crew was in a really pitiable condition, being long without proper nourishment, and exposed to a bitter cold, which so benumbed them that for sometime afterwards their flesh appeared to be dead and insensible to feeling. They found shelter in a cove for a few days, but provisions still being extremely scarce, they were compelled to continue their course, steering out again, intending to put back to Port Desire, if possible. After ten days' sailing on a stormy sea, they reached the desired haven, and on Penguin Island they found such an abundance of birds, that without difficulty they killed a number sufficient to supply them with meat in great abundance for more than a month thereafter, for like sorry fates had befallen many others on that crime-infested shore.

#### THE DOG-FACED MEN OF PATAGONIA.

Davis relates that one day while most of his men were absent on their several duties on shore, a multitude of the natives showed themselves, throwing dust upon their heads, "leaping and running like brute beasts, having vizors on their faces in resemblance of dogs, or else their faces were those of dogs themselves. We greatly feared lest they should set the ship on fire, for they would suddenly make fire, whereat we much marvelled. They came to windward of our ship, and set the bushes on fire, so that we were in a very stinking smoke; but as soon as they came within reach of our guns, we shot at them, and striking one of them in the thigh, they all presently fled, and we never saw them more." The reader of Cook's voyages will discover a passage relating to the New Guineans, describing the singular manner in which they produced a fire or smoke out of pieces of cane which they carried; in this particular very much resembling the reference which Davis makes to the sudden fire made by the natives about Port Desire. It was at this place also that nine of the seamen, whom Davis charged with having incited a mutiny, went on shore, and were never seen again. Whether they fell victims to the anger of the Indians, or were secretly murdered by orders of Davis himself, history has not been able to give particulars, as either supposition is a reasonable one.



**A PLAGUE OF WORMS.**

On the 22d of December Davis sailed for Brazil with a store of 14,000 dried penguins, but in the beginning of February, in an attempt to obtain provisions at the Island of Placeuzia, which is along the coast of Brazil, thirteen of his men were killed by Indians and Portuguese, and thus out of an original company of seventy, only twenty-seven were now left to man the *Desire*. From thence they steered for England, but were the sport of baffling winds, and made such slow progress that their store of fresh water ran short, and the weather being excessively warm, the dried penguins upon which they depended for subsistence began to corrupt, "and ugly loathesome worms of an inch long were bred in them." This plague is thus described by Mr. Purchas, the historian of the expedition: "This worm did so mightily increase, and devour our victuals, that there was in reason no hope how we should avoid famine, but be devoured by the wicked creatures. There was nothing that they did not devour, iron only excepted, our clothes, hats, boots, shirts, and stockings. And for the ship, they did eat the timbers; so that we greatly feared they would undo us by eating through the ship's side. Great was the care and diligence of our captain, master, and company, to consume these vermin; but the more we labored to kill them, the more they increased upon us; so that at last we could not sleep for them, for they would eat our flesh like mosquitoes." This plague of worms was not the only sore distress into which the crew fell, for most of them were now attacked by strange and horrible diseases that temporarily destroyed reason, so that more than one-half of the crew were at one time raving maniacs. This sorry condition was no doubt superinduced by the want of water, for heavy rain shortly afterwards falling gave them a temporary supply, and many speedily recovered. But eleven died between the coast of Brazil and Bear Haven in Ireland, so that only sixteen survived, and only five of these were able to work the ship into the home port.

**CAVENDISH'S EXCORIATION OF DAVIS.**

And now to return to Cavendish, whose opinion of Davis seems to have been substantiated by the verification of his prophecy; for as he declared would come to pass, Davis did return to Port Desire after a passage of the straits, and there provisioning himself in the manner described, set out upon a return to England, thus wilfully abandoning the *Admiral* with whom he had sailed. Thus in speaking of Davis and his conduct, Cavendish, in his letter already referred to, writes: "And now to come to that villain, that hath been the death of me and the decay of this whole action, I mean Davis, whose only treachery in running from me hath been utter ruin of all, if any good return by him, if ever you love me, make such friends, as he, least of all others, may reap least gain (a little confused). I assure myself you will be careful in all friendship of my last requests. My debts which he owing be not much; but I (most unfortunate villain!) was matched with the most abject-minded and mutinous company that ever was carried out of England by any man living. The short



of all is this, Davis' only intention was utterly to overthrow me, which he hath well performed."

After the *Desire* and *Black* pinnace had separated from the fleet, as before described, the *Leicester* and *Roebuck* shaped their course for Brazil, but reaching thirty degrees south latitude they encountered a dreadful storm and were parted. Cavendish on the galleon made land at the Bay of St. Vincent, where he lay awaiting the *Roebuck*, having previously arranged to meet at a point thereabout in case of their separation for any cause. While lying in this bay a considerable party of Cavendish's men, in open defiance of his orders, went on shore to forage for provisions and incidentally to plunder the houses of the Portuguese farmers in the vicinity. While engaged in this freebooting enterprise, the Indians assembled in considerable force and cut the English off, killing twenty-four men and an officer and demolished the boat in which they had reached the shore, thus leaving Cavendish without either boat or pinnace. Shortly after, the *Roebuck* reached the bay in an almost dismantled condition, being destitute of masts and sails, and in despair of being able to rebuild her, Cavendish entertained an idea of sinking her, but on intimation of such intention he was violently opposed by the crews of both vessels, who, in the pressing emergency, were unwilling to part with even so sorry a hulk as the *Roebuck* now appeared to be, their ambition being to attack as speedily as possible some wandering vessel of the Portuguese, and in case of an engagement they correctly believed that the *Roebuck* might be as advantageous as though she were more seaworthy.

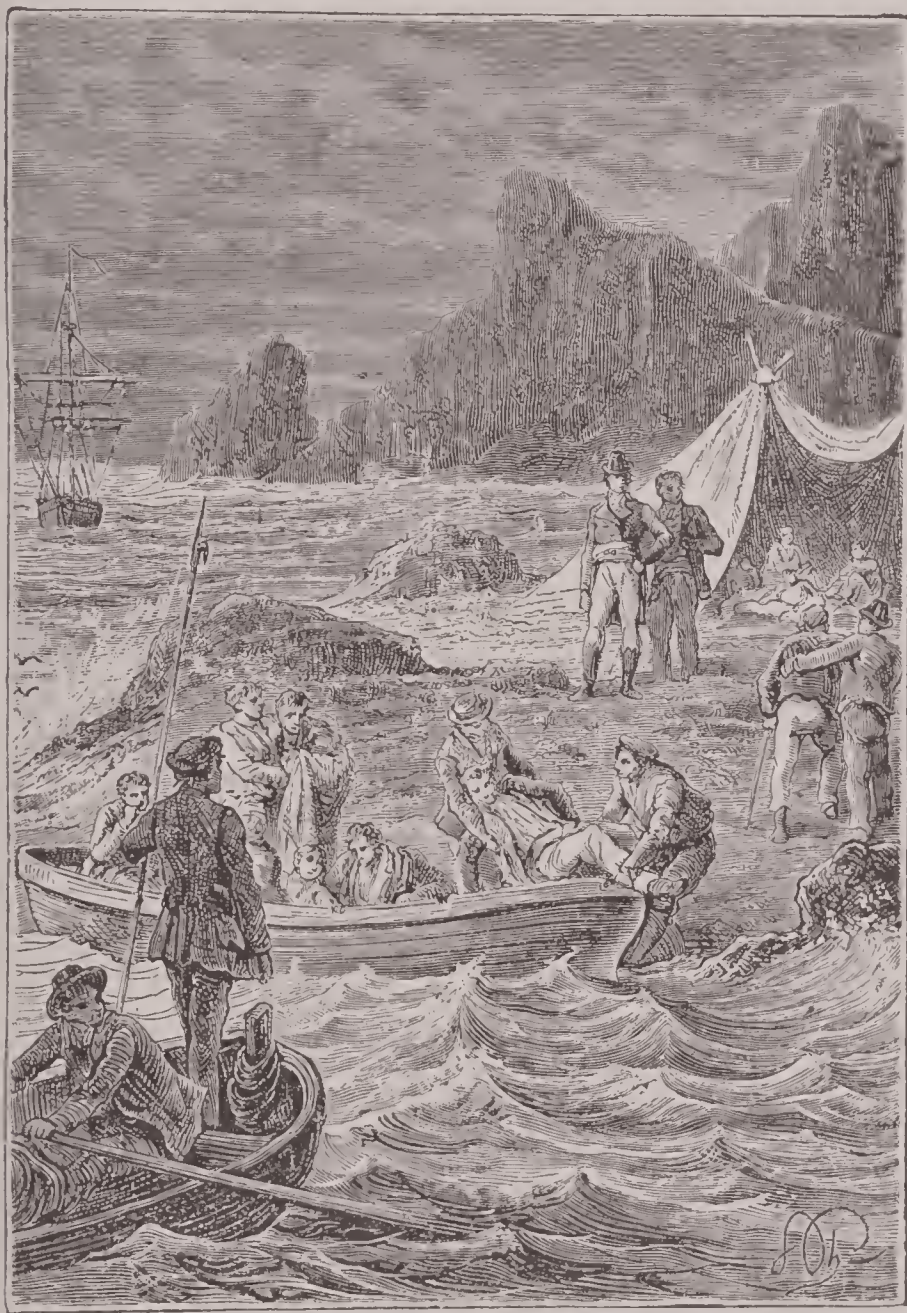
#### THE ENGLISH DEFEATED BY THE PORTUGUESE.

It was only a few days thereafter that the English had an opportunity of putting their valor to the test and carrying out their resolution, for, discovering three Portuguese ships in the harbor of *Spirito Santo*, they carefully planned an attack and at what they believed an auspicious time opened a broadside fire on the three surprised vessels. But they had not properly measured their adversaries, for, instead of striking their flags, the Portuguese replied promptly to the guns of their adversaries and after an hour's engagement they beat the English, killing thirty-eight and wounding forty others of the eighty that were manning the two vessels, thus leaving only two of the English uninjured. Several of those who were wounded, however, were not entirely incapacitated for duty, but this fatal adventure so very much reduced his force that Cavendish had barely as many efficient men as could raise the anchor. To add to his already accumulated misfortunes, the *Roebuck*, unseaworthy as she certainly was, forsook him, the company of that ship being resolved now to return home, and, though the wounded lay in his vessel, they carried off the two surgeons and a great part of the common stores. In this distressing condition Cavendish managed to reach the uninhabited Island of St. Sebastian, where he contrived to build two boats and obtain a seasonable supply of water of which he was in great need.

Having refreshed himself and many of the wounded, despite the poor atten-



tion which they had received, recovering, Cavendish had a great desire to return to the straits, and used all his persuasive influence to induce his company to undertake the voyage, appealing to their cupidity, with assurances that they would be able to take valuable merchantmen after they had once passed the straits and reached the South Sea, while to return home in their beggarly and wretched condition must expose them to the taunts of all the English people. But all his arguments were of no avail, for not one of them would consent to



REMOVING THE SICK AND WOUNDED.

continue the enterprise, being, to a man, resolved to hasten home as speedily as possible. Being thus opposed, Cavendish had recourse to stratagem, for, as he was the only one on the ship capable of directing her course, he gave his men to understand that he would not leave the island until his crew promised obedience to his orders; and the better to enforce his commands, he seized one of those who most strenuously opposed his wishes, and with his own hands adjusting a rope about his neck was resolved to act the part of an executioner; whereat others of the crew, perceiving their commander to be in no humor to be trifled with, promised that if he would release the unfortunate man, they would accompany him in any course that he resolved to take.

#### ANOTHER MASSACRE OF CAVENDISH'S MEN.

Directly afterwards Cavendish boldly avowed his intention



island, knowing that rest and attention there would result in their restoration much sooner than if compelled to submit to the hardships which they must undergo in a voyage through the straits. The island upon which they were stopping was scarcely more than a mile from the Brazilian mainland, where there was a considerable settlement of Portuguese who had been spectators of all the proceedings of the ship's company during the building of the boat. Shortly before wood and water were got on board, an Irishman, who was a member of the crew, having taken some deep affront at Cavendish, contrived to go over to the continent upon a raft and betray his defenceless comrades to the Portuguese. This was done in the night-time, and, besides those employed on the island and the sick, there chanced to be several men ashore who frequently stole away from the ship at night to enjoy the freedom of the land, not in the least suspecting any attack from the Portuguese, who up to this time, though unfriendly, had exhibited no hostile intention. But those who chanced to be on shore were attacked about two o'clock in the morning by a large party of Portuguese, and all were indiscriminately slaughtered. A sail which had been repaired lay on shore, and this the attacking party also seized, which added greatly to the serious loss sustained by the murder of his men; and thus the unfortunate Cavendish writes:

"I was forced to depart, fortune never ceasing to lay her greatest adversities upon me. And now I am grown so weak that I am scarce able to hold the pen in my hand; wherefore I must leave you to inquire of the rest of our most unhappy proceedings. But know this, that for the strait I could by no means get my company to keep their consent to go. In truth I desired nothing more than to attempt that course, rather desiring to die in going forward than basely in returning back again; but God would not suffer me to die so happy a man." These "unhappy proceedings" to which he refers may, so far as they are known, be very briefly noticed. An attempt was made to reach the island of St. Helena, for which the company had reluctantly consented to steer only on Cavendish solemnly declaring that to England he would never go; and that if they refused to take such course as he intended, the ship and all should sink in the sea together. This, as before related, made them more tractable; but having reached twenty degrees south latitude they refused to proceed any further, choosing rather to die where they were than to starve in searching for an island which they declared could never be found again. But the arguments and influence of Cavendish were not yet entirely exhausted, and finally he prevailed upon them to proceed southward again, and in dreadful weather he beat back to twenty-eight degrees south, and then stood for St. Helena, which was unfortunately missed, owing to contrary winds and the unskilfulness of the sailing master.

#### LETTER OF THE DYING ADMIRAL.

Having found himself a considerable distance from the island he made one more effort to induce his crew, which had now grown more mutinous, to



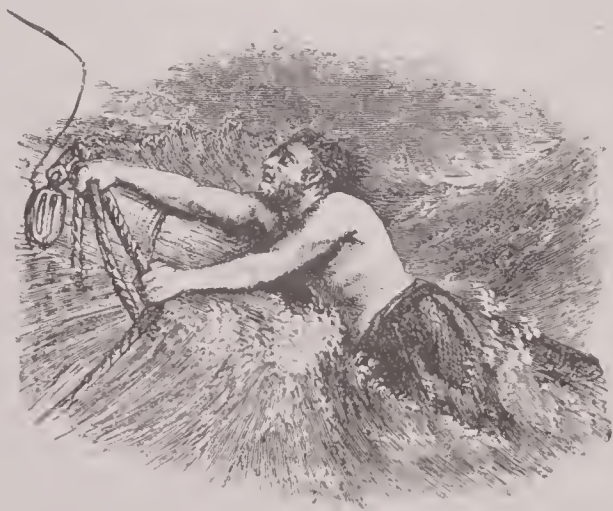
proceed in quest of the island, alarming them with the scarcity of provisions; but with one voice they answered him that they would rather perish than not make for England. The rest of the record concerning this unfortunate expedition is fragmentary, since Cavendish died, as it is believed, of a broken heart before reaching England, and no satisfactory account could ever be gathered from those who had survived the expedition. His letter, from which we have quoted, was not closed when the galleon reached eight degrees north. From its commencement—and it must have been written at many different sittings—Cavendish had considered himself a dying man. It opens with great tenderness: “Most loving friend, there is nothing in this world that makes a truer trial of friendship than at death to show mindfulness of love and friendship, which now you shall make a perfect experience of; desiring you to hold my love as dear, dying poor, as if I had been most infinitely rich. The success of this most unfortunate action, the bitter torments whereof lie so heavy upon me, as with much pain am I able to write these few lines, much less make discourse to you of all the adverse haps that have befallen me in this voyage, the least whereof is my death.” He adverts to the illness of “a most true friend, whom to name my heart bleeds,” who, like himself, became the victim of the complicated distresses of this voyage. After the crowning misfortune of missing St. Helena, he says: “And now to tell you of my greatest grief, which was the sickness of my dear kinsman, John Locke, who by this time was grown in great weakness, by reason whereof he desired rather quietness and contentedness in our course, than such continual disquietness as never ceased me. And now by this time, what with grief for him and the continual trouble I endured among such hell-hounds, my spirits were clean spent wishing myself upon any desert place in the world, there to die, rather than thus basely return home again. Which course, I swear to you, I had put in execution had I found an island which the cartes (charts) make to be in eight degrees south of the line. I swear to you I sought it with all diligence, meaning there to have ended my most unfortunate life. But God suffered not such happiness to light upon me, for I could by no means find it; so as I was forced to go towards England, and having got eight degrees by the north of the line I lost my dearest cousin. And now consider whether a heart made of flesh be able to endure so many misfortunes, all falling upon me without intermission. And I thank my God that in ending me he hath pleased to rid me of all farther troubles and mishaps.” The rest of the letter refers to his private concerns, and especially to the discharge of his debts and the arrangement of his affairs for this purpose, an act of friendship which he expected from the kindness of the gentlemen whom he addressed. It then takes an affecting farewell of life and of the friend for whom he cherished so warm an affection.

#### THE CHARACTER OF CAVENDISH.

In his two voyages Cavendish experienced the greatest extremes of fortune; his first adventure being both brilliant and successful while the last, chiefly



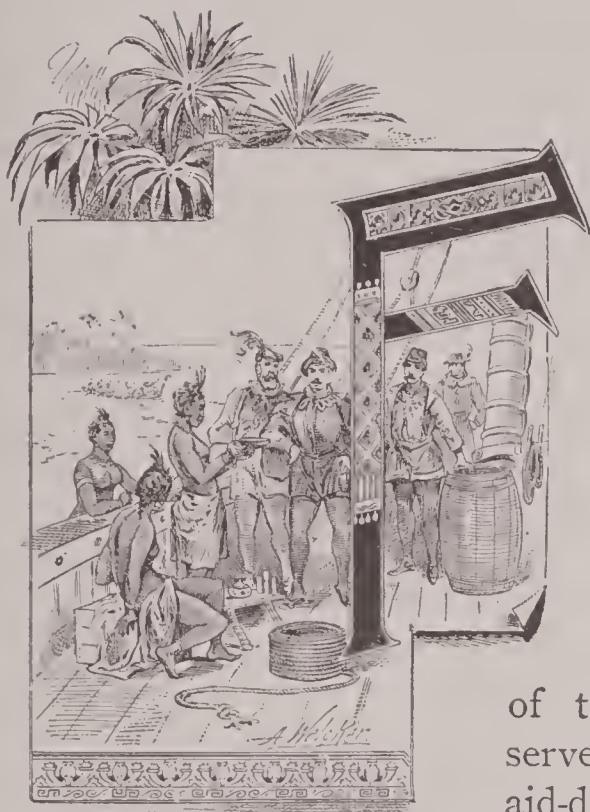
through the bad discipline and evil dispositions of his company, was disastrous and unhappy. Cavendish was still very young when he died. No naval commander ever more certainly sunk under the disease to which so many brave men have fallen victims,—a broken heart. In many things his conduct discovered the rashness and impetuosity of youth, and the want of that temper and self-command which are among the first qualities of a naval chief. The reproach of cruelty, or at least of culpable indifference to the claims of humanity, which, from transactions in both voyages, and especially in the first, must rest upon his memory, ought in justice to be shared with the age in which he lived, and the state of moral feeling among the class to which he belonged by birth. By the aristocracy “the vulgar,” “the common sort,” were still regarded as creatures of a different and inferior species; while among the seamen the destruction of Spaniards and Portuguese was regarded as a positive virtue. By all classes, negroes, Indians and foreigners, were in no more esteem than brute animals,—human life as existing in beings so abject being regarded as of no value whatever. But if Cavendish was tinged with the faults of his class, he partook largely of its virtues,—high spirit, courage, and intrepidity. Those who might be led to judge of some points of his conduct with strictness, will be disposed to lenity by the recollections of his sufferings. As an English navigator his name is imperishable. On the authority of the accurate and veracious Stowe, we may in conclusion state, that Thomas Cavendish “was of a delicate wit and personage.”





## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

### VOYAGE OF MONS. DE BOUGAINVILLE.



OREMOST among the distinguished of early French voyagers was Louis Antoine de Bougainville, born in 1729 and deceased in 1811. He was of wealthy parentage, and had such advantages, which he diligently improved, that after entering the military service as aid-de-camp to Gen. Chevert he gave his spare time to the preparation of a work on integral calculus, the highest branch of mathematics, which he published before he was scarce twenty-five years of age. He afterwards acted as secretary of the French Embassy to London, and in 1756 served in the war between Canada and France, as aid-de-camp to Montcalm. In 1761 he was in a

short campaign on the Rhine, where he displayed great bravery, and early in 1763 he entered the navy, but as his country was then at peace, he sought and obtained permission to establish a settlement on the Falkland Islands, at his own expense, but the attempt proved a disastrous failure.

The Falkland Islands, called by Bougainville Isles Malouines, having subsequently been the subject of much dispute, after an attempt originally made by the French King and then by Bougainville to settle them, it was at last in 1764 decided to accede to a demand made by Spain, who claimed them as an appendage to South America, and to surrender their possession to the Spaniards. Mons. de Bougainville, a member of the French Embassy and afterwards an attache of the court of Napoleon, was accordingly commissioned to execute the official transfer. Under the instructions of his government, he set sail for South America on the 15th of November, 1766. His fleet consisted of three vessels, named the *Boudeuse*, *Esmeralda*, and the *Liebre*. Owing to contrary winds and false reckoning, Bougainville did not arrive at the Rio de La Plata until the 30th of January, when he came to anchor in the Bay of Montevideo on the following day, where he found two Spanish ships awaiting him and on one of which he found Don Philip Ruis Puente who had been appointed provisional governor of the Falkland Islands; owing to the excessively stormy weather, it became necessary for the two to make a land journey to Buenos Ayres in order to settle with the viceroy there the terms and conditions of the cession. The country being wild, there were no roads, and the guides which they took with them served them indifferently well. During the expedition Bougainville and Puente slept



in small hovels, covered over with the skins of wild animals, while their condition was not improved by the hideous howlings of savage beasts during the night. Coming to the river St. Lucia, which was wide, deep, and extremely rapid, their only means of crossing was a long, narrow canoe, which, singularly enough, was propelled across by attaching horses to either side, which were made to swim and tow the canoe with them. The canoe not being large enough to accommodate the party, one of the attachés made the crossing on the back of a horse, but barely escaped drowning, being washed far down by the turbulency of the stream. But without serious adventure they arrived at Buenos Ayres and transacted their business with the viceroy to the satisfaction of



A THRILLING ADVENTURE ON THE ST. LUCIA.

both governments. Bougainville then returned to Montevideo, and assisted the new Spanish governor of the Falkland Islands in transferring a number of cattle to the islands; but this was not accomplished without very great difficulty, owing to the disastrous storms that drove the ships about at their mercy, almost dismantling them, and besides killing a greater number of the cattle in making the passage.

#### TROUBLE WITH THE SPANISH VICEROY.

After waiting at the Falkland Islands until June, 1767, in the expectation of a supply-ship reaching him at that point, and being disappointed in her arrival, Bougainville returned to Montevideo which had been appointed as a meet-



ing place, in case the supply-ship for any reason was not able to reach the Falkland Islands at the time fixed upon when he departed from Brest; for, in addition to his orders to perfect the cession of the islands to the Spaniards, he had additional commands from the French King to accomplish, if possible, a voyage around the world, in the expectation of attaching new lands to the French crown.

Directly after Bougainville's return to Montevideo, the supply-ship *Etoile*



BOUGAINVILLE PASSING THE STRAIT OF MAGELLAN.

arrived with provisions sufficient to last the expedition nearly two years whereupon Bougainville directly began his preparations for an early start for the South Seas. But though the viceroy had been very obliging in his demeanor, and signified his consent to a request made by Bougainville for permission to purchase a sloop, he afterwards changed his mind, and interposed a hundred obstacles to prevent the French from getting certain necessary supplies which could only be had from the Spaniards, and in every way showed his intention of detaining them as long as possible. It was, therefore, not until the middle of November that Bougainville took his departure from Montevideo and sailed to the Island of St. Elizabeth. Though the wind was fair at their departure, two days later the sea ran high, and a storm came on which lasted for more than a week, and resulted in great damage to the vessels as well as the loss of a considerable

part of their provisions, which became water-soaked. But they had the good fortune to reach the Cape of Virgins, on the Patagonian coast, without more serious mishap, and running southward, after other difficulties, they entered Magellan's Strait on the 4th of December.

#### A RECEPTION BY PATAGONIANS.

While the ship was passing through the strait, the French observed on shore a number of Patagonian horsemen, partially clothed in the skins of beasts,



who ran at their best speed in order to keep pace with the vessels. They also carried a small white flag, which had been carefully preserved for many years, having been a present to them by some Spaniards who had landed on their shores in one of the early voyages. At length, finding a suitable anchorage in Boucault's Bay, several officers from the two vessels, the *Etoile* and *Bondeuse*, first providing themselves with arms, went on shore. Scarcely had the officers landed when half a dozen of the natives made their appearance on horses, riding at full speed, and when within fifty yards of the French they dismounted and came forward, pronouncing a word of welcome. Bougainville received from these Patagonians a number of the skins of guanacos and other beasts, in exchange for trinkets on which they set a great value. Some of the Frenchmen having red clothes on, the natives advanced and exhibited their delight at the gay coloring, by affectionately stroking them. The Patagonians seemed to be familiar with fire-arms and tobacco, but when a small quantity of brandy was given each of them, they no sooner drank it than they struck their hands repeatedly against their throats and blew with their mouths in a manner to produce a kind of trembling sound, at the conclusion of which they had a singular quivering of the lips, altogether exhibiting their great alarm for the consequences. Thereafter Bougainville landed at several points on both the shores of Terra del Fuego and of Patagonia, everywhere meeting with generous hospitality from the natives, who appeared to receive the French with great veneration.

**FUEGAN CONJURERS MINISTER TO A FATALLY INJURED BOY.**

This treatment, and mutually profitable exchange, continued for nearly a month, until one day the crews of the boats landed and went to the house of some of the Terra del Fuegians, who entertained their guests with dancing and singing until their mirth was interrupted by an accident as fatal as it was unexpected. A boy of one of the Fuegians was discovered to be suddenly seized with a great pain which increased until he was thrown into violent convulsions and the spitting of blood. It was soon ascertained that the boy had been on the *Etoile*, where he had been presented by a seaman with some pieces of glass, and as it is the custom of the natives to put such things up their nostrils or into their mouths, it was immediately concluded that the child had thus disposed of the pieces of glass from the effects of which he was now suffering. It may be also added that the Fuegians have been frequently known to swallow a substance resembling glass, probably pieces of shell, as a preventative remedy against certain disorders to which they are liable. The lips, palate and gums of the boy were severely cut, and as he was bleeding freely the Indians conceived an idea that the French had treated him with some violence, which gave rise to a distrust that speedily manifested itself, for as the boy wore a linen jacket which had been given to him by a seaman, it was torn off of him by a native and thrown violently at the feet of Bougainville. Being unwilling to trust to the surgical skill of their visitors, some of the natives proposed to administer to the wants of the suffering child. This was done by laying the boy



upon his back, whereupon a conjurer knelt between his legs, and pressing the body forcibly with his hands, uttered a number of inarticulate vociferations. At repeated intervals during this ceremony the conjurer arose, and opening his hands which had been before closed, he blew in the air with the purpose of driving away some evil spirit with which he believed the boy to be afflicted. This superstitious treatment was assisted by an ancient native woman who shouted at the utmost of her voice into the ears of the child, probably supposing that by this means the evil that afflicted him might be driven away. But



INCANTATIONS TO RELIEVE AN INJURED BOY.

the condition of the boy remaining unimproved, the conjurer after a while retired, and then returned dressed in a very singular disguise;—his hair had been whitened with powdered chalk and upon his head he wore two wings taken from a bird, while his body was painted in various colors, and thus attired he repeated his incantations and blew clouds of tobacco smoke upon the sufferer, but with no better success than before. Seeing that the boy was in a dying condition, all the natives manifested their sympathy in a flood of tears, which excited like compassion in the French, seeing which the



Fuegians mitigated their distrust and at length permitted the surgeon to examine the mouth of the youth. But examination showed that the glass had evidently been swallowed and that nothing further could be done to relieve him, and the boy died at two o'clock the following morning. At his expiration the natives set up loud cries which they continued until daybreak, and then took their departure from the place which had been so peculiarly fatal to them. Nor could they be induced to return and renew their friendly relations with the French.

#### DISCOVERIES IN THE SOUTH SEAS.

On the 26th of January, 1768, and after a passage of seven weeks and three days, Bougainville emerged from the Strait of Magellan, the length of which is computed at 340 miles. Being well provisioned, and his ships in good order, he started directly upon his journey across the Pacific, in accordance with the orders of his king. His immediate quest was for what was called Davis' land, which was said to have been first seen by some Frenchmen in 1686. But Bougainville was unable to discover any islands at a point laid down in the chart which he carried; nor did he see any land until the latter part of March, when he came upon four very small islands to which he gave the name of 'The Facardins. But though he observed on the shore tempting cocoa-nut groves and a great abundance of beautiful flowers, as well as of birds, in the absence of a suitable harbor he continued on his course without landing. Two days later he came in sight of another small island, upon the shore of which he discovered a number of natives bearing long lances, who, at the sight of the vessel, disappeared in the thick woods which there abounded. Along the coast were dangerous breakers, which caused Bougainville to stand off for a day, hoping that some of the natives would put out to visit him in canoes. But being disappointed, he continued around the island, but nowhere finding a suitable anchorage, he was compelled to abandon the idea of landing. Thereafter, he found several other islands, which he named, but was unable to conduct a personal investigation, owing to the uninviting and tempestuous weather which he continually encountered. About this time his crew was attacked with scurvy, the evil effects of which, however, he successfully combatted by the issuing of a pint of lemonade and a powder specially recommended to each of the men, and in the adoption of wise sanitary measures. His supply of fresh water also ran short, which compelled him to the experiment of distilling sea water. The method he adopted is not described, but it seems to have been successful; for he used the water thus procured in boiling meat and making broth, though he relates that he was compelled to use salt water in the making of bread.

#### A PLEASANT INTERCOURSE WITH ISLANDERS.

On the 4th of April Bougainville observed another large island, at which he purposed landing, in a horse-shoe, forming a fine bay, and which promised a fine anchorage. While his ships were standing in towards the land, a boat was seen approaching, which directly after crossed ahead of the ship, and joined



a number of other canoes which had assembled as if intent on either attacking the ship or welcoming its passengers. Out of this assemblage of boats proceeded one which was rowed by twelve Indians, all of whom were naked, but it advanced toward the ship and the occupants held up branches of the banana tree, which Bougainville considering as tokens of friendship, he endeavored to express his peaceful intentions by waving a white cloth; whereupon the natives rowed alongside the *Boudeuse*, and a rope being lowered to the canoe, one of the



ENTHUSIASTIC RECEPTION OF BOUGAINVILLE BY OTAHITTANS.

islanders affixed to it a branch of the banana tree and a quantity of the fruit, and also a small pig, in return for which Bougainville threw down to the occupants of the canoe several handkerchiefs and caps, after which a friendly intercourse immediately began between the natives and their white visitors. Seeing their friends so well entertained, the other islanders, who had awaited the result of the visit of those sent on before, now rowed down upon the ship, until presently it was surrounded by more than a hundred boats laden with bananas, cocoa-nuts, and fruits of various kinds, which they eagerly exchanged with the French for such trinkets and articles as their visitors had to give. Bougainville describes the place of his anchorage as being a most delightful and safe spot, within a perfect horse-shoe, while the shores of the island rose to great heights, and were everywhere

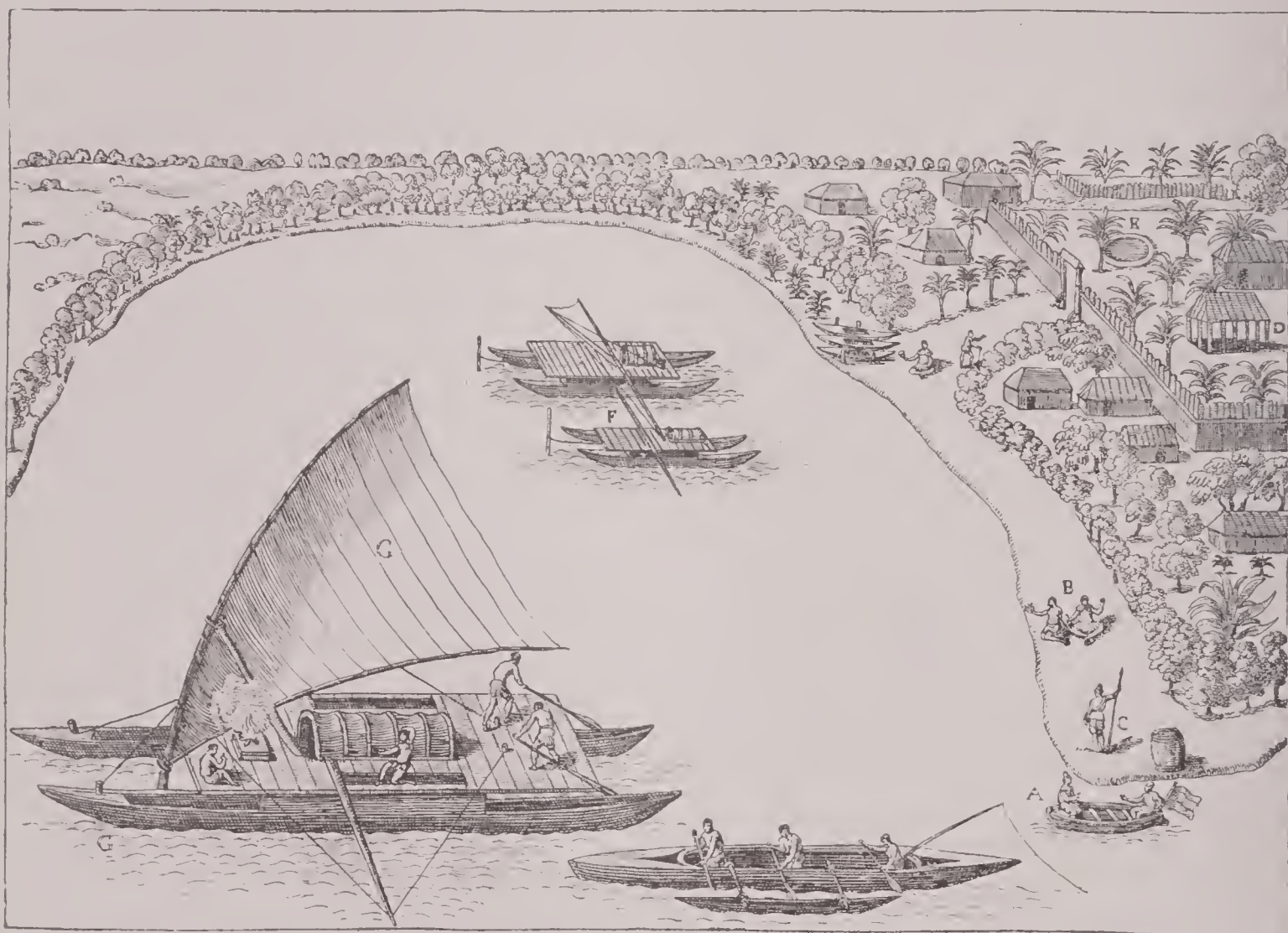
clothed with the finest verdure. The coast, which was level ground, was sheltered by mountains, and abounded with cocoa-nut and other trees, beneath the inviting shades of which were situated the houses of the inhabitants. A short distance from this harbor, he saw a silvery cascade breaking through a high cleft of a mountain, and dashing down into the sea, producing at once a remarkable and magnificent effect. On the following day, the natives came back to the ships in even greater numbers than before, bringing with



them, in addition to fruits such as they had previously bartered, fowls, pigeons, cloths of bark, shells, and other things, which they eagerly exchanged for earrings and pieces of iron.

**FEMALE BEAUTY UNADORNED.**

The historian of the voyage writes: "These parties dealt with the same ease and mutual confidence as they had done on the preceding day; and among the number of visitors were several women whose clothes barely sufficed to hide those charms which could not fail to attract the ravished eyes of the seamen. One of the Indians slept all night on board the *Etoile* and seemed not to enter-



OTAHEITE HARBOR, WHERE BOUGAINVILLE ANCHORED.—(From an old copper print.)

tain a shadow of fear. On the third day the boats put out in even greater number, and were crowded with young women whose beauty of face was at least equal to that of the ladies of Europe, and their symmetry of body was superior. Almost all of them were naked, the old men and women having taken previous care to divest them of those coverings which might otherwise have prevented their charms from taking the wished for effect."

Despite the efforts of Bougainville and the officers of the vessel, some of these beautiful island women contrived to get on board the ships, and their presence served to throw the crews into a wild disorder; and Bougainville himself makes confessions in nowise creditable to his strength of will under sore



temptation. Finding the natives so hospitably inclined, and their island so productive, Bougainville and some of his officers went on shore with the purpose of obtaining a supply of water and to familiarize themselves with the productions of the island. No sooner had they landed than the natives flocked around them in incredible numbers, regarding them with looks of inexpressible curiosity. Some of the natives, bolder than the rest, came and touched the French, and actually tore off their clothes in order to find if they were formed like themselves. But they offered them no further indignity and seemed to have been ashamed of taking so much liberty. Among the great number that had assembled, Bougainville observed one very old islander, who appeared to be a chief, in which conjecture he was not disappointed; for presently receiving an invitation, he retired with the chief to his house, and received many manifestations of a tender hospitality. The old man was a truly venerable figure, whose long white beard and hair added dignity to his person, which was exceedingly graceful and well formed. He had none of the decrepitude of age; no wrinkles were on his face, and his body was smooth and fleshy.

#### ENTERTAINED BY AN AGED CHIEF.

The house of this chief was very large, being as much as 20 feet in width and 80 in length, and was covered with a thatch, from which hung a cylinder adorned with black feathers; but the purpose of this strange figure Bougainville was not able to ascertain. There were also observed two wooden figures, which served as idols, but he was unable to determine what kind of devotions the islanders paid to them. Having gratified his curiosity in observing the house and its furnishing, Bougainville was invited by the chief to a feast, which was provided on a grass-plot in front of the residence, where was set before him a collation of broiled fish, game, and cold water, and a variety of fruits. While the French were regaling themselves, the chief caused to be produced two collars, formed of osiers, and adorned with sharks' teeth and black feathers. These collars resembled the prodigious ruffs in the reign of Francis the First, and were put upon the necks of Bougainville and the gentlemen of his party, as a testimony of the honor which the chief felt for the visit which they had paid him.

Retiring to his ship after the feast, Bougainville was visited by many other natives, and on the following day the chief himself came on board, and was treated to an entertainment in the evening, in which a band of musicians discoursed European airs to the great delight of the natives. Thereafter there was a display of fire-works, at which, however, the natives were more terrified than delighted. The name of the chief who had thus so agreeably treated Bougainville was Ereti, who never tired of paying attention to his French visitors; and every condition being so inviting for a long stay on the island, the commander decided to pitch his tents on shore there and remain for at least a period of eighteen days. At first, there was some distrust exhibited by the natives, who seemed to entertain the suspicion that the French intended to take permanent



possession of their beautiful island, but upon being assured to the contrary, they omitted no effort to administer to the comfort and pleasure of their visitors.

#### A TRAGEDY ENDS THE VISIT.

Bougainville took the necessary precautions to insure his safety in case of hostility, but those provisions proved entirely unnecessary; for very soon the trustfulness of the French was such that they went about freely, unarmed, in any part of the island which they wished to visit, and considerable expeditions were undertaken to remote parts, by which journeys the French were enabled to obtain a thorough knowledge of the productions and topographical characteristics of the islands as well as of the habits of the natives. But to the shame of the voyagers, it must be said that they availed themselves of liberties which reflect severely upon the morals of the commander; and, worse yet, these violations of decency are reported by Bougainville in such language as would bring a blush to the face of any refined reader.

Towards the latter part of their visit, the French fell into some difficulty by unfortunate misunderstandings, which resulted in the killing of four of the natives. The circumstances of the tragedy, however, were not fully ascertained by Bougainville; but he reconciled the natives, who had fled from his camp in terror, by assurances of his intention to punish the perpetrators, and by gifts of large quantities of cloths and silks to the chief. Trouble with the natives being overcome, Bougainville was congratulating himself on its fortunate termination when suddenly his peaceful prospects were disturbed by a violent storm, which caused the hawser of the *Etoile* to part, and which drove that vessel down on to the *Bondense*. For a while it appeared that both ships must certainly be destroyed. At the most critical moment, however, the wind veered, which enabled the crew to cast another anchor, and save the vessels from further drifting.





## CHAPTER XXXIX.

### AN EXCURSION AMONG ISLANDS OF THE SOUTH SEA.



THE ships having been well provisioned with 140 hogs, 800 fowls, besides a great abundance of fruit and a fresh supply of water taken on board, Bougainville prepared to take his departure from the island, which the historian of the voyage thus describes: "Soon after dawn of the morning, when the Indians observed that their visitors were making preparations for their departure, Ereti came hastily on board in the first boat that was ready. He now clasped in his arms, embraced and wept over those new-made acquaintances whom he was about to part with forever. This scene was scarcely ended, when a larger

boat, in which were the wives of the generous chief, came along-side the ship, laden with a variety of refreshments. This vessel likewise brought off the Indian who, on their first arrival, had slept on board the *Etoile*. This man was called Aotourou. Ereti presented him to Mons. Bougainville, intimating his determined resolution to sail with the strangers and entreating permission that he might do so. This request being complied with, Ereti presented him to the officers respectively, saying that he trusted a well-beloved friend to the care and protection of friends equally beloved. Ereti having accepted some presents returned to the boat in which were a number of weeping beauties, made still more charming by their tears. With him went Aotourou, to take a melancholy leave of a lovely damsel, the dear object of his regard. He took three pearls from his ears, which he delivered as a love-token to the desponding beauty, embraced her affectionately, tore himself from her arms, and left it to time and tears to restore her serenity of mind. Who that reads this narrative can suppose that an Indian has less dignity of soul than a European!

#### AMONG THE FIJIANS,

The island at which Bougainville had been so agreeably entertained proved to be Otaheite, of the Society Group, first discovered by Quiros in 1607, but which Bougainville now took possession of in the name of France and called it *La Nouvelle Cythere*, and to the group he gave the appellation *Bourbon Archipelago*. Besides a pleasant visit, Bougainville had increased his fortune by the accession of Aotourou to the expedition whose assistance proved of inestimable value, since through him as interpreter the French were able to converse with the natives of many other islands which they afterwards visited.



On the 16th of April, 1768, a memorable date in his life, Bougainville took his departure from Otaheite and proceeded on his voyage but he saw no other land until he came to one of the Fijis, at which he had a mind to stop, but could not at once find any safe harbor in which to put. He saw several houses along the shore, and presently a canoe put out towards his vessel, but could not be induced to approach closer than several hundred yards.



BOUGAINVILLE SIGHTING THE SHORES OF NAVIGATOR GROUP.

After a while, however, several other boats advanced towards the ship, some of them being rowed and others sailing. But though they came to the ship's side, all inducements which Bougainville could offer were unavailing to induce them to come on board. Nearly all their canoes were provided with outriggers, and the men showed themselves to be consummate boatmen. They exchanged pieces of a very fine shell, yams and cocoa-nuts for some pieces of red cloth, but they betrayed no desire for earrings, knives, nails, nor for iron of any kind. They were all provided with weapons, consisting of lances and clubs, and their appearance was altogether so uninviting that the French had little disposition to trust themselves among any great number of such people.

#### DISCOVERY OF THE NAVIGATOR GROUP.

The expedition accordingly continued in a westwardly course, and on the following day, another sight of land was obtained, which proved to be a beautiful island, consisting of alternate mountains and valleys, clothed with the most luxuriant verdure and shaded by lofty cocoa-nut trees. Many boats put off from this island and sailed or rowed about the ship, notwithstanding the vessel was at that time running at a speed of seven knots an hour. But, as before, the natives could not be persuaded to either come on board or attach their boats to the side of the vessel. In a few days more Bougainville touched at other islands, such as Heemskirk, Prince William, Amsterdam, and Rotterdam; and finding hereabout



so many islands, he gave to the group the name of the Archipelago of the Navigators. Everywhere he found the coast so treacherous, and the islands so numerous, that he was compelled to use the greatest precaution to prevent the destruction of his vessel. To the fears excited by the great number of reefs and breakers, which seemed to be on every side, was added the equally great distress of sickness, and especially scurvy, which attacked nearly all the crew, and so inflamed their mouths that they were scarcely able to swallow any kind of refreshment. But although the sick recovered slowly, the ships were steered with such care and good fortune that they escaped the dangers which threatened, and on the morning of the 22d, two islands were discovered, one of which received the name of Aurora, from the early hour in which it was first seen, while to the other was given the name of Whitsuntide Island. Directly afterwards, the heads of other islands made their appearance, and Bougainville presently discovered that he was again in the midst of another archipelago. At one of these he made a stop, and sent some well-armed men in boats on shore to obtain a fresh supply of water. The natives received their visitors with great amity, and assisted them in the procuring of water and of wood. In the afternoon Bougainville himself went on shore with another party, and he likewise was courteously received, and was offered a supply of fruits by the inhabitants, who, however, refused to accept anything in exchange. The natives, while offering no aggression, informed the French that they were at war with other islanders, which was their excuse for carrying so many weapons. But subsequent events indicated that the natives were suspicious of their visitors, and had treated them with amity with the hope of enticing them inland, when they would undoubtedly have fallen upon the French with savage fury; for, no sooner had Bougainville put off from shore in the boats, and the islanders discovered that their visitors had left them, than they rushed down and sent a shower of stones, arrows and lances at the retreating whites in return for which Bougainville ordered a discharge of muskets at the natives, many of whom were wounded, and the rest retreated precipitately to the woods. Bougainville gave to this land the name of Isle of Lepers, from observing that many of the inhabitants were afflicted with leprosy. He found the people of a mulatto color, although among the several whom he saw there were not a few who appeared to be of a perfect type of the negro, their hair woolly and generally black. Few women were seen, and those met with were as disagreeable in appearance as the men, and represented as being of low stature, ill-favored, and disproportionately made. But, unlike most of the other islanders, they clothed themselves, and decorated their coverings with elegant drawings in a fine dye of crimson. The noses of the men were pierced and hung with ornaments, and on the right arm of each was a bracelet apparently made of ivory, while pieces of tortoise shell were strung about their necks. Their weapons were clubs, stones, bows, and arrows, the latter being made of reeds pointed with bone, with inverted barbs which prevented the arrow being drawn from a wound without tearing the flesh.



**A WOMAN DISGUISED AS A MAN FOUND AMONG THE CREW.**

Continuing the voyage, on the 23d other lands were discovered, which grew so numerous that the ships were forced to stop and send out boats to make soundings, for reefs were plentiful on every side. Bougainville, indeed, says that the number of islands now seen was so great that they could not be counted, while the currents set in so swiftly at many places that the ships were unable to stem them, and in many cases were carried almost to the shores, and were only checked by casting anchor. Several natives were observed, but none of them could be induced to approach the vessels in their boats, and when attempt was made to land with the ships' boats, the islanders made a stout resistance, and they could only be repelled after the wounding of a great number. From these inhospitable shores and dangerous seas Bougainville at length contrived to escape, after giving to the group the name of the Archipelago of the great Cyclades. About this time a singular discovery was made on the ship *Etoile*. How it was brought about, however, the explorer neglects to mention: He states that suspicions were excited as to the sex of one of the crew of the *Etoile*, and examination readily proved that instead of a man, as her costume and manner represented, the suspect was a woman, and being now exposed, with a flood of tears she told her remarkable story in this wise: Born in Burgundy and left an orphan, the fortune which had been left her was absorbed in the fatal issue of a lawsuit; upon which she resolved to drop the habit of her sex, and for some time served as valet to a gentleman in Paris. Hearing of Bougainville's intended expedition around the world, she repaired to Rochefort, where, just before the ships embarked, she entered into the service of Mons. de Commercon, who had engaged to accompany Bougainville, with a view of increasing his botanical knowledge. She followed her master with extraordinary courage and resolution, through deep snows to the hoary tops of the mountains in the Strait of Magellan, carrying loads of herbs, plants, arms and provisions, with unwearied toil. While our voyagers were at Otaheite, the men of that island flocked around her, exclaiming: "this is a woman!" They would have treated her as such, but for the interference of an officer who rescued her from their hands. Bougainville observes that this is the first woman who ever circumnavigated the globe; and while she deserves the greatest honor for her courage, and for her chastity, which under all conditions was preserved, her name, which was Baré, continues to remain in obscurity.

**A STARVING CREW.**

Our navigators continued their voyage, meeting with a thousand obstacles from the treacherous channels through which they were forced to pass, and to their other troubles was added that of such a scarcity of provisions that they were at length reduced to the greatest extremity. The daily allowance of bread and salt meats was constantly reduced until the portions doled out were finally so small as to be insufficient to sustain life. There was yet on board a she-goat, brought from the Falkland Islands, that yielded a considerable quantity



of milk; but Bougainville was compelled to sacrifice her to the demands of the crew, and the butcher, who had hitherto been her feeder, wept as he plunged the murderous knife into the breast of his favorite. A dog which had been brought from the Strait of Magellan, also fell a sacrifice to the dire demands of hunger.

On the 18th of June, nine or ten more islands were discovered, which number was largely increased by discoveries on the 20th, when Bougainville found himself again in the perplexities of treacherous reefs, foul ships, damaged rigging, crazy masts, and tempestuous weather, which so threatened the safety of his ships, that at last, when he reached a harbor, he called the point of land which enclosed it Cape Deliverance, and the bay into which he had sailed with safety, Gulf of the Louisiade. Directly after casting his anchors, several boat-loads of natives, some carrying two to three, and others upwards of twenty men each, came out towards the ships. He observed that the men were black, but had a reddish hair, colored by some powder, while they wore white ornaments on their foreheads and neck, and were armed with lances and bows. They kept up a continual shouting, and exhibited a warlike rather than peaceful disposition. These were people of the New Hebrides, who, since their discovery, have ever been noted for their hostile disposition. Bougainville was unable to open a traffic with them, and he was compelled to leave the coast without adding anything to his meagre store of provisions.

#### ATTACKED BY CANNIBALS.

Upon his departure, a number of Indian boats put out, which contained not less than 150 of the natives, all armed with shields, lances, and bows, and after rowing hastily towards the departing French ships, they began hideous outcries and an attack with bows and lances. The French were compelled to discharge their muskets, but the natives, covering themselves with their shields, continued the fight, until a second discharge terrified them and possibly wounded several, so that they retreated, some swimming to the shore. Two of the natives' boats (composing a catamaran) were captured, on the stern of one of which was the figure of a man's head with a long beard, the eyes being mother-of-pearl, the ears tortoise shell, and the lips painted a bright red. Besides weapons and utensils, there were found in their boats cocoa-nuts, and several fruits, and the jaw of a man, half broiled, the latter clearly indicating that the natives were cannibals.

Several days later, another island was discovered and a landing was made, but few provisions could be obtained except such fruits as were yielded by cocoa-nut and cabbage-trees. Fortunately, a small number of pigeons were shot, the flesh of which served as a great relish for the men, not a few of whom were suffering from scurvy besides extreme hunger. At this place the ships were beached for necessary repairs, which, having been completed, departure was again made, and on the 22d, the shores of another island were discovered, at which a successful attempt was made to obtain some kind of



provisions. Several turtle doves were shot, and a grove of mango apples and a kind of prune tree was found from which a considerable quantity of palatable fruit was obtained. Unfortunately, Bougainville has given to the islands which he thus discovered names that no longer distinguish them, and it is now impossible to trace the exact route over which he sailed, or the lands which he visited. But it is altogether probable that the several islands which he discovered in the months of May and June, 1768, belong to the Solomon and New Hebrides groups, and New Britain, since descriptions which he gives of the natives accord with those made by other voyagers to those shores. But it is surprising how long he was compelled to put his crews upon a short allowance



CAPTURE OF A CATAMARAN.—(From an Old Copper Print.)

of provisions, since other voyagers who visited those islands seem to have met with little or no difficulty in procuring from the natives, by exchange, all the fruits and not a small quantity of flesh, that they had need of.

#### A MISUNDERSTANDING WITH THE NATIVES.

In the beginning of August, when the ships were near the Islands of New Britain, several native boats, the crews of which were negroes with woolly heads covered with a white powder, came off to the ship, and invited the French to land, but they refused every inducement to come on board the vessels. They exhibited no fear, however, of their visitors, and after the first canoes had lain alongside the ships for a while, others put out from the bank,



in one of which was a person who had the appearance of authority, carrying a red staff, knobbed at each end. As he approached the ship he held his hands over his head for a considerable time, but for what purpose the French were unable to tell, though it is probable that it was a means of signifying his desire to enter into amicable relations with his white visitors. The French obtained from these a few yams; but upon manifesting their indisposition to land, the natives took offence and showed a disposition to attack; but they were driven off by the firing of a rocket, which frightened them greatly. Several days later, however, and while rounding the point of this same island, a number of native boats came out toward the *Etoile*, and when within a few yards, savagely attacked the vessel with a volley of stones and arrows, but fortunately did no damage, and they were easily repulsed by the firing of a volley over their heads.

It was now decided to steer a south-westerly course in order to avoid the islands, which had yielded nothing to the explorers, and on the 26th of August Bougainville passed the meridian, and on the 31st sighted the shore of Ceram. As this island and those about it, such as Bonao, Kelang, and Manepo, had large settlements of the Dutch, Bougainville was at length able to obtain necessary refreshments for his crew, one-half of whom were at this time incapacitated from duty from insufficient food and the ravages of scurvy, which had reduced his men to an intolerable condition.

#### SNAKES AND CROCODILES.

At the town of Cajeli, on Ceram, Bougainville made a considerable stay, and recruited his company of sick by having them put on shore and carefully attended by slaves, which administrations served to speedily restore them to health. This time of waiting was agreeably spent by Bougainville, who was most hospitably entertained by the Dutch, who never tired of showing him the kindest attentions. The vegetable productions of the island consisted of pine-apples, citrons, lemons, bitter oranges, shaddocks, bananas, and cocoa-nuts; while animal life was represented by a great variety of birds, many of which were clothed in the most exquisitely beautiful plumage, and Bougainville also mentions "bats, and serpents of an enormous size, the latter of which are said to have a swallow capacious enough for the reception of a whole sheep. There is a snake too, which, posting itself on the trees, darts into the eye of the passenger who happens to look up, and the bite of this animal is certain death. Crocodiles of an astonishing size reside on the banks of the rivers, devouring such beasts as fall in their way; and men are only protected from their fury by carrying torches in their hands. These crocodiles, which roam for prey in the night, have been even known to seize people in their boats."

From Ceram, Bougainville sailed to the Celebes, and thence to Java, stopping, however, at several other islands on the way, but meeting with no incident of special importance, and on the 27th of September, he put into the port of Batavia. Although all his sick had recovered during his short stay at Ceram,



the bloody-flux broke out among his crew directly after their departure therefrom, so that twenty-eight of his men were in imminent peril of their lives when they arrived at Batavia. These were at once carried on shore, that they might receive better attention, and awaiting their recovery he was thus compelled to remain for a considerable while at the Java capital, where, he was royally entertained by the Dutch of that place. At length, his crew having recovered, on the 16th of October, 1768, Bougainville took his departure from Batavia and continued on the way home. But on the 8th of November he arrived at the Isle of France, and finding his ship in a leaky condition, had it beached for overhauling and he was not able to leave that place in the *Boudeuse* until the 12th of December, at which time the *Etoile* had not yet completed her repairs, and was, therefore, left behind, so that they did not meet with her again until after their return to France, in March, 1769.

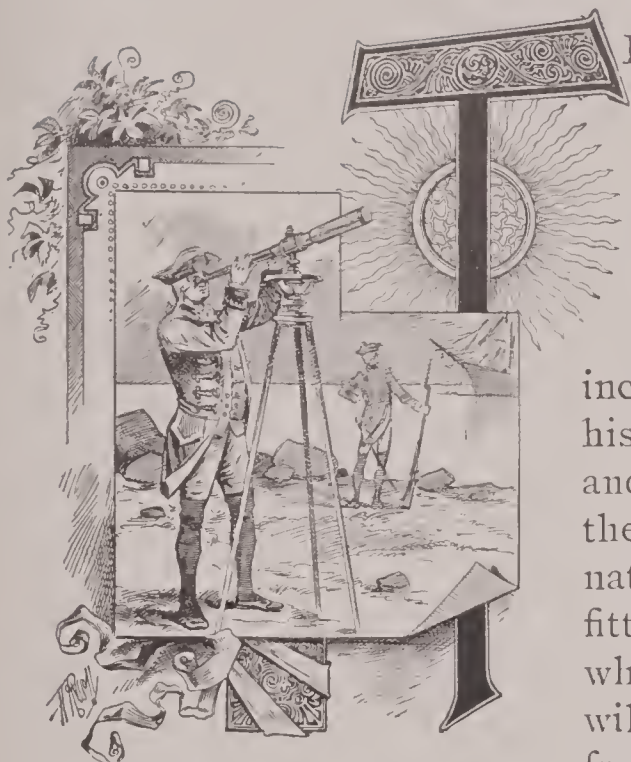
#### BOUGAINVILLE IN THE WAR FOR AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE.

On his return to his country Bougainville was received with great public demonstration in honor of his successful accomplishment of a circumnavigation of the globe, and he was offered many positions of public trust, all of which, however, he refused in order to devote his time to the preparation of a history of his voyages, which he published in two volumes three years afterwards. After the completion of this history, he planned a voyage to the North Pole, and wrote a memoir on the subject, presenting two distinct routes, which he submitted to the Royal Society of London, of which he had been elected a member. But no action was taken, and in 1778, when the French took part in the American War of Independence, Bougainville was appointed to the command of a ship of the line, and distinguished himself in all the naval engagements between France and England. In the conflict in which de Grasse was defeated by Admiral Rodney, April 12th, 1782, the ship commanded by Bougainville, named *The Augusta*, suffered most severely. But through the resoluteness of her commander she kept her place in the line to the last extremity, and when all hope of retrieving the fortune of the day was abandoned, by a strategic and decisive movement, Bougainville succeeded in rescuing eight sail of his own immediate division, which he conducted in safety to St. Eustace. He did not appear again in active command of any vessel during the American War, but returning to France, he resumed his project of a voyage to the Arctic Seas. But with all his persistency, and several papers which he prepared and read before geographical bodies on the subject, he received no encouragement, and finally left the naval service in 1790. He then remained in retirement as a private citizen until 1795, when he was elected to the French Institute, and subsequently was made a member of the Board of Longitudes, and on the organization of the Senate, he was made a member of that body by Napoleon, who also ennobled him. He continued in the public service until his death, August 31st, 1811, having lived eighty-one years, nine months and two days.



## CHAPTER XL.

### A BRIEF BIOGRAPHY OF CAPTAIN COOK.



HE most distinguished as well as most valuable voyages, because of the great geographical information acquired, were performed by Captain Cook during the latter half of the eighteenth century, under peculiarly favorable auspices, in that his several expeditions were provided with every possible advantage, including the best vessels then in service, while his assistants were selected from the most successful and learned navigators of that age. Add to this the power which England wielded as a maritime nation, and the liberal appropriations made for the fitting out of his ships, and the peerless abilities which Cook brought to the command, and you will perceive what might reasonably be expected from an enterprise thus favored and sent upon

such important commission. A brief history of this greatest of navigators of his time may be thus supplied:

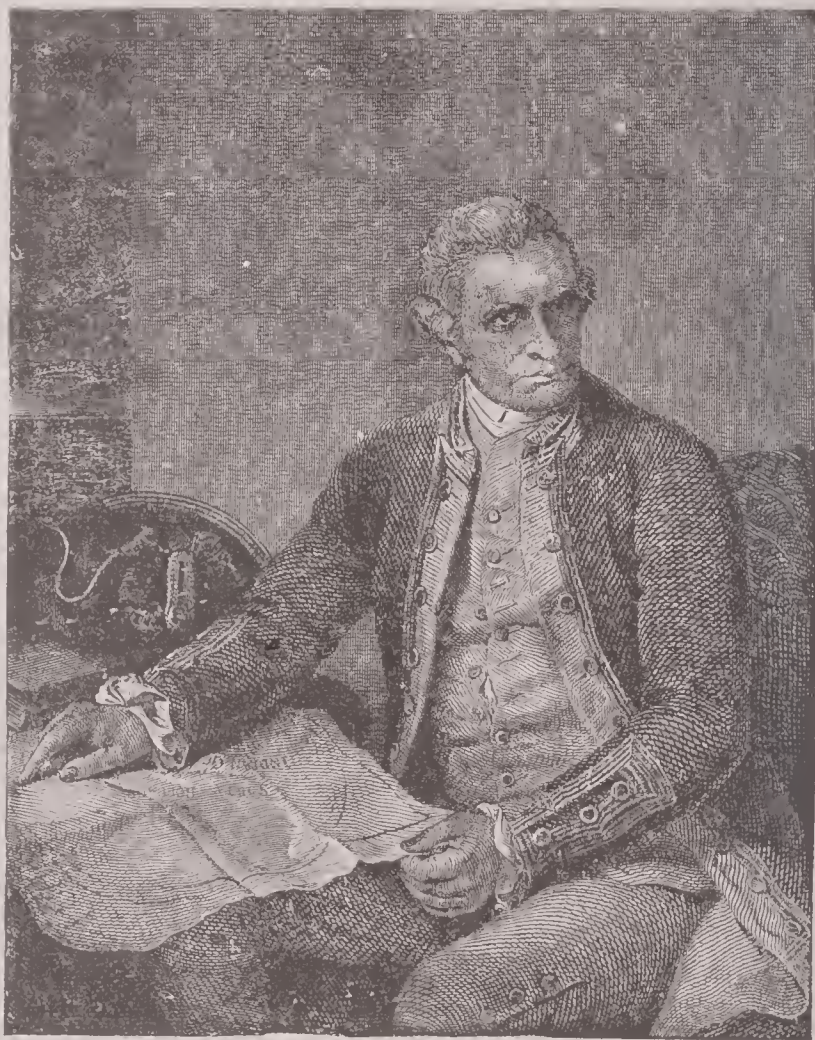
Captain Cook, the son of a common farm laborer, was born in the village of Marton, Yorkshire, England, October 27th, 1728. His death occurred at the hands of Sandwich islanders, February 14th, 1779, as will be more particularly related hereafter. His father being unable to give him any opportunities in his youth, young Cook at the age of thirteen was apprenticed to a haberdasher in the little fishing town of Whitby. He had not long remained in this employment before his father died, when at his earnest persuasions his master gave up his indentures, and young Cook engaged himself as a cabin boy in one of the small coasting vessels of Whitby, where he continued his service for quite a year before he was rewarded with promotion. But ultimately, his adaptability, ready resource and natural abilities came to be recognized, and before he was twenty-five he had risen to the position of master of a vessel, and in 1755 he shipped in the royal navy, and was directly afterwards promoted to the quarter deck for his efficiency. He served successively as master of the *Grampus* and the *Garland*, and in 1759 his master's rank was confirmed by the admiralty, and he was appointed to the command of the frigate *Mercury*, and attached to the squadron sent out to co-operate with Gen. Wolfe at Quebec. He led the attack at Montmorency, and conducted the disembarkment of the troops for the assault on the heights of Abraham.



## COOK'S ACCOUNT OF AN ECLIPSE OF THE SUN.

This really brilliant service brought him great reputation at home, which was largely increased by the publication of one of his charts which he had prepared of the channel of the St. Lawrence from Quebec to the sea. His reputation so increased that he was soon afterwards promoted to the flag-ship *Northumberland*, where, not being in active service, he had the leisure to prosecute with great diligence the study of mathematics and astronomy, in which he was to soon after win great renown. He was present at the re-capture of Newfoundland in 1762, and returning from there to England he married, and the year following was sent out to survey the coast of Newfoundland, during which service he was so fortunate as to observe an eclipse of the sun, upon which he prepared a paper of such great accuracy and value that he received from the "Philosophical Transactions" a most fulsome commendation, and his reputation as an astronomer was thereby established.

A few years afterwards, when the royal society obtained the consent of King George to fit out an expedition for the purpose of observing the transit of *Venus*, which was visible only in the Pacific Ocean, he was chosen to command the vessel, receiving a commission as lieutenant. The *Endeavor*, a ship of 370 tons, was supplied, and the expedition set sail August 23d, 1768, from Plymouth, accompanied by Mr. Green as astronomer, and Sir Joseph Banks as naturalist of the expedition. On April 13th, 1769, the *Endeavor*



CAPTAIN JAMES COOK.

reached Tahiti (Otaheite), where the astronomical observations were successfully made (June 3d), after which he set sail in search of an Antarctic continent, a belief in the existence of which was at that time agitating many bold navigators. After sailing to 60° degrees south, and discovering no land, he turned eastward, re-discovering New Zealand, and was the first to observe the narrow strait which divides the island into two parts.

Thence proceeding eastward Cook came upon the coast of Australia at Botany Bay, which he took possession of in the name of the King of Great Britain, and thereupon surveyed the coast for a distance of 1,300 miles, by which he proved by actual investigation the separation of Australia from Papua,



which were formerly believed to be one island. His voyage thus far had not been entirely without accident, though he had the good fortune to escape from shipwreck and from native hostility which threatened him at many places, after which he put into Batavia to refit his vessel, and while lying there thirty of his men died of a sickness peculiar to the coast of Java. He finally reached England June 11th, 1771, having in less than three years completely circumnavigated the globe and successfully accomplished the object of the expedition.

#### IN SEARCH OF AN ANTARTIC CONTINENT.

Upon his return to England Captain Cook prepared a report supplemental to that of Mr. Banks, in which he gave a very valuable account of the voyage, and having demonstrated that Australia was an island, his paper was the more keenly debated and a belief in the existence of a continent south of that island became more fixed in the public mind than ever. To settle this point, in which Captain Cook was also himself a firm believer, it was determined to send out another expedition. Accordingly the *Resolution*, of 462 tons, and manned by 112 seamen, commanded by Captain Cook, and the *Adventure*, of 336 tons and 81 men, commanded by Tobias Furneaux, set sail from Plymouth, July 13, 1772, with instructions "to circumnavigate the whole globe in high southern latitudes, making traverses from time to time into every part of the Pacific Ocean which had not undergone previous investigation, and to use his best endeavors to solve the much agitated question of a southern continent."

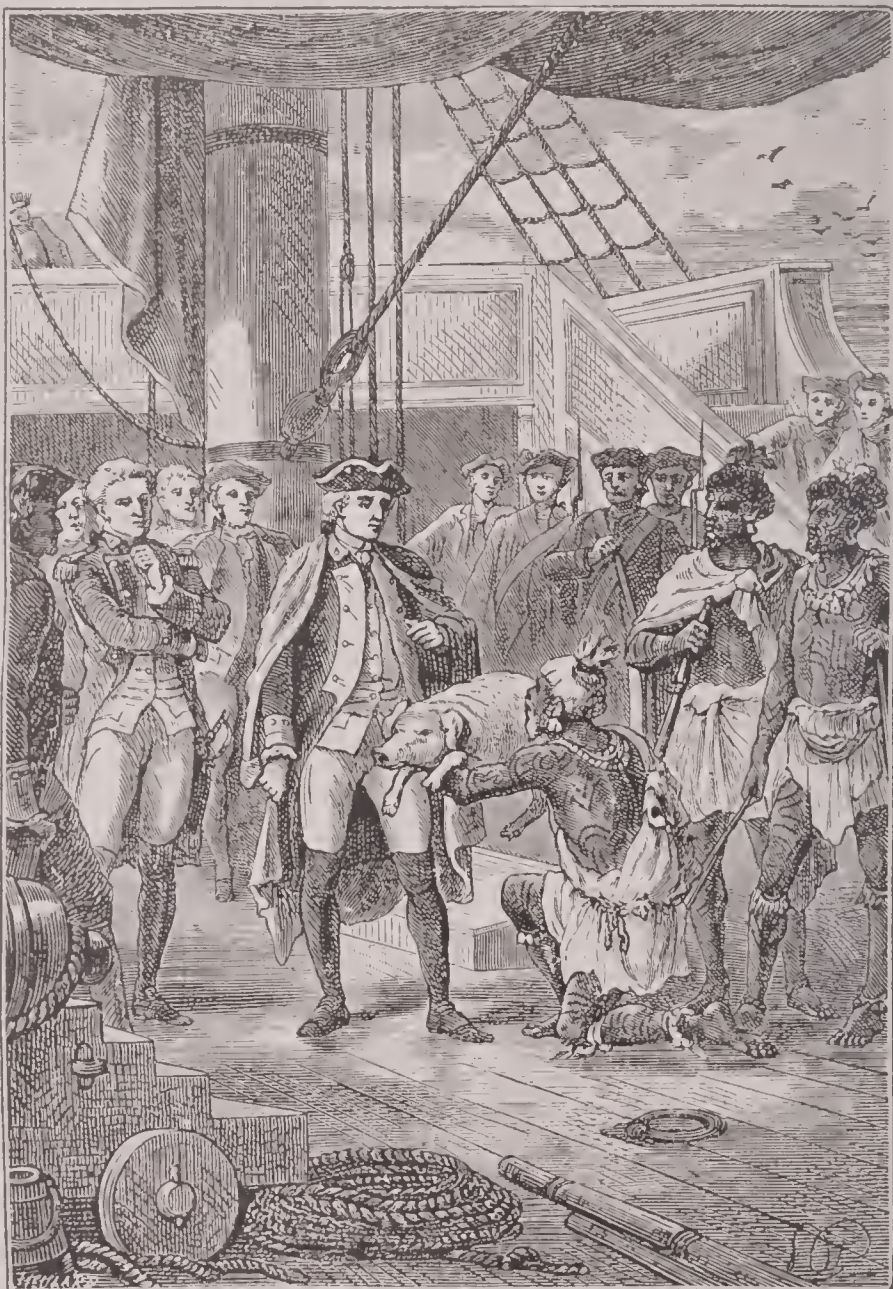
On this voyage the two vessels sailed a distance of more than ten thousand miles, reaching latitude  $71^{\circ} 10'$  south, and longitude  $106^{\circ} 54'$  west. The ships were for a time separated, but after being out of sight of land for 117 days, the *Resolution* rejoined the *Adventure* at New Zealand. Both commanders had thus conducted an independent search for the supposed continent, but each being alike disappointed, the vessels sailed for the Society Islands where they spent the winter, after which they made cruises between Easter Island and the New Hebrides, during which they discovered and named the island of New Caledonia. They finally turned eastward towards Cape Horn, and reached England by way of the Cape of Good Hope, on July 30, 1775, after an absence of three years and sixteen days, in which time the vessels had sailed over a distance of sixty thousand miles.

Though this second expedition had resulted without material benefits, the reputation of Captain Cook as a successful navigator was nevertheless considerably increased, and immediately upon his return, among other flattering honors bestowed upon him, he was made post-captain, and appointed to the command of the Greenwich hospital. Six months afterwards he was chosen a member of the Royal Society, and the Copley gold medal was bestowed upon him for a paper which he had prepared and read before that body, describing his methods of preserving the health of his men on long voyages. But though Cook had settled down to what for a time appeared permanent employment on land, which gave opportunities to pursue his studies, or until his country had occasion for his services, he was not permitted to long enjoy the quiet of his position.



## A SEARCH FOR THE NORTH-WEST PASSAGE.

Though many expeditions had been sent out in search of a north-west passage to Asia, and all alike had returned with no other results of their enterprise than stories of shipwreck, disaster, and suffering, the belief in the existence of such a passage had in nowise abated, but continued to be a question of earnest debate not only among navigators of the time, but nations as well that were anxious to extend their commerce with the east by such a route. In the opinions entertained of its existence Cook eagerly shared, and at the suggestion of many wealthy gentlemen interested in such an enterprise, Cook accepted the command of an expedition which was organized to ascertain if it were possible to make a passage around North America by way of Behring Strait. Under this commission, he sailed for a third time from Plymouth, July 12th, 1776, with two ships, the *Resolution* and *Discovery*, the latter vessel being placed under the command of an almost equally experienced navigator, named Charles Clerke. The expedition set sail direct for the South Pacific, among the islands of which it spent a considerable time, as will be hereafter related, after which Cook directed his course northward, and on his way towards Behring Sea he discovered, in January, 1778, a group to which he gave the name of Sandwich Islands. These he circumnavigated, and then proceeded eastward to the American coast, along which he sailed, unable to find any passage until he reached Behring Strait. The season was now so far advanced that further progress was impossible, by reason of a great barrier of ice which confronted him. But while lying before the icy wall which forbade him proceeding further northward, he utilized his time by making charts and locations of the islands which he had discovered, and of the American coast, and determining its distance from Asia.



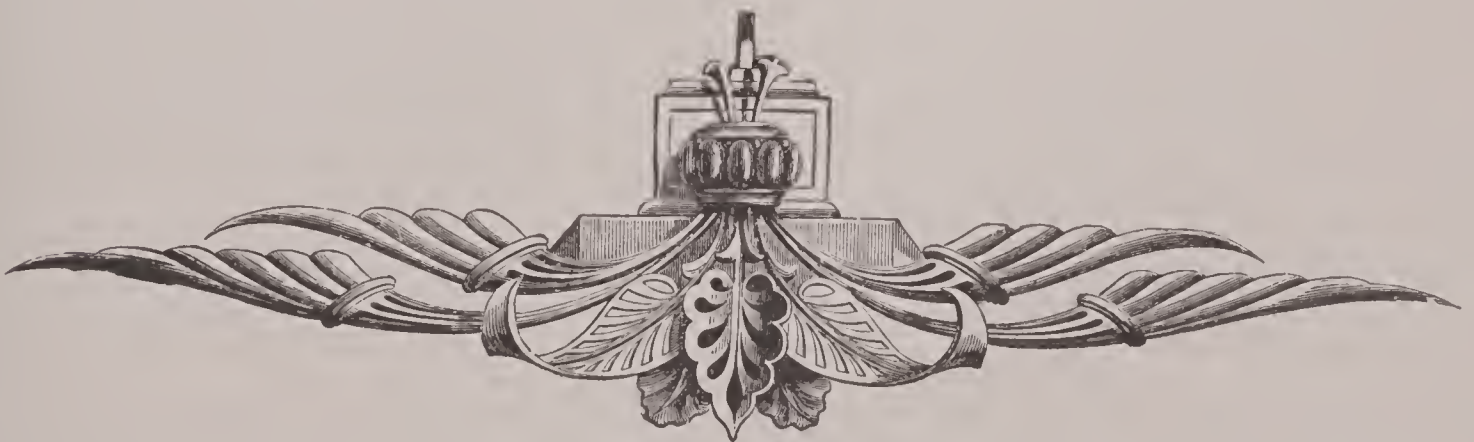
SANDWICH ISLANDERS SUPPLYING COOK WITH PROVISIONS.



## KILLING OF COOK BY SANDWICH ISLANDERS.

In the latter part of August, 1778, finding his efforts futile to pass around North America, he returned to the Sandwich islands with the intention of waiting a more favorable season, hoping that he would be able to make the passage in the following year. He cruised about Hawaii, which he calls Owyhee, and Maui, for several weeks, finding the natives generally peaceably disposed, but such consummate thieves that on February 13th 1779, he determined to seize the person of the King and hold him a prisoner until one of his boats, which the natives had stolen, was returned. To accomplish this purpose he went on shore on the 14th, accompanied by a lieutenant and nine men. But scarcely had he landed when the suspicions of the islanders were aroused, most probably by the arms which the white men carried, and a fight ensued, in which the gallant captain and several of his marines lost their lives. Their bodies did not escape mutilation, for when those who had escaped injury in the attack jumped hastily into their boat and put back to the ship, the natives seized the bodies of the slain, and after cutting them up devoured them, which was the invariable custom of the Sandwich islanders until the influence of the whites became dominant fifty years later. The bare bones of the great navigator were recovered seven days after the fatal attack and were deposited in a coffin and reverently buried in the sea.

The expedition, though deprived of its commander, had no idea as yet of abandoning the purpose for which it had sailed, but in the following year made another effort to accomplish the north-west passage; but meeting with the same obstacles as before, departed for the coast of China down which it passed and returned home by the same route as that over which the second expedition had sailed. As a recognition of his distinguished services to the nation, the English government bestowed a pension of a thousand dollars per annum upon Cook's widow, and a hundred dollars to each of his children, a gratuity which has been continued to his descendants ever since.





## CHAPTER XLI.

### THE START FOR THE SOUTH SEA.



REPARATIONS for the voyage to Otaheite, to observe the transit of Venus, were made on an elaborate scale, and Captain Cook wanted for nothing to make the object of his visit to the island a success, or the accomplishment of a circumnavigation of the globe, which was one of his ambitions. Just before sailing, and while lying in Plymouth Sound waiting for a favorable wind, the ship's company was paid two months' wages in advance and were told to expect no additional pay for their services on the voyage. On Friday, August 26th, 1768, the wind becoming fair, Cook's ship set her sails and did not throw her anchor until she came into the roads at Funchal, capital of Madeira Island, where the first accident happened

in the drowning of Mr. Wier, the master's mate. Here the scientists of the expedition, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, spent several days familiarizing themselves with the geology of the island.

With a fresh supply of provisions Cook departed from Madeira September 19th, and without adventure reached Rio de Janeiro on the 14th of October. At the time of Cook's visit to the chief city of Brazil, Portuguese occupation and government had served to civilize the country, so that the customs of the people there are not described by the great navigator, nor would such report be particularly interesting if he had; but he took occasion to make some pointed observations on the Brazilian women, whose favors were gladly granted for no other reward than the asking.

Having been detained by the freakishness and suspicion of the Viceroy, Cook did not leave Rio de Janeiro until early in December, when he set his course southward to make a passage round Cape Horn. On the 11th a large shark was hooked which was brought on board with much difficulty and from which six young sharks were taken that swam swiftly about when placed in a tub of water.

### LOST IN THE MOUNTAINS OF TERRE DEL FUEGO.

On the 11th of January, 1769, the coast of Terre del Fuego was sighted. Five days later the ship came to anchor in Magellan Strait where Cook was directly after visited by a large number of natives, among whom was a chief,



or exorcist, who went about the ship and at every surprising thing he saw he would shout with all his might; the object of this singular manifestation Cook was unable to understand, but that it was connected with some superstitious belief he had no reason to doubt. After examining the ship the several visitors returned on shore and did not come back again. While lying here the two scientists, Banks and Solander, with ten seamen went on shore to make investigations, but wandering up into the mountains they were overtaken by a

snow storm and such severe cold that though this was summer time in that region, two of the number perished before they could find their way back to the ship.

After recovering from the effects of their exposure, the two scientists visited a village of some fourteen huts occupied by some fifty persons. The cold continued very severe, but the natives appeared to be comfortable though they wore no clothing save a guanaco or seal skin thrown over the shoulders and a small flap in place of the traditional fig leaf; thus a greater part of their bodies was nude, though decorated with much paint. Their huts were made of poles and grass, constructed in the crudest manner and set in circular shape with about one-eighth of the circle left open, thus exposing the occupants to chilly blasts which might freely enter. These Terre del Fuegians, as many other



COOK'S VISIT TO THE TERRE DEL FUEGANS.

travellers have verified, are the real pignies of the human race, the men rarely exceeding five and one-half feet in height, while the women average less than five feet.

#### AN EXTRAORDINARY CUTTLE-FISH.

On the 22d of January Cook weighed anchor and continued his voyage, proceeding around Cape Horn, which he doubled in thirty-six days. After leaving sight of land the ship was surrounded by birds, of which Mr. Banks killed



sixty-two in one day, and he also discovered floating on the water a cuttle-fish of extraordinary size, believed to have been killed a short time before by the savage attacks of gulls and albatrosses. In describing this wonderful animal Mr. Banks says: "It is very different from the cuttle-fish that are found in the European seas; for its arms, instead of suckers, were furnished with a double row of very sharp talons, which resembled those of a cat and, like them, were retractible into a sheath of skin from which they might be thrust with pleasure. Of this cuttle-fish we made one of the best soups we had ever tasted." We may observe that this description in nowise accords with that given by other scientists of cuttle-fishes found in any part of the world's waters. In this instance,



AN OCTOPUS ATTACKED BY SEA-GULLS.

therefore, Drs. Banks and Solander may be credited with a discovery which has never since been, nor is likely to be verified.

On the 4th of April, the first land was discovered after leaving Terre del Fuego, which proved to be a coral island, lagoon shaped, and one of the numerous Polynesian group. No landing was made and thereafter several islands were passed from day to day, all of which were inhabited by naked people who were armed with bows and spears, some of the latter being as much as fourteen feet in length.

#### RECEPTION AT OTAHEITE.

Ten days later the Endeavor reached her destination and came to anchor in Port Royal Bay at Otaheite, or Tahiti, first called King George the Third Island.



Here Cook was immediately visited by many of the islanders, who brought young plantains and branches of the tree as tokens of peace and amity. As the stay here was to be for a considerable time, Capt. Cook drew up a code and set of rules to govern those connected with the expedition in their intercourse with the natives. The commander and the two scientists, Banks and Solander, accompanied by a party of armed men then went on shore, where they were hospitably received by some hundred of the inhabitants, who signified their welcome



RECEPTION OF COOK BY THE OTAHEITANS

of the white men by crouching so low as to appear to approach on their hands and knees. "It is remarkable" says Capt. Cook, "that the people in the canoes presented to us the same symbol of peace that is known to have been in use among the ancients and mighty nations of the northern hemisphere, the green branches of a tree. We took it with looks and gestures of kindness and satisfaction. On observing that each of them held one in his hand, we immediately gathered every one a branch and carried it in our hands in the same manner."

#### KILLING OF A NATIVE.

On April 15th a suitable location was found for the building of a fort in which six swivel guns were mounted. The work of erecting an observatory was next begun, when the natives perceiving how they might make their services valuable, lent a hearty, voluntary assistance, in which work they were encour-

aged by their Chiefs, Tubouræ Tamaide, and Tootahā; but just before beginning the erection of the observatory and defence, and in the temporary absence of Cook and the two scientists, a difficulty occurred over the theft of a musket by one of the natives, who was pursued and shot to death by the sentry. This tragic incident did not, however, incite any hostility on the part of the islanders, and three days afterwards Captain Cook, Banks and Solander discovered what disposition had been made of the body of the murdered man and, incidentally,



the customs of the natives. Concerning these funeral customs, Cook says: "I found the shed under which his body lay, close by the house in which he resided when he was alive, some others being not more than ten yards distant. It was about fifteen feet long and eleven broad, and of a proportional height. One end was wholly open, and the other end and the two sides were partly enclosed with a kind of wicker-work.

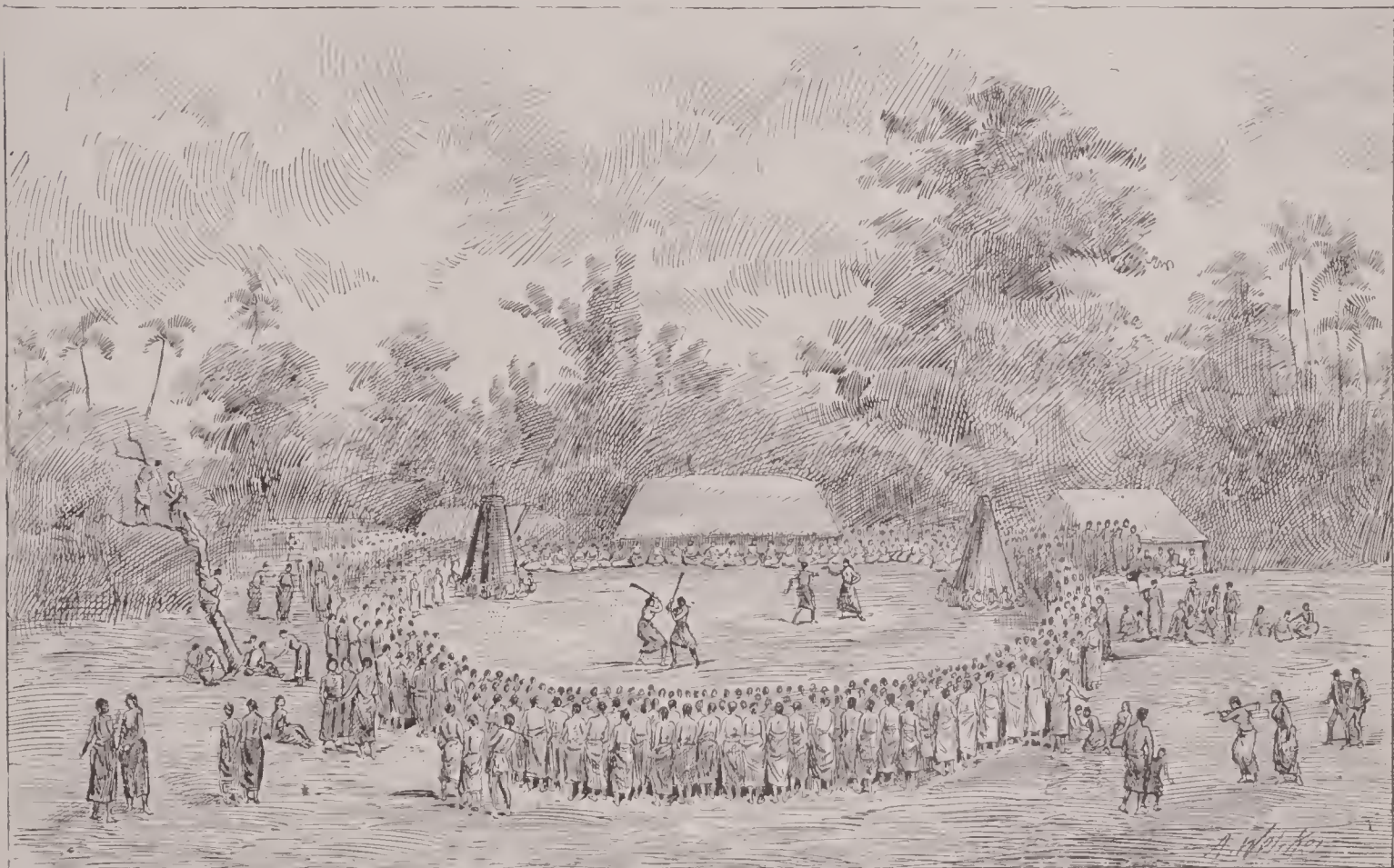
"The bier on which the corpse was deposited was a frame like that in which the sea-beds, called cots, are placed, with a matted bottom and supported by four posts at the height of about five feet from the ground. The body was covered first with a mat and then with white cloth. By the side of it lay a wooden mace, one of their weapons of war, and near the head of it, which lay next to the closed end of the shed, lay two cocoa-nut shells such as are sometimes used to carry water in. At the other end a bunch of green leaves with some dried twigs all tied together, was stuck in the ground, by which lay a stone about as big as a cocoa-nut. Near these lay one of the young plantain trees, which are used as emblems of peace, and close by it a stone axe. At the other end of the shed also hung in several strings a great number of palm nuts, and without the shed was stuck upright in the ground a stem of the plantain tree about five feet high, upon the top of which was placed a cocoa-nut shell full of fresh water. Against the side of one of the posts hung a small bag containing a few pieces of bread-fruit ready roasted, which were not all put in at the same time, for some of them were fresh and others stale. We supposed the food was placed there for the spirit of the deceased, and consequently that these Indians had some confused notion of a separate state; but upon our applying for further information to Tubouræ Tamaide, he told us the food was placed there as an offering to the gods. They do not, however, suppose that the gods eat, any more than the Jews suppose Jehovah could dwell in a house. The offering is made here upon the same principle as the temple was built at Jerusalem, as an expression of reverence and gratitude, and a solicitation of the more immediate presence of the Deity. In the front of the area was a kind of style, where the relations of the deceased stood, to pay the tribute of their sorrow, and under the awning were innumerable small pieces of cloth, on which the tears and blood of the mourners had been shed; for in their paroxysm of grief it is a universal custom to wound themselves with shark's teeth."

On May 2d, the observatory having been completed, Mr. Solander prepared to fix the astronomical quadrant in position when to his amazement he found it was missing. Without this instrument the chief object of the expedition could not be accomplished, so learning through chief Tamaide that the quadrant had been stolen by a native, Mr. Banks and Green set out to recover it; but this was by no means an easy matter for they had to pursue the thief for a distance of seven miles into the interior before they came up with him, and then were able to secure the instrument only by a threatening show of their pistols.



## AN ENTERTAINMENT PROVIDED BY THE NATIVES.

While the two went in pursuit of the thief, there was much restlessness exhibited by the Islanders about the fort, which seemed to indicate hostility, to prevent which, Tootahah was held as a hostage until the return of the instrument, when he was immediately released. Thinking it was the intention of his captors to execute him, when Tootahah was set free his gratitude was so great that he provided a novel entertainment for the whites, which was attended not only by Cook and his men, but also by the Island Queen, and five hundred of her subjects. The amusement thus provided consisted of boxing, fencing and wrestling matches between the best athletes of the district, and of singular dances which were performed by the men alone.



BOXING AND FENCING MATCHES BETWEEN OTAHEITAN ATHLETES.

After these were concluded a generous repast was served of pork, bread-fruit, cocoa-nut and other provisions.

The observation of the transit of Venus was successfully made from two points, on separate islands, but while the astronomers were making their calculations one of the ship's store rooms was broken into by some of the crew and a hundred pounds of nails, which constituted the prime article of exchange with the natives, was stolen. Only one of the culprits was afterwards discovered; for two dozen lashes failed to extort from him the names of his accomplices.

Though the published object of the voyage was accomplished, Cook and his companions were in no haste to leave a spot so arcadian and they con-



tinued on the island a considerable while to familiarize themselves with the customs of the natives, who though practiced and irrepressible thieves, were always good natured and generous.

On the 12th of June, Tamaide, the Chief, brought his bow to exhibit his dexterity in its use. Singular enough, he made no claim to skill as a marksman, but prided himself on the extraordinary flight of his arrows, which, though unfeathered, he discharged a distance of 274 yards, or nearly one-sixth of a mile. When shooting, the natives invariably knelt down and dropped the bow immediately it was discharged.

#### A BAND OF NATIVE MINSTRELS.

On the same day near the spot where the bow practice had been given Mr. Banks met a small strolling band of musicians whose instruments consisted of two flutes and three drums, the latter made of a hollow cylindrical block closed at one end and the other covered with shark's skin. Their appearance was the signal for the collection of a crowd, and when a circle of auditors was formed the players began, their selections consisting of improvised songs with occasional taps on their instruments by the drummers, accompanied by the flutists, who instead of using the mouth employed their nostrils. In this connection I may add that I myself once saw a minstrel adjust two flutes to his nostrils and play them both at one time with great skill while he smoked a cigar. On nearly all the islands of the Pacific the flute and fife players use their nostrils instead of their mouths which appear to be equally well adapted for the purpose.

There are several islands in the Society Group, of which Otaheite is the largest, and Cook improved the opportunity to visit nearly all of them. He found them generally under distinct governments, each having its own king, though nearly all acknowledged more or less authority to Oberea, who was queen of Otaheite at the time of Cook's visit.

At one of the islands thus visited Cook and his companions discovered in a long house a semi-circular board to which was hung fifteen human jaw-bones, so fresh in appearance that he was convinced that they were from victims killed not very long before, but his curiosity to know the evidently cruel circumstances of which the jaw-bones were a memorial the natives could not or would not satisfy. On the following day however he learned that three or four weeks before his arrival on the island a descent had been made on the people of that place by the natives of the south-east peninsula of Otaheite, who had massacred a number of the surprised inhabitants, burned their houses and carried away their hogs, fowls and provisions. The jaw-bones found in the long house had been taken from some of these victims, the custom of the islanders being to preserve such relics as trophies of their prowess.

#### SAILORS FALL IN LOVE WITH THE GIRLS.

On July 13th, after a delightful stay of three months, Cook ordered the anchors of the Endeavor weighed and under a favorable breeze he departed



from Otaheite, taking with him a chief named Tupia, who urged his desire to accompany the expedition to at least some of the other islands in the Pacific. The parting which followed was on both sides a sad and affecting one. Some of the sailors had fallen in love with the pretty native girls, and two deserted and fled into the mountains determined never to leave the island, having as they declared taken wives from among the fairest of the Otaheitans; but after a search of three days they were arrested and brought back on board. Queen Oberea, whose favors had been secured by the present of a doll, joined with her people in earnest lamentations for the departure of their visitors, and several of the women manifested their sorrow by mutilating their scalps with sharks' teeth, which was a common means employed by the natives to exhibit their grief and was occasionally employed to show a common sorrow.

Captain Cook furnishes the following description of the islanders of Otaheite: "As to the people, they are of the largest size of Europeans. The men are tall, strong, well limbed and finely shaped. The tallest we saw was a man on a neighboring island called Huahene, who measured six feet three inches and a half. The women of the superior rank are in general about our middle stature, but those of the inferior class are rather below it and some of them are very small. This defect in size probably proceeds from their early commerce with men, the only thing in which they differ from their superiors that could possibly affect their growth. Their complexion is that kind of clear olive, or brunette, which many people in Europe prefer to the finest white and red. In those that are exposed to the wind and sun it is considerably weakened, but in others that live under shelter, especially the superior class of women, it continues of its native hue and the skin is most delicately smooth and soft. They have no tint in their cheeks which we distinguish by the name of color. The shape of the face is comely; the cheek bones are not high, neither are the eyes hollow nor the brow prominent, and their breath is without taint."

Of their domestic customs and morals Cook gives us this surprising picture:

"In other countries, the girls and unmarried women are supposed to be wholly ignorant of what others upon some occasions may appear to know; and their conversation and conduct are consequently more restrained within narrow bounds, and kept at a more remote distance from whatever relates to a connection with the other sex, but there it is just the contrary. Among other diversions, there is a dance called *timorodee*, which is performed by young girls whenever eight or ten of them can be collected together, consisting of motions and gestures beyond imagination wanton, in which they have been brought up from their earliest childhood, accompanied by words which, if it were possible, would more explicitly convey the same ideas. In these dances they keep time with an exactness which is scarcely excelled by the best performers upon the stage of Europe; but the practice which is allowed to the virgin is prohibited to the woman from the moment that she has put the hopeful lessons in practice, and realized the symbols of the dance."



## CHAPTER XLII.

### THE FEMALE DANCERS OF EOLABOLA.



LEAVING Otaheite after a delightful visit, the voyage continued pleasant and after a few days' sail another island was discovered, followed during the next week by the finding of several others, at a few of which landings were made and intercourse with the natives established; but the customs and general appearance of the islanders were not materially different from those found at Otaheite. At one island, named Bolabola, "which is one of a group of six contiguous islands belonging to the Societies," Cook was agreeably entertained by a company of natives consisting of two women dancers and six men, three of the latter being drummers, and all of them belonging to the better class,

who refused to receive gratuities for their performances. Describing the entertainment the Commander says: "The women had upon their heads a considerable quantity of *tamou*, or plaited hair, which was brought several times around the head and adorned in many parts with the flowers of the cape jessamine, which were stuck in with much taste and made a head-dress truly elegant. Their necks, shoulders and arms were naked, so were the breasts also as low as the parting of the arm; below that they were covered with a black cloth which set close to the body. At the side of each breast, next to the arm was placed a small plume of black feathers, much in the same manner as our ladies now wear their nosegays or bouquets. Upon their hips rested a quantity of cloth plaited very full which reached up to the breast and fell down behind into long petticoats, which quite concealed their feet and which they managed with as much dexterity as our opera dancers could have done. The plaits above the waist were brown and white alternately; the petticoats below were all white. In this dress they advanced sideways in a measured step, keeping excellent time to the drums which beat briskly and loud. Soon after they began to shake their hips, giving the folds of cloth that lay upon them a very quick motion, which was in some degree continued through the whole dance, though the body was thrown into various positions, sometimes standing, sometimes sitting and sometimes resting on their knees and elbows, the fingers also being moved at the same time with a quickness scarcely to



be imagined. Much of the dexterity of the dancers, however, and the entertainment of the spectators, consisted in the wantonness of their attitudes and gestures which were, indeed, such as exceed all description."

#### FIRST CONFLICT WITH NEW ZEALANDERS.

From Bolabola the Endeavor sailed south-westwardly until October 7th the shore of New Zealand was sighted, when on the following day anchor was cast in Poverty Bay, or Turunga, and Cook despatched a small boat to the shore at a point where a river empties into the sea. A landing was made without opposition from the natives who had watched with amazement the approach of the ship and the launching of the pinnace; but, when leaving the small boat the crew advanced a few hundred yards toward the interior, they



A FEMALE DANCER OF BOLABOLA.

were suddenly confronted by four warriors armed with long lances who were resolved on attacking their white visitors; the latter, however, being apprised of the intentions of the hostile islanders, beat a hasty retreat to their boat and pushing off hastened down the stream to seek a place of security; but the natives jumped into one of their canoes and set out in pursuit, nor did two shots fired over their heads cause them to pause more than a few moments. The pursuit now growing dangerous one of the boat's crew shot the leader of the hostile party dead, at which the others beat a quick retreat, for a while trying to drag the body away with them. The man who was thus killed proved to be a distinguished chief named

Ta-Ratu, who at the head of a large party of warriors had only a short while before come over from a neighboring island and waged successful war on the native New Zealanders, whom they had dispossessed of a considerable district.

From the people with whom Cook afterwards conversed it was learned that they at first believed his ship a monstrous bird, the wings of which had struck them with greater amazement than its size; but on seeing a smaller bird (the ship's pinnace) without sails descending into the water and a number of parti-colored beings, but apparently of human shape, also descending, the bird was regarded as a house full of divinities. When their leader was killed, "the manner of his unseen death was ascribed to a thunder bolt from these new gods, and the noise made by the discharge of the muskets was rep-



resented as the *watitiri*, or thunder, which accompanies that sublime phenomenon. To revenge themselves was the dearest wish of the tribe, but how to accomplish it with divinities who could kill them at a distance without even approaching to them, was difficult to determine. Many of these natives observed that they felt themselves taken ill by only being particularly looked at by these Atuas. It was therefore agreed that as these new-comers could bewitch with a single look, the sooner their society was dispensed with the better for the general welfare."

#### ANOTHER TRAGIC INCIDENT.

After the first tragic incident connected with the landing of Cook's men on New Zealand, it was only after many signs of amity and persistent inducement that any of the natives could be persuaded to visit the ship; but at length a canoe laden with twenty islanders ventured to visit the vessel, and, meeting with no disasters, others were emboldened and soon the ship was overrun by hundreds who, unwilling to barter with the crew, began to indiscriminately seize every portable thing. Protests being of no avail, it became necessary to resort to harsher means, and Cook reluctantly ordered his men to fire on the impudent thieves, one of whom was killed and a number wounded. The others became so frightened that they jumped into the sea and swam to shore, nor did Cook give them an opportunity to renew their molestations, for he sailed away at once.

Cook coasted New Zealand, stopping from time to time and using every means to establish friendly intercourse with the natives, but though he induced several to visit his ship, yet with all the gifts he bestowed upon them and kindnesses exhibited they did not abate their savagery. On one occasion while several of the New Zealanders were on board begging for everything they saw, a party of them seized the ten-year-old son of Tupia, and before they could be arrested had escaped to their boat with the boy, intending to eat him when they got to the shore. Threats failing to make the natives return, a volley was discharged directly at the kidnappers, three of whom were killed. The boy being released in the excitement which followed he jumped overboard and swam back to the ship in safety.

#### A BLOODY SPECTACLE.

Some days afterwards, on another part of the coast, the natives appeared so friendly that Cook and several of his party were induced to go on shore, where they were hospitably received and a considerable trade, in the way of exchanging cloths, beads, nails, etc., for such provisions as fish, yams, torros, celery and for native arms, was carried on with mutual satisfaction. The day was thus profitably and agreeably spent, at the close of which the white visitors accepted an invitation to enter one of the largest huts, and what was there observed Cook thus describes: "A little before sunset the Indians retired to eat their supper and we went with them to be spectators. It consisted of fish of different kinds, among which were lobsters, and birds of a species unknown to us;



these were either roasted or baked. To roast them they fastened them upon a small stick which was stuck up in the ground inclining towards their fire, and to bake them they put them into a hole in the ground in the same manner as the people of Otaheite. Among the natives that were assembled upon this occasion, we saw a woman who after their manner was mourning for the death of her relation. She sat upon the ground near the rest who, one only excepted, seemed not at all to regard her; the tears constantly trickled down her cheeks and she repeated, in a low, but very mournful voice, words which even Tupia did not understand. At the end of every sentence she cut her arms, her face or her breast with a shell that she held in her hands, so that she was almost



AN ATTACK BY THE NATIVES.

covered with blood, and was indeed one of the most affecting spectacles that can be conceived. The cuts, however, did not appear to be as deep as they are sometimes made upon similar occasions, if we may judge by the scars upon the arms, thighs, breasts, and cheeks of many which we were told were the remains of wounds which they had inflicted upon themselves as testimonials of their affection and sorrow."

A subsequent visit on shore did not prove so safe or pleasant, for while Cook, Banks and Solander, with a well-armed body-guard, were making some investigations on the banks of a little cove at which was moored their yawl, the party found themselves suddenly beset by fully three hundred islanders, who brandished their lances and clubs in a most threatening manner. Their num-



bers were presently augmented by a hundred more, and now being emboldened to make an attack they advanced, though cautiously, all the while singing their war songs. When the army of savages had passed a line which Cook had made to indicate the proximity he would allow, the body-guard was commanded to fire their guns, which were only loaded with small shot, at the hostile natives and a few were rather severely, though not seriously wounded; at this they drew back, but seeing that no great harm had been done, the islanders quickly rallied under the encouragement of their chief, and came charging back with savage demonstrations until one of the seamen discharged his gun at him with such effect that the warrior ran off howling desperately, followed fast by his panic-stricken army, who had no disposition now to renew the attack.

#### CANNIBALISM.

At another landing where Cook, Banks, Solander, and Tupia the interpreter, went on shore, they found a family making preparations for a feast. Some coals of fire were noticed in a hole in the ground on which the dressed body of a dog was roasting and almost ready for eating; but what was more curious (for, indeed, dog flesh is commonly eaten by all the Pacific islanders), was the sight of two baskets, made of rushes, in which were discovered human bones that had been freshly picked. Inquiry being made, the islanders freely admitted the practice of eating all the bodies of their enemies killed in war. They also explained that in a conflict which had occurred near the place of their present feasting seven of their enemies had been killed, who had since been eaten, and of which the bones now before them were a part of the remains. The following day four heads of the seven thus slain were presented to Mr. Banks by the natives, and afterwards many human bones were brought out to the ship and offered in exchange by the islanders for such articles as delighted their fancy.

Having completed the coasting of a large part of New Zealand, and explored the strait which separates the two islands, and to which he gave his own name, on March 31st, Cook took his departure and continued his voyage westwardly. New Zealand was first discovered by Tasman, in December, 1642, but it had not been visited by any other white person to the time of Cook's coming, as just described. Tasman, too, went little on shore, though he coasted the island on the east for a distance of five hundred and fifty miles and entered the strait; but he obtained so little knowledge of the country that he believed it a great southern continent.

Proceeding over the same course pursued by Tasman, more than one hundred years before, Cook sighted the Australian banks on April the 19th, but instead of landing at once coasted the shore for a distance of one hundred miles and at length, finding a suitable harbor, put into Botany Bay, where the great commercial port of Sydney is now situated. The ship came to anchor before a small village and a yawl was launched in which Cook, Banks and Solander



started for the shore; several natives were observed on the beach, but they quickly vanished, save two, who savagely opposed any landing being made at the village, nor did offerings of nails, beads, or ribbons serve to placate their hostility. Upon a closer approach to the shore the two threw spears at Cook's party, but happily without effect, but at length necessity required that they be put to rout by a discharge of small shot. Tupia, who had held easy intercourse with the New Zealanders, the similarity of their languages being surprisingly



AUSTRALIAN BOOMERANG DANCERS.

great, was unable to understand a word uttered by the Australians, hence communication could be only made by signs.

#### AUSTRALIAN BOOMERANG THROWERS.

A few days after landing many natives were seen, but they could not be induced to approach near enough for Cook to give them assurance of his peaceful intentions. He observed, however, that they were armed with formidable lances some ten feet in length and cruelly barbed with fish bones. Besides these weapons, they carried a much more dangerous one known as a *boomerang*, which the natives used chiefly in hunting, but it was equally effective when turned against their enemies. This weapon is a short covered piece of heavy



wood, and, singular to relate, is thrown in the opposite direction from the object aimed at. It does not descend at once to the ground, but after proceeding a short distance forward it rises in rapid whirls and then darts backwards over the head of the thrower, and strikes at great distances behind him; but so remarkable is the Australian's skill that the weapon goes as surely to the mark as does the bullet of an expert rifleman. But while better armed, the Australians had boats very inferior to those used by the New Zealanders, which proved them to be less aquatic in their habits; indeed, the New Zealanders were as essentially fishermen as the Australians were hunters.

Unable to come in contact with the natives, on account of their distrust and shyness, Cook did not remain long in Botany Bay, but weighing anchor he set to coasting the country on the east side. At several inviting harbors he put in, however, and was able to obtain the greatest abundance of provisions by the exertions of his company. At one place they found quail in extraordinary numbers, and so tame that it was easy to kill them with stones. Fish also abounded in great numbers, so that a single haul of the net would frequently result in the catch of three hundred pounds' weight. Bustards, a species of gallinaceous birds about the size of a turkey, and peculiar to Australia, were shot, and afforded members of the expedition the most palatable food that they had eaten since leaving England. In all the shallows, and especially the inlets, oysters and crabs were extremely plentiful, many of the former being pearl bearing, and at one landing the crew found great numbers of sting rays, some of which they killed that weighed above four hundred pounds.

#### AN ACCIDENT TO THE SHIP.

On the 14th of June, while standing off shore a distance of twenty-five miles, the *Endeavor* suddenly struck a rock with such great force that she was carried over and left resting in a basin between the rock which she had cleared and another that, lifting its head higher, held her fast. Examination revealed the alarming fact that the vessel was making water rapidly, and being unable at once to release her, it seemed that certain destruction awaited every one on board. Twenty hours of incessant labor at the pumps, and working at the steam anchor, failed to release the ship, which continued to beat upon the rock until it appeared that the floating of her off from her present support must be followed by her sinking. But when the crew had fairly exhausted themselves she was finally released, and a novel expedient was adopted to prevent her sinking, which she must have done after a delay of two or three hours. A sail was quickly brought into service, to which was lightly sewed a cushion of oakum smeared with offal, and with this preparation it was swung under the ship until it passed over the rent in her bottom. The inrush of water held it in place, and this pressure made the padded sail an excellent substitute for a bulkhead. The leak was now so materially checked that it could be kept under control by the pumps, and the ship, after beating about for three days, finally found a suitable harbor at the mouth of Endeavor river, where she put in for repairs.



In this vicinity Captain Cook remained for a considerable time, finding thereabout abundant supplies in the form of wild cabbages, fish, turtles and game. It was in this place that Mr. Banks discovered the kangaroo and Australian dog, or dingo, which were previously unknown to the naturalists of the civilized world. A few of the former were killed and considered a great delicacy.

It was not until after weeks of patient effort that our voyagers were able



ASTOUNDED BY THE SIGHT OF KANGAROOS.

to have any communications with the Australians, who could not be induced to approach nearer than one hundred yards, until by accident Cook threw a fish toward a party of eight natives. This act seemed to secure their confidence in the peaceful intentions of their white visitors, and soon after another party was induced to come on board the ship. All the natives of both sexes were entirely nude, and the only body decoration noticed was a few streaks of paint on the breast and a piece of bone run through the septum of the nose. They placed no value on the many gaudy presents which were given them, but so greatly desired some of the turtles which Cook's men had caught that, their requests being refused, they attempted to take two of the turtles by force. The effort being in vain they exhibited great anger, and on gaining the shore set fire to the grass, which speedily threatened destruction

to the tents and stores not yet moved back to the ship. So intent were the natives on doing serious injury to the expedition, that at last it became necessary to fire a charge of small shot among them which wounded one and brought the others to a full appreciation of the white men's power. A reconciliation was effected afterwards however, and Cook and his men were entertained on the following day by a party of lance throwers, who were so skilful that they could discharge their weapons with extraordinary accuracy a distance of fifty yards, though the lance never flew more than a distance of four feet above the ground.



## A SURPRISING THING SEEN ON THE NEW GUINEA COAST.

On August 23d, 1870, Cook left Booby Island, off the coast of Australia, and sailing in a north-west direction, on September 3d a landing was made on the southern coast of New Guinea. Upon going on shore Cook and his companions were attacked by three of the natives, who on being dispersed by a musket volley, soon returned with about sixty others who threw darts, and from little canes which they carried issued a smoke exactly like the discharge of a gun, but giving forth no noise. Concerning this singular attack and more wonderful weapons used, Cook says: "All this time they were shouting defiance and letting off their fires by four or five at a time. What these fires were, or for what purpose intended, we could not imagine; those who discharged them had in their hands a short piece of stick, possibly a hollow cane, which they swung sideways from them and we immediately saw fire and smoke exactly resembling that produced by a musket discharge and of no longer duration. This wonderful phenomenon was observed from the ship and the deception was so great that the people on board thought they had firearms, and in the boat, if we had not been so near as that we must have heard the report, we should have thought they had been firing volleys." This inhospitable reception which proved to Cook the great danger attendant upon an attempt to continue on, or penetrate the island, induced him to directly abandon the coast and proceed westward to Batavia. On the way the vessel came upon the Island of Java, a Dutch possession, where after many difficulties a landing was made and a supply of fresh meat, consisting of buffalo, sheep and hogs, was obtained.

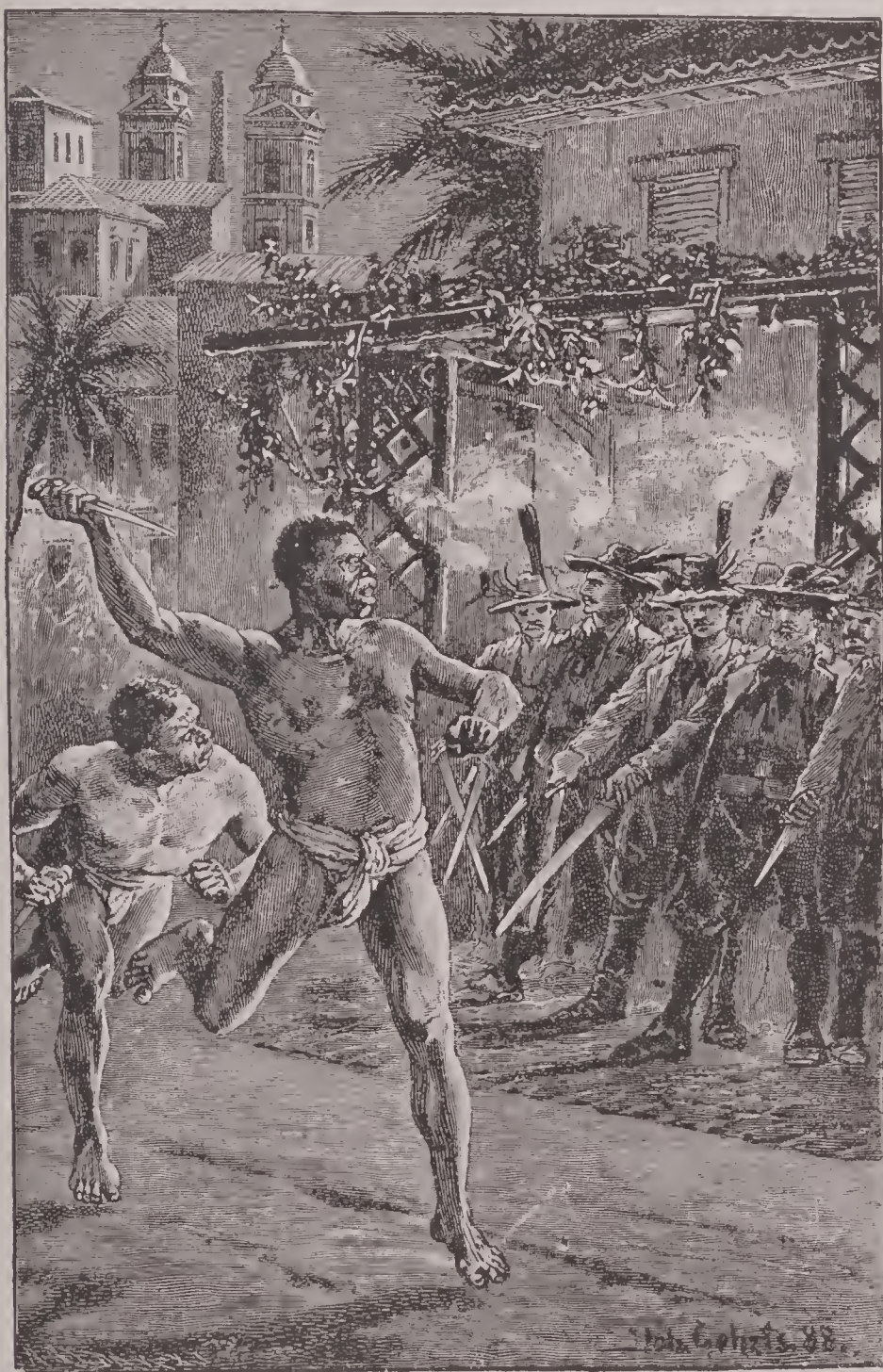


MINISTERING TO THE SICK SCIENTIST.



## SICKNESS AND DEATH AT BATAVIA.

Continuing the voyage Cook put into Batavia on October 3d, to repair his ship which was in a sorry condition, and making water rapidly. A great delay was encountered in getting the necessary permission from the Dutch Governor-General, so that it was the beginning of November before the ships were beached. In the meantime, the ships' officers and crews took up their



RUNNING AMUCK.

quarters on shore, where, owing to bad sewerage and malaria, nearly all of them fell violently ill. Mr. Monkhouse, the surgeon, died, and little Taytete, son of Tupia, the Otaheite chief, quickly followed. Banks and Solander were at death's door, and as a last effort to save their lives, they were moved into the country under the care of some slave women. By good nursing they recovered, but Tupia, who had been long unwell, fell a victim to the same illness that had carried away his son and others of the expedition.

The necessarily protracted stay in Batavia afforded Banks and Solander, after their recovery, opportunity to acquaint themselves with the customs, superstitions and character of the native Javanese, of which Cook gives very full report. Among the many singular beliefs peculiar to these people is that the women not infrequently give birth to a child and a crocodile simultaneously,

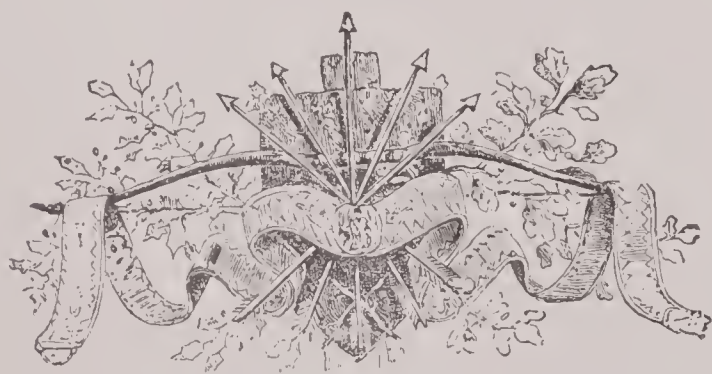
so that a large portion of the natives believe that they have a brother or sister crocodile. From this unaccountable superstition arises the custom of making offerings to these repulsive reptiles, which from occasional practice finally grew into a sacred observance. Another equally remarkable vagary, and one very much more serious, is called running-a-muck, which may be described as a Javanese making him-



self intoxicated on opium and while in this condition seizing a dangerous weapon and running through the streets striking right and left at every one who chanced to be in his way. Hundreds of people are killed every year by these wretches, who in turn are either slain outright, or, if taken by the officers with long spears, made for the purpose, they are broken upon the wheel. And if an amuck is wounded and a physician gives an opinion that his injuries are likely to prove fatal, he is immediately put to the torture. To crown the absurdities characteristic of these people, the largest tax paid by them is literally a poll-tax; because it is exacted of the people for wearing their hair long. Those who are unable to bear this burden must shave the head.

On the 27th Captain Cook set sail from Batavia for England, but while the crew had greatly improved during their stay in the country, their departure was quickly followed by a return of the maladies which first afflicted them on landing on the shore of Java. Day after day those stricken grew rapidly worse, until before reaching Good Hope no less than nine seamen and thirteen officers and scientists of the expedition were buried at sea, besides several who had died before and were buried at Batavia.

On June 12th, 1771, Captain Cook and his men had the unspeakable joy of seeing the shores of their beloved England, after an absence of nearly three years.





## CHAPTER XLIII.

### THE OBJECT OF COOK'S SECOND VOYAGE.



RELIEF in the existence of a southern continent ("hemisphere," Cook calls it), which formed the subject of so much dispute, and which Cook on his first voyage hoped to determine, was so persistently discussed during his absence that the return of the great navigator served only to intensify public interest. Trade with the New World had proved immensely profitable, and the spirit of discovery possessed nearly every one who had been to sea, as well as greedy sovereigns anxious to increase their possessions. Learned men and maritime powers united their influences to increase popular belief in the existence of a southern continent, possibly as rich as America, lying somewhere south of eighty de-

grees; and to determine the question his Majesty, George II., ordered the Admiralty to provide two of the best ships obtainable, and to have them fitted as quickly as possible for a long voyage in quest of the problematic continent. Under this order the *Resolution*, of four hundred and sixty-two tons, and the *Adventure*, of three hundred and thirty-six tons, were purchased, and after the most ample equipments, including four watches, the first ever used on a sea voyage, and sufficient provisions to last the crews two and a half years, were put into commission. Capt. James Cook was appointed to the command of the expedition and of the ship *Resolution*, and Tobias Furneaux was appointed captain of the *Adventure*. The crew of the former comprised a hundred and twelve men, and the latter eighty-one, all expert seamen, a great part of whom had been on earlier voyages in the South Sea. In addition to the crews, there were several scientists and specialists who accompanied the expedition by invitation, among these being William Rogers, a landscape painter and probably a sketch artist, John Reinhold Foster and his son, naturalists, William Baily and William Wales, astronomers, and a historiographer.

#### IN A REGION OF INTENSE COLD.

The most complete provisions having been made the expedition set sail from Deptford April 7th, 1772; but it was not until July 13th that the shores



of England faded from the voyagers' view. On the 29th of October Cape of Good Hope was reached, where a stop was made until the 22d following, when anchors were weighed, and the voyage in quest of a new world was properly begun. Directly after leaving the Cape a dreadful storm broke over the vessel, which caused them to lie to for two days, during which time they suffered considerably, and after proceeding southward for a while they were suddenly overtaken by such severe cold that a greater part of the live-stock on board, consisting of hogs, sheep and geese, perished. The loss of their provisions of



ANGLING FOR ALBATROSSES.

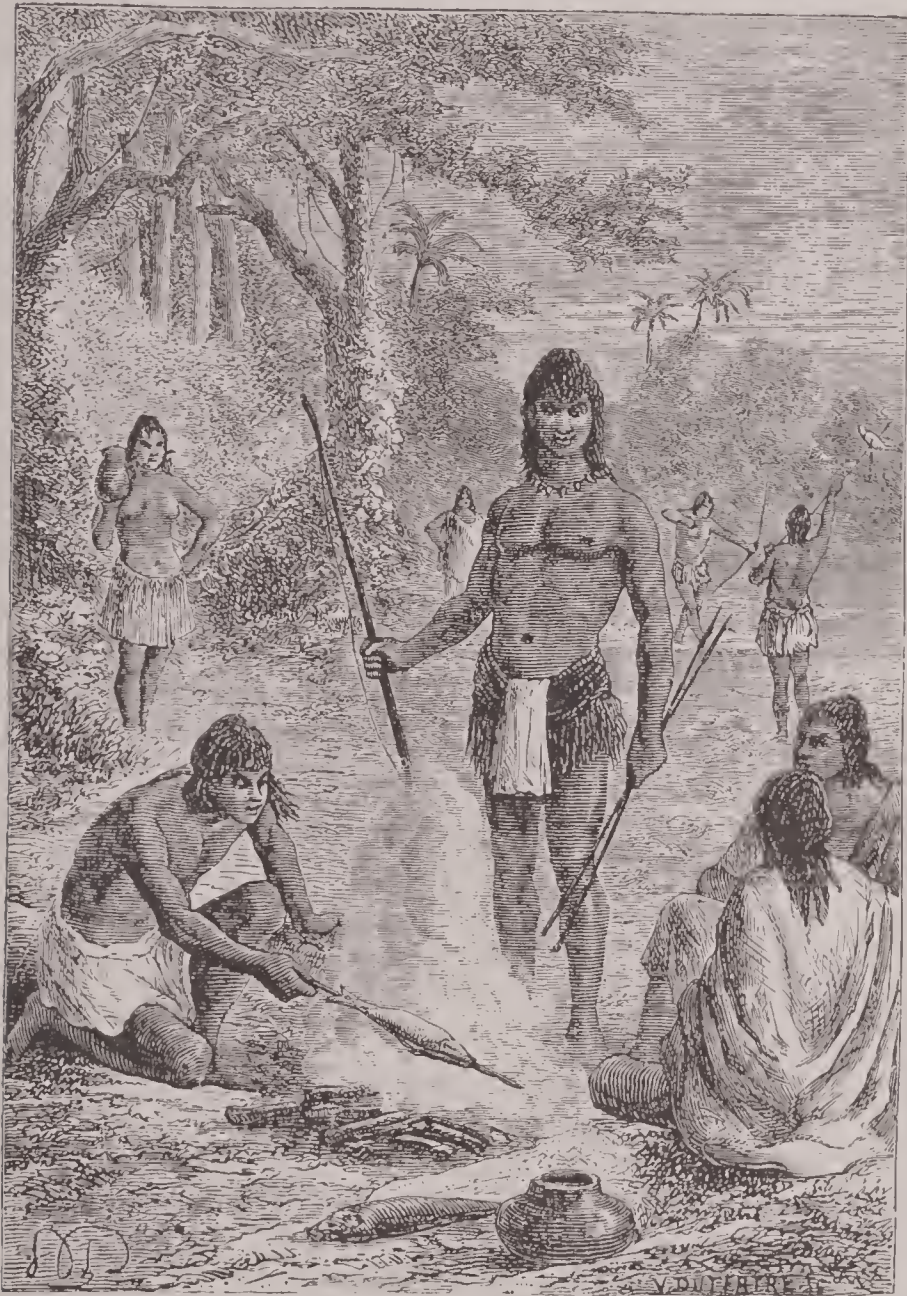
fresh meat was made good, however, by the capture of a large number of albatrosses that followed the ship. Indeed, angling for these great sea birds afforded such delightful sport that all miseries, present and prospective, were ignored; for it is reckoned more exciting than the capture of any fishes of the deep.

#### A SEPARATION OF THE SHIPS.

By the middle of December the expedition had reached 50° S. latitude and Capt. Cook beheld a vast body of ice which in places rose to mountain height, and led the officers of both vessels to believe that they saw the rugged shores



of a new continent, but upon a closer approach the delusion was dispelled by a realization that instead of a shore of safety, they were sailing among icebergs which might embrace the ships to their destruction. By good fortune and a brisk wind, the two vessels made their escape and beat about in search of land, which was thought to be near, until February 9th 1773 when a heavy gale came on which resulted in a separation of the vessels. Cook being unable, after long effort, to obtain sight of his consort continued on westward, seeing



SCENE ON VAN DIEMAN'S LAND.

weapons more effective than spears, and their huts, which were never larger than would accommodate more than three or four persons, were flimsily constructed and scarcely more protective than those of the Feugans.

#### AN EVIDENCE OF CANNIBALISM

While Cook was lying in Dusky Bay he utilized his time by making friends with the natives and killing ducks and geese, immense quantities of which swarmed in the inlets and coves thereabouts. The natives were friendly

many ice islands and various species of water birds, but discovering no land until March 25th when the coast of New Zealand was sighted and he put into Dusky Bay. In this neighborhood Capt. Cook remained for a period of fourteen weeks, and until the Adventure hove in sight just as he was preparing to take his departure for Van Dieman's land. A greater part of this interval had been spent by Capt. Furneaux in making an exploration of Van Dieman's land, for which he steered directly after the separation of the ships. His examination of that land led to the discovery that it was an island, instead of forming a part of Australia as had been previously supposed. The inhabitants were found to be of the lowest kind, who appeared to live off of grass-roots, fish and such small game as they were able to kill with their indifferent wooden weapons. They had no canoes, nor



and he saw only one instance of cannibalism, or rather a sign that the New Zealanders had not fully abandoned that horrible practice. Among the many canoes that visited the ship, the crew of one had with them the head of a man who had been recently killed, which they carried in a bag and tried hard to keep concealed from view, knowing with what repugnance their white visitors regarded cannibalism. When Cook tried to secure the head the natives leaped back into their canoes and paddled with all possible speed for the shore, as if afraid he would punish them for their atrocious practices.

It was here that Cook witnessed a grand spectacle, which he describes at great length and with much particularity. The sight was that of no less than



A NATIVE LAD ASSAULTED BY A GOAT.

six gigantic water-spouts, one of which was scarcely sixty yards from the ship. He says the sea showed no agitation except around about the water-spouts, which apparently rose up out of the ocean instead of being sucked up by a whirling, dipping cloud, as is usually the case. There was a dead calm too, and no unusual influences were observed to attend the phenomenon.

#### THE BILLY GOAT ATTACKS A NATIVE BOY.

The Adventure and Resolution having re-united after a long separation, the event was happily celebrated, after which the two sailed for Queen Charlotte's Sound, New Zealand, where they both came to anchor and were visited by several canoes filled with natives. Among these visitors was an old chief, ac-



accompanied by his son, some fifteen years of age, who besought Capt. Cook to give the lad a white shirt. The request was complied with and for an hour or more the ships' crew was amused by the extraordinary pride and pompousness exhibited by the boy, who paraded the deck with an air of pomposity which



PROCESSION OF FLUTE-PLAYERS.

Beau Brummel himself never exceeded. It unfortunately happened that while strutting up and down before his delighted audience, the boy came within reach of a large billy goat, which was tied on deck and which taking the strutting attitude of the black boy as a defiance, launched forward with irresistible impulse, catching the lad fairly on the soft pad about the hips, and landing him upon a large coil of rope amid thunderous applause of the startled spectators. This inglorious termination of the boy's ostentatious display

might have been more conclusive had the goat been given freedom to repeat the attack, but the shirt was spoiled, and to assuage the young man's grief Cook kindly supplied him with another, whereupon the proud lad made a quick retreat to the shore.



Having given directions to Capt. Furneaux, of the *Adventure*, where to rendezvous, in case of another separation of the ships, Capt. Cook left New Zealand on the 7th of June and sailed south-westwardly, to renew his quest for a southern continent. After a month of fruitless search and attaining 70° deg. S. latitude, he turned northward and on August 15th arrived again at Otaheite.

Upon reaching the place where he had remained some months in 1869, Cook was joyously welcomed and a reception was tendered him by the King at which some dances were performed and what appeared to be a drama enacted for his amusement, in which a procession of feather-bedecked flute players took a prominent part. Several of the Otaheitans enquired about Tupia, but expressed little feeling when told he had died a natural death at Batavia. After a short stay at Otaheite Cook departed on a visit for other islands of the Society Group, taking with him a native named Poreo, who was eager to accompany him as an interpreter, and whose services were found to be most valuable. Capt. Furneaux also took with him a young native, named Omai, who remained with him until his return to England and was there given the opportunity to acquire the arts of civilization, but at the expiration of two years he was glad to return to Otaheite with Cook on his third voyage, as will be hereafter described.

On September 14th Cook and the other officers of both ships dined with the Chief, by whom they were feasted in the most agreeable manner. In the absence of tables the ground was thickly covered with green leaves, around which the diners assembled, and immediately after two steaming roast pigs were thrown into the centre of the party, all of whom being prepared with knives fell to without ceremony to cutting portions from the pigs, which were of about sixty pounds weight each. Besides this meat, the leaf-covered floor was garnished with hot bread-fruit and plantains, and the milk of cocoa-nuts provided a delicious drink. After dining heartily the ships' officers retired, whereupon a wild scramble was begun by the natives, who had been onlookers at the feast, for such bits as had fallen among the leaves. This fact led Capt. Cook to believe that though pigs were fairly plentiful on the island the common people were by no means accustomed to eating them. Indeed they gladly assisted in the butchering of pigs, and thought their labors well rewarded by a gift of the entrails.

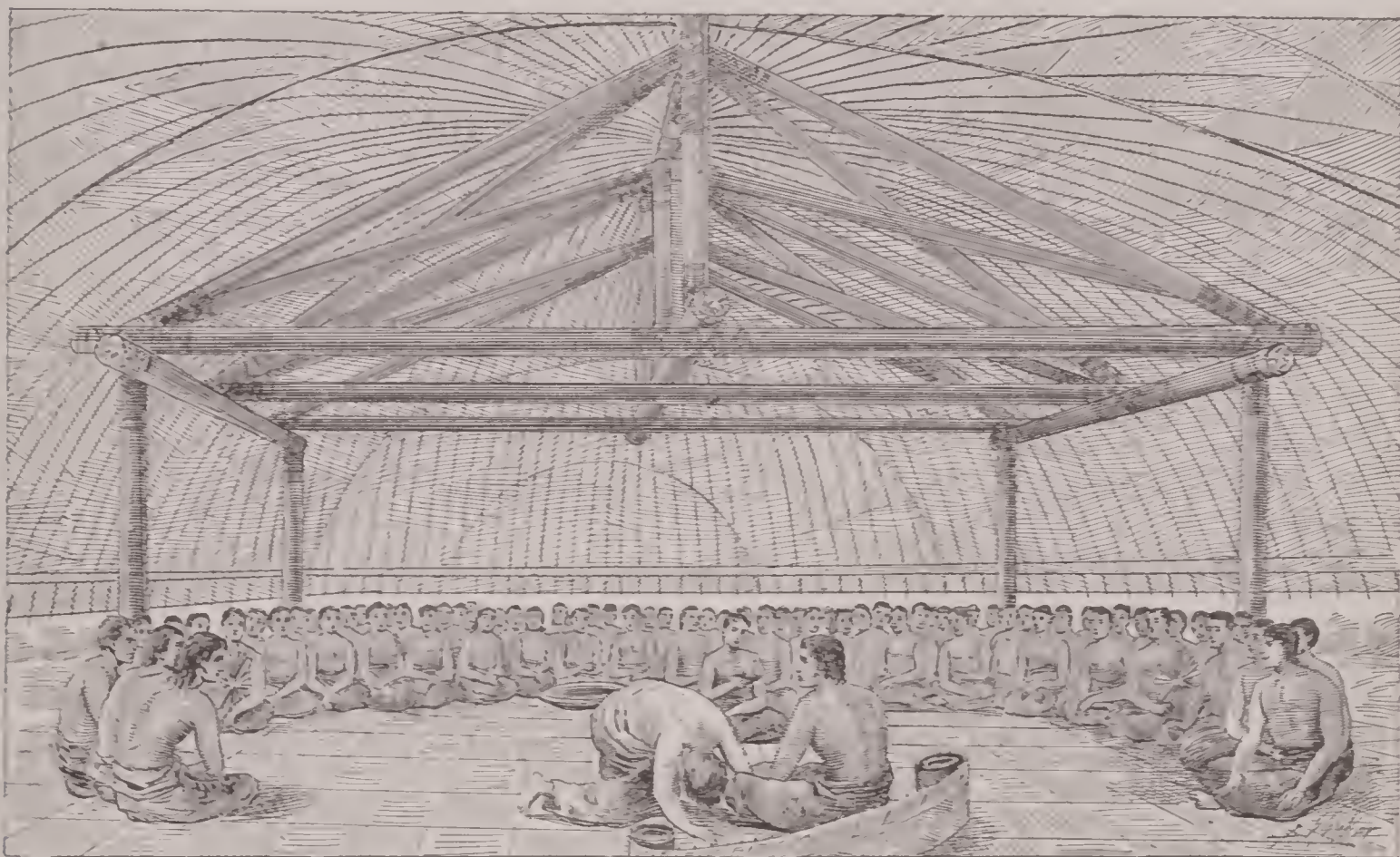
#### SACRIFICE OF HUMAN BEINGS.

Though Cook had, by his two visits and considerable stay among the Otaheitans, made himself acquainted with most of their customs, it was not until now that he obtained proof of his suspicions that, on certain occasions, human sacrifices were made a part of their religious ceremonies:

Proceeding to the island of Matavia, one of the group, in company with some of his crew, he came upon a *morai*, or cemetery, in which he observed a corpse lying upon a low scaffold with a quantity of provisions about the body. Drawing the natives into conversation, he inquired if they did not sacrifice hogs, dogs and fowls to their god, *Eotua*, to which he received an affirmative reply;



and gaining their confidence by assuming an indifferent air, Cook asked if humans were not also occasionally sacrificed, to which a chief responded that it was true they made offerings of humans at the death of important personages, but that those who were thus sacrificed were invariably men who had been condemned for crime, and who were unable to redeem themselves. Such persons forfeited their lives and were killed and made offerings to the god *Eotua*, who is the Otaheitan's supreme being. Of this custom Cook quotes from Mr. Williams, in his "Missionary Visits in the South-Sea Islands," the following: "The system of human sacrifices did not prevail at the Navigator Islands, but at the Hervey Group, and still more at the Tahitian and Society Islands, where it was carried to an extent truly appalling. There was one ceremony called *Rauma-*



FEAST OF THE RESTORATION.

*tavchi-raa*, 'the feast of restoration,' at which no less than seven human beings were always required. This ceremony was always celebrated after an invading army had driven the inhabitants to the mountains, and desecrated the *morai* by cutting down the branches of the sacred trees, and cooking their food with them, and the wooden altars and decorations of the sacred place. As soon as the retirement of the invaders allowed the refugees to leave their hiding place, the first object was to celebrate this 'feast of restoration,' which was supposed to restore the *morai* to its previous sanctity, and to reinstate the god in his former glory. A few years ago (Mr. Williams wrote in 1837), I sent to England a very sacred relic called *maro-ura*, or the red sash. This was a piece of net-work about seven inches wide and six feet long, upon which the feathers of the paro-



quet were neatly fastened. It was used at the inauguration of their greatest kings, just as the crown is with us; and the most honorable appellation which a chief could receive was *Arii-marō-ura*, King of the red sash. A new piece, about eighteen inches in length, was attached at the inauguration of every sovereign, to accomplish which several victims were required. The first was for the *mau-raa-titi*, or the stretching it upon pegs in order to attach it to the new piece. Another was necessary for the *fatu-raa*, or attaching the new portion, or a third for the *piu-raa*, or twitching the sacred relic off the pegs. This not only invested the sash itself with a solemn importance, but also rendered the chief who wore it most noble in public estimation. On the eve of war also, human victims were invariably required.

“When the priest declared a sacrifice necessary, messengers were dispatched by the King to the various chiefs to collect the requisite number of victims. These emissaries would inquire, on entering the house, if the chief had a broken calabash, or a rotten cocoa-nut at hand (terms very well understood), on which the devoted objects, often long before fixed upon, were pointed out, and instantly knocked down with a small round stone concealed in the hollow of the hand by the messengers, when others rushed in and crushed the skull to pieces by beating it in with stones, after which the body was carried to the *morai*. If the victim took refuge in a house, he was speared to death from the outside.

“As soon as one of the family had been selected all of the male members were looked upon as devoted to the same horrid purpose. It would avail them nothing if they removed to another island, for the reason of their removal would soon be known there, and whenever a sacrifice was required, it would be sought amongst them.”





## CHAPTER XLIV.

### SEPARATION OF THE SHIPS, AND A CHIEF PICKPOCKET.



DEPARTING from the Society Islands, Cook sailed west until he discovered a small island to which he gave the name of Hervey, but finding no suitable landing there he continued his course and on October 1st came in sight of the Island of Middleburg and two days later reached Amsterdam, both of which islands he visited and held a pleasant intercourse with the natives, whom he found very hospitable.

Four days were spent at these islands, at the expiration of which time Cook departed for New Zealand, which he reached on the 21st following. Some of the natives came off to the ship, but a heavy gale coming up they soon put back to shore, and during the ten days that followed the weather was so heavy that a safe anchorage

could not be found. At length the Endeavor and Adventure parted company and Cook had to put into Queen Charlotte's Sound for repairs, hoping that as appointment had been made to rendezvous there his companion ship would directly reach that harbor. His hope was not realized, however, and after remaining in the Sound for three weeks his anxiety for the Adventure's safety was such that he set out in search of her, but all to no avail. While lying here Cook began to barter with the natives, of whom he thus writes:

"When we were upon this traffic they showed a great inclination to pick my pockets, and to take away the fish with one hand which they had just given me with the other. This evil one of the chiefs undertook to remove, and with fury in his eyes made a show of keeping the people at a proper distance. I applauded his conduct, but at the same time kept so close a look-out as to detect him in picking my pocket of a handkerchief, which I suffered him to put in his bosom before I seemed to know anything of the matter, and then I told him what I had lost. He affected ignorance, till I took it from him; and then he put it off with a laugh, acting his part with so much address that it was hardly possible for me to be angry with him, so that we remained good friends, and he accompanied me on board to dinner."



## CANNIBALISM OF THE NEW ZEALANDERS.

Notwithstanding the thievery of the natives, Cook avoided a rupture with them as forcible means could only have resulted to his very great disadvantage, since he considered it his duty to remain in the sound in order to meet the Adventure which he still hoped would put in there as soon as possible if she had not been lost in the gale that separated them. In the afternoon of November 23d, some of Cook's officers went on shore to amuse themselves, when they were horrified at beholding the head and entrails of a youth, who had



NEW ZEALANDERS FISHING.

been recently killed, lying on the beach and the heart stuck on a forked stick which was fixed to one of the canoes. Cook says: "One of the gentlemen bought the head and brought it on board, where a piece of the flesh was broiled and eaten by some of the natives before all of the officers and most of the men. I was on shore at the time, but soon after returning on board was informed of the above circumstances and found the quarter deck crowded with natives, and the mangled head, or rather part of it (for the under jaw and lip were wanting), lying on the taffrail. The skull had been broken on the left



side just above the temples, and the remains of the face had all the appearance of a youth under twenty.

"The sight of the head and the relation of the above circumstances struck me with horror and filled my mind with indignation against these cannibals. Curiosity, however, got the better of my indignation, especially when I considered that it would avail but little, and being desirous of becoming an eye-witness of a fact which many doubted I ordered a piece of the flesh to be broiled and brought to the quarter deck, where one of these cannibals ate it with surprising avidity. This had such an effect on some of our people as to make them sick. Oedidee (who came on board with me from Otaheite) was so affected by the sight as to become perfectly motionless and seemed as if metamorphosed into a statue of horror. It is utterly impossible for art to describe that passion with half the force that it appeared in his countenance. When roused from this state by some of us, he burst into tears, continued to weep and scold by turns, told them they were vile men and that he neither was nor would any longer be their friend. He even would not suffer them to touch him; he used the same language to one of the gentlemen who cut off the flesh, and refused to accept or even touch the knife with which it was done. Such was Oedidee's indignation against the vile custom and worthy of imitation by every rational being.

"Among many reasons which I have heard assigned for the prevalence of this horrid custom, the want of animal food has been one; but how far this is deducible either from facts or circumstances, I shall leave those to find out who advanced it. In every part of New Zealand where I have been, fish was in such plenty that the natives generally caught as much as served both themselves and us. They have also plenty of dogs, nor is there any want of wild fowl which they very well know how to kill. So that neither this nor the want of food of any kind can in my opinion be the reason. But whatever it may be, I think it was but too evident that they had a great liking for this kind of food."

After coasting New Zealand for several days Cook took his departure from that island, at last abandoning hope of meeting with the Adventure, as no other rendezvous had been designated, so he set sail again in quest of the supposed southern continent.

For a period of three months Cook beat about in the South Sea encountering many perils from vast fields of ice which more than once threatened his ship with certain destruction; but gaining a southern latitude of seventy-one degrees and ten minutes without once discovering land, in the latter part of February he turned northward with the intention of seeking for Juan Fernandez. After passing the vicinity in which geographers and explorers had placed this island without finding any land, Cook concluded that it was one of many other apocryphal islands and setting his course due west he arrived at Easter Island, March 13th, 1784. This land was discovered in 1772 by Roggeween,





COOK'S VISIT TO EASTER ISLAND.



a Dutch navigator, who was first also to sight Juan Fernandez, but on account of the hostility of the natives he made no landing, and his description of the island is therefore very unsatisfactory, so much so indeed, that he declares the natives he saw were giants, whereas in fact that they are slightly below the medium height of Europeans.

**THE WONDROUS STONE STATUES CARVED BY AN EXTINCT PEOPLE.**

In some respects Easter Island, though only eleven miles long and six miles broad, is the most remarkable island in the Pacific Ocean. Although considered as belonging to the Polynesian group, it is so far isolated that there is no other island in five hundred miles of it, standing as it does midway between South America and Polynesia proper, and yet it has three extinct volcanoes which rear their heads to an altitude of twelve hundred feet, and its



ERECT AND PROSTRATE STONE IDOLS.

shores nearly everywhere are rocky and precipitous. But more remarkable than this is the astonishing fact that scattered over the island are hundreds of giant stone images, the largest of which is forty feet in height and nine feet across the shoulders. They have been carved out of the native

limestone with no little skill and evidently with tools of steel, or some other hard substance that was fashioned into chisels and capable of the same uses as steel. Much the larger number of these statues lie prostrate, but many still stand with grim visage and Jewish cast of feature. Some lie in the craters of the volcanoes and not a few are unfinished, just as if those who were fashioning them had been suddenly destroyed, leaving nothing but these images as evidence that a skillful people at one time occupied this little spot on the ocean's great bosom. The island is still inhabited but by savages so incapable of performing such work that they ascribe to the statues a supernatural origin.

Of the theories and traditions set forth to account for these stone images only one has any plausibility, viz.: That Easter Island, like all Polynesia, is a remnant of a submerged continent which was once inhabited by a fairly civilized,



but idol-worshipping people, who carved and set up these statues to represent their gods. But how the people were all destroyed, without so much as a fragment being left to perpetuate the race and its history, we can hardly conjecture.

#### DESCRIPTION OF THE EASTER ISLANDS STATUES.

Cook thus describes the images: "On the east side, near the sea, we observed three platforms of stone-work, or rather the ruins of them. On each had stood four of those large statues; but they were all fallen down but two of them, and also one from the third; all except one were broken by the fall, or in some measure defaced. Mr. Wales measured this one, and found it to be fifteen feet in length, and six feet broad over the shoulders. Each statue had on its head a large cylindric stone of a red color, wrought perfectly round. The one they measured, which was not by far the largest, was fifty-two inches high, and sixty-six in diameter. In some, the upper corner of the cylinder was taken off in a sort of concave quarter-round, but in others the cylinder was entire.

"We observed that the west side of the island was also full of those gigantic statues; some placed in groups on platforms of masonry; others single, fixed only in the earth, and that not deep; and these latter are in general much larger than the others. Having measured one which had fallen down, we found it very near twenty-seven feet long, and upwards of eight feet over the breast or shoulders; and yet this appeared considerably short of the size of one we saw standing; its shade, a little past two o'clock, was sufficient to shelter all the party, consisting of nearly thirty persons, from the rays of the sun.

"Some of these platforms of masonry are thirty or forty feet long, twelve or sixteen broad, and from three to twelve in height, which last in some measure depends on the nature of the ground. For they are generally at the brink of the bank facing the sea, so that this face may be ten or twelve feet or more high, and the other may not be above three or four. They are built or rather faced with hewn stone of a very large size, and the workmanship is not inferior to the



THE GIANT'S HEAD.



best plain piece of masonry we have in England. They use no sort of cement; yet the joints are exceedingly close, and the stones mortised and tenoned one into another, in a very artful manner. The side walls are not perpendicular, but inclining a little inwards, in the same manner that breastworks, etc., are built in Europe; yet had not all this care, pain, and sagacity been able to preserve these curious structures from the ravages of all-devouring time. The statues, or at least many of them, are erected on these platforms, which serve as foundations. They are, as near as we could judge, about half length, ending in a sort of stump at the bottom, on which they stand. The workmanship is crude, but not bad; nor are the features of the face ill-formed, the nose and chin in particular; but the ears are long beyond proportion; and, as to the bodies, there is hardly any-

thing like a human figure about them."

**WONDERFUL RELICS  
ON TINIAN ISLAND.**

During George Anson's voyage around the world in 1742, in the ship *Centurion*, he discovered the Island Tinian, one of the Ladrões, on which he found relics scarcely less remarkable than those met with on Easter Island.



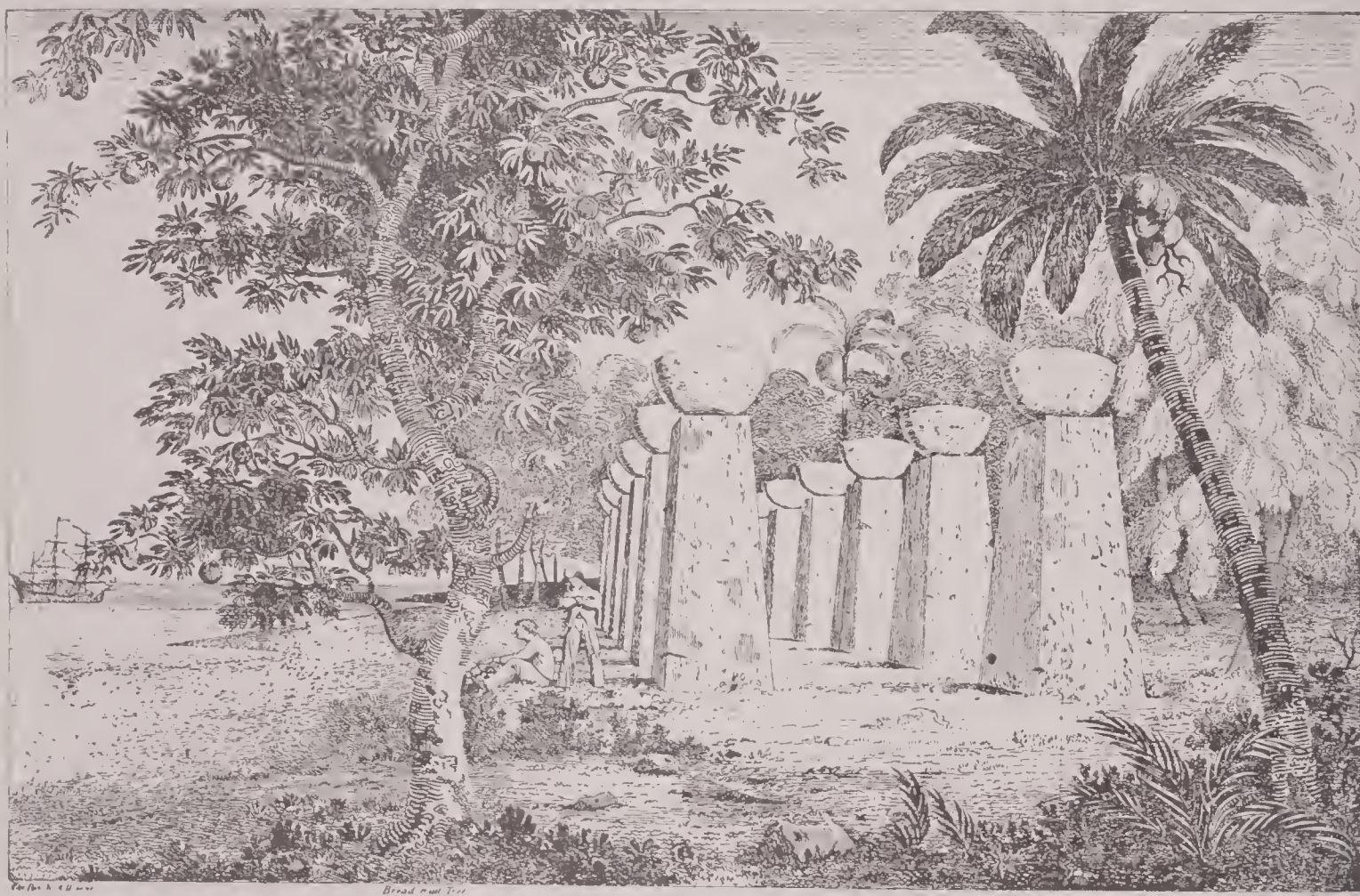
FOUNDATIONS OF THE STONE IDOLS.

Of Tinian and its remarkable ruins Anson says: "Tinian is said to have formerly contained 30,000 inhabitants. At the time the *Centurion* was there, marks were fresh of the island having been once fully peopled. Ruins of buildings were seen in all parts. They usually consisted of two rows of pyramidal pillars, each pillar being about six feet from the next, and the distance between the rows about twelve feet. The pillars were about five feet square at the base and thirteen feet high, and on the top of each was a semi-globe with the flat surface upwards. The whole of the pillars and semi-globe is solid, being composed of sand and stone cemented together and plastered over." Is there not a reasonably supposititious connection between the peoples who once occupied Easter and Tinian Islands?

There are some six hundred people occupying Easter Island, who raise sweet potatoes, yams, plantains and sugar cane. They live in small huts constructed



by setting up long poles in the ground and bending them over to a common centre, where they are tied together, and the roof is then thatched with grass and leaves. Entrance to these huts is by an opening so small that the natives must crawl in on their hands and knees. They have few canoes on account of the absence of large trees, and their weapons are of stone, with only an occasional bow of no considerable strength. The chief difficulty which the people seem to have is in a scarcity of water. This, however, is only a difficulty which seemed apparent to Cook, and may not be one that in fact occasions the natives any concern. In a search for water the crew came upon a well on the eastern side, which, being situated above the sea-level, contained fresh water, but as Cook says, "it was dirty, owing to the filthiness or cleanliness (call it which



WONDROUS RUINS ON TINIAN ISLAND.

you will) of the natives, who never go to drink without washing themselves all over as soon as they have done; and if ever so many of them are together, the first leaps right into the middle of the hole, drinks and washes himself without the least ceremony; after which another takes his place and does the same. On the declivity of the mountain, towards the west, we met with another well, but the water was a very strong mineral, had a thick green scum on the top, and stunk intolerably. Necessity, however, obliged some to drink of it, but it soon made them so sick that they threw it up the same way it went down."



Departure from Easter Island being made, Cook steered north-west, and on April 6th he sighted the Marquesas, a group of five islands, discovered by Mendana in 1595. Here he came to anchor, and directly induced several canoe loads of natives to visit him. But instead of engaging in an exchange of provisions, or such things as Cook had to offer, they crowded the ship and began to steal right and left. Remonstrance being in vain, one of the thieves was shot dead, after which the islanders became disposed to barter with the voyagers. But provisions were scarce and the natives were ungenerous, which caused Cook to make his stay among the Marquesans a short one, though his first intention had been to remain there a considerable while. The people, with the exception of using the tattoo more lavishly, he found to be very like the Otaheitans, and their customs very similar. Their weapons were somewhat more polished, and in addition to spears and clubs, the Marquesans used slings for throwing stones, which they could project to a great distance, but with so little accuracy that they were of small value as weapons.

#### THE OTAHEITAN FLEET.

Leaving the Marquesas group April 10th, Cook continued a westerly and north-westerly course, passing near several small islands, until the 22d following, when he came to anchor in Matavia Bay, Otaheite, where he met with a joyous welcome from his old friends. Four days later he was entertained with a truly astonishing sight, which was no less than a display of the entire naval force of the two principal districts of the Society group, consisting of 160 immense double canoes fully equipped for war and manned by more than six thousand warriors. These fighting men were dressed in the most surprising uniforms, which comprised a lavish amount of cloth in the form of long flowing robes, and turbans, while all wore breast-plates, and helmets that were fully three feet or even more in height, and their arms were clubs, spears, and stones. Besides the war vessels, there were 170 smaller double canoes, rigged with mast and sails, each being provided with a small house, which the war canoes did not have, and were propelled by rowers. These latter vessels served as transports, and their complements were eight men each; but the entire force numbered nearly eight thousand men. This immense fleet soon departed to suppress a rebellion in the island of Eimeo, one of the group where a new kingdom was sought to be set up.

On the 5th of June (1774), Cook left the Society group, and turned again towards New Zealand. On his way, he discovered Savage Island, so named because of the degradation and implacable hostility of the natives, and thence proceeding landed at the Friendly Islands on the 27th, where he held a profitable intercourse with the natives for several days. This group was first discovered by Tasman, but Cook gave to them the name by which they are still known, on account of the generous conduct towards him of the natives. Leaving the Friendly Islands, he called next at New Hebrides, discovering Turtle, Mallicollo, Sandwich, Shepherds, Apee, and many other small islands on the way.



**A FIGHT WITH THE NATIVES.**

At the island of Erromango Cook landed and treated with the natives, large numbers of whom he saw gathering on the shore. They received him with great courtesy, and though they formed in a semi-circle about the bow of his boat and all were armed with spears, darts, clubs, and bows, Cook had no suspicion of any hostile intention. After requests made of them for water and provision had been treated with indifference, the chief ordered the boat to be drawn up on the beach, which action, as well as a reluctance to receive presents which he offered aroused some alarm, and Cook stepped into the boat and ordered it to be shoved from the shore. At this the natives rushed down and seized it, while others grabbed the oars out of the rower's hands. Signs and threats being without effect, Cook was resolved to punish the treacherous chief, at whom he aimed his musket, but it missed fire. At this, thinking the white men were defenceless, the islanders made a vicious attack, which was met by a fire from Cook's men that killed two and wounded many, at which the natives retreated. In the fight, however, the islanders exhibited bravery and the power to do great harm with their weapons, for one of Cook's men was struck in the cheek by a dart that penetrated quite two inches and produced a dreadful wound, which did not heal for a month and left a permanent disfigurement of the face. Mr. Gilbert, another of the crew, was struck in the breast by an arrow fired at thirty paces, and only the thick clothing which he wore prevented a probably fatal injury. The arrow was only a reed tipped with hard wood, yet it went through several thicknesses of clothing and penetrated the flesh, but not sufficiently to cause a serious wound. On account of this adventure Cook named the place of the encounter Traitor's Head.

From Erromango the Resolution sailed to Tanna near by, which is distinguished for the active volcanoes that light up and cast showers of ashes over the entire island. Here the natives were not entirely hospitable, but made a boastful exhibition of their weapons, which finally led to the killing of one of them by a sentry. After this tragic incident the islanders became thoroughly humbled, and supplied the expedition with hogs, fowls, cocoa-nuts, and plantains. These several islands, first discovered by Quiros in 1606, and supposed by him to be a part of a southern continent, were thoroughly explored by Cook, who gave to them the name of New Hebrides, by which they have ever since been known.





## CHAPTER XLV.

### AMONG THE NEW CALEDONIANS.



On the 2d of September, and four days after leaving New Hebrides, Cook discovered New Caledonia, after which he stood in and made a landing on the 5th, when his vessel was almost immediately surrounded by eighteen canoes laden with natives, who, though naked and without arms, were easily induced to come on board. Unlike other islanders with whom Cook had been in contact, those of New Caledonia were not only kindly and peaceable, but they exhibited no dishonest propensities. Their weapons were very much like those used by the Friendly Islanders, but in no other respect, save amity, was there any similarity. Their

huts were large and of a lofty, conical shape, with leaning apex due to the weight of wood ornaments which projected from the top. Their canoes were cumbersome affairs, built like a catamaran, with heavy platform laid across, on which a fire was nearly always burning, and as a canopy of matting was built over the centre, the canoes were in many cases the only dwelling places of those who obtained their living by fishing or by gathering other products of the sea.

Cook remained among the New Caledonians until September 13th, when he departed en route for New Zealand, discovering Norfolk Island on the way, which was uninhabited and only about fifteen miles in circuit; but it had plenty of fresh water, and the shores and trees were fairly covered with a great variety of birds. On the 17th the coast of New Zealand was sighted, and on the following day the Resolution came to anchor before Ship Cove in Queen Charlotte's Sound. On going ashore many evidences were observed that the Adventure had put in here after Cook's departure, which dispelled the fears that had been for some time entertained for her safety.

### DEPARTURE FOR ENGLAND.

On the 10th of November Cook left New Zealand on his return trip to England, proceeding eastward to Terra del Fuego, the shore of which he sighted on the 17th of December. It was not until the 21st, however, that a safe anchorage was found in a harbor to which Cook gave the name of Christmas Sound. Here he met several of the greasy, naked, loud-smelling natives, who flocked about his ship and made bold to come on board without invitation. But they offered no indignities, nor did they in any manner

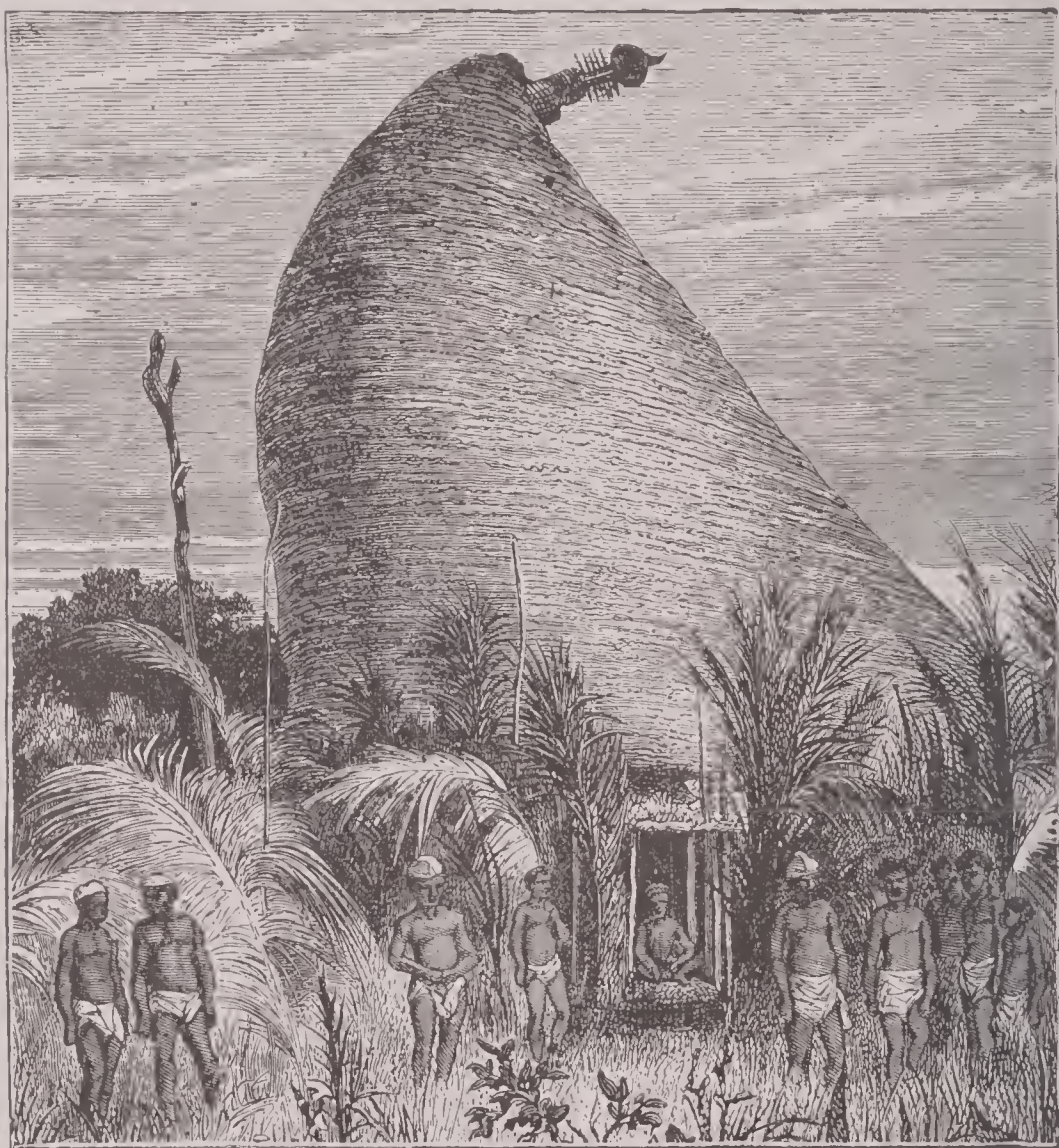


flagrantly demean themselves. In the waters and on the land hereabout there were found immense numbers of geese, terns, seals, and fish, so that Cook sent a number of his crew to gather a large provision of fresh meat and tern eggs. Nearly a hundred seals were killed by knocking them on the head, and twice as many geese, shags, penguins, and ducks fell to the aim of those who had fowling pieces, and a great banquet was prepared for Christmas day, which proved the most delicious repast that the crew had enjoyed since leaving England.

New Year's day (1775) Cook left Terra del Fuego, and continuing eastward, passed Falkland islands, isle of Georgia, and several others at which he called, so that it was not until March 21st that he arrived at the Cape of Good Hope. Scarcely had he set his foot on shore when a letter was handed to him from Capt. Furneaux, who had preceded Cook several months on the return trip to England.

In this letter Capt. Furneaux gave a description of the events that had befallen his ship after his separation from the Resolution.

The gales had nearly caused a wreck of the Adventure, which beat about until November 30th, or more than three weeks, before being able to come to anchor in Queen Charlotte's Sound, which was six days after Cook's ship, the Resolution, had departed. Soon after landing, being much in need of provisions, Capt. Furneaux sent some of his men to treat with the natives, while others were employed in repairing the ship which had been so greatly injured in weathering the terrific gales. On the 17th of December, the repairs having been completed and satisfactory store of provisions, wood and water, placed on board, it was Capt. Furneaux' intention to sail on the following day, but as a supply of wild greens was thought to be necessary and easy to be obtained, he sent



NEW CALEDONIAN HUT.



a boat crew of nine of his best men in a large cutter in charge of Midshipman Rowe up the sound for that purpose. To the surprise of the Captain, the ten men thus sent out did not return at the time appointed, and their absence being further prolonged, he became so uneasy about them, though entertaining no suspicion that they had been in conflict with the natives, that he sent out another boat-load of ten men under Lieutenant Burney to search for them. The report which Burney made upon his return to the ship some time in the night of the 18th was horrifying in the extreme.

#### MASSACRE OF CAPT. FURNEAUX'S MEN.

Says he: "I now kept close to the east shore, and came to another settlement, where the Indians invited us ashore. I inquired of them about the boat, but they pretended ignorance. They appeared very friendly here, and sold us some fish. Within an hour after we left this place, in a small beach adjoining to Grass Cove, we saw a very large double canoe just hauled up,



FIGHT AND MASSACRE OF FURNEAUX'S MEN.

with two men and a dog. The men, on seeing us, left their canoe, and ran into the woods.

"This gave me reason to suspect I should here get tidings of the cutter. We went on shore, and searched in

the canoe, where we found one of the rullock ports of the cutter, and shoes, one of which was known to belong to Mr. Woodhouse, one of our midshipmen. One of the people, at the same time, brought me a piece of meat, which he took to be some of the salt meat belonging to the cutter's crew. On examining this, and smelling it, I found it was fresh. Mr. Fannin (the master) who was with me, supposed it was dog's flesh, and I was of the same opinion, for I still doubted their being cannibals. But we were soon convinced by most horrid and undeniable proof. A great many baskets (about twenty) lying on the beach tied up, we cut open. Some were full of roasted flesh, and some of fern-root, which serves them for bread. On farther search, we found more shoes and a hand, which we immediately knew to have belonged to Thomas Hill, one of our fore-castle men, it being marked T. H. with an Otaheite tattoo instrument. I went with some of the people a little way up the woods, but saw nothing else. Coming down again, there was a



round spot covered with fresh earth about four feet diameter, where something had been buried. Having no spade, we began to dig with a cutlass; and in the meantime I launched the canoe with intent to destroy her; but seeing a great smoke ascending over the nearest hill, I got all the people into the boat, and made what haste I could to be with them before sunset.

"On the beach were two bundles of celery, which had been gathered for loading the cutter. A broken oar was stuck upright in the ground, to which the natives had tied their canoes, a proof that the attack had been made here. I then searched all along at the back of the beach, to see if the cutter was there. We found no boat, but instead of her, such a shocking scene of carnage and barbarity as can never be mentioned or thought of but with horror; for the heads, hearts, and lungs of several of our people were seen lying on the beach, and, at a little distance, the dogs gnawing their entrails. While we remained almost stupefied on the spot, Mr. Fannin called to us that he heard the savages gathering together in the woods; on which I returned to the boat, and hauling alongside the canoes, we demolished three of them. While this was transacting, the fire on the top of the hill disappeared; and we could hear the Indians in the woods at high words: I suppose quarrelling whether or no they should attack us, and try to save their canoes. It now grew dark: I therefore just stepped out, and looked once more behind the beach, to see if the cutter had been hauled up in the bushes; but seeing nothing of her, returned and put off. Our whole force would have been barely sufficient to have gone up the hill, and to have ventured with half (for half must have been left to guard the boat) would have been fool-hardiness."

Cook remained in Table Bay, at Cape of Good Hope, until April 16th, when he continued on his return trip, stopping at St. Helena, and at Ascension Island, from whence he sailed westward to Fernando do Noronho, thence to Island Fayal, so that he did not arrive at Plymouth until July 29th, when he immediately proceeded to London, to give an account of his wanderings and discoveries.





## CHAPTER XLVI.

### CAPTAIN COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE.



CAPTAIN COOK'S return to England was appropriately celebrated, and he was made a social lion, according to the custom which prevails in that country and America of lionizing those who have acquired sudden fame through the performance of what is regarded as perilous service.

Cook did not discover a southern continent, but he did the next best thing, in pretty thoroughly satisfying his supporters that no such continent existed, hence a failure of his immediate object resulted in a discovery of little less consequence; for it served to settle a speculation, which, if continued, must have cost a great deal of treasure, with no other determination. But as public belief in the existence of a southern continent was dispelled, that in the existence of a sea route by the way of the Arctic Ocean, between Europe and China, directly absorbed public interest as a substitute. And the government of England, recognizing in Cook the first navigator of the period, signified a desire that he accept a commission to go in quest of the supposititious North-west Passage. Great interest was taken in the proposed expedition, and in preparing it the Earl of Sandwich took a leading part, attending personally to seeing that the equipment was in accordance with all of Cook's wishes.

The *Resolution*, which had performed such excellent service in the expedition from which Cook had just returned, was thought to be the best ship that could be had for the purpose, and was accordingly selected for the third voyage, now about to be undertaken. Another vessel, the *Discovery*, of 300 tons, was purchased and put into like commission, and Captain Clerke was appointed to the command. Besides a vast store of provisions for the crew, the ships took on several head of cattle, goats, hogs, poultry, and dogs, with which to stock certain islands that were believed might be made valuable some time for British commerce. Besides the crews there were scientists, naturalists, artists, astronomers, and the young man, Omai, whom Captain Furneaux had taken from the island Huaheine, of the Society Group, to be educated in England. This young man, though of a quick intelligence, had been only an attendant



of the Otaheite King, and hence could hardly have been expected to exercise any great influence upon his people after his return to them, even though they should recognize how superior his qualifications had been made by long contact with English civilization. But a greater mistake than the selecting for such a purpose one of the common people of the island, was the character of the education he received.

#### AN OTAHEITAN AT THE ENGLISH COURT.

Being the first native of the South Sea Islands brought to England, Omai was sought after as a wonder, and became the "lion" of a season; he was introduced to fashionable parties, conducted to splendid entertainments of the highest classes, and presented at court. In all these positions, the pliancy natural to the Otaheitans and their congeners, enabled him to preserve a perfect propriety of demeanor, and his naturally lively disposition rendered him, with his imperfect English (a language varying so much from the idiom of his native tongue, as to render its perfect acquirement very difficult), an exceedingly entertaining guest. As such he was welcomed everywhere, and was carried about from one public exhibition to another, without time being allowed him to comprehend any; but no effort was made to instruct him in any useful art, or to enable him to comprehend the wonders he beheld, or the condition of the society by which he was surrounded. Of all those who took an interest in him, Mr. Granville Sharp alone exerted himself to turn his attention to rational pursuits, by teaching him to write, and instructing him in some degree in the principles of Christianity.

When he departed from England, he was loaded with presents, but few of which were calculated to be of real service. He carried with him a coat-of-mail, a suit of armor, a musket, pistol, cartouch-box, cutlasses, powder and ball, a portable organ and an electrical machine; but no implements of agriculture or useful tools are included in the catalogue of his treasures. Captain Cook procured for him a grant of land, on which a house in the European style was erected for him; and he was furnished with seeds, plants, horses, goats, and other useful animals. His warlike stores rendered him a man of consequence to the King, who gave him his daughter in marriage, and honored him with the name of Paari (wise, or instructed), by which name, Mr. Ellis informs us, he was ever afterwards spoken of by the natives. So far, however, from becoming the instructor or improver of his people, he seems to have sunk into the mere compliant tool of the King, who, Mr. Ellis states, "not only availed himself of the effects of his fire-arms in periods of war, but frequently ordered him to shoot at a man at a certain distance, in order to see how far the musket would do execution, or to despatch with his pistol, in the presence of the King, the ill-fated objects of his deadly anger."

Cook took his departure from Plymouth Sound on the 16th of July, 1776, and reached Teneriffe on the 31st, where he made a short stay to procure subsistence for the animals that he had on board. Departing again on the 4th of August, he steered directly for Good Hope, which he did not reach until November



the 18th, owing to heavy weather, adverse winds, and leaky ships. He remained here until the 30th of November, repairing his ships and rigging, when at last weighing anchor, he stood for Christmas Sound, calling at Kerguelen's Land on the way, where a large number of seals, penguins, and other birds were killed for food, and a good supply of fresh water taken on. His stay in Christmas Sound was a short one, and from this point Cook set his course due west for Van Dieman's Land, the coast of which he came in sight of on the 24th of January. A landing having been made, Cook was met on shore by eight natives, all naked and unarmed, who, however, exhibited no signs of fear of their visitors, until a gun was discharged, when they all immediately retreated to the deep woods. After a couple of days' stay at Van Dieman's Land, Cook induced others of the natives to visit him, and he was thus enabled to determine something of their habits.

#### AMONG THE NATIVES OF VAN DIEMAN'S LAND.

Their only weapon seemed to be a sharpened stick, and as they had no canoes, it was evident that they did little fishing or hunting, but subsisted chiefly on shell fish and such small game as they were able to take with the hands or traps. The women were sometimes seen to wear a kangaroo skin; not, however, as clothing, but rather in which to support their infants, because the skin was never drawn about the body so as to cover that portion which needs concealment most. Nor was it understood how the kangaroos thus stripped of their skins were captured, though most likely by some kind of trap. As to their habitations, Cook says: "What the ancient poet tells us of Fauns and Satyrs living in hollow trees, is here realized. Some wretched construction of sticks, covered with bark, which do not even deserve the name of huts, were indeed found near the shore in the bay; but these seemed only to have been erected for temporary purposes, and many of their largest trees were converted into more comfortable habitations. These had their trunks hollowed out by fire, to the height of six or seven feet; and that they take up their abode in them sometimes was evident from the hearths, made of clay, to contain the fire in the middle, leaving room for four or five persons to sit round it. At the same time these places of shelter are durable, for they take care to leave one side of the tree sound, which is sufficient to keep it growing as luxuriantly as those which remain untouched."

#### PARTICULARS OF THE MASSACRE OF FURNEAUX'S MEN.

Departure was made from Van Diemen's Land January 30th, 1777, and on the 10th following New Zealand was sighted, and the ships were run into Queen Charlotte's Sound. Here Cook was greeted by a very large party of natives, who, finding that it was his intention to remain in the sound awhile to beach and overhaul his ship, began directly the erection of huts, and so expeditiously did they work that in an hour, says Cook, a large village was built, covering nearly all of the considerable level grass ground near the ship. As the natives appeared peaceably disposed Cook, though at no time relax-



ing his vigilance, made a visit to Grass Cove, the scene of the massacre of Captain Furneaux's men, with the hope of gaining particulars from the islanders of that unfortunate affair. Nor was he disappointed, for meeting Pedro, an old chief with whom he had become familiar on a previous visit to the island, he obtained from him an account of the killing somewhat as follows: "While the white people were sitting at dinner, surrounded by several of the natives, some of the latter stole, or snatched from them, some bread and fish, for which they were beat. This being resented a quarrel ensued and two New Zealanders were shot dead by the only two muskets that were fired. For before the white people had time to discharge a third or to load again those that had been fired the natives rushed in upon them, overpowered them with their numbers and put them all to death."

Pedro and his companions, besides relating the history of the massacre, made Cook acquainted with the very spot that was the scene of it. It is at the corner of the cove, on the right hand. They pointed to the place of the sun to mark at what hour of the day it happened, and according to this it must have been late in the afternoon. They also showed him the place where the boat lay, and it appeared to be about two hundred yards distant from that where the crew were seated. One of their number, a black servant of Captain Furneaux, was left in the boat to take care of her. He was afterwards told that the black was the cause of the quarrel, which was said to have happened thus: One of the natives stealing something out of the boat the negro gave him a severe blow with a stick. The cries of the fellow being heard by his countrymen at a distance they imagined he was killed, and immediately began the attack on the whites, who, before they had time to reach the boat or to arm themselves against the unexpected impending danger, fell a sacrifice to the fury of their savage assailants.

#### SAVAGE FURY OF THE NEW ZEALANDERS.

Shortly afterwards Cook heard this story of the massacre repeated by a participant, and the one too, over whom the bloody fight was begun. This man showed no fear of punishment for his crime. Indeed, he appeared as if justification had exempted him, and he entered freely into a discussion of the tragic event, as well as the devouring of the bodies afterwards. This conversation led to inquiries respecting the manner in which the New Zealanders go to war and their treatment of prisoners, which Cook thus describes: "Before they begin the onset, they join in a war-song, to which they all keep the exactest time, and soon raise their passion to a degree of frantic fury, attended with the most horrid distortion of their eyes, mouths, and tongues, to strike terror into their enemies, which, to those who have not been accustomed to such a practice, makes them appear more like demons than men, and would almost chill the boldest with fear. To this succeeds a circumstance, almost foretold in their fierce demeanor, horrid, cruel, and disgraceful to human nature: which is, cutting in pieces, even before being perfectly dead, the bodies of their enemies, and after dressing them



on a fire, devouring the flesh, not only without reluctance, but with peculiar satisfaction."

Cook weighed anchor on the 24th of February, 1777, and set his course towards Otaheite, but en route he discovered the islands of Mangeea and Wateoo, at both of which he landed, and held some intercourse with the natives. At the latter, Lieutenant Burney, Omai, and two others of the crew, who had gone on shore, were entertained by a dance performed by a score of elegantly formed and remarkably smooth-skinned women, whose beauty was much enhanced by long ringlets of jet black hair which fell in great profusion down their backs, and which constituted nearly their only dress. Some, however, wore a piece of glazed cloth about the waist reaching to the knees, but few of them were so amply clothed. At this island, Omai found three of his countrymen, the remnant of a party of twenty, who, while passing from Otaheite to Ulitea, had been driven out to sea by a gale, and after days of famishment, their canoe was capsized, in which disaster only four survived by being cast upon the shore of Wateoo, while one of these died soon after.

#### A WONDERFUL ENTERTAINMENT AT HAPAE.

After leaving Wateoo Cook discovered several other islands, chiefly of coral formation, the natives of which he found to greatly resemble the Otaheitans. At Hapae, a group some fifty miles from the Friendly Islands, Cook landed, and found the natives so amicably disposed and provisions there so abundant that he concluded to remain for a space of five days, which time he profitably employed, and was pleasantly diverted by the islanders. Directly upon going ashore he was hospitably received by several hundreds of the natives, headed by their chief, and after cordial salutations had been passed, provision was made for a magnificent entertainment of the white visitors. Some hundreds of the natives, after retiring for an hour or so, returned, laden with yams, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and sugar-cane, which they deposited in two heaps, intending that one pile should be a gift to Omai, and the other to Captain Cook. Among other articles there were also two pigs and six fowls afterwards placed in one of the piles, and six pigs and two turtles were added to the other. As soon as this munificent collection of provisions was laid down in order, and disposed to the best advantage, the bearers joined the multitude, who formed a large circle around the whole. What afterwards followed, Cook thus describes:—

"Presently, a number of men entered this circle or area before us, armed with clubs, made of the green branches of the cocoa-nut tree. These paraded about for a few minutes, and then retired, the one half to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Soon after they successively entered the lists, and entertained us with single combats. One champion, rising up and stepping forward from one side, challenged those of the other side, by expressive gestures more than by words, to send one of their body to oppose him. If the challenge was accepted, which was generally the case, the two combatants put themselves in proper attitudes, and then began



the engagement, which continued till one or other owned himself conquered, or till their weapons were broken. As soon as each combat was over, the victor squatted himself down facing the chief, then rose up and retired. At the same time some old men, who seemed to sit as judges, gave their plaudits in a few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side to which the victor belonged, celebrated the glory he had acquired by two or three huzzas. This entertainment was now and then suspended for a few minutes. During these intervals there were both wrestling and boxing matches. The first were performed in the same manner as at Otaheite, and the second differed very little



FEMALE DANCERS OF HAPAE.

from the method practised in England. But what struck us with most surprise was to see a couple of lusty wenches step forth and begin boxing, without the least ceremony, and with as much art as the men. This contest, however, did not last more than half a minute before one of them gave up. The conquering heroine received the same applause from the spectators, which they bestowed upon the successful combatants of the other sex. We expressed some dislike at this part of the entertainment, which, however, did not prevent two other females from entering the lists. They seemed to be girls of spirit, and would certainly have given each other a good drubbing, if two old women had not interposed to



part them. All these combats were exhibited in the midst of at least three thousand people, and were conducted with the greatest good humor on all sides, though some of the champions, women as well as men, received blows, which, doubtless, they must have felt for some time after."

This entertainment having been concluded, the large store of provisions, which loaded four boats, was removed on shipboard, in return for which Cook distributed a considerable quantity of articles, which greatly pleased the chief and the people.

#### A GREAT DANCE.

Feenou, who appeared to be King of Hapae islands, then expressed to



THE FEMALE BOXERS OF HAPAE.

Cook a desire to see his marines go through their military exercise, to gratify which, Cook ordered 105 of his men to go on shore; and they performed various evolutions, accompanied by the firing of muskets, which so pleased the King that he in turn provided another entertainment, which was more interesting than that which Cook had previously witnessed. He describes it as follows:

"It was a kind of dance, so entirely different from anything I had ever seen that I fear I can give no description that will convey any tolerable idea of it to my readers. It was performed by men and one hundred and fifty persons bore their parts in it. Each of them had in his hand an instrument neatly made, shaped somewhat like a paddle, of two feet and a half in length, with a small handle and a thin blade, so that they were very light. With these in-

struments they made many and various flourishes, each of which was accompanied with a different attitude of the body or a different movement. At first the performers ranged themselves in three lines, and, by various evolutions, each man changed his station in such a manner that those who had been in the rear came into the front. Nor did they remain long in the same position, but these changes were made by pretty quick transitions. At one time they extended themselves in one line; they then formed into a semicircle, and lastly into two square columns. While this last movement was executing, one of them advanced and performed an antic dance before me, with which the whole ended.



“The musical instruments consisted of two drums, or rather two hollow logs of wood, from which some varied notes were produced by beating on them with two sticks. It did not, however, appear to me that the dancers were much directed or assisted by these sounds, but by a chorus of vocal music in which all the performers joined at the same time. Their song was not destitute of pleasing melody, and all their corresponding motions were executed with so much skill that the numerous body of dancers seemed to act as if they were one great machine. It was the opinion of every one of us that such a performance would have met with universal applause on a European theatre; and it so far exceeded any attempt we had made to entertain them that they seemed to pique themselves upon the superiority they had over us. As to our musical instruments, they held none of them in the least esteem, except the drum, and even that they did not think equal to their own. Our French horns, in particular, seemed to be held in great contempt, for neither here nor at any of the other islands would they pay the smallest attention to them. In order to give a more favorable opinion of English amusements, and to leave their minds fully impressed with the deepest sense of our superior attainments, I directed some fire-works to be got ready, and after it was dark played them off in the presence of Feenou, the other chiefs and a vast concourse of their people. Some of the preparations we found damaged, but others of them were in excellent order, and succeeded so perfectly as to answer the end I had in view. Our water- and sky-rockets, in particular, pleased and astonished them beyond all conception, and the scale was now turned in our favor.

#### A BAND OF BAMBOO PLAYERS.

“This, however, seemed only to furnish them with an additional motive to proceed to fresh exertions of their very singular dexterity, and our fire-works were no sooner ended than a succession of dances, which Feenou had got ready for our entertainment, began. As a prelude to them a band of music, or chorus of eighteen men, seated themselves before us, in the centre of the circle composed by the numerous spectators, the area of which was to be the scene of the exhibitions. Four or five of this band had pieces of large bamboo, from three to five or six feet long, each managed by one man, who held it nearly in a vertical position, the upper end open, but the other end closed by one of the joints. With this closed end the performers kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, thus producing different notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all of them of the hollow or bass sort; to counteract which, a person kept striking quickly, and with two sticks, a piece of the same substance, split, and laid along the ground, and, by that means, furnishing a tone as acute as those produced by the others were grave. The rest of the band, as well as those who performed on the bamboos, sung a low and soft air, which so tempered the harsher notes of the above instruments that no bystander, however accustomed to hear the most varied and perfect modulation of sweet sounds, could avoid confessing the pleasing effect of this simple harmony.



"The concert having continued about a quarter of an hour, twenty women entered the circle. Most of them had upon their heads garlands of the crimson flowers of the China rose, or others; and many of them had ornamented their persons with leaves of trees cut with a great deal of nicety about the edges. They made a circle round the choristers, turning their faces toward them and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the choristers in the same tone; and these were repeated alternately. All this while the women accompanied their song with several very graceful motions of their hands toward their faces, and in other directions at the same time, making constantly a step forward,



DANCE OF THE FLOWER GIRLS.

and then back again with one foot, while the other was fixed. They then turned their faces to the assembly, sung some time, and retreated slowly in a body to that part of the circle which was opposite the hut where the principal spectators sat. After this one of them advanced from each side meeting and passing each other in the front, and continuing their progress round till they came to the rest. On which two advanced from each side, two of whom also passed each other and returned as the former; but the other two remained, and to these came one from each side, by intervals, till the whole number had again formed a circle about the choristers. Their manner of dancing was now changed to a quicker measure, in which they made a kind of half turn by leaping, and



clapped their hands and snapped their fingers, repeating some words in conjunction with the chorus. Towards the end, as the quickness of the music increased, their gestures and attitudes were varied with wonderful vigor and dexterity; and some of their motions would, perhaps, with us, be reckoned rather indecent; though this part of the performance, most probably, was not meant to convey any wanton ideas, but merely to display the astonishingly variety of their movements.

"To this grand female ballet succeeded one performed by fifteen men. Some of them were old; but their age seemed to have abated little of their agility or ardor for the dance. They were disposed in a sort of circle, divided at the front, with their faces not turned out toward the assembly, nor inward to the chorus, but one-half of their circle faced forward as they had advanced, and the half in a contrary direction. They sometimes sung slowly in concert with the chorus; and, while thus employed, they also made several very fine motions with their hands, but different from those made by the women, at the same time inclining the body to either side alternately by raising one leg, which was stretched outward and resting on the other; the arm of the same side being also stretched fully upward. At other times they recited sentences in a musical tone, which were answered by the chorus; and at intervals increased the measure of the dance by clapping the hands and quickening the motions of the feet, which, however, were never varied. At the end the rapidity of the music and of the dancing increased so much that it was scarcely possible to distinguish the different movements; though one might suppose the actors were now almost tired, as their performance had lasted nearly half an hour.

#### THE FEMALE DANCERS PUNISHED.

"After a considerable interval, another act, as we may call it, began. Twelve men now advanced, who placed themselves in double rows fronting each other, but on opposite sides of the circle; and, on one side a man was stationed, who, as if he had been a prompter, repeated several sentences, to which the twelve new performers, and the chorus, replied. They then sung slowly; and afterwards danced and sung more quickly, for about a quarter of an hour, after the manner of the dancers whom they had succeeded. Soon after they had finished, nine women exhibited themselves, and sat down fronting the hut where the chief was. A man then rose, and struck the first of these women on the back, with both fists joined. He proceeded, in the same manner, to the second and third; but when he came to the fourth, whether from accident or design I cannot tell, instead of the back, he struck her on the breast. Upon this, a person rose instantly from the crowd, who brought him to the ground with a blow on the head; and he was carried off without the least noise or disorder. But this did not save the other five women from so odd a discipline, or perhaps necessary ceremony; for a person succeeded him who treated them in the same manner. Their disgrace did not end here; for when they danced they had the mortification to find their performance twice disproved of, and were obliged to repeat it. This dance did not differ much



from that of the first women, except in this one circumstance, that the present set sometimes raised the body upon one leg, by a sort of double motion, and then upon the other alternately, in which attitude they kept snapping their fingers; and, at the end, they repeated, with great agility, the brisk movements in which the former group of female dancers had shown themselves so expert.

"In a little time, a person entered unexpectedly, and said something in a ludicrous way about the fire-works that had been exhibited, which extorted a burst of laughter from the multitude. After this, we had a dance composed of men who attended or had followed Feenou. They formed a double circle (i. e. one within another) of twenty-four each, round the choristers, and began a gentle soothing song, with corresponding motions of the hands and head. This lasted a considerable time, and then changed to a much quicker measure, during which they repeated sentences, either in conjunction with the chorus, or in answer to some spoken by that band. They then retreated to the back part of the circle, as the women had done, and again advanced, on each side in a triple row, till they formed a semi-circle, which was done very slowly, by inclining the body on one leg, and advancing the other a little way, as they put it down. They accompanied this with such a soft air as they had sung in the beginning; but soon changed it to repeat sentences in a harsher tone, at the same time quickening the dance very much, till they finished it with a general shout and clap of the hands. The same was repeated several times; but at last they formed a double circle, as at the beginning, danced and repeated very quickly, and finally closed with several very dexterous transpositions of the two circles.

"The entertainments of this memorable night concluded with a dance, in which the principal people present exhibited. It resembled the immediately preceding one in some respects, having the same number of performers, who began nearly in the same way; but their ending at each interval was different. For they increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder with such force, that a spectator, unaccustomed to the sight, would suppose that they ran a risk of dislocating their necks. This was attended with a smart clapping of the hands, and a kind of savage hallo, or shriek, not unlike what is sometimes practised in the comic dances on our European theatres. They formed the triple semi-circle as the preceding dancers had done; and a person who advanced at the head on one side of the semi-circle, began by repeating something in a truly musical recitative, which was delivered with an air so graceful, as might put to the blush our most applauded performers. He was answered in the same manner by the person at the head of the opposite party. This being repeated several times, the whole body on one side joined in the responses to the whole corresponding body on the opposite side, as the semi-circle advanced to the front; and they finished by singing and dancing as they had begun.



"These two last dances were performed with so much spirit, and so great exactness, that they met with universal approbation. The native spectators, who no doubt were perfect judges whether the several performances were properly executed, could not withhold their applauses at some particular parts; and even a stranger who never saw the diversion before, felt similar satisfaction at the same instant. For though, through the whole, the most strict concert was observed, some of the gestures were so expressive, that it might be said they spoke the language that accompanied them, if we allow that there is any connection between motion and sound. At the same time it should be observed, that though the music of the chorus and that of the dancers corresponded, constant practice in these favorite amusements of our friends seems to have a great share in effecting the exact time they keep in their performances. For we observed that if any of them happened accidentally to be interrupted, they never found the smallest difficulty in recovering the proper place of the dance or song. And their perfect discipline was in no instance more remarkable than in the sudden transitions they so dexterously made from the ruder exertions and harsh sounds, to the softest airs and gentlest movements."





## CHAPTER XLVII.

### RECEPTION BY KING POULAHU.



NEAR the Friendly and Hapae groups are several hundred islands, and Cook spent more than one month passing from one to another, being everywhere received with great cordiality by the inhabitants and helped to all manner of provisions that the islands produced. At Tongataboo, or Tonga, one of the most fertile and important in the Friendly Group, Cook made a landing, and was almost immediately visited by a king named Poulaho, by whom he was conducted to a small, but very neat house, admirably situated, which was kindly placed at his service during his stay. Soon after taking possession, Cook was visited by the King and a large number of his subjects, who took a position in the level, grass-covered area around it, while the King

and his immediate attendants, among whom were several women, entered the house. Upon being seated, a root of the kava plant was brought in, and laid at the King's feet, which, by his direction, was divided into several pieces and distributed among a number of both sexes, who immediately fell to chewing the bits and spitting the secretion into a bowl. In this manner it was that their favorite drink was prepared, quite palatable to the natives, but a gorge rose in the throat of Cook when he was offered a cup, made of plantain leaves, filled with this strange decoction. A baked hog and two baskets of yams were then divided into ten portions and distributed among the persons of rank, who, however, were not permitted to either eat or drink in the presence of the King. Although the feast was prepared as a special mark of favor to Cook, he could not bring himself to be a partaker, at which abstinence the King nevertheless took no offence, considering that he had acquitted himself of a duty to his white visitor.

Two days later an entertainment was given in honor of Cook, which was attended by nearly 12,000 persons, and in which four parties of dancers, numbering 96, 32, 32 and 60 respectively, with half as many more drummers and choristers, participated. The dancers consisted of several divisions in ranks, in which the men, carrying small paddles, performed a great variety of evolutions, keeping time to a low, dirge-like monotone. This dancing continued from 11 P. M. until 3 o'clock in the morning, and the entertainment then concluded with wrestling and boxing matches.



## INITIATORY CEREMONIES OF ROYALTY.

Ten days before Cook took his departure from these people, he witnessed by the King's invitation, a solemn ceremony called *Natche*, which was the initiation of the King's son into certain royal privileges, among others being that of eating with his father. On account of inability to freely talk with the natives, and Omai's imperfect understanding of the language, Cook was not able to acquaint himself with the full signification of the ceremonies. A very large number of people gathered in a wide area, in the middle of which a house had been set up to represent a *morai*, or temple. At the appointed time, some hundreds of subjects made their appearance, carrying poles to which short sticks, representing yams, were tied, and began a quick march before the King and his son



THE GRAND DANCE IN HONOR OF COOK.

—who were seated on the ground to themselves—followed by a dozen spear bearers, and in the rear, an old man carrying a live pigeon. This procession passed twice around the King, and then proceeded to the *morai*, where they deposited their burdens. After this, the crowd rose and repaired to another part of the area, where they re-assembled before the King and Prince, who had likewise changed their positions. The men who had carried the poles were all of rank, and now made their obeisances and acknowledgments to their rulers, after which a prayer or oration was pronounced by one of the King's counsellors or chief priests. This ceremony was followed by hundreds of subjects of both sexes paying honor to the King and Prince, by approaching and touching their heads to the ground, after which fourteen women of royal rank came in pairs, carrying between them a



narrow piece of white cloth, some eight feet in length, which they wrapped about the Prince. Following these, came two men bearing green branches, which they presented towards the Prince, and then bore away again. The ceremony was concluded by a man of rank breaking one of the poles that had been carried in the procession, and the pronouncement of what appeared to be a benediction.

#### BURIAL ALIVE OF CRIMINALS.

Fiji Islands are only two hundred miles from the Friendly Group, yet Cook had such report of the savagery of the people that he had small desire to pay them a visit. He was told, and the report was confirmed by other voyagers, that the Fijians were not only intensely hostile to every other people, but that they ex-



CEREMONY OF PRINCELY INITIATION.

ceeded the New Zealanders in their liking for human flesh; that they not only ate the bodies of their enemies slain in battle, but occasionally devoured their own dead. Their savagery extended yet further, for it was their custom to bury their criminals alive, after which the body was exhumed and eaten.

The Fiji are a group of 250 islands, the northernmost of which were first discovered by Tasman in 1643. Turtle Island, one of the southernmost, was discovered by Cook in 1773, but it was not until Wilson's visit to them in 1797, that the customs of the people were positively determined. It is, therefore, possible that the Tongans, who held little intercourse with the Fijians, gave them a worse reputation than they justly deserved; but what he thus heard prompted Cook to forego his first intention to visit them.



It was not until July 15th (1777) that Cook left the Friendly Islands, and proceeded on to Otaheite, but on the 8th of August he came in sight of land, which the natives called Toobouai. Several canoes, filled with people, approached the ship, but though they spoke the Otaheite language and Omai tried hard to induce them to come on board, not one of the canoes would approach closer than the distance of a bow shot. They, in turn, besought Cook to land, but the anchorage was unsafe, and his anxiety to continue the voyage prompted him to lay off shore only a few hours. When the natives saw that it was Cook's purpose to pass the island without stopping, one of the canoes in which were only two persons, came a little closer, while the man in the bow began blowing a conch-shell, repeating two or three notes which were not wholly unmusical. "What the blowing of the conch portended, I cannot say," writes Cook, "but I never found it the messenger of peace." In this connection, Mr. Ellis says: "This instrument is used in war to stimulate action by the priests in the temple, and also by the herald and others on board their fleet. Its sound is more horrific than that of the drum. The largest shells (of a species of *murex*) are usually selected for the purpose, and are sometimes above a foot in length, and seven or eight inches in diameter at the mouth. In order to facilitate the blowing of this trumpet, they make a perforation, about an inch in diameter, near the apex of the shell. Into this they insert a bamboo cane, about three feet in length, which is secured by binding it to the shell with fine braid; the aperture is rendered air-tight by cementing the outside of it with a resinous gum from the bread-fruit tree. These shells are blown when a procession walks to the temple, or the warriors march to battle, at the inauguration of the king, during the worship at the temple, or when a *taboo*, or restriction, is imposed in the name of the gods. The sound is extremely loud, and the most monotonous and dismal that it is possible to imagine."

#### MEETING OF OMAI AND HIS FRIENDS.

On August 12th, the island of Maitea, one of the Society Group, was sighted, and directly after the shore of Otaheite came into view. Anchorage having been made, several canoes came off to the ship, when Cook was surprised to find that the natives took little notice of Omai, though they knew him to be one of their countrymen who had long been absent. They exhibited not the least curiosity to learn his experience while abroad, nor did their indifference change until he showed them the great quantity of curious things which he had brought back with him. At the sight of them, Ootee, a chief who knew Omai, manifested an immediate interest and offered his friendship, in exchange for which Omai presented him with some red feathers. Upon going on shore on the following day, Cook was taken to a hut wherein lay the remains of a prominent chief named Waheiadooa, whom Cook had known, and who had died twenty months before. The hut, or house, had been specially constructed for the body of the chief, who was held in great veneration. Two men, in white robes, were in constant attendance, to dress and undress the dead



chief, and to replenish supplies of provisions which the spirit was supposed to stand in need of. The body was in a half recumbent position, or what was believed by the natives to be a restful situation, and surrounded with bright clothes which imparted to the place the appearance of a shrine, which it was no doubt intended to be.

On the following day Cook sailed for Matavai Bay, near by, and on landing there was cordially received by the natives, who also gave a joyous welcome to Omai. Nearly all the goats, hogs, cattle, and peacocks, which Cook had brought, were distributed among the chiefs, who received them with many expressions of gratitude, and in return, brought an enormous quantity of provisions, as a present to the crews of the two ships.

#### OFFERING A HUMAN SACRIFICE.

Cook had not been in Matavai Bay two days before he learned that the war between Otaheite and Eimeo, which was inaugurated at the time of his last departure from the island, had been continued at intervals, and that a council of chiefs was then called to consider the policy of prosecuting hostilities with greater vigor. Directly after receiving this news, Cook was invited to attend the meeting of the council, and he gladly accepted. The attendance consisted of about twenty chiefs, each of whom in his turn made a speech before King Otoo, some being in favor of, and others opposed to a continuance of the war, so that no decision seemed to have been arrived at during this meeting. On the following day, Cook was invited to attend before the King, with Omai as interpreter. The old King was entirely deaf, and could only talk and receive responses by signs; but he soon made known his intention of sending another naval force against Eimeo, and so far disregarded Cook's remonstrances that he earnestly solicited his aid. Thus matters stood, with no active measures taken but a great deal of threatenings, until September 1st, when a messenger arrived from a chief named Tettaha, a relative of the King, who was commander-in-chief of the armament fitted out against Eimeo in 1774, bearing intelligence that he had killed a man to be sacrificed to *Eotua*, to obtain the assistance of that god against Eimeo. The sacrificial rites were to be presently performed at the great *morai* in a neighboring district, and Cook sought and obtained permission of Otoo to witness the ceremony.

When the time appointed arrived, Cook set off in a canoe, accompanied by a chief named Potatou, Mr. Anderson, Mr. Webber, and Omai, and in a few hours arrived at Attahooroo, the place where the sacrificial rites were to be performed. He found a numerous crowd assembled, and four priests and their several assistants seated at the *morai*, waiting his arrival. The body that was to be sacrificed lay in a canoe that had been landed, but was still in the wash of the sea. Cook thus describes the ceremonies which followed: "One of the priest's attendants brought a young plantain-tree and laid it down before Otoo. Another approached with a small tuft of red feathers, twisted on some fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, with which he touched one of the King's feet, and then



retired with it to his companions. One of the priests, seated at the *morai*, facing those who were upon the bench, now began a long prayer; and, at certain times, sent down young plantain-trees, which were laid upon the sacrifice. During this prayer, a man who stood by the officiating priest held in his hands two bundles, seemingly of cloth. In one of them, as we afterwards found, was the royal *maro*; and the other, if I may be allowed the expression, was the ark of the *Eotua*. As soon as the prayer was ended, the priests at the *morai*, with their attendants, went and sat down by those upon the bench, carrying with them the two bundles. Here they renewed their prayers, during which the plantain-trees were taken, one by one, at different times, from off the sacrifice, which was partly wrapped up in cocoa leaves and small branches.



A HUMAN SACRIFICE IN OTAHEITE.

It was now taken out of the canoe and laid upon the beach, with the feet to the sea. The priests placed themselves around it, some sitting and some standing; and one or more of them repeated sentences for about ten minutes. The dead body was now uncovered by removing the leaves and branches, and laid in a parallel direction with the sea-shore. One of the priests then, standing at the feet of it, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was at times joined by the others, each holding in his hand a tuft of red feathers. In the course of this prayer some hair was pulled off the head of the sacrifice, and the left eye taken out, both of which were presented to Otoo wrapped up in a green leaf. He did not, however, touch it, but gave to the man who presented it the tuft of feathers which he had received from Towha; this, with the hair and eye, was carried back to the priests. Soon after Otoo sent to



them another piece of feathers, which he had given me in the morning to keep in my pocket. During some part of this last ceremony a kingfisher making a noise in the trees, Otoo turned to me, saying, "That is the *Eotua*," and seemed to look upon it as a good omen.

"The body was then carried a little way with its head toward the *morai*, and laid under a tree, near which were fixed three broad, thin pieces of wood, differently but rudely carved. The bundles of cloth were now laid on a part of the *morai*, and the tufts of red feathers were then placed at the feet of the sacrifice, round which the priests took their stations; and we were now allowed to go as near as we pleased. He who seemed to be the chief priest sat at a small distance, and spoke for a quarter of an hour, but with different tones and gestures, so that he appeared often to expostulate with the dead person, to whom he constantly addressed himself; and sometimes asked several questions, seemingly with respect to the propriety of his having been killed. At other times he made several demands, as if the deceased either now had power himself, or interest with the divinity, to engage him to comply with such requests. Amongst which, we understood, he asked him to deliver Eimeo its chief, the hogs, women, and other things of the island into their hands, which was, indeed, the express intention of the sacrifice. He then chanted a prayer which lasted half an hour, in a whining, melancholy tone, accompanied by two other priests, and in which Potatou and some others joined. In the course of this prayer some more hair was plucked by a priest from the head of the corpse, and put upon one of the bundles. After this the chief priest prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers which came from Towha. When he had finished he gave them to another, who prayed in like manner. Then all the tufts of feathers were laid upon the bundles of cloth, which closed the ceremony at this place.

#### GHASTLY CEREMONIES.

"The corpse was then carried up to the most conspicuous part of the *morai*, with the feathers, the two bundles of cloth, and the drums; the last of which beat slowly. The feathers and bundles were laid against the pile of stones, and the corpse at the foot of them. The priests having again seated themselves round it, renewed their prayers, while some of the attendants dug a hole about two feet deep, into which they threw the unhappy victim, and covered it with earth and stones. While they were putting him into the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, and Omai said to me that it was the *Eotua*. During this time a fire having been made, the dog before mentioned was produced and killed, by twisting his neck and suffocating him. The hair was singed off, and the entrails taken out and thrown into the fire, where they were left to consume. But the heart, liver, and kidneys were only roasted by being laid on the stones for a few minutes; and the body of the dog, after being besmeared with the blood which had been collected in a cocoa-nut shell, and dried over the fire, was with the liver, etc., carried and laid down before the



priests, who sat praying round the grave. They continued their ejaculations over the dog for some time, while two men, at intervals, beat on two drums very loud; and the boy screamed as before, in a loud shrill voice, three different times. This, as we were told, was to invite the *Eotua* to feast on the banquet that they had prepared for him. As soon as the priests had ended their prayers, the carcass of the dog, with what belonged to it, was laid on a *whatta*, or scaffold, about six feet high, that stood close by, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and two pigs which had lately been sacrificed, and at this time emitted an intolerable stench. This kept us at a greater distance than would otherwise have been required of us; for after the victim was removed from the sea-side toward the *morai*, we were allowed to approach as near as we pleased. Indeed, after that, neither seriousness nor attention was much observed by the spectators. When the dog was put upon the *whatta*, the priests and attendants gave a kind of shout, which closed the ceremonies for the present. The day being now also closed we were conducted to a house belonging to Potatou, where we were entertained and lodged for the night. We had been told that the religious rites were to be renewed in the morning, and I would not leave the place while anything remained to be seen.

“Being unwilling to lose any part of the solemnity, some of us repaired to the scene of action pretty early, but found nothing going forward. However, soon after a pig was sacrificed, and laid upon the same *whatta* with the others. About eight o'clock, Otoo took us again to the *morai*, where the priests and a great number of men were by this time assembled. The two bundles occupied the place in which we had seen them deposited the preceding evening; the two drums stood in front of the *morai*, but somewhere nearer it than before, and the priests were beyond them. Otoo placed himself between the two drums, and desired me to stand by him. The ceremony began, as usual, with bringing a young plantain-tree, and laying it down at the King's feet. After this, a prayer was repeated by the priests, who held in their hands several tufts of red feathers, and also a plume of ostrich feathers, which I had given to Otoo on my first arrival, and had been consecrated to this use. When the priests had made an end of the prayer, they changed their station, placing themselves between us and the *morai*, and one of them, the same person who had acted the principal part the day before, began another prayer, which lasted about half an hour. During the continuance of this, the tufts of feathers were, one by one, carried and laid upon the ark of the *Eotua*.

#### CONSECRATION OF THE CORPSE.

“Some little time after, four pigs were produced, one of which was immediately killed, and the others were taken to a sty hard by, probably reserved for some future occasion of sacrifice. One of the bundles was now untied, and it was found, as I have before observed, to contain the *maro*, with which these people invest their kings, and which seems to answer, in some degree, to the European ensigns of royalty. It was carefully taken out of the cloth in which



it had been wrapped up, and spread at full length upon the ground before the priests. It is a girdle about five yards long and fifteen inches broad, and from its name, seems to be put on in the same manner as is the common *maro*, or piece of cloth used by these people to wrap round the waist. It was ornamented with red and yellow feathers, but mostly the latter, taken from a dove found upon the island. The one end was bordered with eight pieces, each about the size and shape of a horse-shoe, having their edges fringed with black feathers. The other end was forked, and the points were of different lengths. The feathers were in square compartments, ranged in two rows, and otherwise so disposed as to produce a pleasing effect. They had been first pasted or fixed upon some of their own country cloth, and then sewed to the upper end of the pendant which Captain Wallis had displayed, and left flying ashore, the first time that he landed at Matavai. This was what they told us, and we had no reason to doubt it, as we could easily trace the remains of an English pendant. About six or eight inches square of the *maro* was unornamented, there being no feathers upon that space, except a few that had been sent by Waheadooa, as already mentioned. The priests made a long prayer relative to this part of the ceremony; and, if I mistook not, they called it the prayer of the *maro*. When it was finished, the badge of royalty was carefully folded up, put into the cloth, and deposited again upon the *morai*.

“The other bundle, which I have distinguished by the name of the ark, was next opened at one end. But we were not allowed to go near enough to examine its mysterious contents. The information we received was that the *Eotua*, to whom they had been sacrificing and whose name is *Ooro*, was concealed in it, or rather what is supposed to represent him. This sacred repository is made of twisted fibres of the husk of the cocoa-nut, shaped something like a large fid or sugar-loaf, that is, roundish, with one end much thicker than the other. We had very often got small ones from different people, but never knew their use before.

“By this time the pig that had been killed was cleaned and the entrails taken out. These happened to have a considerable share of those convulsive motions which often appear in different parts after an animal is killed, and this was considered by the spectators as a very favorable omen to the expedition, on account of which the sacrifices had been offered. After being exposed for some time, that those who chose might examine their appearances, the entrails were carried to the priests and laid down before them. While one of their number prayed another inspected the entrails more narrowly and kept turning them gently with a stick. When they had been sufficiently examined they were thrown into the fire and left to consume. The sacrificed pig, and its liver, etc., were now put upon the *whatta*, where the dog had been deposited the day before; and then all the feathers except the ostrich-plume were enclosed with the *Eotua* in the ark, and the solemnity finally closed.



## PROCURING THE SACRIFICES.

"Four double canoes lay upon the beach before the place of sacrifice all the morning. On the forepart of each of these was fixed a small platform covered with palm leaves tied in mysterious knots; and this also is called a *morai*. Some cocoa-nuts, plantains, pieces of bread-fruit, fish and other things lay upon each of these naval *morais*. We were told that they belonged to the *Eotua*, and that they were to attend the fleet designed to go against Eimeo. The unhappy victim offered to the object of their worship upon this occasion seemed to be a middle-aged man, and as we were told was a *lowlow*, that is, one of the lowest class of the people. But after all my inquiries I could not learn that he had been pitched upon on account of any particular crime committed by him meriting death. It is certain, however, that they generally make choice of such guilty persons for their sacrifice, or else of some common low fellows who stroll about from place to place and from island to island, without having any fixed abode or any visible way of getting an honest livelihood, of which description of men enough are to be met with at these islands. Having had an opportunity of examining the appearance of the body of the poor sufferer now offered up, I could observe that it was bloody about the head and face and a good deal bruised upon the right temple, which marked the manner of his being killed. And we were told that he had been privately knocked on the head with a stone.

"Those who are devoted to suffer, in order to perform this bloody act of worship, are never apprised of their fate till the blow is given that puts an end to their existence. Whenever any one of the great chiefs thinks a human sacrifice necessary on any particular emergency, he pitches upon the victim. Some of his trusty servants are then sent, who fall upon him suddenly, and put him to death with a club, or by stoning him. The King is next acquainted with it, whose presence at the solemn rites that follow is, as I was told, absolutely necessary; and, indeed, on the present occasion, we could observe that Otoo bore a principal part. The solemnity itself is called *Poore Eree*, or chief's prayer; and the victim who is offered up is *Taata-taboo*, or consecrated man. This is the only instance where we have heard the word *taboo* used at this island, where it seems to have the same mysterious signification as at Tonga, though it is there applied to all cases where things are not to be touched. But at Otaheite the word *raa* serves the same purpose, and is fully as extensive in its meaning.

## THE SACRED DEAD HOUSE.

"The *morai* (which, undoubtedly, is a place of worship, sacrifice and burial at the same time), where the sacrifice was now offered, was the place where the supreme chief of the whole island is always buried, and is appropriated to his family and some of the principal people. It differs little from the common ones, except in extent. Its principal part is a large oblong pile of stones, lying loosely upon each other, about twelve or fourteen feet high, contracted

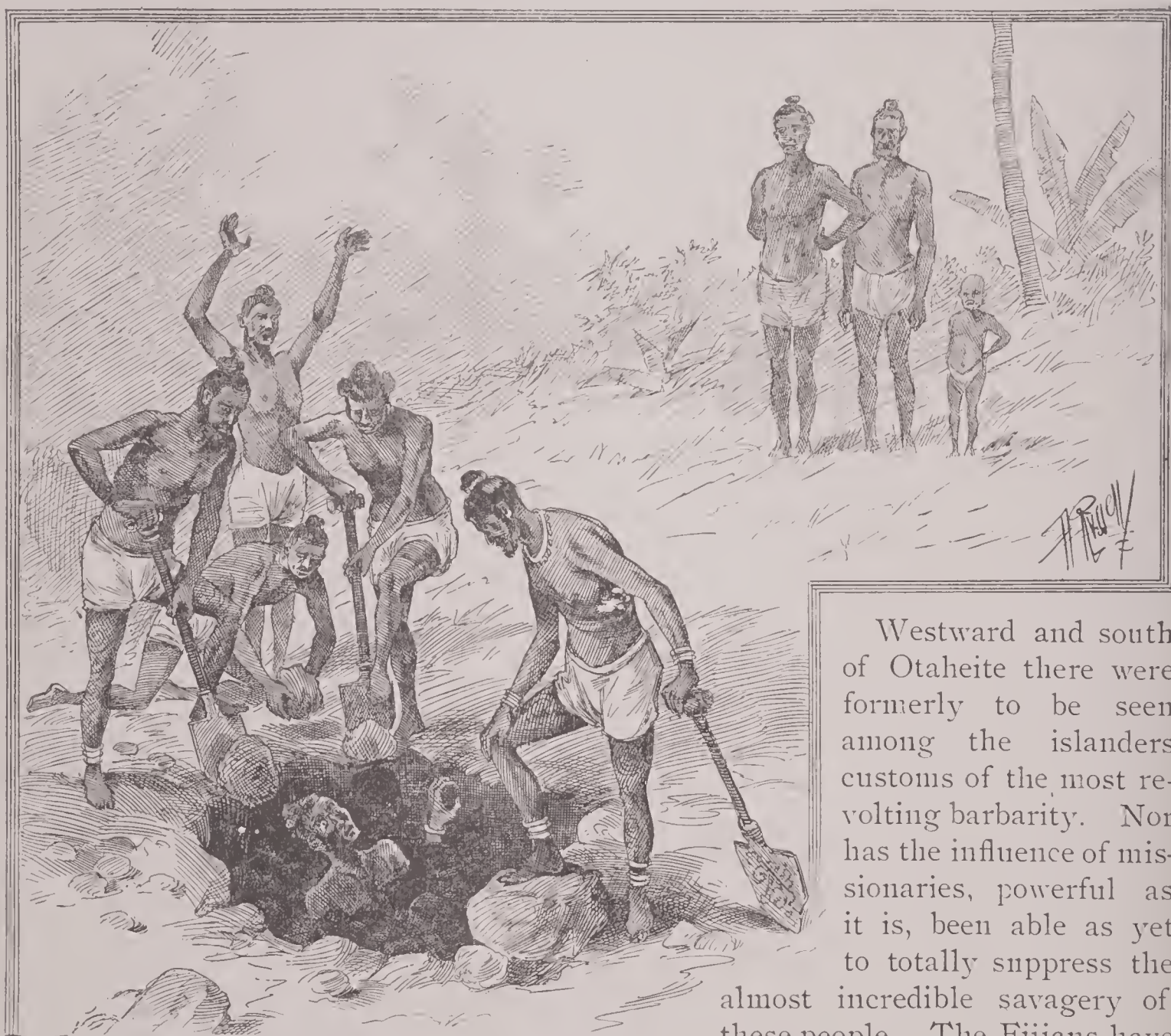


towards the top, with a square area on each side loosely paved with pebble stones, under which the bones of the chiefs are buried. At a little distance from the end nearest the sea is the place where the sacrifices are offered, which, for a considerable extent, is also loosely paved. There is here a very large scaffold or *whatta*, on which the offerings of fruits and other vegetables are laid. But the animals are deposited on a smaller one already mentioned, and the human sacrifices are buried under different parts of the pavement. There are several other relics which ignorant superstition had scattered about this place, such as small stones raised in different parts of the pavement, some with bits of cloth tied round them, others covered with it; and upon the side of the large pile which fronts the arca are placed a great many pieces of carved wood, which are supposed to be sometimes the residence of their divinities, and consequently held sacred. But one place, more particularly than the rest, is a heap of stones at one end of a large *whatta*, before which the sacrifice was offered, with a kind of platform at one side. On this are laid the skulls of all the human sacrifices, which are taken up after they have been several months under ground. Just above them are placed a great number of the pieces of wood; and it was also here where the *maro*, and the other bundle supposed to contain the god *Ooro* (place of the ark), were laid during the ceremony—a circumstance which denotes its agreement with the altar of other nations.

“It is much to be regretted that a practice so horrid in its own nature, and so destructive of that inviolable right of self-preservation which everyone is born with, should be found still existing; and (such is the power of superstition to counteract the first principles of humanity) existing too among a people who in many other respects are emerged from the brutal manners of savage life. What is still worse, it is probable that these bloody rites of worship are prevalent throughout all the wide-extended islands of the Pacific Ocean. The similarity of customs and language, which our late voyages have enabled us to trace between the most distant of these islands, makes it not unlikely that some of the most important articles of their religious institutions should agree. And, indeed, we have the most authentic information that human sacrifices continue to be offered at the Friendly Islands. When I described the *Natche* at *Tonge-taboo*, I mentioned that, on the approaching sequel of that festival, we had been told that ten men were to be sacrificed. This may give us an idea of the extent of this religious massacre in that island. And though we should suppose that never more than one person is sacrificed on any single occasion at Otaheite, it is more than probable that these occasions happen so frequently as to make a shocking waste of the human race; for I counted no less than forty-nine skulls of former victims lying before the *morai*, where we saw one more added to the number. And as none of those skulls had as yet suffered any considerable change from the weather, it may hence be inferred, that no great length of time had elapsed since, at least, this considerable number of unhappy wretches had been offered upon this altar of blood.”



Cook might have observed that the nature of Pacific islanders—or of all the world, for that matter—appears to be more savage, not as they approach the equator, but as they are found nearer to the Antarctic circle. Readers of this book cannot fail to notice a striking difference in the brutal instincts of the peoples living south of the equator, and to observe that reports of all voyagers to lands north of that line confirm the opinion that human nature exhibits more merciful traits in the northern latitudes than in the equatorial or southern; and this is true of the civilized as well as of the barbaric, though the most accomplished ethnologist or psychologist is at a loss for a reason to explain why it should be so.



FIJIAN BURYING A PRISONER ALIVE.

Westward and south of Otaheite there were formerly to be seen among the islanders customs of the most revolting barbarity. Nor has the influence of missionaries, powerful as it is, been able as yet to totally suppress the almost incredible savagery of these people. The Fijians have always been distinguished for

their astounding cruelties, and in one respect their depravity exceeds that of all their neighbors. Thus, while many are cannibals, to these horrible practices the Fijians added that of burying their victims alive and afterwards resurrecting and devouring the corpses, none of which customs ever obtained among islanders north of the equator.



## CHAPTER XLVIII.

### A DANCE OF THE KING'S FOUR SISTERS.



UPON returning from the ceremonies above described, Cook repaired to his ship; but on the following day returned to the shore, and in the evening was entertained by the King, who introduced his four sisters, who performed a dance called the *hee-va* for his amusement. The dress of the dancers was like that already described, consisting of a loose robe, bodice, and a gathering of flounced cloth at the back in fanciful resemblance of wings. On their heads they wore little caps decorated with stars, and the breast was covered with feathers. Their movements were graceful, though timed by a drum beaten by an old man. Two of the women would advance together, followed by two men who performed many comical antics, and who, indeed, seemed to monopolize the attention of the audience; but at the conclusion of the dance, Cook indicated his appreciation by making some presents to the women.

A few days after, a battle occurred between the navies of Otaheite and Eimeo, in which the latter were defeated, though only three men were killed, whose bodies were sacrificed to *Eotua*, after the same manner as just before described. Cook then visited Eimeo, peace having been concluded, and after a short stay on that island, went to Huaheine, where he built a house and set up Omai in the most comfortable manner and with agreeable surroundings. One of the peculiar habits observed by Cook to characterize Eimeo was the indulgences of such indolence that his wives actually fed him as he lay prone upon the ground in apparent helplessness like an infant; but upon enquiry it was ascertained that Eimeo considered it below the dignity of royalty to administer to any corporal need which a servant or wife might relieve.

Cook took his departure from the Society Islands December 19th, and on the 24th discovered Christmas Island, where a stay of a week was made and spent in fishing, catching turtles and observing a partial eclipse of the sun.

### DISCOVERY OF THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

On January 2d, Cook weighed anchor, and proceeding northward, on the 18th he discovered a considerable body of land, and upon nearing shore he was



visited by several canoes laden with men. They approached without signs of fear, and to Cook's surprise and pleasure, he found that their language was the same as that spoken by the Otaheitans. He soon discovered that the island which he had thus happened upon was one of a considerable group, which, in honor of his patron, the Earl of Sandwich, he named the Sandwich Islands.

Making a considerable stay at these islands, Cook was enabled to familiarize himself with the habits and peculiarities of the natives, who appeared at all times peaceably disposed. In many respects, he found them to resemble the Otaheitans, though scarcely so comely of person. Neither were they so intelligent, though far surpassing the Otaheitans in the construction and handling of canoes. But their most striking characteristic was displayed in their aquatic habits, being apparently as natural in the sea as on land, and in this respect resembling seals more than human beings. Says Cook: "They are vigorous, active, and most expert swimmers; leaving their canoes upon the most trifling occasion; diving under them, and swimming to others though at a great distance. It was very common to see women with infants at the breast, when the surf was so high that they could not land in the canoes, leap overboard, and without endangering their little ones, swim to the shore, through a sea that looked dreadful." To which may be added, that they disport themselves in the wildest surfs, and count it as nothing for even the smallest children to venture far from shore with no other precaution than a small board.

The people lived in more comfortable and pretentious huts than any other islanders whom Cook had met with, and though hardly more delicate in their manners, took greater pains to conceal their nakedness; nor did they mutilate their ears and noses as do most of the Pacific islanders. Like the people of



EIMEO BEING FED BY HIS WIVES.



Otaheite, the Sandwich natives make cloth from the bark of a tree, but possess an art of coloring it much more perfectly and pleasing than those of other islands. Their weapons were spears, knives of hard wood, bows and arrows, slings, and hatchets of stone. But a few pieces of hoop iron were found among them, which they must have purchased from other islanders or taken from the wrecks of ships blown to their shores, as Cook was certainly the first white man to visit them. Their canoes, often thirty feet in length, were both double and single, and the larger were provided with latteen or triangular sails, stretched on a long yard; but their propulsion was principally by paddles.



SANDWICH ISLANDERS SURF-BATHING.

On the 5th of February (1778) Cook took his leave of the Sandwich Islands, and steered northward in quest of the passage which he set out to discover.

#### A VISIT TO THE PEOPLE OF NOOTKA SOUND.

On the 6th of March, he discovered the shore of North America, then known as New Albion, along which he coasted, in a stress of bad weather, with slow progress until the 29th, when he came in sight of the territory of British America. Here he came to anchor in a cove which he called Hope Bay, in the vicinity of Vancouver Island, and directly after saw a dozen natives on the shore, one of whom, probably a chief, began to harangue the white visitors in a



very loud voice, at the same time shaking a rattle and strewing feathers towards them. Finding their invitations to land treated with indifference, the natives soon multiplied, and from the shore shot out thirty-two canoes which directly surrounded the ships.

The next morning, Cook moved his ship into a more favorable harbor, which he called Nootka Sound, and then went on shore to visit the natives, who were peaceable and anxious to trade anything which they possessed for scraps of iron. The articles which they offered were skins of foxes, deer, coons, martens, polecats, sea-otters, bows, arrows, spears, wooden visors of



MASKED ROWERS OF SANDWICH ISLANDS.

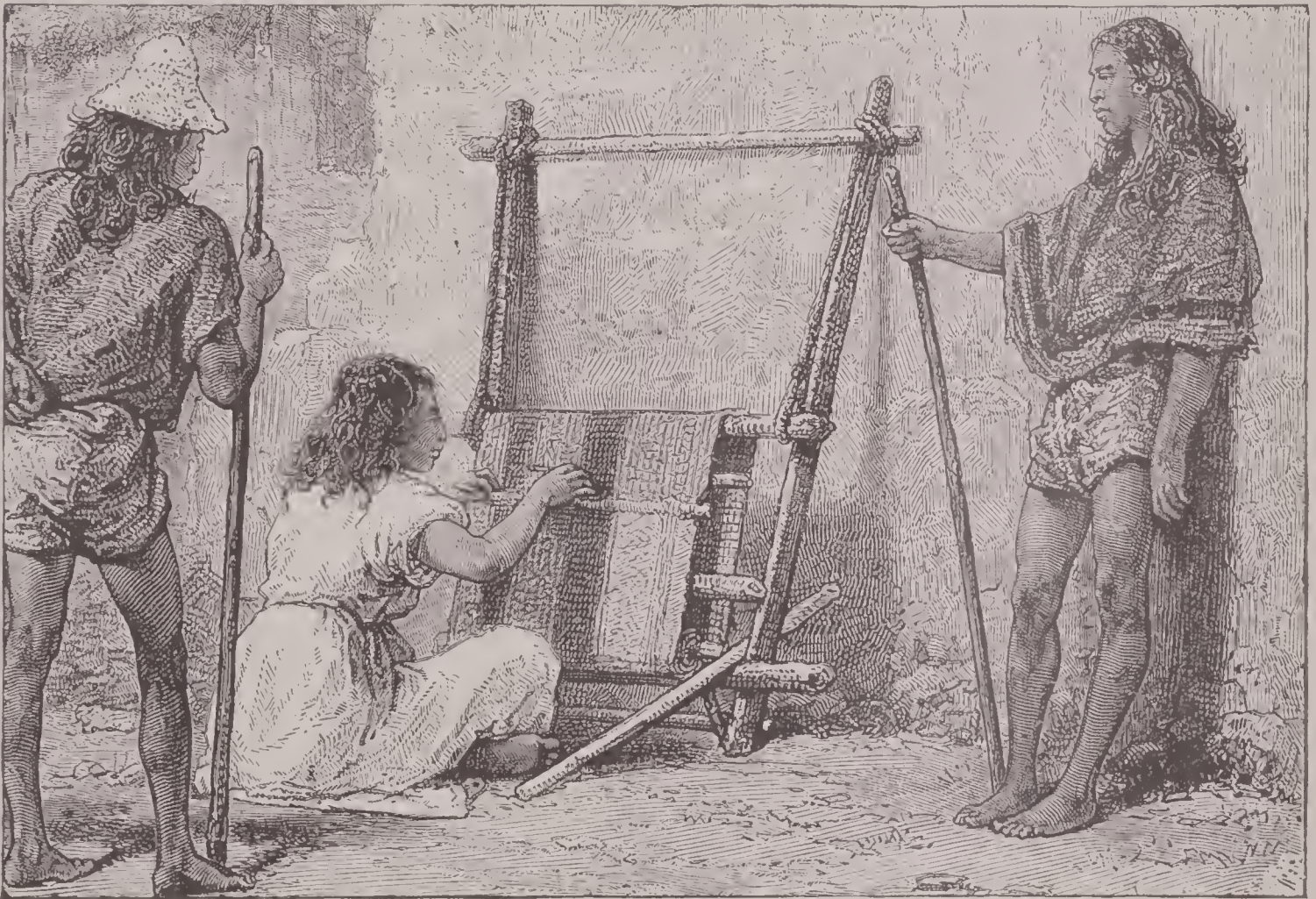
hideous features, and clothing made of skins and also from a plant resembling hemp. But in addition to these articles, the people brought also skulls, and human hands from which the flesh was not yet stripped, which served to convince Cook that the natives were cannibals, at least addicted to the horrible practice of eating the bodies of their enemies.

As the exchange was conducted to the great satisfaction of both parties, the natives continued to increase in numbers until, on the third day, there were not less than 500 canoes, each containing from five to twenty persons, around the ships. Many of the people wore hideous masks and continuously shook a small rattle, which was afterwards ascertained to be the insignia of the priests.



## A VISIT TO A NOOTKA VILLAGE.

Cook remained in Nootka Sound for several weeks, but it was not until April 19th that the weather moderated so as to permit him to leave his ships for any length of time. On this date he paid a visit to some of the Indian villages, the first of which he thus describes: "The people of this village were numerous, and to the most of whom I was now well known, received me very courteously, every one pressing me to go into his house, or rather his apartment, for several families live under the same roof. I did not decline the invitation; and my hospitable friends whom I visited spread a mat for me to sit upon, and showed me every other mark of civility. In most of the houses



BARK CLOTH WEAVING IN NEW ZEALAND.

were women at work making dresses of the plant or bark before mentioned, which they executed exactly in the same manner that the New Zealanders manufacture their cloth. Others were occupied in opening sardines. I had seen a large quantity of them brought on shore from canoes, and divided by measure amongst several people, who carried them up to their houses, where the operation of curing them by smoke-drying is performed. They hang them on small rods, at first about a foot from the fire; afterwards they remove them higher and higher to make room for others, till the rods on which the fish hang reach the top of the house. When they are completely dried, they are taken down and packed closely in bales, which they cover with mats. Thus they are kept



till wanted; and they are not a disagreeable article of food. Cod, and other large fish, are also cured in the same manner by them; though they sometimes dry these in the open air, without fire."

#### INCONCEIVABLE FILTH AND DEGRADATION.

The houses of these people are very rude affairs, little designed for comfort, the frame-work being poles, on which are set upright and laid on loose boards which scarcely exclude the rain, but freely permit the escape of smoke. But to their rudeness is added inconceivable filth, for not only cooking but the cleaning of fish is done in their dwellings, and all refuse matter is cast into a pile generally near the centre, where it remains to exhale its noisome odors, until grown so large in size that its removal is necessary to give room for the



INTERIOR OF A NOOTKA HUT.

free movements of the occupants of the house. But in every respect the natives are inconceivably filthy, greasing their bodies with train-oil and ochre, and hideously bedaubing their faces with paint. Their garments of skins or hemp-cloth are rarely changed, and become so begrimed as to appear exceedingly stiff and uncomfortable. Many of them wear masks a greater part of the time, and as many more cover the head with grass, boards, and feathers wrought into the shape of a canoe bow, and painted to increase the resemblance. Others yet adopt disguises no less grotesque, and for no other reason apparently than to render the appearance hideous. In most of the dwellings are sleeping benches, at the head of which is generally an idol made from the trunk of a tree and carved to represent a human face, and to which devotions are made.



## AMONG THE ESQUIMAUX, AND DEATH OF MR. ANDERSON.

Cook departed from Nootka Sound, April 26th, and continued northward, passing many islands, but without stopping until he was forced into harbor by bad weather and dense fogs at Cape Hinchinbroke. He made a short stay here to repair a leak in his ship and look after some damaged rigging of the *Discovery*. Some Esquimaux came off to the ships, but though Cook remained in Snug Corner Bay until May 17th, the natives could not be induced to engage in any considerable exchange. Sailing again, the next stop was made in Prince William Sound, where Cook was visited by many natives of Oonalaska, whose appearance somewhat resembled the people met with at Nootka Sound. Their canoes, however, were very different. Their large boats were not so dissimilar, but they were comparatively rare, and generally managed by women, so that they became to be known as "women's boats." Their more numerous canoes were made of skins and were only large enough to accommodate one or two men. These boats were called *kyaks*, and were so made that the body of the rower sat in a small hole in which his waist fitted almost perfectly tight, so that the waves might freely wash over the boats without any water entering.

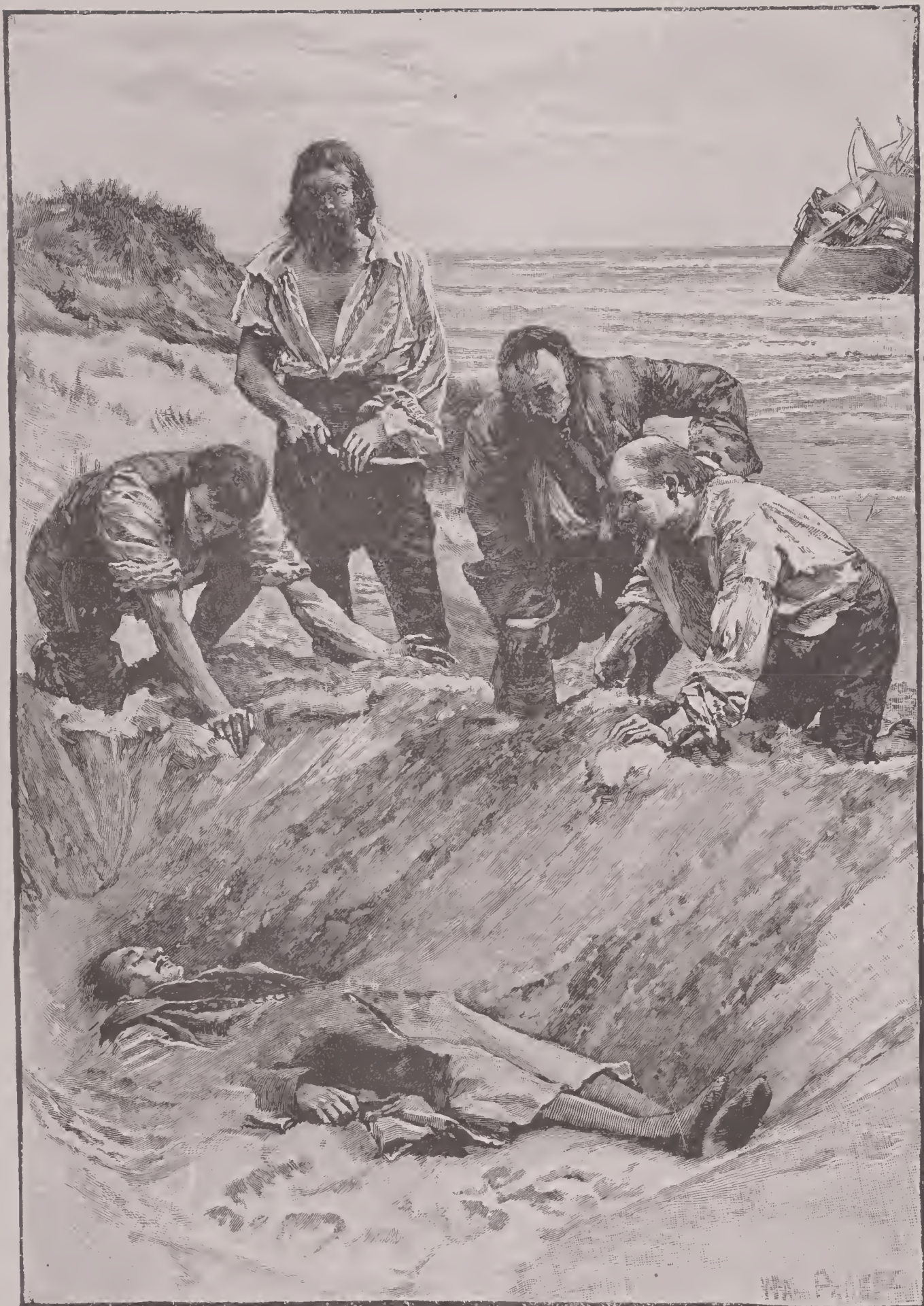
Leaving Prince William Sound, the expedition continued northward until a large stream of water was found, which Cook believed to afford the passage he had come to seek, but which proved to be a large river. To this stream he gave the name of Cook River, but which is now known as the Yukon. Returning out of the river, Cook proceeded northward until arrested by the Aleutian Archipelago, which compelled him to steer directly westward for some time. On August 30th (1778), Mr. Anderson, surgeon of the *Resolution*, expired, having lingered for a twelvemonth with consumption. On the day of his death a considerable island was discovered, to which the name of Anderson was given, in his honor, and on which a landing was made and his body buried with appropriate ceremonies befitting his rank and the exalted esteem in which he was held by his comrades.

## AMONG THE SEA-HORSES.

After doubling the Aleutian Islands, Cook steered north again, and so continued until he reached 70 degrees north latitude, when his course was arrested by vast fields of ice, on which he perceived great numbers of sea-horses, or walruses, many of which the crew killed, and their flesh, though not generally esteemed, Cook declares was very savory.

Being unable to push his way further north at that season, Cook crossed Behring Sea to Kamtchatka, where he came into contact with the Tschutski and Kamtchatka people, who received him hospitably, and with whom he remained until September 17th, when the season being too far advanced to permit of passage through Behring Strait, he concluded to turn southward again and pass the winter at the Sandwich Islands, with the intention of renewing his search for the north-west passage in the following summer. On the way, however, circumstances compelled him to put into Oonalaska, where he spent some





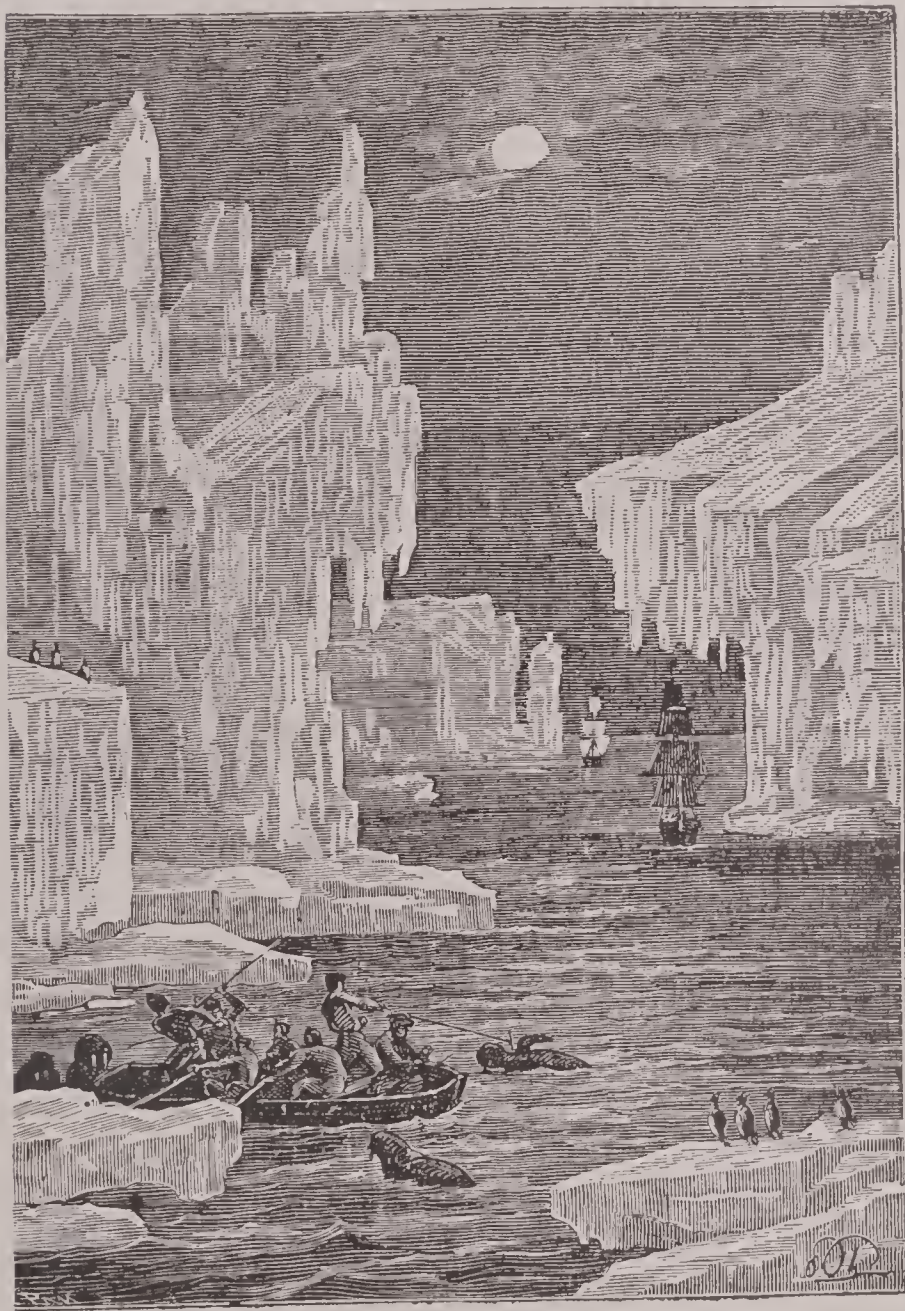


time with the natives, and some Russians who were there for their government, developing the seal fisheries. It was not until November 26th, that departure was made from Oonalaska for the Sandwich Islands, at which he arrived January 16th following, and anchored in Karakakooa Bay, which is on the west side of Owhyhee Island. Here the ships were directly crowded with natives, whose canoes were so numerous that they lay about the vessels, side by side, a hundred deep. Besides those who came off in canoes, thousands stood on the shore looking wistfully, and hundreds swam around the ships like shoals of fish.

#### COOK IS MADE A GOD.

The crowd became at length so great that there was danger of capsizing the ships, which, however, was averted by a chief named Kaneena, who, at Cook's request, drove the natives from the ship, and pitched one loitering man headlong into the sea. Though the number of visitors was almost incalculably great, yet to Cook's surprise no attempt at pilfering was made, which fact seemed to prove the natives to be more honorable than any that Cook had met with on other islands.

After the chiefs, Kaneena and Pareea, had somewhat subdued the exceedingly great curiosity of the islanders, a third chief named Koah, who combined with his office that of priest, came on board and made an offering of a small pig to his god, after which he invested Cook



KILLING SEA-HORSES AMONG THE ICEBERGS.

with a piece of red cloth, the same which is used to clothe their idols. He was now made one of their titular deities, and when he directly afterwards went on shore, he was received by four men bearing wands tipped with dog's hair, who went before him crying *Orono*, whereupon the crowds quickly disappeared or fell prostrate on their faces. Mr. Ellis describes the circumstances leading to the creation of the god *Orono* as follows: "Among the kings who governed Hawaii, or an extensive district in the island, during what may in its chronology be called the



fabulous age, was *Rono*, or *Orono*, who on some account became offended with his wife and murdered her; but afterwards lamented the act so much as to induce a state of mental derangement. In this condition he travelled through all the islands, boxing and wrestling with every one he met. He subsequently set sail in a singularly-shaped canoe for Tahiti (Otaheite), or a foreign country. After his departure he was deified by his countrymen, and annual games of boxing and wrestling were instituted in his honor. As soon as Captain Cook arrived, it was supposed and reported that the god *Rono* was returned; the priests clothed him with the sacred cloth worn only by the god, conducted him to their temples, sacrificed animals to propitiate his favor, and hence the people prostrated themselves before him as he walked through the village.



COOK IN THE HARBOR OF KARAKAKOOA BAY.

But the adoration paid to Captain Cook was only begun by the ceremony just described. He was conducted by Koah to the *morai* situated on the south side of the beach, and which consisted of a solid pile of stone, forty yards long, twenty broad, and fourteen in height. The top was flat and well paved, and surrounded by a wooden rail on which was fixed a large number of skulls of captives sacrificed on the death of Sandwich Island chiefs. On the top of this platform was a scaffold, supported by five poles; on this were two small houses with a covered communication. Cook was taken first to the summit of the platform and presented to two images made of wood and having the most repulsive features. He was then conducted to the base of the scaffold, where there were twelve other idols arranged in a semi-circle on a table, in front of which lay the remains of a hog in an advanced stage of decay, which were taken up and held



out towards Cook. With Koah still leading, Cook then mounted to the top of the scaffold, where he was again invested with a fold of red cloth. They then descended and entered a depression in the platform, where Cook was presented to two more idols, after which, baked hogs, cocoa-nuts, and bananas were brought and a feast prepared, in which the brewing and drinking of *kava* was no small part. This ended the ceremonies, and by them Cook had been elevated to a god.

Being one of the deities, it was now no trouble for Cook to command the people and exact obedience; so he ordered the ships beached in order to make some necessary repairs, and an observatory was set up, while the priests gave him assistance and kept him provided with what was really a superabundance of provisions.



KING TERREEOBOO ON HIS WAY TO VISIT COOK.

#### THE DEMEANOR OF THE NATIVES CHANGED.

Everything was pleasant for Cook until the 24th, on which date none of the islanders came near the ships, giving as their excuse that the place was *tabooed*, and all intercourse interdicted on account of the arrival of the King, Terreeoboo, who was about to visit the ships. "The next day," says Cook, "about noon, the King, in a large canoe, attended by two others, set out from the village and paddled towards the ships in great state. Their appearance was grand and magnificent. In the first canoe was Terreeoboo and his chiefs, dressed in their rich feathered cloaks and helmets, and armed with long spears and daggers; in the second came the venerable Kaoo, the chief of the priests, and his brethren with their idols displayed on red cloth. These idols were busts of a gigantic size, made of wicker-work, and curiously covered with small feathers of various colors, wrought in the same manner with their cloaks. Their eyes

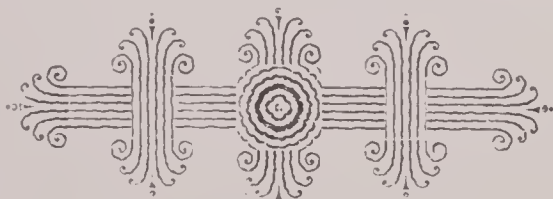


were made of large pearl oysters, with a black nut fixed in the centre; their mouths were set with a double row of fangs of dogs, and together with the rest of their features were strangely distorted. The third canoe was filled with hogs and various kinds of vegetables. As they went along, the priests in the centre canoe sung their hymns with great solemnity; and, after paddling round the ships, instead of going on board, as was expected, they made toward the shore at the beach where we were stationed."

Cook received the King with a salute, and then accompanied him on shore to the royal tent, where, after first being seated the King arose and taking off his own cloak threw it over the shoulders of Cook, and then placed a feathered helmet on his head and a curious fan in his hand, the ceremony concluding with an exchange of names, which, among all the Pacific Islanders, is the strongest pledge of friendship.

The adoration and hospitality of the natives so effectually disarmed Cook and his men of all fears that the crews went about freely among the people who seemed never to tire of showing them kindnesses. But all this familiarity resulted to the disadvantage of the explorers, for after a time the natives began to systematically plunder their visitors, and carried their thefts so far as to endanger the further success of the expedition. To stop their thieving Cook was at length compelled to resort to harsh means, and an example was made by flogging one of the natives on the decks of the *Discovery*.

The harbor of Karakakooa was by no means a safe one, and Cook decided to leave there and find, if possible, a more secure shelter, which fact becoming known to the King, he made a large present of hogs and provisions to his white visitors, but appeared to be glad that his duties of entertaining them were at end. Accordingly Cook weighed his anchor and stood out of the bay just as a terrific gale came on, so sudden that several natives on board the ship at the time found it safer for them to remain than to attempt to return to shore in canoes. But after sailing around the islands from the 4th to the 10th of February, 1779, without finding any better anchorage Cook was forced to return to Karakakooa, but on putting into the bay again he was astonished to find the natives very different in their demeanor from that previously exhibited, though the priests continued to show their former kindnesses.





## CHAPTER XLIX.

### FIRST CONFLICT WITH THE SANDWICH ISLANDERS.



HE people no longer betrayed any curiosity, nor did they return to the ships to renew their protestations of friendship or to trade. Things began to look suspicious, though there was no interference of any kind until the evening of the 13th, when a party being sent on shore for a supply of fresh water, they soon returned with the report that the islanders were growing tumultuous and arming themselves with stones. The mob of natives was soon dispersed, however, but not without evidence of a concerted hostile movement. To meet any attempt of a warlike character, the marines were sent on shore with loaded muskets, and Cook went himself in the pinnace, hoping that his presence would prevent any uprising. At the

same time, there was heard musket firing, which proved to be from the crew of the *Discovery*, who were shooting at a canoe in which were several natives who, Cook supposed, had stolen something from the ship, and he set out in pursuit of them; but they escaped. Another affair, growing out of the same circumstances, led to the knocking down of Pareea, one of the chiefs, who was struck on the head by one of the seamen with an oar, whereupon the natives attacked the marines with a shower of stones and with such fury that the crew were driven into the sea, and forced to swim to a rock near by.

The attack was not followed up, however, but the feeling of uneasiness continued to increase. The next morning the cutter belonging to the *Resolution* was missed, having been stolen during the night, and to recover this Cook armed nine of his marines, and taking a musket himself, went ashore in the pinnace, first giving orders to capture every canoe possible, and to seize upon and hold as hostages any priests or chiefs that might be arrested. The events which followed are thus described by Captain King, who succeeded to the command of the *Resolution* after Cook's death:

#### THE KILLING OF CAPTAIN COOK.

"In the meantime, Captain Cook having called off the launch, which was stationed at the north point of the bay, and taken it along with him, he proceeded to Kowrowa and landed with the lieutenant and nine marines. He immediately



marched into the village, where he was received with the usual marks of respect: the people prostrating themselves before him, and bringing their accustomed offerings of small hogs. Finding that there was no suspicion of his design, his next step was to inquire for Terreeoboo and the two boys, his sons, who had been his constant guests on board the *Resolution*. In a short time the boys returned along with the natives who had been sent in search of them, and immediately led Captain Cook to the house where the King had slept. They found the old man just awoke from sleep, and after a short conversation about the loss of the cutter, from which Captain Cook was convinced that he was in no wise privy to it, he invited him to return in the boat, and spend the day on board the *Resolution*. To this proposal the King readily consented, and immediately got up to accompany him.

"Things were in this prosperous train, the two boys being already in the pinnace, and the rest of the party having advanced near the water-side, when an elderly woman called Kaneekabareea, the mother of the boys, and one of the King's favorite wives, came after him, and, with many tears and entreaties, besought him not to go on board. At the same time, two chiefs who came along with her laid hold of him, and insisting that he should go no farther, forced him to sit down. The natives who were collecting in prodigious numbers along the shore, and had probably been alarmed by the firing of the great guns and the appearances of hostility in the bay, began to throng round Captain Cook and their King. In this situation, the lieutenant of marines observing that his men were huddled together in the crowd, and thus incapable of using their arms, if any occasion should require it, proposed to the captain to draw them up along the rocks close to the water's edge; and the crowd readily making way for them to pass, they were drawn up in a line at the distance of about thirty yards from the place where the King was sitting. All this time the old King remained on the ground, with the strongest marks of terror and dejection in his countenance; Captain Cook, not willing to abandon the object for which he had come on shore, continued to urge him in the most pressing manner to proceed; whilst, on the other hand, whenever the King appeared inclined to follow him, the chiefs who stood round him interposed at first with prayers and entreaties, but afterward, having recourse to force and violence, insisted on his staying where he was. Captain Cook therefore, finding that the alarm had spread too generally, and that it was in vain to think any longer of getting him off without bloodshed, at last gave up the point; observing to Mr. Phillips that it would be impossible to compel him to go on board, without the risk of killing a great number of the inhabitants.

"Though the enterprise which had carried Captain Cook on shore had now failed, and was abandoned, yet his person did not appear to be in the least danger till an accident happened, which gave a fatal turn to the affair. The boats which had been stationed across the bay, having fired at some canoes that were attempting to get out, unfortunately had killed a chief of the first rank.



THE KILLING OF CAPTAIN COOK.





The news of his death arrived at the village where Captain Cook was, just as he had left the King and was walking slowly towards the shore. The ferment it occasioned was very conspicuous; the women and children were immediately sent off, and the men put on their war-mats and armed themselves with spears and stones. One of the natives, having in his hands a stone and a long iron spike (which they called a *pahooa*), came up to the Captain flourishing his weapon by way of defiance, and threatening to throw the stone. The Captain desired him to desist; but the man persisting in his insolence, he was at length provoked to fire a load of small shot. The man having his mat on, which the shot were not able to penetrate, this had no other effect than to irritate and encourage them. Several stones were thrown at the marines, and one of the Erees attempted to stab Mr. Phillips with his *pahooa*, but failed in the effort and received from him a blow from the butt end of his musket. Captain Cook now fired his second barrel, loaded with ball, and killed one of the foremost of the natives. A general attack with stones immediately followed, which was answered by a discharge of musketry from the marines and the people in the boats. The islanders, contrary to the expectations of every one, stood the fire with great firmness, and before the marines had time to reload they broke in upon them with dreadful shouts and yells. What followed was a scene of the utmost horror and confusion.

“Four of the marines were cut off amongst the rocks in their retreat, and fell a sacrifice to the fury of the enemy; three more were dangerously wounded, and the lieutenant, who had received a stab between the shoulders with a *pahooa*, having fortunately reserved his fire, shot the man who had wounded him just as he was going to repeat his blow. Our unfortunate commander, the last time he was seen distinctly, was standing at the water’s edge, and calling out to the boats to cease firing, and to pull in. If it be true, as some of those who were present have imagined, that the marines and boatmen had fired without his orders, and that he was desirous of preventing any further bloodshed, it is not improbable that his humanity, on this occasion, proved fatal to him; for it was remarked, that whilst he faced the natives, none of them had offered him any violence, but that having turned about to give his orders to the boats, he was stabbed in the back, and fell with his face in the water. On seeing him fall, the islanders set up a great shout, and his body was immediately dragged on shore and surrounded by the enemy, who, snatching the daggers out of each other’s hands, showed a savage eagerness to have a share in his destruction.”

The marines having been killed or beaten off, the body of Captain Cook fell into the hands of the natives, who at once cut it up, and, after offering it great indignities, burnt a considerable part. On the night following, two friendly islanders came out to the ship, bearing with them about nine pounds weight of flesh, that proved to have been a part of the body, and which they had brought to the ship as a proof of their friendship and sincere regret for the tragedy. Soon after, the surviving marines of both ships made a resolute



attack on the natives, killing a large number, and burning one of their villages, which ravages they declared that they would continue until the bodies of Cook and those that had fallen by the hands of the islanders were surrendered up. This threat not having the immediate effect of bringing the natives to terms, the attack was renewed with increased vigor, not only by the marines on shore, but by a bombardment from the ships' cannons, which dealt great havoc, destroying the *morai*, and killing a large number of the islanders, whose heads were afterwards cut off and displayed on the ship's decks. This slaughter was only stopped by a procession of peace-makers, who advanced in the face of a volley

of musketry, signifying by signs, as best they could, their intentions to accept any terms that the victors might chose to impose.

Unfortunately these overtures for peace were not understood until several more of the natives had been sacrificed to the vengeful disposition of the marines, so that the shore was almost lined with dead bodies, while smoke from a hundred burning huts told how great had been the havoc.



VIEW OF THE PLACE WHERE COOK WAS KILLED.

#### SURRENDER OF PARTS OF CAPTAIN COOK'S BODY.

In compliance with requests of Captains King and Clerke, a great number of people came down from the hill, carrying pieces of sugar-cane, bread-fruit, and plantains, who were preceded by two drummers. As they reached the sea-shore they sat down, and a chief, named Eappo, motioned for a boat to be sent to them from the ship. In response to the signal, Captain Clerke went himself on shore with a party of his marines, whereupon Eappo entered the boat, and delivered to Captain Clerke a package covered with fine new cloth and a cloak of black and white feathers, indicating that therein were the mortuary relics of Captain Cook. And so it proved to be, for on opening the bundle



there were found entire both hands of the lamented commander, which were readily recognized by a scar of an old wound; there was also a portion of the skull, to which the scalp and two ears were still attached, and the bones of both arms from which the flesh had been cut. Says Captain King: "Eappo, and the King's son, came on board, and brought with them the remaining bones of Captain Cook, the barrels of his gun, his shoes, and some other trifles that belonged to him. Eappo took great pains to convince us that Terreeoboo, Maiha-maiha, and himself, were most heartily desirous of peace; that they had given us the most convincing proof of it in their power; and that they had been prevented from giving it sooner by the other chiefs, many of whom were still our enemies. He lamented, with the greatest sorrow, the death of six chiefs we had killed, some of whom, he said, were amongst our best friends. The cutter, he told us was taken away by Pareea's people, very probably in revenge for the blow that had been given him, and that it had been broken up the next day. The arms of the marines, which we had also demanded, he assured us, had been carried off by the common people, and were irrecoverable; the bones of the chief alone having been preserved, as belonging to Terreeoboo and the *Erees* gods. Nothing now remained but to perform the last offices to our great and unfortunate commander. Eappo was dismissed with orders to *taboo* all the bay; and, in the afternoon, the bones having been put into a coffin, and the service read over them, they were committed to the deep with the usual military honors. What our feelings were on this occasion, I leave the world to conceive; those who were present know that it is not in my power to express them."

#### EXTRAORDINARY VENERATION OF CAPTAIN COOK'S BONES.

The account given by Captain King of the killing of Captain Cook and the indignities offered to his remains, does not agree with information since given by the natives to missionaries stationed on the islands. Mr. Ledyard, who was one of the marines who accompanied the expedition, also dissents from Captain King's opinion, and declares that the murder of his commander was not premeditated, but was precipitated by the rash act of one of the marines killing a chief, and a series of petty quarrels and abuses, for which the ships' crews were responsible. The mutilation of Captain Cook's body was at first considered as a proof of disgusting revenge, but it was in fact only an evidence of the high honor in which he had been held. Mr. Ellis, who took great pains to ascertain all the facts attending this melancholy occurrence, was informed by one of the natives, who was present at the time, that after Cook's death "they all wailed. His bones were separated, the flesh was scraped off and burnt, as was the practice in regard to their own chiefs when they died. They thought he was the god *Rono*, worshipped him as such, and after his death, revered his bones."

It has already been mentioned that the extraordinary honors paid to Captain Cook at the Sandwich Islands, were rendered in the belief that he was their god *Rono* or *Orono*. "But," says Mr. Ellis, "when in the attack made



upon him, they saw his blood running and heard his groans, they said 'No this is not *Rono*.' Some, however, after his death still supposed him to be *Rono*, and expected he would appear again. Some of his bones, his ribs, and breast-bone were sacredly regarded as part of *Rono*, and deposited in a *heiau* (temple) dedicated to *Rono*, on the opposite side of the island. There religious homage was paid to them, and from thence they were annually carried in procession to several other *heiaus*, or borne by priests round the island, to collect

the offerings of the people, for the support of the worship of that god. The bones were preserved in a small basket of wicker-work, completely covered with red feathers, and were in those days considered to be the most valuable articles the natives possessed. The bones thus preserved were never recovered, having no doubt been deposited by the priests, to whose care they were entrusted, in some secret cave, where probably they still remain. But the natives have never since ceased to cherish the memory of the unfortunate commander, and a cairn was by them erected to his honor on the site where he fell. This rude monument was replaced a few years after by a pretentious shaft of marble, as is shown in the accompanying illustration.



MONUMENT TO COOK ON THE SANDWICH ISLANDS.

#### DEATH OF CAPTAIN CLERKE.

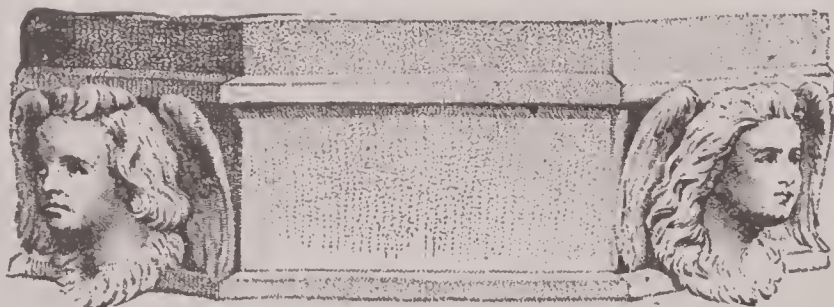
On March 15, 1779 the two ships, *Resolution* and *Discovery*, took their departure from the Sandwich Islands, and steered northward again in quest of the long sought passage around North America. Captain Clerke, though suffering in the last stages of consumption, was unwilling to abandon the first purpose of the voyage, and being now invested with the command of the ex-



pedition, his ambition made him the more anxious to succeed in the great undertaking, and this intense desire no doubt served to prolong his life, as it nerved him to increased endeavor.

The two ships made excellent progress, and in a month the shore of Kamtchatka was reached, where a considerable stay was made to increase their store of provisions by traffic with the Kamtchadales. Thence continuing, the vessels pushed northward to 80 degrees (to Icy Cape), but finding another barrier of ice, they sailed south and then north-west to a like latitude along the shore of Siberia. The extreme limit was named North Cape, from which, on account of the impassable ice, the expedition returned southward again. On August 22d when the ships were near the harbor of St. Peter and St. Paul, on the coast of Kamtchatka, Captain Clerke expired, being no longer sustained or inspired by an ambition; for his hopes were destroyed by the limitless fields of ice that disputed his further passage northward. In the harbor was a small Russian village and garrison, and to this place the remains were taken and given Christian burial, a priest officiating at the service, and the soldiers of the garrison and all the marines firing a volley over his grave, which was made under the shadow of a large tree that stood on the north side of the harbor.

Captain Clerke had accompanied Captain Cook on his three voyages, on the first acting as master's mate, on the second as lieutenant, and on the third being promoted to the command of the *Discovery*, and after Captain Cook's death he became commander-in-chief of the expedition. At his death, Captain Gore succeeded to the command of the *Discovery*, and Captain King was made chief commander. After this change, considerable time was spent on the shore at Kamtchatka among the people of that frigid clime, hunting bears, wolverines, foxes, wolves and seals, by which a large quantity of fresh meat was obtained, and many valuable furs. The vessels then departed, calling at points in Japan, China, and the East India Islands, so that it was not until the 4th of October, 1780, that the expedition returned to England, having been absent for a period of four years, two months and twenty days.





## CHAPTER L.

### ARCTIC VOYAGES.



THE story of Arctic exploration is a long and a thrilling one. Many centuries ago the Scandinavian pirates, who infested every shore, had, as already related, discovered Iceland, and fixed their colonies along its bays. To them it was at first a safe retreat, where they might divide their spoils; but even the earliest of their number did not regard themselves as original discoverers, for on landing they found the remains of horns, bells, crosses, and even books, which led them to believe that the Scotch or Irish had been before them. This, indeed, does not seem improbable, when the fact is remembered that from the most northern point of Scotland to the southern capes of Iceland, the distance is less than five hundred miles, and that the Faroe Islands, situated more than half way,

were known from very early times, certainly before the ninth century.

However, the first authentic record of Arctic voyages begins with that of Flocco, A. D. 861, whose ravens, loosed at regular intervals during his voyage, guided him to Iceland, which he called "Snowland," a name retained for two hundred years after his day. The first permanent settlement on this far distant land was by a party of Norwegian exiles, whose numbers were recruited by friends from the mother country, and soon these settlers became a flourishing colony.

### FATE OF THE GREENLAND SETTLERS.

As told in a previous chapter, Greenland was directly after discovered and settled, and the people were for a while prosperous, but at length disaster came that blotted them out of existence. On the west coast they were involved in hostilities with the Indians, and the population of over one hundred villages perished in the conflict. The fate of the settlement along the east coast is uncertain. Established in 983, at the beginning of the fifteenth century there were one hundred and ninety villages, divided into twelve parishes, having a bishop, several convents and monasteries, and a lineal succession of sixteen bishops, when, as the seventeenth was on his way to take possession of his See, he found all communication with the coast cut off by vast masses of ice which had moved down from the Arctic Ocean. This ice-veil in front of the Greenland continent has never since been removed. Only once do we catch a glimpse of the unfortunate Greenland colonists. In the sixteenth century, a vessel from Norway was driven near the coast; the



sailors saw houses and people in the fields driving their cattle, but the ice prevented a landing, the ship was forced to stand out to sea, and the colonists disappeared from view forever. Time and again were efforts made to reach them, but each resulted in failure; the eastern colonies of Greenland completely disappeared from history.

After Scandinavian times, the authentic history of Arctic exploration is continued by the Zenoës of Venice, who in 1380 made voyages to Greenland and brought back accounts of what they saw. According to their statements the Scandinavian settlements there were both extensive and civilized. There were monasteries where the monks heated their rooms with hot-water pipes



PLACE OF FIRST SETTLEMENT IN GREENLAND.

leading from a volcanic spring; there were churches, warm baths and flower gardens; but the stories of the Zenoës received little credence, being regarded as the idle tales of gossiping travellers.

#### COLUMBUS IN THE POLAR REGIONS.

We are not accustomed to regard Columbus as an Arctic explorer, but his own letters speak of a visit to Iceland, and there are hints that he knew of Greenland and that he knew of the countries to the south that are mentioned by the Zenoës. After the discovery of America, Arctic voyages began to be made with a practical object in view, for the Spaniards, then in the height of their power, claimed all America for themselves, and after the discovery of the pas-



sage to India by the Cape of Good Hope, monopolized the South Seas and dealt severely with all intruders. Other nations desired a share of the trade of the New World, but unable to get it because of the vigilant watch kept up by the Spaniards, began to search for other passages to India and the east. There was a firm belief that such routes existed, and rewards were offered by the authorities of several nations to navigators for any discovery that proved to be of value.

#### SPANISH EXPLORATION.

The Spaniards could not see with indifference the efforts of other nations to find a short route to the east, and for fear lest one of the expeditions should be successful determined to prosecute the investigation for themselves. As early as 1524, Estevan Gomez sailed from Corunna to discover a north-west passage, but what course he took, where he went and what he found are not known. The efforts of the Spanish government were warmly seconded by the Spanish in America, for in 1542 Mendoza, the Viceroy of Mexico, sent two able seamen to examine the north-western coast, but with no result; nor did any better success attend an expedition sent out for the same purpose by the Madrid government in 1544.

It seems strange that the English took so little interest in the discoveries that were setting the world in a whirl, but the records are imperfect, and perhaps more was done than has been reported. It is certain, however, that so little encouragement was given to Cabot that he left England in disgust, and no more expeditions were undertaken until the reign of Henry VIII., when two ships, the "Dominus Vobiscum" and another, were sent to the north-west, where the former was lost, but no records of the voyage have been preserved. This unsatisfactory result did not prevent the fitting out of an expedition in 1553, under the command of Sir Hugh Willoughby. This was undertaken with a new idea. Heretofore all attempts to reach India had been by way of the west, but Willoughby, contrary to the general opinion, believed that by sailing to the north-east, and passing around Europe and Asia, he could reach the Golden Shores. The expedition came to disaster, for on the coast of Lapland the ships were caught in the ice, and three years later the crews were all found dead. Better fortune attended Richard Chancellor, who sailed in the same direction and reached Archangel, whence by land he went to Moscow, and was received by the Czar. Ivan Vasilovitch was interested in the visit of the English party, but apparently infinitely more so in the beard which depended from the chin of one of their number, as he well might be, for we are told it was bright yellow, and five feet two inches long. How far Master George Killingworth's phenomenal beard helped on the treaty afterwards made is not certain, but the commerce resulting from Chancellor's voyage opened the way to future explorations, and English ships soon penetrated as far as Nova Zembla, and did a large trade along the Russian coast.



**FROBISHER'S STRANGE DISCOVERIES.**

While rapid progress was thus made in the north-east, discussion of the north-west pass was carried on with great vigor; its existence was believed in, and one Spanish captain claimed that he had come home from India through it. The account which he gave of his voyage was widely circulated, and stimulated the imagination of the famous Martin Frobisher, who made the finding of the supposed north-west passage the object of his life. So little confidence, however, had capitalists in the stories circulated with regard to it, that fifteen years of almost constant effort elapsed before Frobisher could induce any one to furnish him an outfit. In 1576 he succeeded; two vessels, the "Gabriel" of thirty-five, the "Michael" of thirty, and a pinnace of ten tons, were placed at his disposal; he passed Greenland and entered Frobisher's Strait, thinking it the promised passage, but was stopped by the ice and forced to return. The voyage was so unsatisfactory that no other would have been made had it not been for a singular accident: A sailor brought home a black stone as a memento, and being asked by his wife what he had for her, presented the stone as the sole result. In her anger she threw it in the fire, whence it was rescued some hours later, split into fragments by the heat, and showing a yellow substance which looked like gold. The news of the discovery soon spread, and being told at court, another expedition was quickly fitted out, consisting of a large ship of "nine score tunnes," and two smaller vessels. With this equipment Frobisher returned to the strait, and began to load his ships with ore. Having done so, he set up a monument, which two hundred years later was discovered none the worse for its exposure, and returned loaded with ore and curiosities, among the rest the "horne of a great fishe, two yardes long, growing out of his snoute." Not even after this expedition were the scientists undeceived as to the nature of Frobisher's ore, the supposed gold being merely specks of mica, but such faith was felt that a fleet of fifteen vessels was at once prepared, three of which were to remain, with one hundred persons as colonists, while the others were to bring back the gold.

Under bright auspices the fleet sailed in 1578, but the season was bad, all the straits were full of ice, some of the ships were sunk by collision with the bergs, others were shattered by storms, no settlement was made, little ore was collected, and in August the damaged vessels set out on their return to England, where the unwelcome discovery was made that the mineral collected contained not one particle of the precious metal.

**A FIGHT BETWEEN EXPLORERS.**

All attempts thus far had been failures, but the Earl of Warwick now started on a new plan, and determined to attack the problem from a different direction. He accordingly fitted out a vessel, giving the command to a brave soldier named Edward Fenton, and directed him to proceed to India by the usual route, but to endeavor to return by the north-west. The Spaniards, however, learning of his intention, sent a fleet to the Strait of Magellan to inter-



cept him, and learning the fact, he did not venture to run the risk of encountering the Spanish force, but returned to England, winning laurels by the way in a conflict with the vice-admiral of the Spanish fleet, whose ship he sunk in a Portuguese port.

The merchants of London had not yet relinquished hope of a north-east passage, but in 1580 sent out two vessels under command of Arthur Pet and Charles Jackman, the former of whom returned two years later, having been caught in the Nova Zembla ice, without being able to go further, and no news was ever received of the latter. These two failures put an end to north-east exploration for a long time but directed renewed attention to the north-west.

#### THE LOSS OF SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT.

In 1583, a fleet was fitted out for the famous Sir Humphrey Gilbert, the object being discovery, colonization and conquest. Five ships, from 200 tons to 10 tons capacity, were manned by 260 men of all professions, among the number being five musicians with their instruments, for the purpose of amusing the savages who might be encountered. The first stop was made on the coast of New Brunswick, where possession was taken of the country and laws were made for the government of the colonists and the regulation of their intercourse with the natives. Examinations were made of the coast to the north and south, in search of some strait to the Pacific, but nothing was found, and the expedition started on the return voyage. Gilbert had all along sailed in a 10 ton and unsafe craft called the "Squirrel," and when starting home, was urged to leave the little boat and take passage on the "Golden Hinde," but declined to do so, a rumor having reached his ears that the sailors of the fleet believed him to be afraid of the sea. A terrific storm came on and the last seen of the "Squirrel" was when she passed close under the stern of the larger vessel, and Gilbert was heard to call out, "Courage, my lads, we are as near heaven on sea as on land!" In the morning the little boat was no longer to be seen, for she had been swamped by the waves and all on board were lost.

#### DISAPPOINTMENT OF JOHN DAVIS.

The three voyages of John Davis, undertaken in the years 1585-86-87, brought no more substantial result than the exploration of the strait which bears the name of that daring navigator, and in the establishment of a considerable trade with the Esquimaux, who were conciliated by the musicians taken along. But in spite of their taste for music, the savages proved to be so mischievous and thievish that Davis was soon glad to be rid of them and pursue his investigation without their assistance. He satisfied himself that the way to India lay through the strait he had discovered, but was so far from being able to convince his employers that in spite of his arguments they declined to send him out again; he sought service with the Dutch and in their employ made five voyages to Java and back, the fact being cited by the historians of that time as "A wonderful shewe of the goodnesse of God."

Nine years after Davis had quitted the English service a curious story came



to England from Aleppo. The British agent wrote home to his government that he had seen and talked with an old Greek sailor named Juan de Fuca, who claimed that in returning from the Indies he had discovered a strait on the west coast of North America, and announcing his discovery in Mexico, had been sent as pilot to an expedition designed to occupy and fortify it. A mutiny broke out among the Spaniards and the expedition returned without result. No attention was, at the time, paid to the story, and no attempt made to profit by the discovery, but long after the strait was found exactly where the old Greek said it was, and, in his honor, was called after his name. His supposition that it was the eagerly sought-for passage was not unnatural, as the Bay of Vancouver, into which it leads, is sufficiently large to justify the belief that it penetrated far inland.

#### EXTRAORDINARY SUFFERINGS OF A WRECKED CREW IN THE ARCTIC.

About this time the Dutch vessels were so much troubled by the Spanish cruisers that the Holland government determined to put forth every effort to find a passage to India, which should not lie open to the Spanish men-of-war, and Barentz was sent to try the north-east. He made three voyages, between 1594 and 1597, in one of which he re-discovered Spitzbergen, thought to have been first seen by Willoughby; but in the last voyage his ship was caught in the ice on the eastern coast of Nova Zembla, and damaged beyond hope of repair. The crew were forced to pass the winter on this desolate coast, and their story is interesting, as furnishing the first authentic record of the severity of an Arctic winter. All the phenomena, illustrating the effects of extreme cold, so well known through the narratives of later travellers, were here observed, and for the first time described. The wine and liquors froze, oil became solid, the frost peeled the skin from the faces and hands of the unhappy men; they were subjected to the utmost misery from hunger and cold, and yet throughout their journals, which are still extant, there breathes a piety so



JOHN DAVIS IN THE STRAITS WHICH BEAR HIS NAME.



sweet and resigned that it is hard to tell whether to pity their misfortune more than admire their resignation. When spring came they committed themselves to the sea in their open boats, and in forty days made a journey of more than 1100 miles. Several of their number, including their commander, died from the hardships to which all were equally exposed; but the remainder had the good fortune to fall in with a Dutch vessel at Cola, in which they returned to Holland.

#### A ROLL OF HONOR.

A long roll of honorable names now follows, each being identified with some additional step towards our knowledge of the Polar regions. William Adams, the great pilot, took a Dutch ship to a latitude higher than had been attained by Barentz; Waymouth, in the service of England, skirted the Greenland coast and prepared the way for Hudson, who followed and discovered the strait and bay which bear his name. James Hall, sent out by the Danish government, either to search for the lost colonies of Greenland or to find gold, it is not certain which, examined the western coast of Davis Strait and reported the discovery of several large inlets, one of which he conjectured might be the passage to the Pacific. There was Sir Thomas Button, who the year after Hudson's abandonment by his crew, was sent out to follow the track of that ill-fated commander and explore the great bay which had been discovered by him. Button sailed around it, naming Nelson's river, and wintering on the south coast; but finding all northern passages choked with ice, returned the following year. The next Arctic navigator was Gibbons, who followed Button in an effort to explore Hudson Bay, but was driven back by the ice, and carried by a floe into Labrador Bay, where he stayed for five months, the place being, in derision, named by his crew, "Gibbons, his Hole." There was Bylot, who had been with Hudson Button and Gibbons, who located a number of islands to the west of Davis Strait. On a second voyage this enterprising seaman was accompanied by Baffin, from whose scholarly notes of the progress made much valuable information has been derived. Baffin himself was soon to make a name as an explorer, which he did by penetrating through Davis Strait and exploring a portion of the bay which bears his own name.

All these and many more explorers who diligently examined the north-east coast of America between 1603 and 1615, contributed no little to the general stock of information, although the particular discoveries made by any one were perhaps of no great importance. But the imperfect date of geographical knowledge, the superstitious beliefs, and the fragmentary records that were made, all peculiar to that early time, combine to cloud the real results obtained; and as every discovery was made subordinate to the finding of gold, or the means for extending commerce,—the prime ambitions of the age,—it is not improbable that many discoveries of great geographical importance were made, but were so little regarded that they were left unrecorded.



## CHAPTER LI.

### STORY OF A STARVING CREW.



BEFORE the close of 1619 the Danish government took a renewed interest in Arctic exploration and sent out the famous Jen Munk with two ships of forty-eight men. The story of this voyage is one of the most thrilling in the history of Arctic exploration. The ships penetrated Hudson Bay, and somewhere on the southern coast were hemmed in by the ice. There they wintered and on account of the extreme length of the cold, their provisions were exhausted and the men reduced to such a condition by scurvy and privation that they had no strength to hunt. In May only three out of the whole number were left alive, Munk and two companions, but these encouraged each other to make special effort to procure food. They scratched away the snow and found roots which they eagerly devoured. Gaining thus a little strength, they proceeded to take fish in the streams, and at last formed the determination to try to get back to Europe. One of their ships freeing itself from the ice, they got on board and by singular good fortune these three, in spite of hardships almost innumerable, and ever present starvation, actually succeeded in taking their vessel across the Atlantic to Denmark where they were received as from the dead.

### NORTH-WEST FOX.

Twelve years later the search was resumed by Luke Fox, better known in his own time as North-West Fox, from his constant conversation on the subject of the north-west passage. He set out from England with a good ship and by his own account, "plenty of excellent fatt beefe, strong beere, wheat-meale, sirrups, balsommes, gummes, and pils," but beyond seeing a vast "quantitie of ise, in lumpes as bigg as a churche," besides "masht ise in peaces of all sizes," and "a unicorn about nine foot, back ridged, with a small finne thereon, his side purely white and his shape from his gills to his tale like a mackarall, his head like a lobster, where on his fore part grewe forthe his twined horn above six foot longe," he made no discovery of consequence, and recording in his diary his opinion that he had made "but a scurvie voyage of it," went home. His employers agreed with him as to the character of the



voyage and we hear no more of Fox. Nor did Danell fare any better than Fox, for so numerous were the difficulties he encountered, that he called his journal the "Boke of Danells Lamentations," while the same may be said also of James, who about the same time sailed from England on a voyage which proved fruitless. So complete was the failure in each case that the question was considered to be set at rest and forty years elapsed ere another expedition was fitted out for the Arctic regions.

#### FOUNDING OF THE HUDSON BAY COMPANY.

Meantime the French had occupied Canada, and an adventurer named Grosselies had penetrated from the St. Lawrence to the shores of Hudson Bay. Seeing the possibilities of the country he determined to found a colony there, but the French government would have nothing to do with the scheme and he went to England with his project, where he found an eager listener in the person of Prince Rupert, who had made a reputation as soldier, sailor, poet, chemist and naturalist. Rupert obtained from the King, in 1669, a charter organizing the Hudson Bay Company; a captain named Gillam was sent out, who on Rupert's River built a small stone fort and called it Fort Charles, which proved to be the humble beginning of a mighty commercial enterprise. The employes of this great corporation in one way forwarded geographical research and in another hindered it, for while they made overland journeys to the north and thus contributed much to the general fund of knowledge, they were not slow to assert the monopoly they enjoyed and more than one vessel was turned back by the armed agents of the company which did not favor any exploration but that done by its own people.

However, under Knight and Barlow, Vaughan and Scroggs, the work went on, and public interest in the mythical passage was greatly excited by the long trial of Capt. Middleton in 1742. Middleton had been in the service of the Hudson Bay Company, but was engaged by a wealthy Englishman named Dobbs to undertake a voyage of discovery in 1741. He claimed that he found nothing, but some of his officers declared that he had not tried, and the assertion was made that the Hudson Bay people had bribed him to render the voyage fruitless. No more came of the trial than of the voyage, but the immediate result was the sending out of two ships instead of one, the twain being commanded by Moor and Smith. They wintered about two miles from the company's fort, York, on the Hayes River, and although comfortable huts were built and every precaution taken to prevent suffering from the cold, the utmost misery was endured. Bottled beer was frozen while the bottles were standing before the fire; the difference between the temperature of the huts and the air outside was so great that persons entering fainted; if a door or window was opened, the cold air condensing the moisture within caused a snow shower; the freezing of sap in logs caused them to burst with a noise like a pistol-shot; spirits of wine and pure alcohol became of the consistency of thick oil. "When we touched iron or any other smooth solid surface our fingers were



frozen to it; if in drinking a dram of brandy out of a glass one's tongue or lips touched it, in pulling it away the skin is left on it. One of our people, in carrying a bottle of brandy from the ship to his house, having no cork stopped it with his finger, and so lost the nail and half the finger before he was cured." A winter spent under such circumstances was not favorable for exploration in the spring, but in spite of the debilitated condition of the men, Moor and Smith examined the northern entrances to Hudson Bay and satisfied themselves that were it not for the ice several of the passages they found were perfectly practicable.

#### LOOKING FOR A COPPER MINE.

In 1769, the Hudson Bay Company heard of a copper mine to the north of the bay, and inspired by the hope of gain, sent Samuel Hearne with a company of Indians to look for it. He made three journeys, reaching the North American coast and adding several important items to the general stock of knowledge on the subject. The accuracy of his observations has often been questioned, but the practicability of reaching the coast by a land route was fully established. The failure to discover the copper mine, however, dampened the ardor of the company and no further attempt was made at exploration in this direction by its agents.

Hitherto all Arctic voyages had been undertaken with a business purpose, but in 1773, an interest having aroused in the scientific feature, John Phipps, afterwards Lord Mulgrave, was commissioned to sail as near the North Pole as possible. He proceeded north to Spitzbergen, where his course was blocked by a solid wall of ice which he skirted to the Greenland coast without finding an opening into which the ship could be thrust. This result, for a time, put an emphatic estoppel on the idea of an open Polar sea and men again turned their thoughts to the north-west passage.

#### COOK AND CLERKE.

The subject was now taken up by the British government, a reward of £20,000 offered to the crew of any ship which should discover a practicable route. Two vessels were prepared, the *Resolution* and the *Discovery*, and the command given to the renowned Capt. James Cook and hardly less known Charles Clerke. Their instructions were to proceed to the Pacific, enter the strait the existence of which had been determined by the land explorations of Behring while in the service of the Russian government, and endeavor to make a way from the west to the east. Cook sailed on this, destined to be his last voyage, in 1776, passed round South America, went through Behring Strait and made several landings on the shores of both Asia and Europe. Everywhere he found a barrier of ice through which in vain he endeavored to force his way, and after efforts lasting all the following summer, he withdrew, skirted the coast of Asia for some distance, and finally put in at the Sandwich Islands where he lost his life, as more particularly related in the chapters herein devoted to Cook's voyages. The command was then assumed by Clerke, who in the fol-



lowing year made another effort in the same direction, but was unable to penetrate even as far to the north as Cook had done, and so giving up the experiment he started to return but died on the way and was buried on the Siberian shore.

To co-operate with Cook, in case he should be successful, a vessel was despatched by the British Admiralty to pass as far up Baffins Bay as possible and there await his arrival. The command was given to Lieutenant Pickersgill, who appears to have been a timid man and deterred by the dangers of the undertaking, for instead of proceeding, he crept cautiously from one headland to another along the shore and so wasted the summer and returned to England. He was superseded and his ship, the *Lion*, sent out the following year under Walter Young. This officer sailed boldly up the bay until the channel narrowed and it became impossible for him to proceed further, when he too returned, having discovered nothing.

#### EFFECTS OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

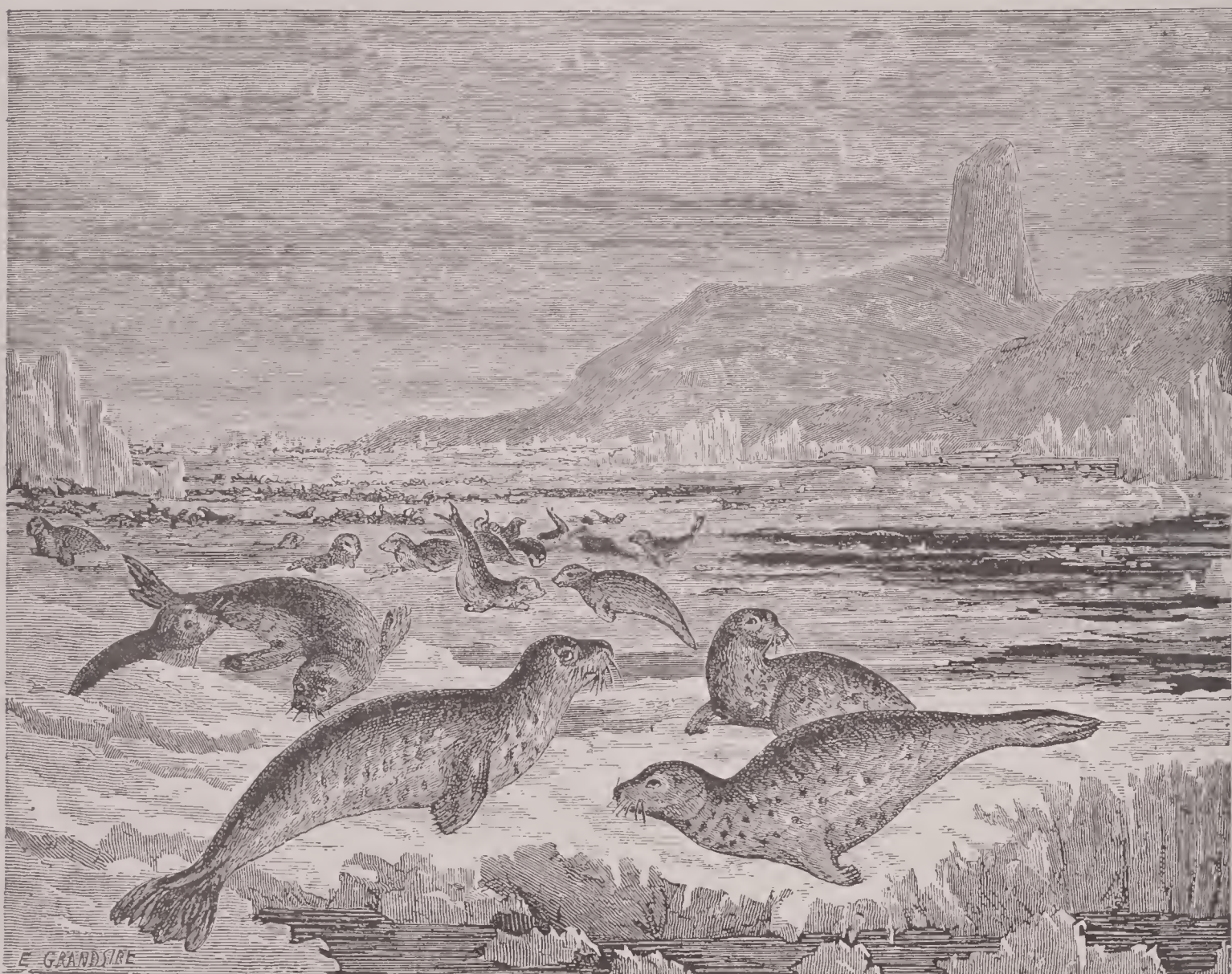
The wars of the American Revolution and with France, put a stop to British explorations from 1776 to 1815, and during this time, with one exception, nothing was done. The exception was a vessel sent out by the Danish government on an expedition to Greenland. Hope that descendants of the lost colonies might still survive had not ceased and Captain Lowenarm was sent to make an examination of the coast. For three years he faithfully tried to penetrate the ice-barrier that kept all vessels from the land, but at no time was he able to approach within less than ten miles, and generally his ship was from thirty to sixty miles from the mountains, nor could he discover the slightest evidence of population.

The wars which distracted Europe did not, however, prevent the Hudson Bay Company from making land explorations, which placed many inlets and islands on the maps, while during the last century the Russian government made considerable progress in Arctic knowledge by examining the coast of Siberia. Their agents ascertained that everywhere the coast was low and encumbered with ice, that America was separated from Asia by a narrow and shallow strait, but made no progress in the direction of finding a practicable passage.

The peace of 1815 caused a revival of interest in Arctic exploration, and the result was a renewal of expeditions. The fresh interest first manifested itself in the doings of Barrow, who, through his influence in Parliament, secured the offer of a reward of twenty thousand pounds for the discovery of a north-west passage, and five thousand pounds for the crew of any ship that went as high as eighty-nine degrees. The display of interest exhibited by Barrow led to two expeditions in the year 1817, each being composed of two ships. The first was designed to explore the Polar Ocean between Spitzbergen and Greenland; the second, to follow the already well beaten route through Davis Strait and Baffins Bay. The experience of the last few expeditions led to the selection of whaling vessels for this service, they being better fitted, both to endure



the hard knocks of the ice, and for the comfortable accommodation of crews in extremely high latitudes. The first expedition was commanded by Beecham and Franklin, the second by Ross and Parry. No result attended the voyage in the direction of Spitzbergen, but the other expedition discovered in North Baffin Bay a wide extent of open water in which sported numerous schools of whales, and thus was established an extensive whale fishery in a quarter of the earth formerly believed to be unavailable for such a purpose.



ICE-FIELDS OF THE ARCTIC.

**DISCOVERIES OF PARRY AND FRANKLIN.**

The discovery of several inlets to the west of Baffin Bay led to an exploration of them during the following year by Parry, in command of two vessels, the *Hecla* and *Griper*. Parry passed through Lancaster Sound, examined the islands called by his name, surveyed Wellington Channel, and being stopped by the ice, wintered there, in the spring getting his vessels out with the utmost difficulty, and returning to England in the fall of 1820. The unsatisfactory result of this expedition led to another under the same commander, in the year 1821, with the *Fury* and *Hecla*. The winter of that year was passed



at a point near to his camping-place of the previous season, but in the spring he pushed on, and passed the second winter at a point almost due north of Hudson Bay, finding there a strait leading directly from it to the Polar Sea, which he named Fury and Hecla Strait, and thus established the northern connection between this great inland body of water and the North Sea.

While this was going on Franklin was making determined efforts by land to supplement whatever discoveries might be made by Parry. With three white companions and a number of Indians he started from Fort York in 1819 to the Great Slave Lake; thence going to the Coppermine River, which he descended to the sea, and then explored about five hundred miles of coast line, and under circumstances of extreme hardship returned to his starting point.

There was now a stretch of unknown coast between the discoveries made by Parry and those of Franklin, and to connect the surveys of the two seemed highly desirable. Accordingly, in 1824, expeditions were started from three different directions; Parry from the east, followed the same route which he had before pursued; Franklin from the south passed down the Mackenzie River, and thence along the coast to the west, while Beecham was sent to Behring Strait, to go east, and if possible communicate with Franklin. This plan, which was admirable in every detail, was but partially carried out. Parry was stopped by the ice; Franklin reached the mouth of the Mackenzie and examined the coast for four hundred miles to the west, while Beecham, although not able to go sufficiently far east to communicate with Franklin, nevertheless penetrated to Point Barrow, and then returned. Thus only a few gaps were left on the coast of North America, while in the meantime the Russians had completed an examination, superficial to be sure, of the Siberian coast, and the problem was nearly solved. In addition, Captain Clavering, an enterprising whaler, had managed to force a boat through the ice of East Greenland, and had surveyed four hundred miles of that coast, which had not been reached since the tenth century.

#### LAST VOYAGE OF SIR JOHN FRANKLIN.

With the exception of an attempt made by Parry in 1827 to reach the Pole by way of Spitzbergen, an attempt which was as notable a failure as all previous efforts in that direction, most explorations have followed the line indicated by Parry up Davis Strait. In 1829 Charles and James Ross, in the *Victory*, passed up Davis Strait in an attempt to surpass previous efforts, but were singularly unfortunate, since their vessel was caught in the ice, and the crews were detained four winters in the Arctic regions, and finally, with almost unendurable sufferings, deserted their ship and were picked up by a whaler. Several expeditions which were sent out in search of the Rosses accomplished very little, but in the meantime, the Hudson Bay agent had by land completed the survey of the North American coast, and showed that a water communication from the Atlantic to the Pacific was extremely probable; and the publication of these facts led Sir John Franklin to undertake his last expedition. He was greatly



encouraged to the undertaking by sea from the fact that in one of his land journeys he had discovered a channel along North Somerset, and had great hopes that it might be the entrance to the open sea.

In 1845, Franklin and the volunteers who accompanied him left England in the *Erebus* and *Terror*, to make the passage by way of Lancaster Sound to Behring Strait. The story of this unfortunate expedition and its tragical close, the heroic devotion shown by Lady Franklin, the interest she was able to inspire on the subject, and the fifteen expeditions which were sent out in search of her husband and his crew, have become a household tale. There is no grander story of woman's devotion. Year after year, hoping against hope, she refused to believe her husband dead, nor did she ever accept the truth until the discovery of the cairn containing the records of the expedition for three years, and noting the death of Sir John.

#### RESULTS OF THE FRANKLIN LOSS.

The Franklin disaster directly led to the expeditions of Ross, Austin, Kennedy, Bellet, McClure, Rae, Belcher, Kettit, McClintock, and Inglefield, and to the exploration of seven thousand miles of coast line, and to the discovery of the north-west passage made by McClure and his crew, although they did not make all the journey in the same ship, and part of it was over ice impassable by vessels. It led also to the remarkable journey of Meacham, who with his companions travelled thirteen hundred and thirty-six miles in sixty-one days, over ice sometimes exceedingly difficult of passage. It showed also the remarkable ice-drift to the south, for when the ship *Resolute* was abandoned, she was found a year later over one thousand miles further south than the point at which she had been deserted. It also established the fact that Franklin really discovered the north-west passage, and had circumstances been a little more favorable, would probably have reached the Pacific by the way of the Polar Sea.

#### CAPTAINS WHO HAVE REACHED THE NORTH POLE.

In connection with the efforts made by so many explorers of the past century to reach the North Pole, and the invariable story of failure, disaster, and death which belongs to each, some facts appertaining to voyagers of earlier centuries are particularly interesting and important. Forster relates, "that when the Northern Company in Holland was still in the fullness of her splendor (*viz.*: from 1614 to 1641), a ship was despatched to Greenland for the purpose of fetching train-oil, which was used to be manufactured in Swendenberge; but there being not a sufficient quantity ready to complete the full lading, the captain finding the sea quite open, sailed straight on to the northward, and at the distance of two degrees from it (the North Pole), went twice around it. Wood also, as he himself informs us, was told by Mr. Joseph Moxon, in 1676, that being in Holland about twenty years before, he heard a very respectable Dutch captain of a ship say that he had navigated under the very Pole, where he found the weather as warm as it used to be in Amsterdam in summer. In fine Captain Goulden, likewise, who had made upwards of twenty voyages to Greenland, told King



Charles the Second, that, being about twenty years before in Greenland, he found himself with two Dutch-Greenland navigators near Edges Island (discovered by Thomas Edge in 1616), to the eastward of that country, when no whales appearing near the shore, the two Dutch captains resolved to sail farther on towards the north; which in fact they did, and a fortnight afterwards returned and related that they had been as far as the 89th degree (which is within one degree, or a fraction less than sixty-eight miles of the Pole), and had met with no ice, but with a free and open sea, with large and hollow waves, as in the Bay of Biscay. One of these captains afterwards happened to go to England, when Captain Gould took him to some members of the Northern Company, whom he fully convinced of the truth of his relation." For authority in substantiation of these surprising statements, Mr. Forster refers to Hon. Mr. Boyle's "History



SCHWATKA'S OVERLAND JOURNEY.

of Cold," and Zorgdrager's "Greenland Whale Fishery," vol. ii., chapter 10, page 162;

The extraordinary claim thus made appears more astonishing when we consider the latitudes attained by the most noted arctic explorers of more modern times: Parry, in 1827, reached  $79^{\circ}$ ; Kane, in 1850,  $80^{\circ}30'$ ; Hayes, in 1861,  $81^{\circ}30'$ ; Hall, in 1871,  $82^{\circ}16'$ ; Nares, in 1876,  $83^{\circ}20'$ ; and Lieutenant Lockwood and Sergeant Brainard, of the Greely Expedition, in 1884, reached  $83^{\circ}24'$ , at a point now known as Cape Robert Lincoln, the highest latitude accepted history declares any man ever attained. Thus Lockwood was no nearer than about 430 miles from the Pole, a degree in that latitude being nearly sixty-eight statute miles, or a mile and a half less than it is at the Equator.

The numerous discoveries made by the expeditions searching for Franklin

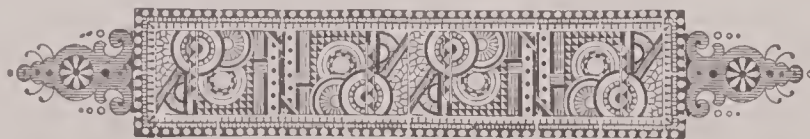


apparently only stimulated the zeal for Arctic exploration. In 1850, Kane passing up Baffin Bay entered Smith Sound, the most northerly passage then known, explored that great body of water, examined the west coast of Greenland, and laid down a map, the accuracy of which has never been disputed. While not among the first to note the Greenland glaciers, he was the first to determine their prodigious extent, which surpassed anything known in any part of the world, one being not less than forty-five miles wide, and possessed of a solid body of ice. In 1860, the path of Kane was followed by Hayes, and later by Hall, both of whose voyages were notable; the first from the fact that he discovered the house built in 1578 by Martin Frobisher; and during the second, besides finding relics of Sir John Franklin, he took his vessels two hundred and fifty miles up the channel leading out of Smith Bay to the North, and wintered in eighty-two degrees. The Alert and Discovery followed in the same line in 1875, and during that expedition Captain Markham took the former vessel to the highest latitude ever reached by a ship, eighty-two degrees twenty-seven minutes; then made a sledge journey to eighty-three degrees twenty minutes. The work of Captain Markham is chiefly interesting from the observations he made on the flora and fauna of that region.

#### THE OVERLAND JOURNEY OF SCHWATKA.

Various expeditions by the Dutch, Swedes, and Danes followed, with no very important result, and the historian knows little that was startling until the famous journey by Schwatka. Anxious to discover what had been the fate of the Franklin expedition, he started overland by way of the estuary of the Great Fish river. Eminently successful in his investigations, the relics he discovered and the stories he collected among the Esquimaux have a pathetic interest, as corroborative of previous intelligence concerning Franklin's fate. All the traditions of the Esquimaux pointed in the same direction as the discoveries made by those who had really set the matter at rest, so while Schwatka added not so much to geographical knowledge as he intended, the narrative of his journal is almost without a parallel in the story of Arctic exploration.

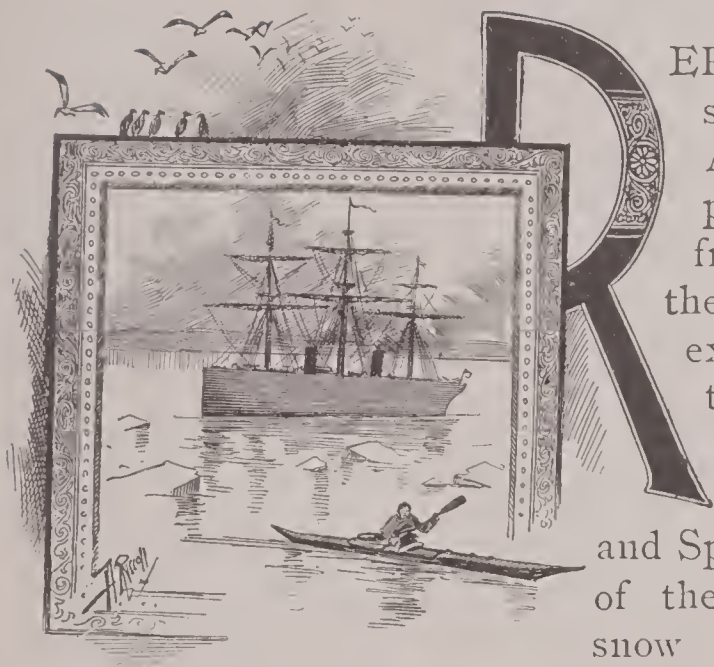
Still the world was not satisfied, and the modern craving for news led the proprietor of the New York Herald to send out the Jeannette expedition in 1879. The "Jeannette" started to solve the Polar problem by way of Behring Strait, and the fate of the vessel, and of the men forced to abandon her, the unhappy death of De Long, the journey home of the survivors, compose a melancholy chapter of Arctic history, a chapter which is not improved by the addition to it of the terrible story of Greely, so recent as to be a household word.





## CHAPTER LII.

### VOYAGES OF NORDENSKIOLD.



REPEATED failures to accomplish the objects sought for did not quench the ardor of Arctic explorers and a year before the departure of the *Jeannette*, a vessel started from Gothenburg on a voyage destined to be the grandest success ever achieved in Arctic exploration. The vessel was the "*Vega*," and the commander was the famous Nordenskiöld. He was no tyro in Arctic exploration; six times had he visited Greenland and Spitzbergen, and had penetrated to the interior of the former only to find a vast expanse of snow and never-ending glaciers; he had laid down on the charts the cliffs and coast line

of the latter, in a survey more accurate than that of any previous explorer.

In 1875, seeking for worlds to explore, he turned his attention to the north coast of Siberia, and became convinced of the practicability of circumnavigating it by following the course of the ocean currents. In the year mentioned he reached the Yenisei through the Kara Sea, and in the following year, the charge having been made that the season favored the voyage, he successfully repeated his exploit.

Determined to attack the problem of the north-east passage, Nordenskiöld was successful in interesting the King of Sweden and leading capitalists of that country in his plan, and elaborate preparations were made to carry it out. In this proposed expedition, he had the advantage of perfect familiarity with the mistakes of all previous explorers, and was thus enabled to guard against the dangers which befell others who went before. Four vessels composed the expedition; the one in which he designed to make the passage, the *Vega*, was manned by two officers and seventeen men, volunteers of the Swedish navy. It was a staunch whaler of two hundred and ninety-nine tons, built of oak, and filled with a good sixty horse-power engine. The bottom was supplied with iron tanks, which would afford resistance to the ice, and a casing of oak and steel covered all the surface which would be exposed to floating bergs. A small tender called the *Lena* was to accompany the *Vega* to the mouth of the *Lena* river, and in two other ships stores and coal were to be carried, for a last supply after the *Vega* should leave the bounds of civilization.



The expedition sailed from Karls Krona June 22, 1878, called at Copenhagen for provisions, stopped at Gothenberg, and then passed up the Norway coast to Tromsø where it was joined by Nordenskiöld and his officers, and on July 21, the Arctic voyage began in earnest. A halt was made at Maosø, near the North Cape, and the last homeward bound letters were mailed at the most northern post-office in the world. It is a dreary place, surrounded in summer by black rocks, in winter by everlasting snow and ice. The principal food of the population is fish from the neighboring seas. Potatoes may be good if the year is exceptionally favorable, which, however, is frequently not the case. Radishes, lettuce and spring onions grow readily, and these constitute the sole fresh food of the population from year to year. At the North Cape they were detained several days by bad weather, but on July 25th Nordenskiöld started east to Nova Zembla, determined to skirt the coast of that forbidding land and get through the first available opening into the Kara Sea. Three days later Gooseland was sighted, so called from the immense flocks of geese and swans which there make their nests and raise their young. Leaving Gooseland to the east, the expedition passed to the Yagor Schar, and there sighted the *Fraser* and the *Express*, the other two ships of the expedition, which, having better weather, had passed the *Vega* on the way. The ships cast anchor before the village of Chaberoba, a collection of huts inhabited by the Samoyeds. Few more desolate regions can be conceived of than this most northerly inhabited region of the globe, yet the natives carry on a considerable trade in furs and skins, worship in a wooden church lighted with brass lamps, and annually bring from the south more tea than bread.

#### ABUNDANCE OF ANIMAL LIFE.

During the short stay at this point, the members of the expedition could not fail to notice the astounding abundance and variety of animal life: petrels, auks, guillemots, puffins, gulls, geese, swans, terns, ducks, waders, fill the air and sea; while reindeer cover the hills. Bears and foxes prowled among the rocks, and seals and whales disported themselves in the waters, even near the coast, and fish were to be had for the trouble of taking. The walrus, however, at the time of Nordenskiöld's visit, was almost extinct. The crews of previous ships had wantonly slaughtered the defenceless animals, sometimes killing as many as one thousand in six hours, and at present there is scarcely one to be seen.

Passing into the Kara Sea, on August 6th the expedition reached the mouth of the Yenisei at a point where, although the population is now thin, there are evidences of previous habitation. Many cabins were found, each containing a number of small rooms, while every house was provided with a bake-oven, kitchen, cellars, and even with rooms, which, by no great stretch of imagination, could be conceived to be bath-rooms. Here the explorers found also places of sacrifice, where the skulls of animals were mounted on poles; they found graves almost on the surface, with bodies which, from the extreme severity of the climate, were perfectly frozen, and although they had the appearance of having



been buried for generations, presented not the slightest evidence of decomposition. The few inhabitants who still remained were exceedingly hospitable, eagerly invited the strangers to land, and an acceptance of the invitation was at once followed by a feast of the best the country afforded, and a grand dance in which the first girls of the neighborhood, dressed not unlike the men, participated.



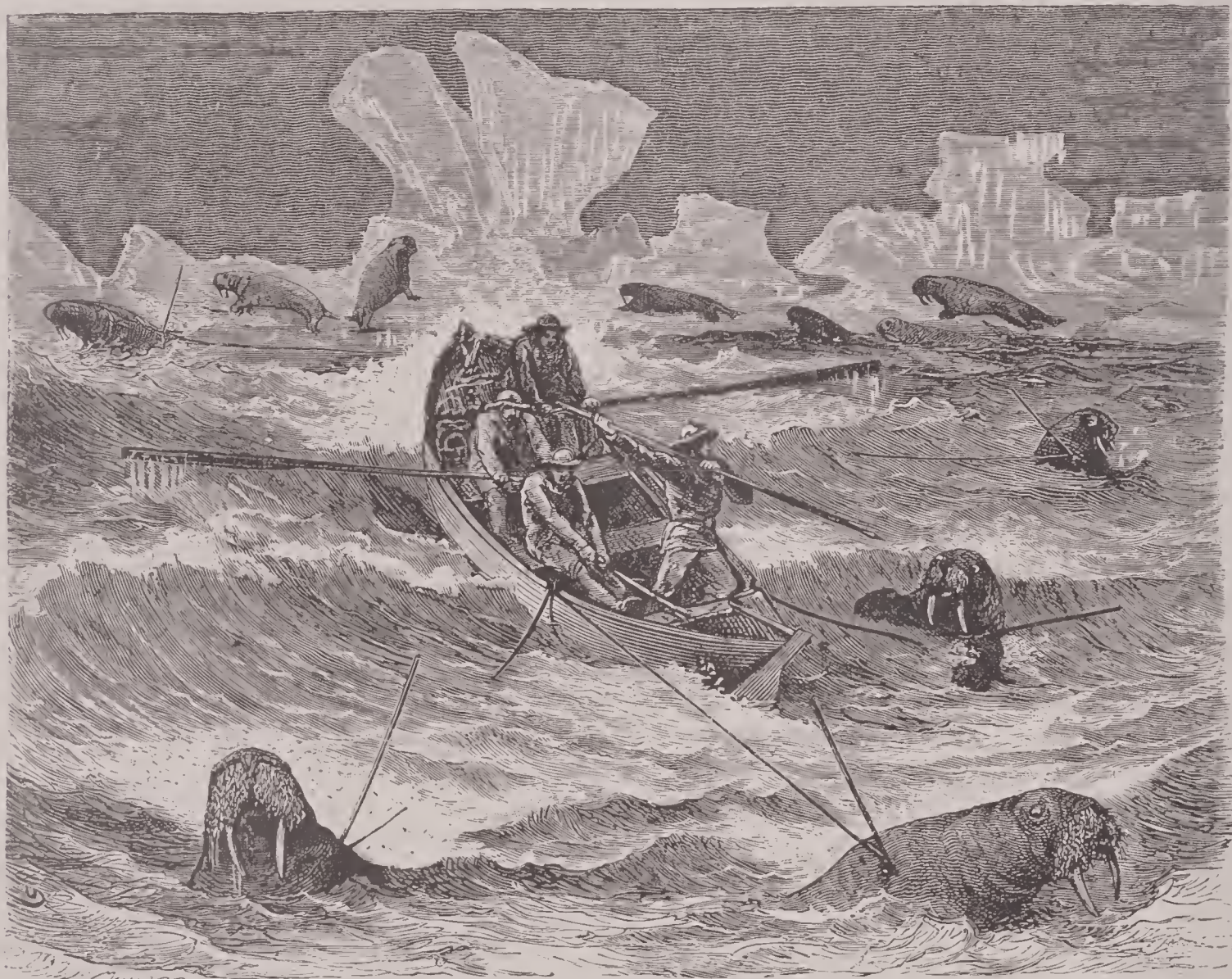
A DANCE WITH SIBERIAN GIRLS.

**INTO AN UNKNOWN SEA.**

Port Dixon, the bay at the mouth of the Yenisei, was left behind on August 10th, and the *Vega* with her tender started forward on an unknown sea. The Arctic Ocean had there but few of the terrors which it possessed along the northern shores of America; it was shallow, and what ice to be seen was evidently the rotten remains of river ice from the previous winter. The fogs, however, were incessant, and constant care was necessary for the safety of the ship, for during many miles their course lay among islands and islets. A singular feature of



this portion of the Arctic Ocean was in the myriads of dead fish which could be clearly seen at the bottom of the sea. They had evidently been frozen in the river ice and thus had perished, but their discovery excites a pertinent observation on the part of the explorer, who remarks how seldom a "self-dead" animal is found. What becomes of them is a problem he does not attempt to solve, nor does he account for the fact that the birds they shot on the island had their crops full of insects in a country where the utmost diligence on the part of a naturalist could find few or no specimens of the insect world. On



WALRUS HUNTERS IN THE ARCTIC.

the snow still upon the hills he discovered much cosmic dust, precipitated no doubt from other worlds, and a very curious find was that of great numbers of crystals on the surface of the snow. These, upon examination, proved to be composed of carbonate of lime, but whence it came was as much of a problem to Nordenskiöld as to his readers.

Actinia Bay, so called from the number of actinia brought up by the dredge was reached on August 14th, and here they remained four days, for although there was very little ice, the fog was so bad that progress was almost impossible.



In this far off corner of the world the Swedish explorer came near meeting one of his countrymen, a whaler named Johannesen, who in that summer was driven there by bad weather and heavy gales from the north-west. Johannesen's ship, however, passed along the horizon just out of sight, and the Vega sailed and steamed for several days along the coast in a fog which prevented much observation, and on the nineteenth of August the explorers saw before them a dark ice-free cape, rising but little above the fog, marking the most northern point of Asia, and the vessels came to anchor where ships had never been before.

#### REMARKABLE CUSTOMS OF SIBERIANS.

Both on the Yenesei and on the Lena abundant opportunities were given the travellers for observing peculiarities of Siberian river-life. The river boats are not large, seldom exceeding twenty feet in length, and midway of each stands a small cabin which, summer and winter, is kept intensely hot by the bake-oven employed to prepare the bread, which every day is cooked fresh for the boatman's family. So warm is the cabin that even in the severest weather the occupants are constantly in a perspiration. Nor does it seem to harm them in the least to pass from the torrid heat within to the temperature of thirty-five or forty degrees below zero without. They seldom take cold, and in this connection it may be noted that the natives of Siberia have accustomed themselves to a great many practices which would probably be fatal to the inhabitants of other countries. For instance, after taking a steam bath they will rush out of the house and throw themselves into beds of snow for the purpose of cooling off. The result is satisfactory, since so far as appearances go they do not seem to be in the least harmed by so extraordinary a change.

On the banks of the Siberian rivers the houses are mostly log cabins, but the further one goes to the south the better is the style of architecture, and not very many miles from the mouth of the Yenesei the houses are of frame, with lintels and cornices elaborately carved. A large part of the population is made up of exiles, but there is little distinction between them and the original colonists, nor is there any difference between the man exiled for crime and the man exiled for politics. "I was unfortunate" is an expression which describes any offense resulting in transportation to Siberia, from the crime of murder to abuse of the Czar.

The river boats bear to and fro a large part of the commerce of the interior, and during their journeys up the rivers, if the winds fail, dogs are used to pull the boat; and so frequently are these animals employed for this purpose that they have worn a path at intervals along the river, and by the side of country roads graves appear, the bodies being interred two or three feet below the ground and then the grave being boarded up to keep away the wolves. The conditions of climate in Siberia are so different from those in other parts of the world that many practices there perfectly natural would elsewhere seem out of place. In the northern portion the ground is thawed only a few inches by the hottest summer. A cellar is dug with extreme difficulty, but when once



prepared, meats, fruits and the like, placed in it, are really in an ice-house, and may be kept frozen all the year around. Bodies of the dead, sometimes removed for interment elsewhere, are found to be in as complete a state of preservation as though buried but yesterday, even though the interment has lasted many years.

#### THE NEW SIBERIAN ISLANDS.

After parting with the *Lena*, the *Vega* set forward alone, steering direct for the New Siberian Islands. This curious group of islets has for many years been the resort of searchers for fossil ivory. It seems strange that in this far away part of the world, so far to the north as to be beyond the bounds of civilization, there should be a mine of ivory, but Africa is not more productive of this article than are the Siberian Islands. Not alone is the ivory of elephants found, but also that of the mammoth. Tusks of prodigious length are sometimes discovered, attesting in the strongest manner the size and strength of this prehistoric world. The ivory is sometimes dug out of the earth, but more frequently is exposed by heavy ocean swells which have prevailed for several days, washing away the banks of the islands and leaving the tusks to be easily recovered. But not only the ivory, but even the bodies of these gigantic animals have frequently been found. When discovered they are frozen fast in the earth, and the flesh is in such a state of preservation from the intense cold to which it has been exposed for ages that the natives sometimes use it for food. Nearly thirty entire bodies of the mammoth have been discovered at different times by Europeans, to say nothing of those which have probably been found and destroyed by the natives; and in each case the enormous carcass was covered with hair sometimes two or three feet in length. The bodies of hairy elephants have also been found, the remains of a kind of rhinoceros covered with wool and hair, and having a horn often five feet long. One such find, the body of a mammoth, was made by Nordenskiöld. Intelligence was brought to the vessel that a large carcass had been partly unearthed at some distance, and a detachment was sent to examine the body and detach such portions as could conveniently be taken away. The enormous carcass was frozen hard, but as the body far exceeded in size that of the largest elephant, it was impossible to bring it away, and so the expedition contented itself with rescuing the tusks and a large part of the skin.

Time was beginning to be precious, and although the temptation was strong to make a stay at the Siberian Islands, the commander was afraid of delay, and, as he had been able to proceed thus far, had a strong hope of pushing through Behring Strait before the fall ice formed in the bays to the north. So on they pressed, through seas absolutely unknown, the constant fog rendering it necessary to lie by at night, and even for several days at a time the ship was obliged either to remain tied to an ice-floe, or to proceed very slowly, with one or more boats in the van, to prevent all danger of sudden collision with icebergs.



## MEETING THE CHUKCHIES.

September 6th was a day long to be remembered. During the whole of their voyage from the mouth of the Lena to the Siberian Islands, no human beings had been seen. For anything to the contrary noticed by the crew of the Vega, they might be proceeding along the coast of a desert island. But on the afternoon of that day a cry arose that boats were in sight. The shout brought everyone to the deck save the cook. This individual appears to have confined himself strictly to his duties, and as the historian of the expedition remarks, "he seldom appeared on deck, and circumnavigated Europe and Asia without once having been on land." Leaving the cook behind, therefore, the rest of the crew took



NORDENSKIÖLD VISITED BY CHUKCHIES.

up a favorable position on the deck to view the strangers who were coming along in boats to pay them a visit. They were Chukchies, a strange people of Siberia and better looking than Esquimaux. The men were tall, well formed and active, the women of an intelligent appearance, and the children seemed to have no character at all, being merely animated bundles of reindeer skins. These first visitors to the Vega clambered up the side of the ship in a way that indicated they had seen vessels before, and so they had, as they soon demonstrated, for although not one of the company knew a word of Russian, every one of them could count in English and knew the name not only of the vessel, but also of several familiar objects on it, in the same language. It was evident that American whalers had frequently visited these waters, and Nordenskiöld was not long in



finding out that intercourse between them and the natives had been comparatively common in recent years. However, none of the Chukchies knew enough English to make themselves understood, and there was no communication save by signs. Presents of tobacco and pipes were liberally given, and the sailors made glad the hearts of the simple folk by presenting them with old clothing in great abundance, for every one on the ship supposed the voyage nearly at an end, and anticipated soon being able to buy what they needed in the ports of Japan and China.

#### A CHUKCHIE FEAST.

The day following the meeting with the Chukchies being too foggy to proceed the crew visited the natives on shore and were well received wherever they went, being treated to the best in the savage larder. A feast was made for the strangers, and the hospitality of the Chukchies prompted them to treat their visitors to walrus meat, reindeer steak, seal fat, blubber, with a soup made from vegetables which had been taken from the stomachs of dead reindeer, and an after-course of train oil, drunk hot. It was evidently the first time a steam vessel had been seen on this coast, and the "fiery reindeer," as the natives called the vessel, created intense excitement. The news spread up and down the coast and natives from every direction came with offers to trade. They wanted needles, pots, knives and axes, and were willing to pay the best prices for saws, iron tools, bright-colored shirts and handkerchiefs, and would have parted with all they had for tobacco, sugar and spirits. Unfortunately, the Vega had not come prepared to barter, and the Chukchies knew nothing of the value of money, so the trading was limited. This was greatly to their disappointment, for it seems they were accomplished traders and had already established commercial intercourse with the American Indians at Behring Strait. Greatly to their surprise the people of the Vega cared nothing for the articles they were most anxious to sell. Nordenskiöld was not a trader and soon gave the Indians to understand this, but that if they had garments, weapons, domestic utensils or any ethnological specimens for sale, they would find him a purchaser, although they seemed to regard him as out of his wits for wishing to obtain articles which to them had no value, and paying for them prices which seemed to them to be extravagant. They readily supplied all his demands, however and in a very short time a complete set of Chukchies clothes, weapons and household goods was provided.

#### THE APPROACH OF WINTER.

Day by day the quantity of ice increased, and every night new fields were formed through which it was necessary to plow in the morning. Still the vessel pressed on, past the bay, behind Cape Ikraipji, which had been seen by Cook in 1778, past a number of inlets, capes and promontories, everywhere greeted by the Chukchies with enthusiasm. These people it seems were not the original inhabitants of the country, for even in the little time allowed, the members of the expedition discovered the remains of an older race that had been



driven away by the modern invaders. In and around abandoned houses were discovered bones and stone monuments of uncertain age. Uncertain, because in the Arctic regions great caution is necessary in forming a judgment as to the antiquity of ruins or remains. Paths from village to village along the shore are sometimes visible after the lapse of a century. It was comparatively easy for Nordenskiöld and his men to establish friendly relations with the amicable people who now inhabit the extreme north-western corner of Asia, but on several occasions they made the mistake, with ludicrous results, of supposing some particular native to be the chief of his village. In this they were invariably mistaken, for all persons in the tribes were equal; there was no distinction in rank in the community.

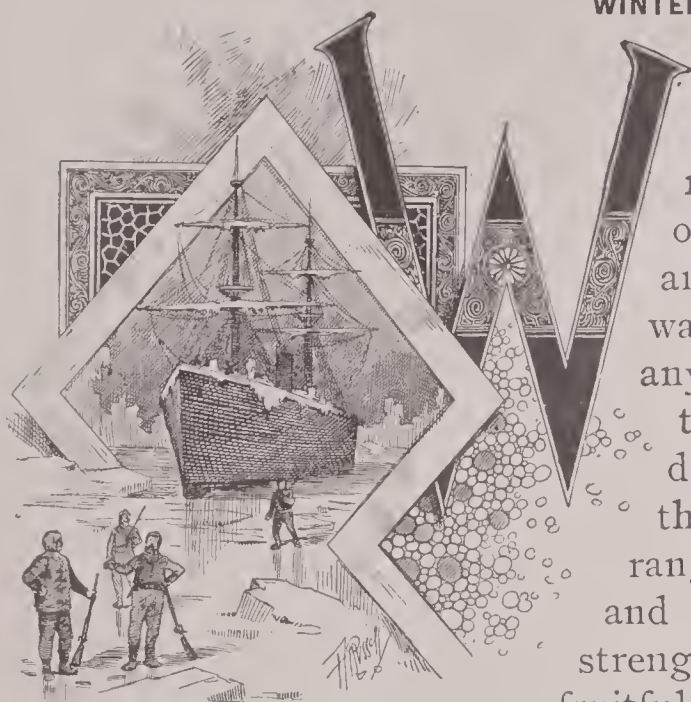
#### THE VEGA FROZEN IN.

Progress became daily more difficult, finally was stopped, and on October 2d the Vega was frozen in on an open road, exposed to every danger, both from the wind, the moving ice, and the swell of the sea which constantly kept the pack in motion. The result was a bitter disappointment to the crew, who had hoped that in a few days more they would pass through Behring Strait into a sea where ice is unknown, and instead, found themselves condemned to winter on an inhospitable coast and under circumstances of such great peril. But there was no help for it, and for the next ten months they were compelled to make the best of the situation, which, although unpleasant, nevertheless had redeeming features. Preparations were made to render the vessel comfortable; the snow which up to that time had been carefully swept away, was allowed to remain on the deck until a coating of six or seven inches thick had accumulated, and thereby the comfort of the vessel was greatly increased. Snow banks were also piled up against the sides, and a staircase of ice was constructed from the gangway down to the level of the sea. Above the deck a canvas tent was stretched, and although this tent did not materially increase the warmth of the ship, it nevertheless made a shelter from the wind, and provided a sort of reception room where the Chukchies, whom it was not thought advisable to admit below deck, could be received and entertained. To provide against every emergency, provisions, ammunition, clothing and guns were removed to the mainland, and a store made, containing sufficient supplies for thirty men for one hundred days. There was danger of the vessel being nipped in the ice, and in case she should be sunk or cut through at the water line, it was highly important that provision should be made for the future. The stores thus removed from the ship were placed on the land; no watch was kept, and they were covered only by a sail cloth held fast by stones; but notwithstanding that the Chukchies had seen the removal, and knew that the heap contained what to them were goods of priceless value, not a thing was touched throughout the entire winter.



## CHAPTER LIII.

### WINTER AMUSEMENTS.



WINTER life on board ship is monotonous at best, but the most careful arrangements were made by Nordenskiöld to preserve the health of his men. The food was in sufficient variety and abundance, so that a different bill of fare was arranged for every day; nor was there any lack of fuel, for when the natives ascertained that wood was wanted, they brought drift in quantities, to exchange for articles they needed. Courses of lectures were arranged, various entertainments were provided, and every effort made to keep up the health, strength and spirits of the men. But the most fruitful source of entertainment and amusement

was found in the constant visits of the natives. The intelligence that a ship was frozen in in their neighborhood, soon spread along the coast, and visitors came from near and far to view the wondrous spectacle. Frequently, dog teams by dozens waited around the ship, while the natives begged, and often in sheer pity for the half frozen dogs the commander would order pemmican to be distributed among them, to the disgust of their owners who, unless prevented, would even rob their own curs of the provisions they deemed thrown away.

At first, in the excess of their friendliness, the natives wanted to go below, and visit the private rooms of the ship, and being prevented from so doing, resented the interference so much that they occasionally declined to allow the whites to enter their tents on shore, but with kindness and firmness, they soon became accustomed to the deprivation; though not thieves, they were intolerable beggars, and made heroic efforts to cheat the whites in every conceivable way; they would bring the bodies of foxes which had been skinned, and endeavor to pass them off on the crew as hares; learning that the whites bought geese and ducks by weight they soon learned to fill the bodies with stones, so that great caution was necessary in dealing with them. Many curious observations were made by the Vega's crew on the habits and customs of these simple savages. Even in the coldest weather, the Chukchies carry on fishing through holes in the ice. After the holes had been cut by the men, the women attended to the rest of the business, being protected from the cutting winds and the driving



snow by a small wall of ice built in a semi-circle to the windward of the ice hole. Placing themselves on hands and knees, they would utter a peculiar clattering cry which attracted the fish, and then with wonderful dexterity would throw them out on the ice by means of a small hook fastened on the end of a stick.

#### A CHUKCHIE POTENTATE.

Not many weeks had passed before a visit was received from a most important personage. One morning the attention of the crew was attracted by a procession, at once unusual and imposing, advancing from the land to the ship. A number of natives were drawing a large sledge, which, on a nearer approach, was seen to be occupied by a man lying at full length. At first it was supposed that this was some sick person who was being brought to the ship for medical treatment, but, to the astonishment of the crew, as the sledge came along side, the occupant arose and walked on board in great state, and with much solemnity announced himself as the representative of the Russian government.

A Chukchie like the others, he knew but few words of Russian and even those were mispronounced, but his official position seemed undoubted, and on further investigation it appeared that a request having been sent by the King of Sweden to the Czar to extend such aid as was possible to the expedition should it stand in need of any, a circular order to that effect had been despatched to all the Siberian provinces, and the Governor had communicated its import to the Russian representative among the Chukchies, who, in obedience to the mandate, had come to tender his services and transact a little business on his own account. Wassili Menka, for such was the name of this individual, was anxious to impress the Chukchies with an abiding sense of his greatness, and therefore refused to walk to the ship, but lay down in the sledge and insisted that he must be drawn by men instead of dogs, for otherwise the strangers would think that their master was only a common king instead of a great potentate. They complied with his whim, but later took occasion to protest, declaring that any one of themselves was just as good as Menka, the only difference being that, in some way, he had secured the favor of the Russian Governor.

#### SENDING LETTERS HOME.

As Menka intended to return at once to his village in the interior, the opportunity was seized of sending letters which might or might not reach their destination. Several were accordingly written, detailing, in brief, the state of the expedition, the health of those on board and the position of the ship. These letters were, after the fashion of the country, securely tied between two boards; and to Menka was given, to be forwarded to the Governor, a large open letter on parchment, being a request to all officials of the Russian government to forward the package without delay. Of this document, imposing from its size and the big red seal at the bottom, Menka made a shrewd use. After returning to the village, he called the population about him, and commanding silence, stood on a sledge and produced the official looking parchment. Holding it upside down from the



impression that, of course, the seal must be at the top, he proceeded to read from it long sentences of fluent Chukchie, lavishly commendatory of himself and telling the high opinion that was expressed to him by his white brothers in the ship. The proceeding evidently raised him greatly in the estimation of his people, as he had intended it should and from that time on Menka was a man of distinction and gave himself airs.

Six months later, in June, of the following year, the crew was thrown into a state of feverish excitement by the arrival of a native, who announced himself the bearer of a letter. As it had already been ascertained by the Chukchies that good news was well paid for, and the men of the ship had, on more than one occasion, been lavish of their liquor and delicacies given in receipt of false and unimportant intelligence, there was a disposition to be incredulous about the letter till it was produced. On being questioned on this point, it was discovered that the native really brought a document of some kind, but had left it at the village, until he could make sure of being paid for his long journey. On being satisfied on this point, he produced the letter, which, to the disappointment of every one, proved to be nothing more than an extremely short, and formal note from the Governor of the province, stating that the letters had been received and would be forwarded in accordance with the request. Save these few words, no other communication from civilization was received during the winter, though of course there was nothing extraordinary in this fact, for more than one Arctic expedition passed two or more years with no news from the outside world.

#### IN THE MIDST OF A STRONG ODOR.

With the aid of Menka, who was a capitalist, as he owned a large herd of reindeer, several excursions were made, even in the dead of winter, but little of interest was developed by these land journeys, which were so unpleasant that they were soon abandoned. The Chukchies were by no means civilized in their notions of cleanliness, and after an officer had slept three or four nights in a tent twelve feet in diameter with twenty or thirty natives and their dogs he was quite willing to abandon the search for knowledge and let somebody else go on the next journey. Every one who undertook these jaunts, however, was amazed at the endurance both of the Chukchies and their dogs, for frequently the natives and their canine steeds would make a journey of thirty-six hours, with very few halts and without food, and at the end seem as fresh as when they started.

As soon as the vessel was frozen in, the scientific work of the winter began in earnest, an observatory was erected on the mainland, blocks of ice being utilized for the walls and a sail for the roof, and attempts were made to render its temperature a little more endurable by means of a wood stove, with the result that the observatory nearly went to pieces. The observers were, therefore, compelled to content themselves with what heat could be derived from their lamps, but so efficient were these that when the temperature outside



was thirty-six below zero, within the walls it was only seventeen below, so that while almost unendurably cold it was great improvement on the open air.

The days passed in the routine noted by every explorer in Arctic regions. There were observations to be made, daily exercise to be taken for the sake of health, the hungry Chukchies were to be fed, and much amusement was derived from seeing the earnestness with which they gathered round the cook's galley. Every plate which, with its broken fragments, came from below was carefully scraped and even licked by the hungry unfortunates, and when no more remained from the dinner a large pot of soup, containing a little of everything that happened to be handy, was set out by the cook, and the Chukchies helped themselves as best they could. Courses of lectures and other entertainments were provided for officers and men, amusements of various kinds were improvised to help pass away the time, and thus the long dark winter was rendered endurable.

#### THE JANUARY THAW.

In January there came hope of a release, for the natives declared that frequently several weeks of good weather were known at that time of year. Sure enough, soon after the first day of the New Year, the south-west wind blew softly, the ice began to melt, large fields broke from the shore and floated slowly away to the north. The Chukchies prepared their fishing hooks and tackle and the crew of the *Vega* felt their spirits revive, for with a few days good weather they would pass the narrow strait between Asia and America and soon be in seas where ice is unknown. But these bright anticipations were doomed to disappointment, for after a few pleasant days, heavy winds set in from the north, followed by intense cold. The floes which, under the influence of the southern breeze, had drifted away, were brought back by the northern blast with such force as to pile them up round the *Vega*, the great broken masses lying in disordered fragments almost as high as the tops of her masts.

#### A CHUKCHIES' FEAST.

With the northern ice came also the Chukchies. On the approach of good weather the natives had deserted the ship, having made a large capture of seals along the shore. They had taken enough, with economy, to last them the whole winter, but not having the slightest notion of forethought, the abundance lasted only a few days. During the season of plenty they had turned up their noses at the fare given them on the ship, but when starvation came again, the daily barter was renewed; blocks of ice, for the use of the cook, pieces of wood, whale-bone, clothing, weapons, anything that would buy food, were brought in abundance, and found ready sale. While, in case of necessity, they could live on very little, they made themselves compensation for the compulsory fast by astounding gormandizing when food was abundant. Nordenskiöld saw a party of eight persons, three men, two women and three children, dispose of over thirty pounds of solid food at one sitting. The meal was in courses;



for the first, came raw fish, frozen, pieces being snapped off with as much gusto as an American youngster bites off a bit of candy. Then came a soup made of the mossy contents of the stomachs of reindeer, after which a course of boiled fish was undertaken with as much earnestness as though the feast had just begun. Frozen seal blubber in long hard strips came next, and the dinner was ended by the production of a large lump of seal flesh, weighing about twelve pounds. Each took the mass in one hand and held it to his face. Finding a point where it could be conveniently attacked, he opened his mouth to its utmost width and took in as much as he could; then, with a knife in the other hand, cut off his mouthful from the main body and proceeded to chew, working as hard as he could so as to be in readiness when it had completed the circle and got back to him.

The leader of the expedition being on this occasion an honored guest, the lady of the house did him the special favor of tendering him the first bite, previously nibbling the whole piece to ascertain the most tender part and then showing him its situation that he might know where to attack it. He declined the honor, when she, supposing his reluctance arose from an inability either to understand or to comply with their customs, herself bit off a large piece which she then took in her hand and offered for his acceptance.

#### DAYBREAK AFTER A WINTER'S NIGHT OF SIX MONTHS.

Thus in one way and another, by feasting, dancing, fishing, hunting, eating and sleeping the long winter passed away. In February the light was so bright as to necessitate the use of colored glasses to protect the eyes. The effects of the incessant glare were very apparent on the optics of the Chukchies, many of whom were almost deprived of sight, while even the hares shot by the hunters were snow-blind and thus unable to escape. Gradually the light increased and little by little the snow began to disappear. There were other signs of spring. Before the snow was gone the geese, ducks and gulls began to appear, coming in large flocks from the south where they had passed the winter in comfort. Travelling cost them nothing; they had no preparations to make, no hotel bills to pay, their passes needed no renewal and they really enjoyed the trip. Beginning to arrive in April, they were followed a month later by song birds. The flight of the feathered denizens of the woods had been no longer, but their wings were less adapted to the labors of the way, and they arrived in a state of great exhaustion. To the wearied prisoners on the ship they were welcome as harbingers of speedy release and when they fell on the deck, or alighted among the ropes, they were fed and protected. Hundreds found on the ship that shelter and food which the land denied, and the deck was made merry with their chirping.

#### THE SNOW-BUGS.

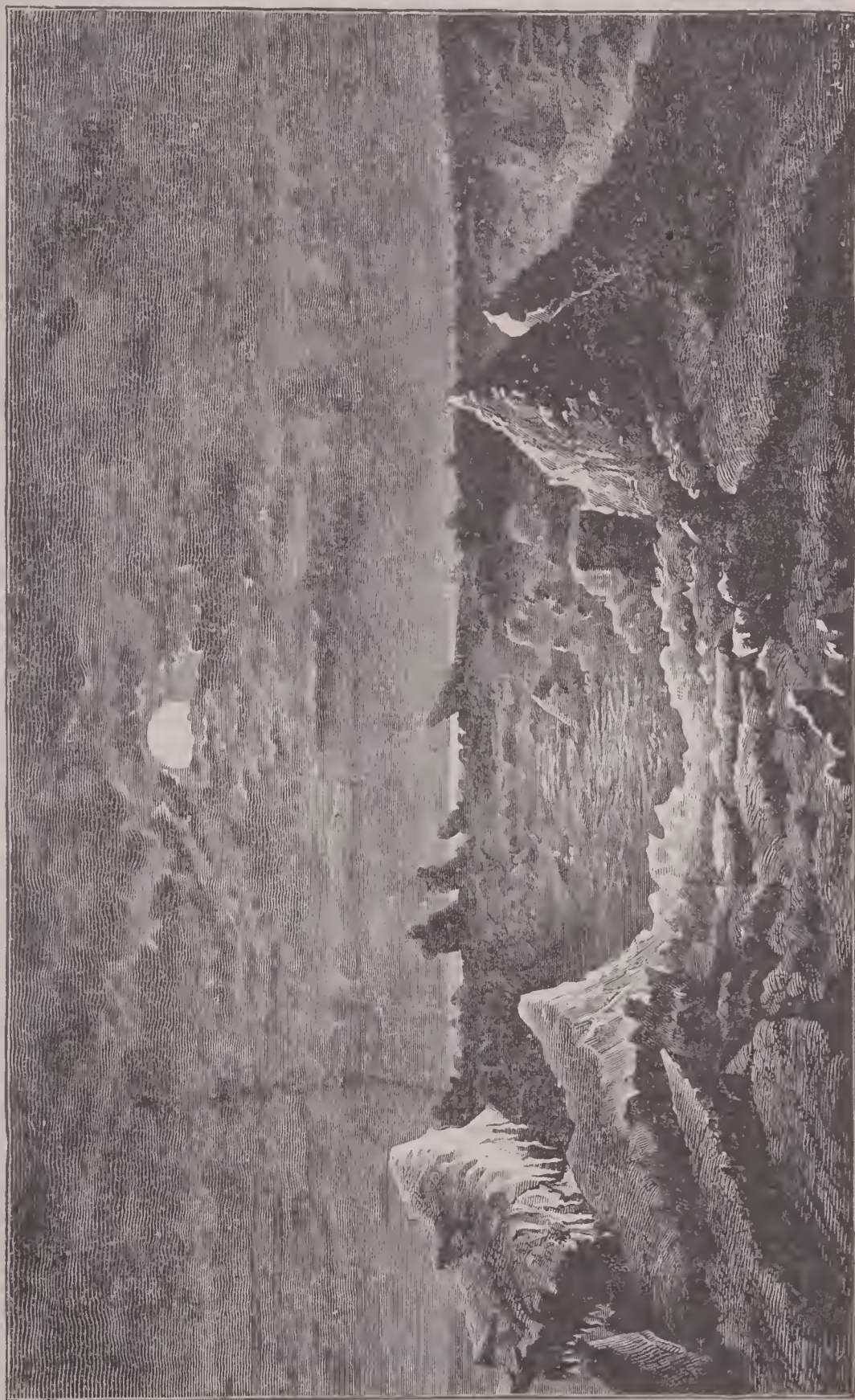
As spring came on and the snow and ice was drenched with water a curious phenomenon was observed. Wherever the foot sank a bluish light flashed, remaining for some minutes after the disturbing cause had ceased. At



first this queer result was deemed electrical in its origin, but a careful microscopical examination of the snow disclosed the fact that the light was due to

exceedingly minute crustaceans, which, by millions, had their home in the slush and thrived in a temperature scarcely above the freezing point. But this was not the only example of animal life at very low temperature, for in several cases living animaculæ were discovered in snow of a temperature very far below zero.

In July the snow had disappeared from the land, and lines of bare, unattractive brown hills, with little vegetation and scarcely any apparent means of supporting animal life, were presented to view. There was apparently nothing to tempt human beings to remain in such a country, and yet the Chukchies, although they had abundant opportunity for a change of residence preferred their own hills and their ten months of snow to any country on the globe.



THE ARCTIC SEA.

THE VEGA FREE.

Still the ice showed no signs of breaking up, and from its density and quantity the tired voyagers calculated that they would not be able to break



their frozen fetters before the last of the month or the first of August. While the Vega's crew was at the midday meal on the 18th of July a heavy shock was felt, and the vessel moved uneasily as she settled down in the ice. In an instant all was excitement. The ice was breaking up. Under the influence of a warm south wind the floes were moving and here and there long rifts appeared in the ice-fields which for ten months had held the Vega a prisoner. Hurried preparations were made for immediate departure. Not a moment was to be lost. The engines were in perfect order, for, in anticipation of the thaw the boilers had been cleaned and all made ready for a start. Fires were at once lighted, and smoke began to pour from the funnel. Two hours later, at 3.30 in the afternoon, the screw began to revolve, and the Vega crashed through the floating ice on her way to the south. As she passed the peninsula where the Chukchie village was situated, the whole population came out to witness the departure of their friends of the winter and from the deck men and women could be seen wringing their hands and weeping while the "smoky reindeer," as they called the vessel, bore away those who for many months, had stood between them and starvation.

#### THE RETURN HOME.

Two days later, the Vega passed through Behring Strait and began a homeward voyage that was a continued ovation. Stops were made at various ports in Japan, China, and India; the Suez Canal was passed through and pauses were indulged in at several points of the Mediterranean, the officers and crew every where receiving evidence of the popular appreciation of their exploit; and so, through the Strait of Gibraltar and by way of the English Channel, the Vega finished her circumnavigation of Asia and Europe.

The voyage of the Vega was the most remarkable achievement in the history of Arctic exploration, for without the loss of a man, with little suffering, and hardly any sickness, the problem of the north-east passage was solved. The journey was almost made in one season for, as indicated, the vessel was within two days' sail of Behring Strait when enclosed in the ice. More than this time would have been lost in halts at different points on the route; over two days, in all, had been spent in dredging, and all this time would have been utilized in pressing on, had the explorers guessed how near they would come in making the voyage in a single summer.

The route thus pointed out by Nordenskiöld is no longer needed for commerce, for the uncertain navigation of a treacherous sea is rapidly being supplanted by railroads through every part of Siberia, but man feels a natural and commendable pride in doing what has been pronounced an impossibility. The leader of the Vega expedition accomplished his object and enrolled his name at the head of the list of Arctic explorers, for however long that roll in future years may become, no copy of it will be complete which does not begin with the name of Nordenskiöld.























LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 041 350 013 8